Class PC4111
Book .I5
Copyright No. V2

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.

3

A TEXTBOOK

ON

SPANISH

285
.732

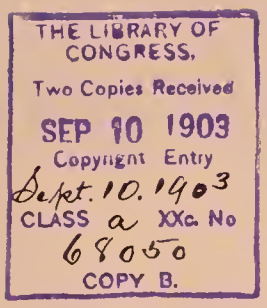
INTERNATIONAL CORRESPONDENCE SCHOOLS
SCRANTON, PA.

GRAMMAR

THE LIBRARY
OF CONGRESS

SCRANTON
INTERNATIONAL TEXTBOOK COMPANY
A-3

PC4111
.I5



Copyright, 1903, by INTERNATIONAL TEXTBOOK COMPANY

Entered at Stationers' Hall, London

Spanish Grammar, Parts 1–4: Copyright, 1902, by INTERNATIONAL TEXTBOOK COMPANY. Entered at Stationers' Hall, London.

Spanish Grammar, Parts 5–12: Copyright, 1903, by INTERNATIONAL TEXTBOOK COMPANY. Entered at Stationers' Hall, London.

All rights reserved

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES 5022

CONTENTS

SPANISH GRAMMAR	*Section*	*Page*
Definition and Divisions of Spanish Grammar	16	1
Phonology	16	2
Sounds of the Spanish Letters	16	2
General Rules of Pronunciation	16	10
Vowel Combinations	16	10
Division of Words Into Orthographic Syllables	16	15
Accentuation or Emphasis	16	17
Remarks on Pronunciation and Orthography	16	19
The Sentence	16	22
Parts of Speech	16	23
Modifiers	16	24
General Rudiments of the Language	17	1
Number	17	1
Personal Pronouns	17	4
Gender	17	6
The Verb	17	9
Cases of Non-Neuter Personal Pronouns	17	25
Rudimentary Principles of Syntax	17	28
The Substantive	18	1
Classes of Nouns	18	1
Number in Nouns	18	10
Gender of Substantives and of Substantive Phrases	18	15
Neuters	18	28
Non-Neuter Personal Pronouns	19	1

SPANISH GRAMMAR—*Continued*	*Section*	*Page*
The Dative and the Dative Case	19	3
The Accusative and the Accusative Case	19	15
Reflexive Constructions	19	17
Relative Pronouns and Phrases	19	27
Indefinite Pronouns	19	37
The Adjective	20	1
Classes of Adjectives	20	1
The Substantive Adjective	20	3
The Adjective Substantive	20	7
Augmentative and Diminutive Adjectives	20	15
Absolute Superlatives	20	18
Inflection of Adjectives for Number and Gender	20	21
The Demonstratives Este, Ese, Aquel	20	23
The Definite Article	20	28
The Indefinite Article	20	46
Possessive Adjectives	21	1
Interrogative Adjectives	21	10
Numerals	21	13
Apocopation of Adjectives	21	21
The Verb	21	24
Uses of the Subjunctive Mode	21	24
The Hypothetic Mode	21	45
Pronominal or Reflexive Verbs	22	1
The Passive Construction	22	9
The Quasi-Reflexive Construction	22	12
Irregular Verbs	22	22
Irregular Participles	22	51
Table of Irregular Verbs	22	54
Defective Verbs	23	1
Subjectless Verbs	23	4
Impersonal Verbs and Constructions	23	17
Primary Meanings of the Tenses	23	19
Secondary Meanings of the Tenses	23	27
Verbal Derivatives	24	1
The Infinitive	24	1
The Gerund	24	14

SPANISH GRAMMAR—*Continued*	*Section*	*Page*
The Participle—Absolute Clauses	24	20
Uses of Some Important Verbs	24	25
The Adverb	25	1
Classification of Adverbs	25	1
Forms of Comparison	25	4
Uses of Some Important Adverbs	25	20
The Preposition	26	1
Uses of á	26	1
Uses of Other Prepositions	26	12
The Conjunction	26	27
The Interjection	26	38
Syntax	27	1
Order of Words	27	1
Concord or Agreement	27	16
Syllepsis	27	33

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 1)

DEFINITION AND DIVISIONS

1. **Spanish grammar** is a systematic presentation of the principles and rules governing the correct use of the Spanish language.

REMARK.—Among Spanish-speaking people, Spanish grammar is usually called **gramática castellana,** *Castilian grammar;* and the Spanish language itself, **lengua castellana,** *Castilian language*, or simply **castellano,** *Castilian*. The reason for this is that the province of Castile was once the center of Spanish power and influence, and its language was, and still is, recognized as the official language of the Spanish monarchy. Properly speaking, there is no Spanish language, if by this is to be understood the language of the Spanish people; for in Spain there are a great many provinces where languages are spoken, both by the educated and by the illiterate, that are radically different from Castilian, as well as from one another.

The cultured classes of Spanish America speak and write the language of Castile, except that, as will be presently explained, they have followed the Andalusian instead of the Castilian manner of pronouncing the letters *c* and *z*.

2. Spanish grammar is divided into four parts; namely:

1. **Prosodia,** *phonology* (literally, *prosody*), which treats of pronunciation.

2. **Analogía,** *etymology* (literally, *analogy*), which treats of the classification of words according to their grammatical functions, of their derivation and composition, and of their changes of form.

3. **Sintaxis,** *syntax*, which treats of the arrangement of words in speaking or writing, and of the interdependence of their forms according to their mutual relations.

4. **Ortografía,** *orthography*, which treats of spelling and punctuation.

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

PHONOLOGY

SOUNDS OF THE SPANISH LETTERS

THE SPANISH ALPHABET

3. Letters of the Alphabet.—The Spanish alphabet consists of thirty letters; namely:

a, *a*	**j**, *jota*	**r**, *ere*
b, *be*	**k**, *ca*, or *ka*	**rr**, *erre*
c, *ce*	**l**, *ele*	**s**, *ese*
ch, *che*	**ll**, *elle*	**t**, *te*
d, *de*	**m**, *eme*	**u**, *u*
e, *e*	**n**, *ene*	**v**, *ve*, or *u de corazón*
f, *efe*	**ñ**, *eñe*	**w**, *doble u*, or *doble ve*
g, *ge*	**o**, *o*	**x**, *equis*
h, *hache*	**p**, *pe*	**y**, *i griega*, or *ye*
i, *i*	**q**, *cu*	**z**, *zeta*, or *zeda*

4. Single and Double Letters.—Each of the combinations *ch*, *ll*, and *rr* is considered to be a separate letter, because it represents a special simple sound, independent of those belonging to the letters of which it consists. These combinations are called **double letters**; the other characters of the alphabet, **single letters.**

Only the first element of each of the double letters *ch* and *ll* is capitalized: *Chihuahua*, *Llorente*. No Spanish word begins with *rr*. The sound of this letter, at the beginning of a word, is represented by *r*.

REMARK.—In consulting Spanish dictionaries, it should be borne in mind that *ch* and *ll* are each treated as a separate letter, the former coming after *c*, and the latter after *l*, in the alphabet. Although *rr* ought to be treated in the same manner, lexicographers do not usually assign to it the place of an independent letter: they treat it as a combination following alphabetically the combination *rq*.

5. Vowels and Consonants.—The letters *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u* are called **vowels;** the others, **consonants.**

When *y* stands alone (in which case it means *and*), it is classed as a vowel, because it then has the same sound as *i*. It is also customary to class final *y* (as in **hoy**, *today*) as a vowel. With respect to pronunciation, this classification is correct, for in such cases *y* has the sound of *i*; in other respects, however, words ending in *y* follow the rules applying to words ending in a consonant. In this work, final *y* will be treated as a consonant, unless otherwise stated.

PRONUNCIATION OF THE VOWELS

6. True Sounds and Approximate Sounds.—Many of the Spanish letters have sounds that an English-speaking person cannot learn from written explanations, or from comparisons with the sounds of English letters. No exact idea of those sounds can be obtained except by hearing them. In what follows, some letters, both vowels and consonants, are described as having in Spanish approximately the same sounds that certain letters have in English. The student that has not an opportunity to hear these Spanish sounds from either a phonograph or a living teacher, may use the approximate sounds here given. It is of the utmost importance that he should learn to pronounce Spanish words in some manner; for words that are not associated in the mind with some sound or sounds are easily forgotten: one may recognize them and know their meanings when one sees them in print, but it is difficult to recollect them when one wishes to use them in the formation of original sentences. At the same time, it should be constantly remembered that the sounds here described as approximate are only the English sounds that bear the nearest resemblance to the Spanish sounds to which they are likened.

7. Sounds of the Vowels.—The vowels are pronounced as follows:

a, approximately like English *a* in *father;*

e, approximately like English *e* in *possess;*

i, like English *e* in *me;*

o, approximately like English *au* in *authority;*

u, like English *oo* in *moon;*

y (when it means *and*), like Spanish *i*, that is, like English *e* in *me.*

The student is cautioned against the statement, found in many textbooks, that Spanish *e* and *o* are pronounced, respectively, like English *a* and *o* in *ale* and *note.* The following explanations will give a clearer idea of these two peculiar sounds:

If the name of the English letter *a* is pronounced very slowly, it will be observed that its sound is not a simple one, but consists of two different sounds easily distinguished: the first is similar to that of English *e* in *possess;* the second is something like a faint or vanishing sound of English *ee.* The sound of Spanish *e* is that of English *a* without the vanishing sound of *ee.*

Likewise, if the name of the English letter *o* is pronounced very slowly, it will be found to consist of two merged sounds, of which the second is a faint sound of English *oo.* By omitting this vanishing sound of *oo*, the sound of Spanish *o* is obtained.

8. Silent u.—The only vowel that is ever silent in Spanish is *u* in the combinations *gue, gui, que, qui.*

guerra, *war*	quemar, *to burn*
Guillermo, *William*	quinto, *fifth*

When, however, *u* between *g* and *e* or *i* is marked with a dieresis, it should be pronounced:

vergüenza, *shame*	lingüista, *linguist*

9. Long Vowels and Short Vowels.—The terms *long* and *short*, as applied to vowel sounds, do not have the same meaning in Spanish as in English. In the latter language, these terms refer to both quality and quantity of sound; in the former, they refer to quantity or duration only. English *a* is long in *ale*, and short in *man.*

Emphasized vowels are pronounced more strongly, and are longer in duration, than those that are not emphasized.

Thus, the sound of the first *e* in **este**, *this*, is longer in duration than that of the second; and in this sense it may be said that the first *e* is long and the second short.

It is an obvious fact that an emphatic vowel is naturally made longer than a non-emphatic vowel: it would be practically impossible not to make that difference without disfiguring the accentuation of words. With regard to *quality*, however, there is absolutely no difference between the long and the short sound of the same vowel. In connection with this subject, the student is advised to be particularly careful not to give to short Spanish *e* the sound of English *y* in *many*, or of *ie* in *Essie*.

10. Vowels Must Be Distinctly Pronounced. — Each of the Spanish vowels has one, and only one, sound, which is essentially different from the sounds of all the others. Vowels are always distinctly enunciated, so that there is no danger of one being mistaken for another. This difference between the Spanish and the English pronunciation of vowel sounds is a very important one. In English, vowels are sometimes so indistinctly pronounced that it is practically impossible to distinguish the sound of one from that of another; hence the name of *neutral sounds*, by which the sounds of such vowels are known. Spanish vowels never have these obscure, ambiguous sounds, which the student should take special pains to avoid.

PRONUNCIATION OF THE CONSONANTS

11. b, at the beginning of a word, or after a consonant, is pronounced as in English; in all other cases, it has a sound intermediate between those of English *b* and *v*. The student who cannot learn the sound of this letter by hearing it, may give it in all cases the sound of English *b*.

12. c, before *e* or *i*, is pronounced by Spanish Americans and some Spaniards like English *c* in *civil*, *certain;* by Castilians, like English *th* in *with*, *think;* in all other cases, it has the sound of English *k*.

REMARK.—The Spanish-American pronunciation of *c* before *e* or *i* is not a vulgarism limited to the lower or illiterate classes: it is the sound given to this letter by both the educated and the uneducated, the *th*-pronunciation being considered a mark of affectation.

13. **ch**, as stated in Art. **4**, is considered to be one letter. It is always pronounced like English *ch* in *church*, *much*.

REMARK.—Formerly, *ch* was used in some words to represent the sound of English *k*, as the same combination is used today in English: **Christo**, *Christ;* **archángel**, *archangel*. At present, however, the *h* is omitted from all such words: *Cristo*, *arcángel*.

14. **d**, at the beginning of a word, or after a consonant, is pronounced approximately as in English; in all other cases, approximately like English *th* in *though*, *although*.

15. **f**, **k**, **l**, **m**, **n**, **p** are pronounced as in English.

16. **g** has two sounds: (1) Before *e* or *i*, or at the end of a syllable (as in **gente**, *people;* **Egipto**, *Egypt;* **significante**, *significant*), it is pronounced somewhat like English *h* in *hen*, *hinder;* but it is much more strongly aspirated. The student who has not heard this sound may use in its place that of English *h* in *hen*, or, if he is acquainted with German, that of *ch* in the German word *ach*. (2) In all other cases, **g** has approximately the sound of English *g* in *get*.

17. **h** is never pronounced. Thus, the words **hombre**, *man;* **ahora**, *now*, are pronounced as if spelled *ombre*, *aora*. The combination *ch* is not an exception to this rule; for, as explained in Art. **4**, that combination is treated as one letter.

18. **j** is always pronounced like Spanish **g** before *e* or *i*; that is, like a very strongly aspirated English *h* (Art. **16**).

19. **ll** has a peculiar sound, which can be approximately represented by the combined sounds of *l* and *y* in the combination *l'yes*, pronounced as if it were an English word, giving to the *y* the sound it has in *yes*.

REMARK.—In some parts of Spain and Spanish America, *ll* is pronounced like Spanish *y*—like English *y* in *yes*. This practice, although very common, is not sanctioned by good usage.

20. **ñ** is pronounced approximately like English *ny* in *canyon* (often spelled *cañon*, as in Spanish).

21. **q** is always followed by *ue* or *ui*, and is pronounced like English *k*, the *u* being silent. (See Art. **8.**)

22. **r** has two peculiar sounds, which cannot be learned except by hearing them. The student that has no opportunity to learn them in this manner may pronounce *r* as in English, being careful, however, to avoid giving it that obscure sound which sometimes makes English *r* almost imperceptible—as in *north*, *fourth*. The following rules are intended for those that are already acquainted with the two sounds of this letter:

1. When standing between two vowels (as in **pero**, *but;* **era**, *was*), it should not be rolled.

2. At the beginning of a word or at the end of a word or syllable (as in **rico**, *rich;* **amar**, *to love;* **parte**, *part*), it has the same sound as Spanish *rr*, and should be strongly rolled.

3. **Liquid r**, that is, *r* between *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *p*, or *t* and a vowel, is pronounced with the non-rolling sound mentioned in 1.

madre, *mother*	grande, *great*
letra, *draft*	crimen, *crime*

4. When preceded by a consonant other than those just mentioned (as in **Enrique**, *Henry*), it has the rolling sound.

REMARK.—Final *r* is ordinarily pronounced with an intermediate sound between its rolling and its non-rolling sound, the rolling sound being given to it only for emphasis. When, however, a word ending in *r* is followed by another beginning with a vowel, the *r* has the non-rolling sound mentioned in 1.

Sur-América, *South America* | por ejemplo, *for instance*

23. **rr** has the rolling sound of *r* mentioned in Art. **22**, 2. This double letter never occurs either at the beginning or at the end of a word.

24. **s** is always pronounced like English *ss* in *possess;* *never* like English *s* in *was*, *rosy*.

25. **t** is pronounced approximately as in English.

26. **v**, according to nearly all textbooks, should be pronounced as in English. There is, however, hardly a Spanish-speaking person, whether educated or not, that pronounces it

otherwise than like Spanish *b*. Perhaps the only exception to this rule is the word *ve*, when used as the name of the letter *v*; but even in this case, the letter is often pronounced like Spanish *b*. In order to make a distinction between the names of the two letters, *v* is sometimes called **u consonante,** *consonant u*, and sometimes **u de corazón,** *heart u*. (The latter name is given to it on account of its shape.)

27. **w** occurs in very few Spanish words, and for this reason is generally, though not properly, excluded from the Spanish alphabet. In some words it is pronounced like Spanish *u*; in others, like *v*. The proper names *Wenceslao*, *Waldo*, are examples of the *u*-sound; the adjective **wagneriano,** *Wagnerian*, of the *v*-sound.

28. **x**, according to the usual rules of textbooks, should always be pronounced as in English. The majority of Spanish-speaking people of all countries, however, both educated and illiterate, pronounce the combination *ex* before a consonant other than *c* or *h* as if it were written *es;* that is, they give to the *x* the sound of Spanish *s*. The words

experimento, *experiment*	extender, *to extend*
explicar, *to explain*	sexto, *sixth*
expreso, *express*	texto, *text*

are pronounced as if written *esperimento*, *esplicar*, *espreso*, *estender*, *sesto*, *testo*.

The word **exacto,** *exact*, is pronounced as if written *esacto*.

Before *h*, the combination *ex* is pronounced as in English: **exhibir,** *to exhibit;* **exhortar,** *to exhort*.

In the combination *exce*, the *x* is sometimes pronounced as in English: **exceder,** *to exceed;* **exceso,** *excess;* sometimes like *s*, the *c* being silent: **excepto,** *except*, is pronounced *esepto*.

When *exc* is not followed by *e*, the *x* is pronounced like *s*: **excavar,** *to excavate;* **exclamar,** *to exclaim*, are pronounced as if written *escavar*, *esclamar*.

Those who have not learned by practice how this letter is pronounced by people who speak the language, may pronounce it in all cases as in English.

REMARK.—Formerly, *x* was written instead of *j*. Thus, the words **dijo,** *he said;* **trajo**, *he brought*, were written *dixo*, *traxo*, although they were pronounced as they are today. There still remain a few words, as *México* and *Oaxaca*, in which this spelling has been preserved by some. The best writers, however, spell these names with a *j*— *Méjico*, *Oajaca;* and even those who spell them with an *x* pronounce them as if spelled with a *j*.

29. **y**, at the end of a word, has the same prosodic value as Spanish *i*. Indeed, many Spanish-American writers use final *i* instead of final *y*, writing, for instance, *hai* instead of **hay,** *there is*, and *voi* instead of **voy,** *I go*. The same writers use *i* instead of **y,** *and*. This practice is not to be commended.

At the beginning or in the body of a word (as in **yo,** *I;* **cayendo,** *falling*), *y* has the sound of English *y* in *yes*.

30. **z** is pronounced by Castilians like English *th* in *with*, *think;* by other Spaniards and by Spanish Americans, like Spanish *s*, that is, like English *ss* in *possess*.

REMARK.—As in the case of *c* before *e* or *i* (Art. **12**), the *s*-sound given to *z* in Spanish America is by no means a vulgarism, but is the pronunciation used by the educated as well as the illiterate. Considering that the Spanish-speaking population of Spain is comparatively small (for in that country are several provinces where Spanish is not spoken at all), and that even among those who speak Spanish, the *th*-sound of *c* and *z* is not used by all, it may be stated that the Spanish-American pronunciation of these two letters is today the pronunciation of the majority of educated Spanish-speaking people in the world.

31. **Silent Consonants.**—The only silent consonants, besides *h*, are:

d in **lord,** *lord*.

j in **reloj,** *watch* or *clock*. This word is customarily pronounced as if written *reló*, and is often so written. It is not improper, however, to pronounce the *j*. In the plural, which is written *relojes*, the *j* should be pronounced.

t in **istmo,** *isthmus*.

c in the combination *xc* followed by *e*, as in **excepto,** *except;* **exceder,** *to exceed* (Art. **28**).

s in the combination *sc*; as in **discípulo,** *disciple*. Spanish Americans pronounce this combination like English *c* in *civil;* Castilians, like English *th* in *with* (Art. **12**).

GENERAL RULES OF PRONUNCIATION

VOWEL COMBINATIONS

32. Prosodic Syllables.—In pronouncing a word very slowly, we naturally divide it into parts, each of which is pronounced with a single vocal effort; and the word cannot be further decomposed without altering its pronunciation. For example, the word *bashful* may be divided into two parts—*bash* and *ful*—each of which is easily spoken with one stroke of the voice. Furthermore, it will be noticed that each of these parts is pronounced in about the same time as a single vowel, such as *a* or *e*. These parts are called **prosodic syllables.**

A part of a word that requires appreciably more time for its pronunciation than a vowel must be considered to be formed of two or more prosodic syllables. Thus, it takes as long to pronounce the part *replen* of the word *replenish* as to pronounce the two vowels *e*, *a*; consequently, this part cannot be one prosodic syllable.

33. Orthographic Syllables.—In writing, words are divided into parts, which usually, but not always, correspond to the prosodic syllables into which they can be divided when they are slowly pronounced. These parts will be here called **orthographic syllables.** Thus, the word **amigo,** *friend*, is divided into the orthographic syllables *a*, *mi*, *go*—*a-mi-go*. Each of these parts is enunciated with one stroke of the voice, and cannot be decomposed into two or more clear, distinct sounds; they are, therefore, prosodic as well as orthographic syllables.

The word **causa,** *cause*, on the contrary, although divided in writing into the two orthographic syllables *cau* and *sa* (*cau-sa*), can be divided, in pronouncing it, into the three prosodic syllables *ca*, *u*, *sa*.

REMARK.—The distinction here made between orthographic and prosodic syllables is not found in other books. It is usually taught that an orthographic syllable—such as *cau* in *causa*—is pronounced in the same time as a vowel, and should therefore be treated as a

prosodic syllable. This, however, is an inaccurate statement. The student who has heard the pronunciation of the word *causa*, knows that the *a* and the *u* in the combination *cau* have each its characteristic sound, which is distinctly and separately heard.

34. Weak Vowels and Strong Vowels.—The vowels *a*, *e*, *o* are called **strong vowels**; the other two, *i* and *u*, are called **weak vowels**.

35. Two-Vowel Combinations—Diphthongs.—Two vowels belonging to the same orthographic syllable form a **diphthong**, or a **diphthongal combination**.

A combination of two vowels belonging to different orthographic syllables is called a **non-diphthongal combination**.

The rules given in the three following articles will serve to distinguish diphthongal from non-diphthongal combinations.

36. A combination of two strong vowels never forms a diphthong. Thus, the combinations *ea* and *oe* in **fea**, *homely*, and **león**, *lion*, are not diphthongs; these words are divided in this manner: *fe-a*, *le-ón*.

37. A combination of a strong and a weak vowel is diphthongal whenever the weak vowel has not an accent mark over it; otherwise, the combination is non-diphthongal.

Diphthongal Combinations	Non-Diphthongal Combinations
estud**ia**r, *to study*	**mí**a, *mine*
Franc**ia**, *France*	Mar**í**a, *Mary*
var**io**s, *several*	fr**í**o, *cold*
per**ió**dico, *newspaper*	per**í**odo, *period*
c**au**sa, *cause*	**aú**n, *still*
d**eu**da, *debt*	continú**e**, *continue*
Europa, *Europe*	tisú**e**s, *tissues*
afe**i**tar, *to shave*	r**e**ír, *to laugh*
p**ei**ne, *comb*	fe**í**simo, *very homely*
tif**oi**dea, *typhoid*	**oí**do, *ear*

38. Each of the combinations *iu* and *ui* is diphthongal, except in forms of verbs whose infinitive ends in *-uír*.

Diphthongal	Non-Diphthongal
c**iu**dad, *city*	construír, *to construct*
veintiún, *twenty-one*	construído, *constructed*
fuí, *I went*	construíd, *construct ye*

39. Pronunciation of Two-Vowel Combinations. The two vowels of a non-diphthongal combination belong to two different prosodic syllables, and each should be pronounced by itself, as if standing alone.

ten**ía**, *I had*	**oír**, *to hear*
fr**ío**, *cold*	**aún**, *still, yet*
tra**í**do, *brought*	des**eo**, *desire*
env**íe**, *send*	cr**ee**, *he believes*
habit**úe**nse, *accustom yourselves*	r**ee**mplazar, *to replace*

40. When *i* is one of the vowels of a diphthong, the two vowels belong to the same prosodic syllable, and should be pronounced together quickly by one impulse of the voice, without any pause between them.

b**ie**n, *well*	medi**o**, *half*
t**ie**ne, *he has*	f**ué**, *he went*
Santi**a**go, *Santiago*	f**uí**, *I went*
tra**i**go, *I bring*	ca**i**mán, *alligator*
Itali**a**, *Italy*	vei**n**tiséis, *twenty-six*

Particular care should be taken not to split combinations of this kind into two prosodic syllables. For instance, the diphthong *ia* in *Santiago* should not be split, in pronouncing it, after the manner of the English combination *e-a* in *Seattle*.

41. In the diphthongs *au*, *eu*, each vowel is pronounced with its characteristic sound, as if it stood alone; the two vowels, therefore, belong to two different prosodic syllables.

ca**u**sa, *cause*	**Eu**ropa, *Europe*
autor, *author*	de**u**da, *debt*

In these combinations, the peculiar sound of each vowel is distinctly heard. The sound of one does not merge into the sound of the other, as in the diphthongs treated in the last article.

42. The two vowels in the diphthong *ua* belong to the same prosodic syllable, and should be pronounced together quickly, by one impulse of the voice, without any pause between them.

cu**á**l, *which*	averigu**a**r, *to inquire*
cu**a**ndo, *when*	cu**a**lidad, *quality*
ag**ua**, *water*	situ**a**ción, *situation*

This diphthong has almost the same sound as English *u-a* in *quality*.

43. The two vowels in the diphthong *ue* are pronounced together as part of the same prosodic syllable, with the sound of English *w-e* in *west*.

p**ue**rta, *door*	am**ue**blar, *to furnish*
c**ue**nta, *bill*	c**ue**stión, *question*
despu**é**s, *afterwards*	p**ue**blecito, *small village*

44. Each of the diphthongs *iu* and *ui* is pronounced as part of the same prosodic syllable, and they have, respectively, the sounds of English *u* and *w-e* in the words *cute*, *we*.

c**iu**dad, *city*	c**ui**dado, *care*
veint**iu**no, *twenty-one*	f**ui**mos, *we went*

When, however, the *u* in the combination *ui* has an accent mark over it, the two vowels are pronounced separately. Thus, the word **flúido**, *fluid*, is pronounced like its English equivalent, except for the sound of the final *o*.

45. Final *y* preceded by one vowel always forms a diphthongal combination with that vowel, and the two belong to the same prosodic syllable.

h**oy**, *today*	est**oy**, *I am*
l**ey**, *law*	car**ey**, *turtle shell*
h**ay**, *there is*	m**uy**, *very*

Remark.—The student should be particularly careful not to pronounce the word **muy**, *very*, as the combination *mwee* would be pronounced in English. In *muy*, the *u*, not the *y*, should be emphasized. The sound of this word may be represented in English by the combination *mooy*, pronounced with the emphasis on the *oo*.

46. Exceptions to the Foregoing Rules.—There are a few exceptions to the rules just laid down. Some of the most important are here given.

In a few verbs ending in *iar* and *uar*, neither the *i* nor the *u* forms with the *a* one prosodic syllable: **fiar**, *to trust;* **piar**, *to pule;* and **puar**, *to cut teeth* (as in a comb), are examples. In these verbs the combination *ia* is divided into two prosodic syllables, as is English *e-a* in *Seattle;* the

combination *ua* is similarly pronounced, except that the sound of the first letter is that of Spanish *u* instead of that of Spanish *i*.

47. The *u* and the *e* in the combination *flue* belong to separate prosodic syllables, and the diphthong *ue* should be pronounced as in the English word *influenzà*, but giving to the *u* its characteristic Spanish sound—that of English *oo*.

influencia, *influence*	afluente, *tributary* (said of a river)
confluencia, *confluence*	

In the word **congruencia,** *congruence*, and those derived from it (as **incongruente,** *incongruous*), the two vowels in the diphthong *ue* are likewise pronounced as parts of two different prosodic syllables.

48. In a few words in which the *a* in the combinations *ai* and *ia* is not emphasized, it is pronounced as part of a prosodic syllable different from that to which the *i* belongs.

traidor, *traitor*	frialdad, *coolness*

The *ai* in *traidor* is pronounced exactly as in *traído* (Art. **39**), although the *i* is not emphasized, the emphasis being given to the *o* only. In *frialdad*, the combination *ia* is pronounced as in *piar* (Art. **46**), but without emphasizing the *a*.

49. In forms of verbs whose infinitives end in **eír**—as **reír,** *to laugh;* **freír,** *to fry*—the vowels in the diphthongs *ia* and *ei* are pronounced as parts of two different prosodic syllables—*ia* as in *frialdad*, and *ei* as in *reír*, but without emphasizing the *i*.

riamos, *let us laugh*	friamos, *let us fry*
reiré, *I shall laugh*	freiría, *I should fry*

50. Triphthongs.—A **triphthong** is a combination of three vowels belonging to the same orthographic syllable. Each of the following combinations is a triphthong when neither of the weak vowels in it has an accent mark over it:

iai, *as in* cambiáis, *ye change*
iei, *as in* no cambiéis, *do (ye) not change*
uai, *as in* continuáis, *ye continue*
uei, *as in* no continuéis, *do (ye) not continue*

The first two vowels of each of these triphthongs are pronounced as if they formed a diphthong (see Arts. **40, 42, 43**), and the third vowel is joined to the second as if it also formed a prosodic syllable with it. Thus, in *cambiáis*, the combination *iá* is pronounced as in *Santiago;* to the sound of the *a* is then added that of the *i*, so that the two shall sound as in *traiga*. In this manner, the whole combination *iái* is pronounced in one prosodic syllable; that is, with one impulse of the voice.

51. If one of the weak vowels of a three-vowel combination has an accent mark over it, it belongs to a different syllable, both orthographically and prosodically, from the other two, and the word should be pronounced according to the rules governing the pronunciation of diphthongal combinations. Thus, in **seríais,** *ye would be*, the *í* is pronounced by itself, and the combination *ais* sounds as in **amáis,** *ye love;* that is, like the English word *ice*.

52. Final *y* preceded by two vowels has the same prosodic value as *i*, and therefore the combinations *uey*, *uay* are pronounced like the triphthongs *uei*, *uai*.

buey, *ox* | Urug**uay,** *Uruguay*

DIVISION OF WORDS INTO ORTHOGRAPHIC SYLLABLES

53. Introductory Rule.—*For the purposes of* **orthographic syllabication** (division of words into orthographic syllables), *diphthongs and triphthongs are treated as single vowels.*

54. General Rules.—Words are divided into orthographic syllables in accordance with the following rules:

Rule I.—*A consonant between two vowels forms part of the same orthographic syllable as the vowel that follows it.*

amigo, *friend:* a-mi-go
mejicano, *Mexican:* me-ji-ca-no
señorita, *miss:* se-ño-ri-ta
ahora, *now:* a-ho-ra
tiene, *he has:* tie-ne
peinar, *to comb:* pei-nar

autorizado, *authorized:* au-to-ri-za-do
Europa, *Europe:* Eu-ro-pa
aseguráis, *ye affirm:* a-se-gu-ráis
averiguáis, *ye inquire:* a-ve-ri-guáis

As each of the combinations *ch*, *ll*, and *rr* is considered as one consonant, they all follow the rule just stated:

muchacho, *boy:* mu-cha-cho
hacha, *ax:* ha-cha
caballero, *gentleman:* ca-ba-lle-ro
ferrocarril, *railroad:* fe-rro-ca-rril

Silent *u* and the *e* or *i* following it are treated as one vowel:

águila, *eagle:* á-gui-la
aquí, *here*: a-quí
ceguedad, *blindness:* ce-gue-dad
paquete, *package:* pa-que-te

Rule II. — *When* **l** *or* **r** *is preceded by one of the consonants* **b, c, d, f, g, p, t,** *the combination is, for purposes of syllabication, treated as one consonant, and therefore follows Rule I.*

hablar, *to speak:* ha-**blar**
posible, *possible:* po-si-**ble**
fratricidio, *fratricide:* **fra**-**tri**-ci-dio
agrícola, *agricultural:* a-**grí**-co-la
apruebo, *I approve:* a-**prue**-bo
tratable, *tractable:* **tra**-ta-**ble**

Exceptions. — In compound words beginning with any of the Latin particles *ab*, *ob*, *sub*, followed by **r** or **l**, the particle forms a separate syllable, both orthographically and prosodically: the **r** has the rolling sound of **rr**, and the **l** is pronounced as at the beginning of a word.

abrogar, *to abrogate:* **ab**-ro-gar
sublunar, *sublunar:* **sub**-lu-nar
subrayar, *to underscore:* **sub**-ra-yar

Rule III. — *A combination of two or more consonants between two vowels is divided thus: the last consonant belongs to the same orthographic syllable as the vowel following it; the others, to the same syllable as the vowel preceding them.*

conversar, *to converse:* con-ver-sar
constitución, *constitution:* cons-ti-tu-ción
empezar, *to begin:* em-pe-zar
obstáculo, *obstacle:* obs-tá-cu-lo

In the application of this rule, what was stated in Rule II should be borne in mind.

cons**tr**ucción, *construction:* cons-**tr**uc-ción
in**gl**és, *English:* in-**gl**és

Rule IV. — *The two vowels of a non-diphthongal combination belong to different syllables, both orthographically and prosodically.*

creo, *I believe:* cre-o
desear, *to desire:* de-se-ar
período, *period:* pe-rí-o-do
tenía, *I had:* te-ní-a
lee, *he reads:* le-e
poesía, *poetry:* po-e-sí-a

RULES FOR ACCENTUATION OR EMPHASIS

55. Accent.—By **accent**, or **emphasis**, is meant the special vocal stress laid on one or more vowels of a word; a stress that causes the vowel on which it is laid to be heard more distinctly than the others, and the syllable to which it belongs to be longer in duration than the other syllables. In the words **cubano**, *Cuban*, and **calle**, *street*, the accent is on the *a*; in **español**, *Spanish*, and **señor**, *sir*, on the *o*.

The subject of accentuation is of the utmost importance, and the student should take particular pains with it. Some words, although consisting of the same letters, have very different meanings, according to which of their vowels is emphasized. Thus, **esta** (emphasis on *e*) means *this*, while **está** (emphasis on *a*) means *is*.

56. General Rules.—The vowel to be emphasized in a Spanish word is often indicated by a **graphic accent** (´) placed over it. In Spanish, this mark is called **tilde**, and sometimes **acento**, *accent*. A great many words, however, have no graphic accent, and it is therefore necessary to have fixed rules by which written words may be properly accented in reading. Fortunately, these rules are exceedingly simple. They are as follows:

Rule I.—*A vowel having an accent mark over it should be emphasized.*

Rule II.—*When a weak vowel occurs in combination with a strong vowel, it should not be emphasized, unless it has an accent mark over it.*

Francia, *France*	María, *Mary*
prefiero, *I prefer*	envíeme, *send me*

It follows from this rule that, when an orthographic syllable containing a diphthong or a triphthong is to be emphasized, the emphasis should be given to the strong vowel.

Rule III.—*A word ending in* **-n**, **-s**, *or any vowel, and having no accent mark, should be emphasized on the orthographic syllable next to the last.*

Carmen, *Carmen*	casa, *house*
orden, *order*	amigo, *friend*
gravamen, *encumbrance*	causa, *cause*
martes, *Tuesday*	siempre, *always*
señores, *gentlemen*	tifoidea, *typhoid*
comisteis, *ye ate*	impuesto, *tax*

In applying this, as well as other rules for accentuation, the rules of syllabication should be borne in mind. The words *comisteis*, *tifoidea*, and *impuesto*, for instance, are divided in this manner: *co-mis-teis*, *ti-foi-de-a*, *im-pues-to*.

EXCEPTION. — In **sino**, *but*, the *o*, not the *i*, is the emphatic vowel.

Rule IV. — *A word ending in any consonant* (**y** *included*) *other than* **-n** *or* **-s**, *and having no accent mark, should be emphasized on the last orthographic syllable.*

preguntar, *to ask*	reloj, *watch*
realidad, *reality*	especial, *especial*
comer, *to eat*	Paraguay, *Paraguay*
virtud, *virtue*	abril, *April*

Rule V. — *Adverbs ending in* **-mente** *should be emphasized on two syllables, namely: on the emphatic syllable of the adjective from which they are derived, and on the first* **e** *of the ending* **-mente.**

In the following words, the emphatic vowels and diphthongs are printed in heavy type:

fácilmente, *easily*	propiamente, *properly*
especialmente, *especially*	abiertamente, *openly*

In order to determine what syllable should be emphasized in the part preceding the ending **-mente**, omit the ending, and emphasize the remaining part according to the rules already laid down. Thus, disregarding the ending *-mente* in *especialmente*, we obtain *especial*, which, by Rule IV, should be accented on the *a* of the diphthong *ia*.

Rule VI. — *With the exceptions of the word* **asímismo** (which means *in the same manner*, and is pronounced as if written **así mismo**) *and adverbs ending in* **-mente**, *no Spanish word has more than one emphasized vowel.*

This is a most important rule, and should be carefully

observed. In some English words, especially in long words, there are two emphasized vowels: thus, in *representative*, both the first and third *e* are emphasized. In Spanish, on the contrary, no word (with the exceptions just pointed out) should be accented on more than one vowel, however long the word may be. For example, **extraordinario,** *extraordinary*, should be accented on the second *a*, and on that vowel only; in **representativo,** *representative*, the *i*, and the *i* only, should be emphasized.

REMARKS ON PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY

57. The foregoing rules refer, as regards orthography, to the system of graphic accentuation followed by the best modern authorities; and, as regards pronunciation, to the manner in which words and letters are pronounced in formal and absolutely pure language. There are, however, some good writers that follow a system of accentuation different from that here adopted, and to words written according to that system the rules given in the preceding articles do not apply. Furthermore, the sounds of vowels are often modified in ordinary conversation, and it is of importance that the student should be acquainted with these modifications.

58. The Graphic Accent.—Until not long ago, the general practice was not to exclude the letters *n* and *s* from Rule IV, given in Art. **56;** and, therefore, words ending in either of these letters, and having no accent mark, were emphasized on the last syllable. Conversely, in words ending in either of these letters and having the prosodic accent on a syllable before the last, the accented vowel was written with an accent mark over it.

New Style	Old Style
botón, *button*	boton
lección, *lesson*	leccion
orden, *order*	órden
joven, *young*	jóven
portugués, *Portuguese*	portugues
Jesús, *Jesus*	Jesus
martes, *Tuesday*	mártes
Mercedes, *Mercedes*	Mercédes

From this rule, however, were excepted verbal forms and the plurals of substantives and adjectives, which were written as they are at present:

casas, *houses*	consideraban, *they considered*
costosos, *expensive*	hablas, *thou speakest*
hablan, *they speak*	considerabas, *thou consideredst*

59. Forms of verbs whose infinitive ends in *-uír* (see Art. **38**) are written by some without an accent mark over the *i*, although the *i* is the emphatic vowel in such forms. Thus,

construir, *to construct*	construido, *constructed*
construid, *construct* (*ye*)	construimos, *we constructed*

60. In verbal forms ending in *ía*, *íamos*, *íste*, the accent mark over the *i* is often omitted, notwithstanding that the *i* is the emphatic vowel in such forms: *habia* is written instead of **había,** *I had; habiamos* instead of **habíamos,** *we had; creiste* instead of **creíste,** *thou believedst; creimos* instead of **creímos,** *we believed.*

61. Coalescence and Elision of Vowel Sounds.—In ordinary conversation, the sound of an unaccented *a* at the end of a word is often omitted, if the following word begins with a vowel sound: **habla usted,** *do you speak*, is pronounced *ha blusted;* **niña hermosa,** *beautiful girl*, is pronounced *ni ñermosa;* **estaba allá,** *I was there*, is pronounced *estaba lla.*

62. The last example is but a special case of a general practice; namely, that of pronouncing all combinations of two equal vowel sounds, whether they occur in the same or in different words, like one vowel. Thus, **cree usted,** *do you believe*, is pronounced *cre usted;* **reemplazar,** *to replace*, is pronounced *remplazar;* **cuatro horas,** *four hours*, is pronounced *cua troras;* **sí iremos,** *we will go*, is pronounced *sí remos.* There are, however, many exceptions to this practice. For instance, in **coordinar,** *to coordinate*, and **friísimo,** *very cold*, the double vowels are never reduced to one sound.

63. The conjunction **y**, *and*, preceded by a word ending in a vowel, is often joined to that vowel as if it formed part of the same word and of the same prosodic syllable with it: **habla y escribe,** *he speaks and writes*, is pronounced *háblay escribe;* **treinta y dos,** *thirty-two*, is pronounced *tréintay dos.* In some other cases, the vowel preceding the *y* is not sounded: **pruebe y verá,** *try and see*, is pronounced *pruebi verá.* (See Art. **61.**)

64. The *e* in the combinations *ea*, *eo* is often pronounced like Spanish *i* in the diphthongs *ia*, *io:* **lo deseamos,** *we wish it*, is pronounced *lo desiamos* (*ia* sounded as in *Santiago*); **camaleón,** *chameleon*, is pronounced *camalión* (*io* sounded as in **comió,** *he ate*).

65. Final *e* followed by a vowel is also often pronounced like Spanish *i*; the initial vowel is joined to it as if it belonged to the same word and formed a diphthong with the *i*: **sabe usted,** *do you know*, is pronounced *sabius ted.*

66. Final *o* followed by a vowel and not accented, is generally pronounced like Spanish *u*, forming a diphthongal combination with that vowel: **solo eso,** *that only*, is pronounced *so lueso*, with the combination *ue* sounded as in **puedo,** *I can.*

67. The sound of *d* is by some omitted in words ending in *do*, *da*, preceded by a vowel. This practice, however, is a vulgarism, almost exclusively confined to the illiterate. They say *colorao* instead of **colorado,** *red; toa* instead of **toda,** *all; naa*, or *na*, instead of **nada,** *all.*

68. The omission of the sound of final *d*—*usté* for **usted,** *you; mitá* for **mitad,** *half*—is common, but only among the uneducated, or in the careless language of very familiar intercourse.

69. The preceding, as well as other similar departures from the exact rules of pronunciation, cannot themselves be formulated into general rules, and must be learned by

practice. They are, however, of such a nature, that they are not likely to cause the beginner any trouble: they arise from what may be called natural modifications made almost necessary by the character of the sounds themselves, when combined in certain manners and pronounced quickly.

THE SENTENCE

DEFINITIONS

DEFINITION OF THE SENTENCE

70. A **sentence** (Spanish **oración**) is a combination of words expressing a complete thought.

La ciudad de Wáshington es la capital de los Estados Unidos.	The city of Washington is the capital of the United States.
España no tiene armada.	Spain has no navy.
¿Es usted comerciante?	Are you a merchant?
Vaya usted al correo.	Go (you) to the post office.

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

71. There is, in almost every sentence, a word or combination of words denoting the thing or things about which something is said or asked, or of which something is wanted. This part represents the main object of the thought expressed in the sentence, and is called the **subject** of the sentence. The other part, which denotes what is said, asked, or wanted of the thing or things represented by the subject, is called the **predicate** of the sentence.

In the following sentences, the subject is printed in Italic; the predicate, in Roman:

Wáshington es una ciudad.	Washington is a city.
La ciudad de Wáshington es muy bonita.	The city of Washington is very pretty.
Yo hablo varios idiomas.	I speak several languages.
¿*Usted* dónde vive?	Where do you live?

REMARK.—In Spanish, a sentence is often called **proposición,** *proposition*. The subject is called **sujeto,** and the predicate, **atributo.** The latter word literally means *attribute*, but is not used in the same sense as this English term.

CLASSES OF SENTENCES

72. Sentences are divided into various classes, according to the purposes they serve and the forms they take. Among them are:

1. The **affirmative sentence:** the sentence used in making a positive statement or direct affirmation. The first sentence given in Art. **70** is an example.

2. The **negative sentence:** the sentence used in making a direct denial. The second sentence given in Art. **70** belongs to this class.

3. The **interrogative sentence:** the sentence used in asking a question—as the third sentence in Art. **70.**

Other classes of sentences will be defined elsewhere, when the student's familiarity with the terms used is sufficient to make the definitions clear to him.

PARTS OF SPEECH

GRAMMATICAL CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS

73. With regard to their grammatical functions, words have been divided into classes called **parts of speech.** Grammarians do not agree on the number of these parts: some recognize seven, some eight, some nine, and some ten. This difference of opinion exists among grammarians of nearly all languages, and is due to the very nature of the subject, which is a difficult one.

In this Course will be adopted the classification introduced by don Andrés Bello, a prominent Venezuelan man of letters, whose *Gramática castellana* is reputed, both in Spain and in Spanish America, as the best work ever written on the subject of Spanish grammar. As will be observed, the distinctive feature of this classification is that the pronoun is not recognized as a separate part of speech, but is placed with the noun among substantives—a simplification possessing great logical and pedagogical advantages.

The seven parts of speech (*partes de la oración*) are:

el sustantivo, *the substantive*
el adjetivo, *the adjective*
el verbo, *the verb*
el adverbio, *the adverb*
la preposición, *the preposition*
la conjunción, *the conjunction*
la interjección, *the interjection*

MODIFIERS

74. Comparing the word *house* with the expression *red house*, it will be noticed that the former has a much wider application than the latter. By joining the word *red* to the word *house*, a combination is formed that serves to distinguish a special class or variety among all those objects to which the name *house* applies. The word *red*, then, restricts —that is, narrows—the meaning of the word *house;* and this we express in grammar by saying that *red* **modifies** the meaning of *house;* or, for shortness, that the word *red* modifies the word *house*.

Likewise, *to speak* denotes a certain action, which can be performed in a great many ways; but, if we add the word *fast*, and say *to speak fast*, we narrow the meaning of the word *speak*, since that combination denotes only one of the different manners in which the action can be performed. Here, also, we say that the word *fast* modifies the meaning of the word *speak;* or, for shortness, that the word *fast* modifies the word *speak*.

Similarly, in the expressions, **beautiful** *flowers*, **my** *book*, *to dance* **elegantly, very** *large*, the words *beautiful*, *my*, *elegantly*, *very*, modify the words *flowers*, *book*, *to dance*, and *large*, respectively.

Words that are used to modify other words are called **modifiers.**

75. All the modifiers just used as illustrations are *restrictive words;* that is, they serve to narrow the meaning of the words to which they refer--to mark out particular

objects or conditions among all the objects or conditions denoted by the non-modified words.

When, speaking of a particular horse, we say, **The** *horse is black*, the word *the* is a modifier of *horse*, in the sense in which the term *modifier* was used in the last article; for that word is in this case employed as a sign of reference to a special horse—a horse of which the listener is supposed to know.

But, in the expression, **The** *horse is an intelligent animal*, the word *the* does not perform the same functions as in the example just given; for, far from narrowing the meaning of *horse*, it indicates that the latter word is here taken in its most general signification; and, although the habit of the English language requires the use of *the* in this case, the sense of the sentence would not be altered if the single term *horse* were substituted for the combination *the horse*. Indeed, where reference is made to man, the proper form of expression is, *Man* (not, **the** *man*) *is an intelligent animal*.

It will be observed, however, that the combination *the horse*, whatever the purpose of the word *the* may be, has the same form, and can have the same grammatical functions, as the combination *my horse*, in which *my* evidently is a modifier or restrictive word. Thus, we say:

The *horse* is a noble animal.	**My** *horse* is a noble animal.
He wrote an article on **the** *horse*.	He wrote an article on **my** *horse*.

Grammarians have extended the meaning of the term *modifier* so as to include under this name not only restrictive words, but all those words that, like *the* in the two examples last given, are joined or used with reference to others after the manner of restrictive words, in combinations having the same form and the same grammatical functions as those formed with the latter class of words. A modifier is said **to modify** the word to which it refers.

76. From the logical point of view, a more rigorous definition of the important terms *modifier* and *modify* could perhaps be framed; but, in giving such a definition, there would be danger of sacrificing clearness to rigor. Restrictive

modifiers are very easily recognized, and by comparison with them, other modifiers can be as easily distinguished. The student will have no difficulty in ascertaining whether a given word used with reference to another in a combination is a modifier, by seeing whether, on replacing that word by a restrictive word, a combination is obtained that can perform the same grammatical functions, that is, can have the same position and bear the same relation to the other words in the sentence, as the combination in question.

This method of defining and classing words by comparing the form of the combinations into which they enter with the form of other combinations containing words whose grammatical character can be readily recognized from their meaning, is very convenient in grammar, as will be seen in the treatment of verbs and adverbs. It often happens that an English and a Spanish word are identical in meaning, and yet they are not classed in the two languages as belonging to the same part of speech, simply because they are used in combinations not having the same *form* in both languages.

As this is a very important subject, several additional examples are here given. Those in the right-hand column contain modifiers that, being restrictive words, can be recognized at a glance; and by comparison with these, the words printed in bold type in the left-hand column can be readily classed as modifiers. The modified words are printed in Italic.

The *sun* shines.	**Our** *sun* shines.
John has **a** *book*.	John has **his** *book*.
We have **no** *money*.	We have **our** *money*.
We saw **three** *deer*.	We saw **beautiful** *deer*.
This statement applies to **every** *woman*.	This statement applies to **that** *woman*.
He *spoke* **yesterday.**	He *spoke* **well.**
Come **here.**	*Come* **fast.**

The foregoing explanations and definitions apply to Spanish as well as to English words; but only English examples have been given, in order to make the subject clearer to the English-speaking student.

THE SUBSTANTIVE

77. A **substantive** is a word that either by itself or with some modifiers can be the subject of a sentence.

In the following examples, substantives are printed in bold type; the other words completing the subject, in Italic:

Juan habla español.	John speaks Spanish.
Yo soy del Perú.	I am from Peru.
El **oro** es un metal.	Gold is a metal.
Los **hombres** *honrados* rara vez se hacen ricos.	Honest men seldom become rich.

It should be particularly observed that a substantive is here defined as a word that *can*, not that *does*, perform the office of subject in a sentence; for, besides this office, the substantive can perform others, as will be explained elsewhere.

REMARK.—The term *substantive* applies to all those words that in English are called *nouns*, as well as to those pronouns—*I*, *you*, *they*, etc.—that can be used as subjects of sentences.

THE ADJECTIVE

78. An **adjective** is a word used to modify a substantive. The words printed in Italic in the examples given in the last article are adjectives.

79. A great many adjectives denote properties or qualities of the objects represented by the substantives they modify. Such are *bueno*, *hermoso*, *católica*, *grandes* in the following examples (the modified substantives are printed in Italic):

Creo que éste es un *libro* **bueno.**	I think this is a good book.
La **hermosa** *catedral* **católica** está situada cerca del parque.	The handsome Catholic cathedral is situated near the park.
Francia ha producido muchos **grandes** *hombres*.	France has produced many great men.

80. An adjective may be joined to a substantive as an immediate modifier, or may refer to it through other words.

Este *libro* es **bueno.**	This book is good.
Nosotros llegámos **cansados.**	We arrived tired.
La *tarea* está **terminada.**	The task is finished.

When, as in these cases, an adjective is used in the predicate with reference to the subject of a sentence, it is called a **predicate adjective.**

THE VERB

WORD FORMS AND INFLECTIVE WORDS

81. Word Forms.—Some words undergo changes of form, according to the circumstances under which they are used, or to their relations to other words in the sentence. This subject will be treated at length in its proper place, but a passing notice of it is necessary here, in order to give a clear idea of the Spanish verb.

There is a certain action named by the word **hablar,** *to speak.* Let us now take the expressions,

Juan *habla*, Juan *habló.*	John speaks, John spoke.

In the first sentence, the word *habla* denotes exactly the same action as is denoted by the word *hablar*, but the former is used only when the action is being performed by a person spoken of—*Juan.* In the second sentence, the action denoted by *habló* is identical with the action denoted by *hablar* and *habla*, but the word *habló* indicates that the action referred to is a past action.

Here we have several words having the same general signification. They all serve to denote the same action, and may be regarded as being really the same word in different forms. The word *hablar*, which expresses the action in its most unrestricted manner, is considered to be the name of the action, while *habla*, *habló*, *hablará*, etc., are considered to be different **forms** of the word *hablar.*

82. Inflective Words.—Words having different forms, in the sense in which this term has just been explained, are called **inflective words.** Thus, the adjective **bueno,** *good*, has the forms *bueno*, *buena*, *buenos*, *buenas*, which, as the

student who has some knowledge of Spanish must know, are used, respectively, with masculine singular, feminine singular, musculine plural, and feminine plural substantives.

DESCRIPTION OF THE VERB

83. There is a class of words without which no complete thought can be expressed, and which are, therefore, indispensable for the formation of sentences. These words are called **verbs.**

Although the verb is perhaps the most difficult part of speech to define, it is one of the easiest to recognize: it occurs in the predicate of every sentence, and either forms the whole predicate, or serves, so to speak, to introduce it. In the sentences,

Yo *hablo*,	I speak,
Mi amigo no *vive* aquí,	My friend does not live here,
Hemos recibido varias cartas,	We have received several letters,
Ellos *vendrán* mañana,	They will come tomorrow,

the words *hablo*, *vive*, *está*, *hemos hablado*, *vendrán*, are verbs.

The main distinguishing characteristic of the Spanish verb is that it is an inflective word having special forms to indicate whether the action or fact stated in the predicate is past, present, or future. Take, for example, the sentences,

Mi madre *vino*.	My mother came.
Mi madre *vendrá*.	My mother will come.

In the first sentence, the form *vino* indicates by itself that the action of **venir,** *to come*, is past; in the second, the form *vendrá* indicates by itself that the action is to take place. These peculiar changes of form, which belong to the verb only, afford the easiest means of distinguishing verbs from words belonging to other classes.

THE ADVERB

84. In the sentences,

Él *lee* **bien,**	He reads well,
Estoy **demasiado** *cansado*,	I am too tired,

the word *bien* modifies the verb *lee*, and the word *demasiado*

modifies the adjective *cansado*. Words which, like these, are used as modifiers of verbs or of adjectives, are called **adverbs.**

An adverb may, in turn, be modified by another word; as in the sentence,

Él lee **muy** *bien*.	He reads very well.

Here the adverb *bien* is modified by the word *muy*. The latter word is also called an adverb.

An **adverb,** then, is a word used as a modifier of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

Adverbs modifying verbs:

Los soldados *combatieron* **valerosamente.**	The soldiers fought bravely.
La señorita Rosa *canta* **mal.**	Miss Rose sings badly.
Yo *llegué* **ayer.**	I arrived yesterday.
Usted *vive* **aquí.**	You live here.

Adverbs modifying adjectives:

El precio me parece **algo** *alto*.	The price seems to me somewhat high.
Los americanos son **poco** *queridos* en España.	Americans are little liked in Spain.

Adverbs modifying other adverbs:

Yo pronuncio el español **muy** *mal*.	I pronounce Spanish very badly.
Usted lo pronunciaría **más** *bien*, si no hablara **tan** *aprisa*.	You would pronounce it better if you did not speak so fast.

THE PREPOSITION

PHRASES

85. Definition of a Phrase.—The term **phrase** (Spanish **frase**) has several meanings: here it will be used in the sense of a combination of words performing in the sentence the same functions as one word. For example,

La señora que preguntó por usted estaba *muy elegantemente vestida*.	The lady who asked for you was very elegantly dressed.

The subject of this sentence is the phrase *la señora que preguntó por usted;* this phrase, therefore, is grammatically

equivalent to a single substantive. The phrase *muy elegantemente vestida* performs the function of an adjective denoting a peculiarity or condition of the person denoted by the subject of the sentence. The combination *muy elegantemente* is also a phrase, which performs the function of an adverb modifying the adjective *vestida*.

86. Different Kinds of Phrases. — The following kinds of phrases are important:

1. The **substantive phrase,** consisting of a substantive and its modifiers.

mi buen **amigo** *americano.*	my good American friend.

2. The **adjective phrase,** consisting of an adjective and its modifiers.

muy poco **conocido.**	very little known.

3. The **adverb phrase,** consisting of an adverb and its modifiers.

comparativamente **aprisa.**	comparatively fast.

These phrases play, respectively, the parts of substantives, adjectives, and adverbs. It is not conversely true, however, that every phrase that performs the functions of an adjective is an adjective phrase, nor that every phrase that performs the functions of an adverb is an adverb phrase, in the sense in which these terms have been defined. It is, therefore, advisable to add the following definitions:

4. An **adjectival phrase** is a phrase that performs the functions of an adjective.

Ésta es una mesa *de madera.*	This is a wooden table (*or*, a table of wood).

5. An **adverbial phrase** is a phrase that performs the functions of an adverb.

Esa señorita baila *con elegancia* (*ó* elegantemente).	That young lady dances with elegance (*or*, elegantly).

It will be readily seen that adjective phrases and adverb phrases are, respectively, but special cases of the two kinds of phrases just defined.

REMARK.—In English grammar, a *substantive phrase* is any phrase performing the functions of a substantive, and an *adjective phrase* is any phrase performing the functions of an adjective—what has been here defined as an *adjectival phrase*.

DEFINITION AND CHARACTERISTICS OF THE PREPOSITION

87. Definition.—In the phrase *de madera*, considered in the last article, the word *de* serves to relate the word *madera* to the word *mesa;* and, likewise, in the phrase *con elegancia*, the word *elegancia* is related to the word *baila* by means of the word *con*. Any word that, like these, is prefixed to another to form a phrase with it and at the same time relate this word to a preceding word, is called a **preposition.**

In the following examples, the prepositions are printed in bold type; the related words, in Italic:

Tengo un *reloj* **de** *oro*.	I have a gold watch (watch of gold).
Aquel *libro* es **de** *Pedro*.	Yonder book belongs to Peter.
Esta carta es **para** *él*.	This letter is for him.
Cuba *se levantó* **contra** *España*.	Cuba rose against Spain.
Esto *sucedió* **bajo** *la dominación española*.	This happened under the Spanish rule.

The word or words following a preposition and related by it to preceding words form the **object** (Spanish **término,** *terminus*) of the preposition. The preposition and its object form a **prepositional phrase.**

88. Distinguishing Features of the Preposition. The preposition is a difficult word to define. It is, however, easily distinguished from other parts of speech by the following peculiarities:

1. *It is not a modifier*, although the phrase it forms with its object may be a modifying phrase. This distinguishes it from the adjective and the adverb.

2. *It is a non-inflective word.* This distinguishes it from the verb, and also from the adjective.

3. *It forms a phrase with the word or words that are related by it to preceding words.* This distinguishes it from the conjunction, now to be treated.

THE CONJUNCTION

89. A **conjunction** is a word used to connect two words or expressions that perform the same grammatical functions.

Esa señora es *joven* **y** *bella*.	That lady is young and pretty.
Wáshington era *valeroso*, **pero** *cauto*.	Washington was brave but cautious.
Mi hermana *toca* **y** *canta*.	My sister plays and sings.
Eso sucedió *en España* **ó** *en Francia*.	That happened in Spain or in France.
Escribo bien el español, **pero** *no lo hablo*, **porque** *no he tenido práctica*.	I write Spanish well, but I do not speak it, because I have had no practice.

In the first example, the conjunction *y* connects the two adjectives *joven* and *bella*, both of which refer to the subject of the sentence.

In the second, *pero* connects the adjectives *valeroso* and *cauto*, both of which refer to *Wáshington*.

In the third, *y* connects the two verbs *toca* and *canta*, which have the common subject *mi hermana*. This subject is understood before *canta*, and so we may also say that the conjunction *y* connects the two sentences *mi hermana toca* and *mi hermana canta*.

In the fourth example, *ó* connects the two adverbial phrases *en España* and *en Francia*.

In the fifth, *pero* connects the two sentences *escribo bien el español*, and *no lo hablo* (that is, *no hablo el español*), and *porque* connects the last-mentioned sentence with the sentence *no he tenido práctica*.

90. The conjunction, unlike the preposition, is grammatically independent of the expressions it connects, and does not form modifying phrases with them.

THE INTERJECTION

91. An **interjection** is a disconnected word or phrase used to express sudden emotion.

¡ay! *alas!* | ¡ay de mí! *wo is me!* | ¡oh! *oh!* | ¡Jesús! *gracious!*

It may be well to note, in passing, that the names of the

Deity and of the Saints are very often used in Spanish as interjections, and that no sense of either profanity or impropriety is attached to such practice.

In writing, an interjection consisting of several words should be preceded by an inverted exclamation mark. This rule applies to exclamatory sentences also. Before interjections consisting of one word, the inverted exclamation mark may be either used or dispensed with, at pleasure.

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 2)

GENERAL RUDIMENTS OF THE LANGUAGE

THE SUBSTANTIVE AND THE ADJECTIVE

NUMBER

1. Introduction. — Before undertaking a systematic treatment of the parts of speech, it will be advisable to define some terms to which it will be necessary to refer often, and to state some general rules relating to inflection and syntax, which will facilitate the student's understanding of the sentences used through the work as illustrations. He will thus obtain a general idea of the character and peculiarities of the Spanish language, before entering upon the study of special rules and principles.

2. Number, as Applied to Substantives. — The term **number,** when applied to a substantive, is used to indicate the form or application of the substantive by which it denotes either one object or several objects that belong to the same class but are not considered as forming a whole.

3. With regard to number, substantives may be either *singular* or *plural*.

A substantive denoting one individual, or a group of individuals of the same class considered as forming a whole,

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

is said to be in the **singular number**, or to be a **singular substantive.**

hombre, *man*	gente, *people*
mesa, *table*	ejército, *army*

Although the substantive *gente* denotes more than one person, it is a singular substantive, for the persons denoted by it are regarded as forming a group or whole, which is referred to as one object. The same remark applies to *ejército*, and to all other substantives of like character.

A substantive denoting several individuals of the same kind, without implying that these individuals form a whole, is said to be in the **plural number**, or to be a **plural substantive.**

hombres, *men*	personas, *persons*
mesas, *tables*	soldados, *soldiers*

4. Number, as Applied to Adjectives.—Adjectives usually **agree in number** with the substantives they modify; that is, they change their form according to the grammatical number of the substantives to which they refer.

The form of an adjective used with a singular substantive is called the **singular form**, and that used with a plural substantive, the **plural form**, of the adjective. An adjective in the singular form is also called a **singular adjective**, and is said to be in the singular number; and one in the plural form is called a **plural adjective**, and is said to be in the plural number.

The adjectives in the two following examples refer to singular substantives, and are in the singular form:

Mi *hermano* tiene **el** *libro* **alemán** de **su** *amigo* **cubano.**	My brother has your Cuban friend's German book.
El *hotel* donde yo vivo es muy **cómodo,** pero muy **caro.**	The hotel where I live is very comfortable, but very expensive.

In the two examples that follow, the adjectives refer to plural substantives, and are in the plural form:

Mis *hermanos* tienen **los** *libros* **alemanes** de **sus** *amigos* **cubanos.**	My brothers have your Cuban friends' German books.
Los *hoteles* de aquí son muy **cómodos,** pero muy **caros.**	The hotels of this place are very comfortable, but very expensive.

5. Formation of the Plural From the Singular Form.—This subject will be fully treated in its proper place. At present, it will be sufficient to state the following five provisional rules, which apply to nearly all substantives and adjectives of frequent use:

Rule I.—*Substantives and adjectives that in the singular end in a vowel, form the plural by adding* **-s.**

hombre, *man:* hombre**s**, *men*
deuda, *debt:* deuda**s**, *debts*
sofá, *sofa:* sofá**s**, *sofas*
bueno, *good:* bueno**s**, *good*
verde, *green:* verde**s**, *green*

The plurals of **este**, *this*, and **ese**, *that*, are *estos*, *esos*, respectively.

Rule II.—*Substantives and adjectives that in the singular end in any consonant but* **s** *or* **z**, *form the plural by adding* **-es.**

ciudad, *city:* ciudad**es**, *cities*
túnel, *tunnel:* túnel**es**, *tunnels*
joven, *young:* jóven**es**, *young*
especial, *special:* especial**es**, *special*

The plurals of **el**, *the*, and **aquel**, *yonder*, are *los* and *aquellos*, respectively.

Rule III.—*Substantives (except surnames not accented on the last syllable) and adjectives that in the singular end in* **z**, *form the plural by replacing the final* **z** *with* **-ces.**

pez, *fish:* pe**ces**, *fishes*
capaz, *capable:* capa**ces**, *capable*

Rule IV.—*Substantives and adjectives that in the singular end in* **s**, *and are accented on the last syllable, form the plural by adding* **-es.**

marqués, *marquis:* marques**es**, *marquises*
cortés, *courteous:* cortes**es**, *courteous*

Rule V.—*Surnames ending in* **z** *and not accented on the last syllable, and all substantives ending in* **s** *and not accented on the last syllable, have the same form in the plural as in the singular.*

un jueves, *one Thursday:* dos jueves, *two Thursdays*
el señor Gómez, *Mr. Gomez:* los señores Gómez, *Messrs. Gomez*

6. The Prosodic and the Orthographic Accent in the Plural of Substantives and Adjectives. — In the plural form of a substantive or adjective, the same vowel is emphasized as in the singular form. This often requires an accent mark to be used with one form and not with the other. Thus, although *joven* has no accent mark over the *o*, its plural must be written *jóvenes*, not *jovenes*, as the latter word would be pronounced with the prosodic accent on the first *e*, not on the *o*. (See Part 1, Rule III, under the heading, Rules for Accentuation or Emphasis). The accent mark of the singular *marqués*, on the contrary, is not preserved in the plural, as, by the same rule, the first *e* is the only vowel that can be emphasized in *marqueses*, and so the accent mark would be unnecessary. It will be observed by this that the addition of *-es* to form the plural always adds one syllable, which, in the case of words ending in a consonant, is formed by this consonant and the added termination *-es: jóvenes*, for example, is divided thus: *jó-ve-nes*.

REMARK. — The word *number* is often omitted, it being understood, and the terms *singular* and *plural* are employed instead of the phrases *singular number* or *singular form*, and *plural number* or *plural form*, respectively.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

7. Division of Substantives into Nouns and Pronouns. — Some substantives are used as names, and are for this reason called **nouns** (Spanish, **nombres**, *names*). Any substantive serving as the name of an object of thought of any kind belongs to this class. The following are examples:

silla, *chair*	gramática, *grammar*
madre, *mother*	ciencia, *science*
virtud, *virtue*	París, *Paris*
hermosura, *beauty*	Pedro, *Peter*

All other substantives are called **pronouns.**

yo, *I*	tú, *thou*	él, *he*
esto, *this*	eso, *that*	quien, *who*

8. Person. — In grammar, a substantive is said to be in the **first person** when it denotes the person that speaks, or several persons among whom the speaker is included; in

the **second person,** when it denotes the person or persons spoken to; in the **third person,** when it denotes the person or persons, thing or things, spoken of.

Yo, Antonio, deseo enviar esta carta á su hermano con usted.	I, Anthony, wish to send this letter to your brother with you.

In this sentence, *yo* and *Antonio* both denote the speaker, and are therefore in the first person; *carta* and *hermano* denote, respectively, the thing and the person spoken of, and are therefore in the third person; *usted*, which denotes the person spoken to, is in the second person.

9. Personal Pronouns.—Pronouns may be divided into several classes. Of these, only **personal pronouns,** which indicate grammatical person by their form alone, need be here referred to.

The main personal pronouns are:

First Person	Second Person
Singular, **yo,** *I*	*Singular*, **tú,** *thou* **usted,** *you*
Plural, **nosotros,** *we* **nosotras,** *we*	*Plural*, **vosotros,** *ye* **vosotras,** *ye* **ustedes,** *you*

Third Person

Singular, **él,** *he, it*
ella, *she, it*

Plural, **ellos,** *they*
ellas, *they*

Usted, *ustedes* are the equivalents of the English *you* used in ordinary social intercourse. *Usted* is abbreviated in any of the following manners: *U.*, *Ud.*, *V.*, *Vd.* For the plural *ustedes*, the following abbreviations are common: *Uds.*, *UU.*, *Vs.*, *Vds.*, *VV.* These abbreviations, however, should always be read as if the words were written in full.

Tú is employed in solemn style, as in addressing the Deity and the saints, and is then rendered by *thou.* It is also used in very familiar style in addressing relatives, intimate friends, children, and, in some places, servants: it is then better rendered by *you*, although *thou* would be the literal rendering.

Vosotros, being the plural of *tú*, is employed in elevated

style, or in addressing several persons each of whom would be addressed by *tú*. In the latter case, however, the form *ustedes* is preferred by many, especially in Spanish America.

Usted, although now classed as a pronoun, is a contraction of **vuestra merced**, *your grace*, and—with one single exception, to be pointed out in a subsequent article—is grammatically constructed like a substantive of the third person; that is, it takes the third persons of verbal forms, and the possessive adjectives and pronominal cases of the third person. So, too, the English *your honor*, *your Excellency*, although they denote the person spoken to, are grammatically constructed like third-person substantives: *Your honor* **is**, *Your Excellency* **says**.

GENDER

10. Gender, as Applied to Nouns.—The pronouns *él*, *ella*, *ellos*, *ellas*, are used in place of nouns mentioned in the sentence, in order to avoid their repetition: their function is therefore to represent nouns. A noun that in the singular is represented by *él*, is in the plural represented by *ellos*, and one that is in the singular represented by *ella*, is in the plural represented by *ellas;* in other words, *ellos*, *ellas* are the plurals of *él* and *ella*, respectively. In what follows, it will be sufficient to refer to singular forms.

11. *Él* is called the **masculine form**, and *ella* the **feminine form**, of the personal pronoun of the third person.

A noun is said to be **masculine** or **feminine** according as it is represented by *él* or *ella*. Thus, **mujer**, *woman*, and **casa**, *house*, are feminine; while **hombre**, *man*, and **hotel**, *hotel*, are masculine, as appears from the following examples:

Esa *mujer* está gravemente enferma, pero **ella** no lo sabe.	That woman is seriously ill, but she does not know it.
¿Quién vive en esta *casa?*—Yo vivo en **ella**.	Who lives in this house?—I live in it.
Aquí estuvo un *hombre*, pero yo no hablé con **él**.	There was a man here, but I did not speak with him.
¿Cuánto pagó Ud. por este *hotel?*—Pagué cincuenta mil pesos por **él**.	How much did you pay for this hotel?—I paid fifty thousand dollars for it.

A masculine noun is said to be of, or belong to, the masculine *gender;* a feminine noun is said to be of, or belong to, the feminine *gender.*

The term **gender,** therefore, when applied to a noun, denotes the class to which the noun belongs according to the form of the personal pronoun of the third person by which the noun is represented in discourse.

REMARK 1.—The word *gender* is often omitted, it being understood, and the words *masculine* and *feminine* are used as nouns instead of the phrases *masculine gender* or *masculine form*, and *feminine gender* or *feminine form*, respectively.

REMARK 2.—As will be explained elsewhere, there are substantives that are represented by *ello*, and are called **neuter substantives.** Here, however, it is important to observe that the word *neuter*, and the phrase *neuter gender*, have not the same signification in Spanish as in English. In the latter language, the names of nearly all inanimate objects are of the neuter gender, and are represented by *it.* In Spanish, on the contrary, all such names are either masculine or feminine; that is, they are represented by either *él* (literally, *he*) or *ella* (literally, *she*).

12. Gender, as Applied to Adjectives.—Many adjectives have two forms: one is used with masculine nouns, and is called the **masculine form** of the adjective; the other is used with feminine nouns, and is called the **feminine form.** An adjective in the masculine form is also called a **masculine adjective,** or an adjective of the **masculine gender.** Similar terms apply to adjectives in the feminine form.

The masculine of nearly all adjectives having two forms ends either in *o* or in a consonant. The feminine is generally obtained from the masculine by replacing the final *o* with *a*, if the masculine ends in *o;* by simply adding *a*, if the masculine ends in a consonant.

un hombre bueno, *a good man:* **una** mujer buena, *a good woman*
un caballero **francés,** *a French gentleman:* **una** señora francesa, *a French lady.*

Among the exceptions to this rule are **el,** *the;* **este,** *this;* **ese,** *that;* **aquel,** *yonder,* whose feminine forms are, respectively, *la, esta, esa, aquella.*

13. The Articles.—The adjectives **el,** *the,* and **un,** *a* or *an,* are called **articles.** The former—*el*—is the **definite article;** the latter—*un*—the **indefinite article.**

El and *un* are masculine singular forms. *El* has the feminine form *la*, and *un* the feminine form *una*.

The plural of *el* is *los*, and that of *la* is *las*. The plural of *un* is *unos*, and that of *una* is *unas*. As the English indefinite article has no plural form, nor can be prefixed to a plural substantive, *unos*, *unas* are rendered by *some*.

Hágame el favor de darme *un* fósforo.	Please give me a match.
Aquí hay *unas* cartas para usted.	There are some letters for you here.

The definite article affords an easy means of remembering the gender of nouns to which that article can be prefixed; and the student is advised to acquire the habit of associating such nouns with the corresponding article. Instead, for instance, of trying to remember simply that *mesa* means *table*, he should try to remember that **la** *mesa* means *the table*, thus making of the article a sort of indispensable part of the noun.

There is, however, an exception that should be particularly noted. Nouns beginning with an emphatic *a*, or with *ha*, the *a* being emphatic, take the masculine form of the article, whatever their gender, while either form of the indefinite article may be used with them at pleasure. Thus, **arma**, *weapon*, and **hacha**, *ax*, are both feminine, but *the weapon*, *the ax*, are rendered **el** *arma*, **el** *hacha;* and **un** *arma*, **un** *hacha* are as proper as **una** *arma*, **una** *hacha*.

14. Contractions of the Definite Article.—After the prepositions **á**, *to*, and **de**, *of*, the *e* of the masculine singular form *el* of the definite article is omitted, and the *l* joined to the preposition, forming one word with it; that is, *al* is used instead of *á el*, and *del* instead of *de el*. The forms *al* and *del* are called **contractions** of the article with the prepositions *á* and *de*, respectively. Observe that in the contraction *al* the *a* is not marked with an orthographic accent.

15. Gender, as Applied to the Personal Pronouns of the First and of the Second Person.—When these pronouns denote persons of the male sex, they require the

masculine form of the adjective, and are therefore considered to be masculine, or to belong to the masculine gender. When they denote persons of the female sex, they require the feminine form of the adjective, and are therefore considered as feminine.

Yo, *tú*, *usted*, *ustedes*, are used for both genders. *Nosotros* and *vosotros* are masculine; *nosotras* and *vosotras*, feminine.

The sentence, *I am tired*, if used by a man, would be rendered, **Yo** *estoy cansado*; if by a woman, **Yo** *estoy cansada*. Similarly, *Thou art tired*, if said to a man, would be, **Tú** *estás cansado*; if to a woman, **Tú** *estás cansada*.

The masculines *nosotros*, *vosotros*, *ellos* are employed not only with reference to persons of the male sex, but also with reference to groups consisting of individuals of both sexes. For example, a woman, speaking of herself and other persons, among whom there are one or more men, should say *nosotros*, not *nosotras*.

REMARK.—Neuter substantives (Art. **11**, Remark 2) are represented by the neuter pronoun *ello*. For convenience, the other personal pronouns—*yo*, *tú*, *usted*, *nosotros*, *nosotras*, *vosotros*, *vosotras*, *ustedes*, *él*, *ella*, *ellos*—will here be called **non-neuter** personal pronouns.

THE VERB

INFINITIVE, PARTICIPLE, AND GERUND

16. Infinitive.—The form of a verb that serves as the name of the verb, and expresses the meaning of the verb in an abstract manner, without any reference to time, is called the **infinitive** of the verb.

amar, *to love*	vender, *to sell*	dormir, *to sleep*
pagar, *to pay*	entender, *to understand*	ir, *to go*

All Spanish infinitives end in either *-ar*, *-er*, or *-ir*. The particle *to*, which is a sign of the English infinitive, has no Spanish equivalent.

17. Participle.—In the sentence, **El café comprado ayer y vendido hoy vino del Brasil,** *The coffee bought yesterday and sold today came from Brazil*, the words *comprado*

and *vendido* are adjectives, since they both modify the substantive *café*. Adjectives of this kind, however, have two characteristics that distinguish them from adjectives belonging to other classes: (1) they are **verbal derivatives**, that is, words derived from verbs—*comprado* from *comprar*, and *vendido* from *vender;* (2) they are used with the verb **haber**, *to have*, in compound verbal forms, as in the sentences,

Yo *he* **comprado**, Usted *ha* **vendido.**	I have bought, You have sold.

These verbal derivatives are called **past participles**, or simply **participles.** They are generally obtained from the infinitives of verbs by changing the last two letters of the infinitive to *-ado*, if the infinitive ends in *-ar;* to *-ido*, if the infinitive ends in *-er* or *-ir*.

habl**ar**, *to speak:*	habl**ado**, *spoken*
extend**er**, *to extend:*	extend**ido**, *extended*
re**ír**, *to laugh:*	re**ído**, *laughed*

A few participles are not formed according to this rule, and are called **irregular participles.** The following are examples:

escribir, *to write:*	escrito, *written*
ver, *to see:*	visto, *seen*
hacer, *to make:*	hecho, *made*

When a participle performs the functions of an adjective, it agrees in number and gender with the substantive to which it refers. In compound verbal forms with *haber*, only the masculine singular form of the participle is used.

El primer *piso* está terminad**o**.— **La** *escalera* está terminad**a**.— **Las** dos *ventanas* están terminad**as.**	The first floor is finished.—The stairway is finished.—The two windows are finished.
Hemos **terminado** el primer piso.—*Hemos* **terminado** la escalera.—*Hemos* **terminado** las ventanas.	We have finished the first floor.—We have finished the stairway.—We have finished the windows.

18. Gerund.—There is another verbal derivative, which is generally obtained from the infinitive of the verb by

replacing the last two letters of the infinitive with the ending *-ando*, if the infinitive ends in *-ar*, or with the ending *-iendo*, if the infinitive ends in *-er* or in *-ir*.

habl**ar**, *to speak:*	habl**ando**, *speaking*
vend**er**, *to sell:*	vend**iendo**, *selling*
escrib**ir**, *to write:*	escrib**iendo**, *writing*

This verbal derivative is called the **gerund**, or **present participle**, of the verb from which it is formed.

REMARK. — Hereafter, the term *participle* will be applied to the past participle only; while the present participle will always be referred to by the term *gerund*.

19. Important Differences Between the English and the Spanish Uses of the Infinitive and the Gerund. — In English, the gerund often performs the functions of a substantive; as in the sentence, **Saying** *is not* **doing.** Expressions of this kind are rendered into Spanish by means of the infinitive instead of the gerund: **Decir** *no es* **hacer.** The Spanish gerund *never* performs the functions of a substantive.

Likewise, the infinitive, not the gerund, should be used after a preposition.

Estoy cansado *de* **trabajar.**	I am tired of working.
Esa joven me cobró diez pesos *por* **copiar** el documento.	That young lady charged me ten dollars for copying the document.

In Spanish, the gerund is seldom used as an adjective, and expressions in which this verbal derivative is so used in English cannot be literally rendered: they are generally translated by *que* followed by a tense of the verb. (Art. **26**).

Aquí está una caja *que contiene* útiles de escritorio.	Here is a box containing writing materials.
He leído un artículo *que describe* la batalla de Santiago.	I have read an article describing the battle of Santiago.

While in these cases it would be proper to translate the Spanish form literally, saying *that contains* instead of *containing*, and *that describes* instead of *describing*, it would not be permissible to substitute *conteniendo* for *que contiene*, or *describiendo* for *que describe*.

DEFINITIONS RELATING TO CONJUGATION—MODE AND TENSE

20. Inflection.—Changes in the form of an inflective word are called **inflections.** The term *inflection* is also applied to the aggregate of all the forms of an inflective word, when they are systematically arranged. One form is generally considered as the fundamental form, or the name of the word, and the others as variations or modifications of this. In substantives and adjectives, it is customary to take the masculine singular form as the general name by which these words are referred to; in verbs, the infinitive. In this sense we say that the Spanish equivalent of *white* is *blanco;* that the Spanish definite article is *el;* that **soy,** *I am*, is a form of **ser,** *to be,* and that the personal pronoun of the first person is **yo,** *I.*

To inflect a word is to change it so as to give it all the forms it can take.

21. Conjugation.—The inflection of verbs is called **conjugation,** and **to conjugate** a verb is to inflect it.

In conjugation, it is necessary to attend to **person, number, mode,** and **tense.**

22. Person and Number, as Applied to Verbs. Verbal forms change with the number, and often with the person, of the subject to which they refer. A form used with a singular subject of the first person is referred to as *the first person singular of the verb.* Similar expressions are applied to other forms. Thus, **habla,** *speaks*, which is used with reference to a substantive in the third person singular, is said to be the third person singular of the verb **hablar,** *to speak.*

It is very common in Spanish not to express the subject of a verb, either the form of the verb or the context being sufficient to indicate what the subject is. When the subject is a personal pronoun of the third person, it is seldom expressed; when a personal pronoun of the second person, it is seldom omitted.

Hablo español. *Yo* hablo español.	I speak Spanish.
Soy americano. *Yo* soy americano.	I am an American.
¿Está su hermano aquí? – No *está* aquí; *ha salido.*	Is your brother here? – He is not here; he has gone out.
¿Está su hermano aquí? – *Él* no está aquí; *él* ha salido.	
¿Dónde vive su amiga? – *Vive* en la Habana.	Where does your lady friend live? – She lives in Havana.
¿Dónde vive su amiga? – *Ella* vive en la Habana.	

23. Mode, or Mood. – Consider the three following sentences:

Tú *venderás* esos artículos mañana.	You will sell those articles tomorrow.
Dudo que tú *vendas* esos artículos mañana.	I doubt whether you will (*literally*, that you may) sell those articles tomorrow.
Vende esos artículos mañana.	Sell those articles tomorrow.

Here are three forms of the verb **vender,** *to sell:* they all denote the same action and refer to the same time, but they indicate different attitudes of the speaker with regard to the performance of the action. The first form, *venderás*, makes a positive assertion regarding the action: the speaker declares that the action will be performed. The second expresses uncertainty regarding the performance of the action, and the third commands that the action be performed. These verbal forms, which indicate the manner, or *mode*, in which the action or fact denoted by a verb is presented, are called **modes,** or **moods.**

24. There are four modes in Spanish, namely:

1. The **indicative mode:** the form of the verb used in making a direct affirmation or negation.

Yo *hablo.*	I speak.
La guerra *ha principiado.*	The war has begun.
Usted no me *comprende.*	You do not understand me.

2. The **subjunctive mode:** the form of the verb used to indicate uncertainty or conjecture.

Es probable que ese señor *hable* más de un idioma.	It is probable that that gentleman speaks more than one language.
Dudo que la guerra *haya principiado*.	I doubt if (*literally*, that) the war has begun.

This form is also used in dependent phrases introduced by a verb in the indicative mode expressing desire.

Deseo que usted **hable** conmigo mañana.	I wish you to speak with me tomorrow (*more literally*, I wish that you would speak with me tomorrow).
Mi padre *quiere* que yo **hable** con el señor López.	My father wishes me to speak with Mr. Lopez (*more literally*, My father wishes that I should speak with Mr. Lopez).

3. The **imperative mode:** the form of the verb used to indicate in a direct manner that the action denoted by the verb is commanded or desired. A verb in the imperative mode is independent—it is not introduced by another verb or word; a verb in the subjunctive mode must always be introduced by other words, as appears from the examples given above. The following are illustrations of the use of the imperative mode:

Habla tú.	Speak thou.
Hablemos con esa señora.	Let us speak with that lady.
Hablen los hechos.	Let the facts speak.

4. The **hypothetic mode.** This mode, which is but a special form of the subjunctive, will be explained elsewhere.

25. Although the indicative mode is recognized by the fact that it *can* be used in making an affirmation, and the subjunctive mode is a form that *can* be used in expressing a desire without direct command, it by no means follows that these modes can serve no other purposes. This subject will be more fully treated in its proper place.

REMARK.—The word *mode* is very often omitted, being understood. Thus, the indicative mode is referred to simply as *the indicative*.

26. Tense, or time form: the form of a verb used to indicate time with reference to the moment of speaking. In the sentence, *Usted* **habló,** the form **habló,** *spoke*, indicates by itself that the action performed by *usted* is past. In the

sentence, *Usted* **hablará**, the form **hablará**, *will speak*, indicates by itself that the action of speaking is yet to be performed. The forms *habló* and *hablará* are different tenses of the verb **hablar**, *to speak*.

Some tenses are obtained by combining the forms of the verb **haber**, *to have*, with a participle.

Yo *he hablado*.	I have spoken.
Ellos *han hablado*.	They have spoken.

These tenses are called **compound tenses**; the others, **simple tenses.**

In what follows, reference will be made to affirmative sentences only, it being understood that, as regards the meaning of tenses, what is said of affirmative sentences applies to other sentences as well.

27. Tenses of the Indicative Mode.—This mode has five simple tenses, namely:

1. The **present tense:** the form of the verb used to indicate that the fact denoted by the verb is taking place at, or coincides with, the moment of speaking.

Yo *hablo*.	I speak, I am speaking.
Mis amigos *viven* aquí.	My friends live here.
La tierra *es* redonda.	The earth is round.

2. The **future tense:** the form of the verb used to indicate that the fact denoted by the verb will take place after the moment of speaking.

Yo *hablaré* con él mañana.	I shall speak with him tomorrow.
El presidente *firmará* el decreto.	The president will sign the decree.
Nosotros *saldremos* mañana para Cuba.	We shall leave for Cuba tomorrow.

It will be observed that the auxiliary verbs *will* and *shall*, entering the formation of English future tenses, have no equivalents in Spanish.

3. The **preterit tense:** the form of the verb used to indicate that the fact denoted by the verb is absolutely past.

Ayer *hablé* con su padre.	I spoke with your father yesterday.
El vapor *llegó* anoche.	The steamer arrived last night.
El año pasado *vendimos* muchos géneros.	We sold many goods last year.

4. The **copreterit tense:** the form of the verb used to indicate that the fact denoted by the verb is past and coincided with another fact, also past. This tense can be generally rendered by the preterit of the verb *to be* followed by the gerund (present participle) of the verb. In the following examples, the words printed in Italic express the past event with which the fact denoted by the verb in the copreterit tense coincided:

Yo **hablaba** con mi padre *cuando usted entró.*	I was speaking with my father when you came in.
Cuando ustedes llegaron, nosotros **discutíamos** ese negocio y **tratábamos** de fijar los precios.	When you arrived, we were discussing that business and trying to fix the prices.

5. The **postpreterit tense:** the form of the verb used to indicate that the fact denoted by the verb was to take place after a specified past time.

Su padre me *dijo ayer* que **hablaría** con el señor Ramírez.	Your father told me yesterday that he would speak with Mr. Ramirez.

Here the form *hablaría* indicates that the action of speaking was to take place after yesterday.

Creí que usted me **vendería** esas máquinas.	I thought that you would sell me those machines.

Here the form *vendería* indicates that the action of selling was to, or might, take place after the past time involved in the form **creí,** *I thought.*

The auxiliary verbs *would* and *should* have no Spanish equivalents.

28. To the five simple tenses just mentioned there correspond five compound tenses, obtained by combining the simple tenses of **haber,** *to have*, with the participle of the verb: the **compound present,** the **compound future,** the **compound preterit,** etc. Thus, the first person singular of the indicative compound present of *hablar* is **yo he hablado,** *I have spoken;* of the compound future, **yo habré hablado,** *I shall have spoken*, etc.

29. Tenses of the Subjunctive Mode.—The subjunctive has only two simple time forms, namely:

1. The **present tense:** the form of the verb used to indicate present time.

Quizá esa señora *esté* enferma.	Perhaps that lady is ill.
Dudo que los monopolios *mejoren* la situación del trabajador.	I doubt whether monopolies will (*literally*, that monopolies may) improve the condition of the working man.

This form may also indicate future time.

Cuando Ud. *hable* con su hermano, dígale que deseo verlo.	When you speak with your brother, tell him I wish to see him.

Whatever the time indicated, this form is always referred to as the **present subjunctive,** or the **present tense of the subjunctive.**

2. The **preterit tense:** the form of the verb used to indicate past time.

El médico me dijo que no *hablara* (ó *hablase*).	The physician told me not to talk (*literally*, that I should not talk).
No creí que mi amigo *estuviera* (ó *estuviese*) enfermo.	I did not think that my friend was ill (*more literally*, might be ill).

Other time relations are indicated by this form; but the form itself is referred to, regardless of its meaning, as the **preterit subjunctive,** or the **preterit tense of the subjunctive.** As will be observed, this tense has two forms, one ending in *-ra*, the other in *-se*. In the majority of cases, these two forms are interchangeable. When in doubt as to the proper form to employ, the learner may use the form in *-ra*, which is always correct.

The compound tenses—the compound present and the compound preterit—of the subjunctive are formed by combining the two simple subjunctive tenses of the verb *haber* with the participle of the verb.

30. Distinction Between Tense and Time.—The two terms *tense* and *time* should not be confounded. The word *tense* denotes merely a form of a verb. It is true

that this form can be used to indicate time, and on this peculiarity the definitions of the various tenses are founded. One and the same tense, however, may serve to denote different time relations, according to circumstances. Thus, in the first of the following examples, the form *viene*, which is the present indicative of **venir**, *to come*, indicates present time; in the second, future time:

Mi padre *viene* con don Antonio.	My father is coming with Mr. Anthony.
Si mi padre *viene*, dígale que pronto volveré.	If my father comes, tell him I shall soon return.

HABER AND TENER

31. Distinction Between These Two Verbs. — Although both *tener* and *haber* are rendered by *to have*, they differ in that *haber* is not (except in a few cases to be explained in another place) used by itself, but in combination with the participles of other verbs for the formation of compound tenses. Because it is thus employed in forming tenses of other verbs, *haber* is called an **auxiliary verb.** *Tener*, on the contrary, is used as an independent verb, being the equivalent of *to have* in all cases in which the latter is not an auxiliary. The following examples illustrate this distinction:

¿**Ha** *hablado* usted con el general?	Have you spoken with the general?
Cuando usted regrese, **habremos** *terminado* estas cartas.	When you return, we shall have finished these letters.
¿Quién **tiene** mi paraguas? — Yo lo **tengo.**	Who has my umbrella? — I have it.
Este libro **tiene** varios capítulos muy buenos.	This book has several very good chapters.

32. Conjugation of Haber and Tener. — These verbs are of great importance, and the student should familiarize himself with all their forms. Their conjugation is given in Tables I and II, pages 32 and 33, which should be carefully studied. They should be read horizontally, placing the appropriate pronoun before each verbal form; thus: *yo tengo*, *tú tienes*, *él tiene; nosotros tenemos*, *vosotros tenéis*, *ellos tienen*.

REGULAR VERBS

33. Stem and Termination in Verbs.—As stated in Art. **16**, the infinitives of all Spanish verbs end in either *-ar*, *-er*, or *-ir*. What remains of an infinitive when these **endings** or **terminations** are omitted is called the **stem** (Spanish **raíz**, *root*) of the verb. Thus, *habl* is the stem of *habl***ar**, and *ten*, that of *ten***er**.

34. Regular Verbs—The Three Conjugations.—A great many verbs, called **regular verbs**, are conjugated by replacing the termination of the infinitive with certain endings, to be presently specified. These endings depend on the ending of the infinitive; that is, they vary according as the infinitive ends in *-ar*, *-er*, or *-ir*. Thus, the second person plural of the indicative present of **hablar**, *to speak*, is *habl***amos**; that of **comer**, *to eat*, is *com***emos**, and that of **permitir**, *to permit*, is *permit***imos**. For purposes of conjugation, it is therefore necessary to divide verbs into three classes, according to their infinitive endings. These classes are called **conjugations**: the **first conjugation** comprises all verbs in *-ar;* the **second conjugation**, all verbs in *-er;* the **third conjugation**, all verbs in *-ir*.

35. Conjugation of Regular Verbs.—Tables III, IV, and V, given on pages 34, 35, and 36, contain the simple tenses of the regular verbs **hablar**, *to speak;* **vender**, *to sell;* and **permitir**, *to permit*. All regular verbs are conjugated after these patterns; that is, by replacing their infinitive endings with those printed in bold type in the tables. As directed in Art. **32**, the student, when studying these conjugations, should read the verbal forms horizontally, thus: *yo hablo, tú hablas, él habla, nosotros hablamos, vosotros habláis, ellos hablan; yo hablaba, tú hablabas, él hablaba*, etc.

Verbs not following the rules implied in these tables are called **irregular verbs**.

36. Remarks on Imperative Forms.—The imperative forms of the second person given in the tables are employed in affirmative sentences only. In negative sen-

tences, the second person of the imperative is the same as the second person of the subjunctive.

Habla más despacio.	Speak more slowly.
No **hables** tan aprisa.	Do not speak so fast.
Permitidme que os aconseje.	Allow me to advise you.
No **permitáis** eso.	Do not allow that.

The third person of the imperative is generally preceded by *que*.

Que **hable** don Antonio.	Let Mr. Anthony speak.
Que **vendan** ellos sus géneros.	Let them sell their goods.
Que **éntre.**	Let him come in.

This *que* has no equivalent in English.

It has been stated (Art. **9**) that, with regard to verbal forms, *usted* is treated as a substantive in the third person. With this pronoun, however, the imperative is never preceded by *que*.

Hable *usted*	Speak (you).
Vendan *ustedes* esos géneros.	Sell (you) those goods.
Éntre *usted.*	Come (you) in.

SER AND ESTAR

37. Uses of These Two Verbs. — Although *ser* and *estar* are both rendered by *to be*, they are not interchangeable. In general, *ser* denotes permanent or inherent properties or conditions, and is rendered by *to be* alone; *estar* denotes transitory or accidental conditions, and is rendered sometimes by *to be* alone, but usually either by another verb, or by *to be* followed by an adverb or an adverbial phrase. This distinction is illustrated by the following pairs of examples:

La señorita Carmen *es* muy bonita.	Miss Carmen is very pretty.
La señorita Carmen *está* muy bonita.	Miss Carmen is looking very pretty (*or*, looks very pretty now).
El negocio del café *es* muy bueno.	The coffee business is (naturally, *or* always) very good.
El negocio del café *está* muy bueno.	The coffee business is now very good.

Mi casa *es* muy húmeda.	My house is very damp.
Mi casa *está* muy húmeda, á causa del mal tiempo.	My house is now very damp, on account of the bad weather.
El hielo *es* frío.	Ice is cold.
El calentador *está* frío.	The radiator is cold.
¿Qué clase de naranjas *son* ésas?—*Son* naranjas agrias.	What kind of oranges are those?—They are sour oranges.
¿Qué tal le parecen á usted esas naranjas?—*Están* muy agrias.	How do you find those oranges?—They are very sour.
¿Quién *es* ese caballero?	Who is that gentleman?
¿Quién *está* en la sala?	Who is in the parlor?
Ese hombre *es* ciego.	That man is blind.
Ese hombre *está* ciego de pasión.	That man is blind with passion.

According to the same rule, *ser*, not *estar*, should be used in cases like the following:

Soy americano.	I am an American.
Esta taza *es* de plata.	This cup is of silver.
Este caballero *es* de las Filipinas.	This gentleman is from the Philippines.
El hombre *es* un animal racional.	Man is a rational animal.

It also follows that *estar* should be employed with reference to a person's state of health or of mind.

¿Cómo *está* usted?	How are you?
No *estoy* bien.	I am not well.
Esta semana *he estado* muy enfermo.	I have been very ill this week.
Estamos satisfechos.	We are satisfied.

38. *Ser* is further employed:

1. With substantives or substantive phrases used in the predicate with direct reference to the subject of the sentence.

Usted **es** *ciudadano americano*.	You are an American citizen.
Nosotros **somos** *estudiantes*.	We are students.
Puerto-Rico y las Filipinas **son** *colonias de los Estados Unidos*.	Porto Rico and the Philippines are colonies of the United States.

2. With reference to the hour of day.

¿Qué hora *es?*	What time is it?
Son las ocho y media.	It is half-past eight.
Eran las cuatro cuando mis hermanas llegaron.	It was four o'clock when my sisters arrived.

It will be observed that the indefinite pronoun *it* has no equivalent in Spanish.

3. In all other cases in which *it* is used in English in an indefinite manner, that is, without reference to a preceding substantive; and in those in which the same pronoun refers to a following infinitive.

Es probable que los países de Europa formen una alianza contra los Estados Unidos.	It is likely that the countries ot Europe will form (*more literally*, may form) an alliance against the United States.
¿*Es* posible que usted no sepa nada de eso?	Is it possible that you know nothing about that?
¿Quién *es?*	Who is it?
Yo *soy*.	It is I.
Fué muy fácil vencer á los españoles.	It was very easy to vanquish the Spaniards.

4. With participles, to form the passive voice of verbs.

Es *amado* de sus soldados.	He is loved by his soldiers.
Pedro **fué** *hecho* prisionero.	Peter was taken (*literally*, made) prisoner.

39. *Estar* is employed:

1. In such idiomatic phrases as the following:

Él **está** *de cónsul* en Nueva-York.	He is now consul in New York.
El general López **estaba** *de jefe* del ejército.	General Lopez was then chief of the army.
Yo ahora **estoy** *de carpintero*.	I am now a carpenter.

In general, *estar de* followed by a noun denoting an office or occupation indicates a temporary, often unusual, holding of the office or exercising of the occupation. In these cases, *ser* can be used with equal propriety, being modified by an adverb of time, as the latter is always implied in *estar*.

Él **es** *ahora* (*now*) cónsul en Nueva-York.
El general López **era** *entonces* (*then*) jefe del ejército.

2. To indicate location, whether permanent or temporary.

Mi libro *está* sobre la mesa.	My book is on the table.
¿Dónde *están* mis instrumentos?	Where are my instruments?
Madrid *está* en España.	Madrid is in Spain.

Los Alpes *están* en Europa.	The Alps are in Europe.
Mi tienda *está* en la esquina de la calle del Comercio.	My store is on the corner of Commerce street.
Buenos-Aires *está* muy lejos de aquí.	Buenos Ayres is very far from here.

REMARK.—There are some exceptions to the rules stated above. They occur mainly in idiomatic expressions, and will be dealt with in a subsequent section.

40. Conjugation of Ser and Estar.—The conjugation of these verbs is given in Tables VI and VII, on pages 37 and 38.

TRANSITIVE VERBS AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS

41. The Accusative.—In the sentence **Yo vendo café,** *I sell coffee*, the verb *vendo* expresses an action that is performed on, or passes over to, the thing indicated by the substantive *café*. This substantive, which indicates the thing acted on, or on which the action is directly realized, is called the **accusative,** or **direct object,** of the verb *vendo*. Similarly, in the following sentences, the substantive phrases printed in bold type are, respectively, the accusatives of the verbs printed in Italic:

Juan me *dió* **un libro.**	John gave me a book.
Hoy *hemos comprado* **veinte máquinas.**	We have bought twenty machines today.
Manuel me *mandó* **los periódicos que usted dejó con él.**	Manuel sent me the newspapers that you left with him.

When the accusative is a substantive indicating a person, it is generally preceded by the preposition *á*, which in this case is not translated, and may be considered simply as the sign of the personal accusative.

Veo **á** *mis amigos*.	I see my friends.
Hemos llamado **á** *don Eduardo*.	We have called Mr. Edward.

42. Some verbs do not, strictly speaking, denote an action; some others denote actions that are not performed on any object. The grammatical construction of many of these verbs is, however, identical in form with that of those just

mentioned, and they are for that reason treated as belonging to the same class. Compare, for instance, the following pairs of sentences:

Yo *compré* **eso.**	I bought that.
Yo *creí* **eso.**	I believed that.
Yo *compro* **café.**	I buy coffee.
Yo *sufro* **dolor.**	I suffer pain.
Yo *vendo* **muchas cosas.**	I sell many things.
Yo *hablo* **muchos idiomas.**	I speak many languages.
Yo *vendo* **libros en español.**	I sell books in Spanish.
Yo *tengo* **libros en español.**	I have books in Spanish.
Yo *veo á* **don Pedro.**	I see Mr. Peter.
Yo *conozco á* **don Pedro.**	I know Mr. Peter.

In these sentences, the substantives and phrases *eso*, *dolor*, *muchos idiomas*, *libros en español*, *don Pedro* are the accusatives of the verbs *creí*, *sufro*, *hablo*, *tengo*, *conozco*, respectively.

43. The accusative of a verb may be easily recognized by the following

Rule.—*If the question,* "**¿Cuál es la cosa—?**" *or the question,* "**¿Cuál es la persona—?**" *can be asked, placing the participle of the verb where the dash stands, and the substantive or phrase under consideration is the answer, then that substantive or phrase is the accusative of the verb.* Thus,

Yo vendo **café.** Question: *¿Cuál es la cosa* **vendida?** Answer: **café.** Therefore, *café* is the accusative of *vendo.*

Ayer ví á **don Antonio.** Question: *¿Quién fué la persona* **vista?** Answer: **don Antonio.** Therefore, *don Antonio* is the accusative of *ví.*

REMARK.—In English grammars, a substantive which is the accusative of a verb is said to be in the *objective case.* In this work the term *case* will be used only in connection with personal pronouns, as will be explained presently.

44. Verbs Transitive and Intransitive.—A verb that ordinarily can have an accusative is called a **transitive verb.** Other verbs are called **intransitive.** Of the verbs given below, those on the left are transitive; those on the right, intransitive.

comprar, *to buy*	ser, estar, *to be*
tener, *to have* (*possess*)	ir, *to go*
creer, *to believe*	dormir, *to sleep*
ver, *to see*	descansar, *to rest*
vender, *to sell*	crecer, *to grow*
decir, *to tell*	vivir, *to live*
dudar, *to doubt*	morir, *to die*

CASES OF THE NON-NEUTER PERSONAL PRONOUNS

DECLENSION

45. Definition of Case.—The Spanish personal pronouns are inflective words; they change their forms according to the offices they perform in the sentence and the manner in which they are related to other words. These various forms are called **cases**.

46. The Four Cases.—There are four cases; namely:

1. The **nominative case:** the form of the pronoun used as the subject of a verb.

Yo *hablo;* **tú** *hablas.*	I speak; thou speakest.
Nosotros *hemos trabajado*, y **ellos** *han recogido* el fruto de nuestro trabajo.	We have worked, and they have gathered the fruit of our labor.

2. The **accusative case:** the form of the pronoun serving as the accusative of a verb.

Yo **te** *amo;* él **me** *ve.*	I love thee; he sees me.
Los chinos **nos** *odian.*	The Chinese hate us.

3. The **dative case:** the form of the pronoun that, not being in either of the two preceding cases, is joined to the verb without a preposition.

Yo **le** *hablo.*	I speak to him (*or* to her, *or* to you).
Su hermana **me** *preguntó* si usted **nos** *había escrito.*	Your sister asked me if you had written to us.

4. The **prepositional case**: the form of the pronoun used after a preposition.

Esta carta es *para* **ti.**	This letter is for thee.
Él no puede vivir *sin* **mí.**	He cannot live without me.

The accusative, the dative, and the prepositional cases are called **oblique cases.**

47. Declension of the Non-Neuter Personal Pronouns. — The aggregate of all the inflections, or cases, of a personal pronoun is called the **declension** of the pronoun, and **to decline** a pronoun is to inflect it.

The declensions of the non-neuter personal pronouns are given below. The notation *nosotros,-as* is an abbreviation for *nosotros, nosotras;* similarly for *vosotros,-as.*

DECLENSION OF NON-NEUTER PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	yo	tú	él (usted)	ella (usted)
Nominative . . .	yo	tú	él (usted)	ella (usted)
Accusative . . .	me	te	le, lo	la
Dative	me	te	le	le, la
Prepositional . .	mí	ti	él (usted)	ella (usted)

	nosotros,-as	vosotros,-as	ellos (ustedes)	ellas (ustedes)
Nominative .	nosotros,-as	vosotros,-as	ellos (ustedes)	ellas (ustedes)
Accusative .	nos	os	los, les	las
Dative . . .	nos	os	les	les, las
Prepositional	nosotros,-as	vosotros,-as	ellos (ustedes)	ellas (ustedes)

As will be observed, *él* has the two accusative cases *le* and *lo*. With reference to persons, either of these two forms may be used at pleasure; although *le* is considered more elegant. With reference to animals and things, *lo* is preferable, but *le* is equally proper.

Either *le* or *la* may be used as the dative of *ella*.

The accusative *les*, of *ellos*, and the dative *las*, of *ellas*, are sometimes met with, but are not sanctioned by the best authorities.

The cases *mí* and *ti* become *migo* and *tigo*, respectively, after the preposition *con:* each of these modified forms is joined to the preposition to form one word with it: **conmigo**, *with me;* **contigo**, *with thee.*

48. Redundant Forms.—Since the accusative and the dative of *usted* are the same, respectively, as the accusative and the dative of *él* (or *ella*, in the feminine), some ambiguity may arise in the employment of those forms. Thus, *Yo* **le** *veo* may mean either *I see* **you** or *I see* **him**, according to circumstances. In order to avoid obscurity, the phrases *á usted*, *á él* are often added.

Yo *le* ví **á usted** antenoche.	I saw *you* the evening before last.
Yo *le* ví **á él** antenoche.	I saw *him* the evening before last.

Likewise,

Mi hermano *les* habló **á ellos.**	My brother spoke to *them.*
Ella *les* habló **á ustedes.**	She spoke to *you.*
El señor Pérez *le* escribió **á ella,** y *le* envió un retrato **á usted.**	Mr. Perez wrote to *her*, and sent a photograph to *you.*

The combinations *le . . . á él*, *le . . . á usted*, *les . . . á ellos*, etc., used as in the examples just given, are called **redundant forms.** They are often indispensable, in order to prevent ambiguity, and are always permissible, even when not strictly necessary. Similar redundant forms occur with the cases of the other pronouns: they are never necessary, and, although always permissible, it is preferable to dispense with them except when employed for emphasis: when they do not serve this purpose, they are not only superfluous, but inelegant.

¿*Me* ve usted? ¿*Me* ve usted **á mí?**	Do you see me?
Ayer *te* escribí una carta. Ayer *te* escribí una carta **á ti.**	I wrote thee a letter yesterday.
Él *nos* escribió. Él *nos* escribió **á nosotros.**	He wrote to us.

Another form of redundancy is illustrated in the following examples:

¿Habló usted *á don Antonio?* ¿**Le** habló usted *á don Antonio?*	Did you speak to Mr. Anthony?
¿Envió usted la carta *á su corresponsal?* ¿**Le** envió usted la carta *á su corresponsal?*	Did you send the letter to your correspondent?

This form is now restricted to the dative, although formerly employed with the accusative as well.

49. Rendering of the Possessive Case of English Nouns.—English nouns have a special form called the **possessive case**, which indicates possession and other similar relations: **John's** *book*, *That house is my* **father's.** This case is rendered into Spanish by prefixing the preposition **de**, *of*, to the substantive.

El libro **de** *Juan.*	John's book.
Esta casa es **de** *mi padre.*	This house is my father's (*or*, belongs to my father).
¿Tiene usted las joyas **de** *la señorita Rosa?*	Have you Miss Rose's jewels?
Esto es **de** *mi socio.*	This belongs to my partner.

In interrogative sentences, the English possessive adjective *whose* is usually rendered by *de quién*, the verb being placed immediately after this prepositional phrase.

¿De quién es esa casa?	Whose is that house?
¿De quién eran los periódicos que usted estaba leyendo?	Whose were the newspapers that you were reading?

RUDIMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX

ORDER OF WORDS

50. The Affirmative Sentence.—In affirmative sentences, the subject is ordinarily placed before the verb. There is, however, no grammatical impropriety in reversing this order; while in many cases, especially in narrative style,

it is customary, and considered more elegant, to place the verb first.

Mi padre llegó ayer. Ayer *llegó mi padre.*	My father arrived yesterday.
Cicerón habló en los términos siguientes. *Habló Cicerón* en los términos siguientes.	Cicero spoke in the following terms.
Usted es muy bondadosa, señora. *Es usted* muy bondadosa, señora.	You are very kind, madam.

51. The Interrogative Sentence.—In interrogative sentences, the verb is usually placed before the subject; but the inverse order is equally proper, and very commonly employed, especially if the subject is a noun. The intonation of the voice in speaking, and the interrogation marks (of which an inverted one is placed at the beginning of every interrogative sentence) in writing, serve to indicate whether a sentence is interrogative or not.

¿*Habla usted* español? ¿*Usted habla* español?	Do you speak Spanish?
¿*Ha llegado* ya *don Antonio?* ¿*Don Antonio ha llegado* ya?	Has Mr. Anthony arrived already?
¿Dónde *está su amigo?* ¿*Su amigo* dónde *está?*	Where is your friend?
¿Cuándo *vino ese caballero?* ¿*Ese caballero* cuándo *vino?*	When did that gentleman arrive?

As will be observed, there is no Spanish verb corresponding to the English auxiliary *do* used in interrogative sentences.

52. The Negative Sentence.—Negative sentences are formed by placing the adverb **no**, *not*, *before* the verb. As in the case of interrogative sentences, the English auxiliary *do* has no Spanish equivalent.

Yo **no** *hablo* español.	I do not speak Spanish.
El doctor Ramírez **no** *vive* aquí.	Doctor Ramirez does not live here.
¿**No** *desea* usted ir á dar un paseo?	Do you not wish to go for a walk?
¿Ese caballero **no** *pertenece* á la sociedad geográfica?	Does not that gentleman belong to the geographical society?

53. Position of the Cases of Personal Pronouns. With the infinitive, the gerund, and the imperative, cases are placed after the verb, forming one word with the latter; with other verbal forms, usually before.

Vino á *ver***me**.	He came to see me.
Deseo *hablar***le**.	I wish to speak to him.
No he podido *pagar***les** esa suma.	I have not been able to pay them that amount.
Estoy *esperándo***los**.	I am waiting for them.
*Dé***le** esta carta.	Give him this letter.
*Tráiga***me** el diario.	Bring me the journal (day book).
Don Antonio **nos** *pagó* ayer.	Mr. Anthony paid us yesterday.
Le *he dado* la carta.	I have given him the letter.
¿**Me** *ha traído* el diario?	Have you brought me the journal?

When a dative and an accusative case come together, the dative precedes the accusative, if the latter is of the third person; if the accusative case is of the first or second person, it precedes the dative.

¿Quién le dió ese reloj?—Mi padre *me lo* dió.	Who gave you that watch?—My father gave it to me.
¿Les leyó ella la carta que recibió ayer?—Sí, señor, *nos la* leyó.	Did she read to you the letter she received yesterday?—Yes, sir, she read it to us.
¿Recibió usted la carta que le envié esta mañana?—El muchacho acaba de entregár*mela*.	Did you receive the letter I sent you this morning?—The boy has just delivered it to me.
¿No *te le* has presentado?	Have you not presented yourself to him?

The dative case of all personal pronouns of the third person, and of *usted*, when combined with an accusative case, takes the form *se*.

¿Quién le dió ese reloj á su hija?—Yo **se** *lo* dí.	Who gave your daughter that watch?—I gave it to her.
¿Les enseñó usted esta muestra á sus amigos?—Sí, señor; ayer **se** *la* mostré.	Did you show your friends this sample?—Yes, sir, I showed it to them yesterday.

54. Place of Adjectives.—In the majority of cases, an adjective is placed after the substantive it modifies. The same rule applies to all adjectival phrases.

Don Juan es un *hombre* **rico.**	Mr. John is a rich man.
Según la opinión de *autoridades* **muy competentes,** un *hombre* **honrado** no puede hacerse millonario.	According to the opinion of very competent authorities, an honest man cannot become a millionaire.

There are adjectives, however, that must always precede the substantive. Among these may be mentioned the articles, and the adjectives **este,** *this;* **ese,** *that;* **aquel,** *yonder.*

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

55. An adjective referring to several substantives is placed in the plural form. If the substantives are of the same gender, the adjective should agree with them; if they are of different genders, the masculine form of the adjective should preferably be employed.

En esta población hay un *teatro* y un *hotel* muy **buenos.**	There are in this town a very good theater and a very good hotel.
Esta señora y *su hija* son **españolas.**	This lady and her daughter are Spanish.
La *casa* y **el** *almacén de mi padre* están **situados** en la misma cuadra.	My father's house and store are situated on the same block.

56. The masculine pronouns *nosotros*, *vosotros*, *ellos* require the masculine form of the adjective. Thus, a woman, speaking for herself and other persons, among whom one or more men are included, should say (see Art. **15**),

Nosotros somos sur-americano**s** (*not*, sur-americana**s**).	We are South American.

57. As the inflection of adjectives for gender and number is one of the most important grammatical differences between English and Spanish, the student should constantly bear in mind that *adjectives agree in gender and number with the substantives they modify.*

TABLE I

CONJUGATION OF HABER

Infinitive, haber; *participle*, habido; *gerund*, habiendo

		yo	tú	él	nosotros	vosotros	ellos
Indicative	*Present*	he	has	ha	hemos	habéis	han
	Preterit	hube	hubiste	hubo	hubimos	hubisteis	hubieron
	Future	habré	habrás	habrá	habremos	habréis	habrán
	Postpreterit	habría	habrias	habría	habríamos	habríais	habrían
	Copreterit	había	habías	había	habíamos	habíais	habían
Subjunctive	*Present*	haya	hayas	haya	hayamos	hayáis	hayan
	Preterit	hubiera / hubiese	hubieras / hubieses	hubiera / hubiese	hubiéramos / hubiésemos	hubierais / hubieseis	hubieran / hubiesen
Hypothetic		hubiere	hubieres	hubiere	hubiéremos	hubiereis	hubieren

TABLE II

CONJUGATION OF TENER

Infinitive, tener; *participle*, tenido; *gerund*, teniendo

		yo	tú	él	nosotros	vosotros	ellos
Indicative	*Present*	tengo	tienes	tiene	tenemos	tenéis	tienen
	Preterit	tuve	tuviste	tuvo	tuvimos	tuvisteis	tuvieron
	Future	tendré	tendrás	tendrá	tendremos	tendréis	tendrán
	Postpreterit	tendría	tendrías	tendría	tendríamos	tendríais	tendrían
	Copreterit	tenía	tenías	tenía	teníamos	teníais	tenían
Subjunctive	*Present*	tenga	tengas	tenga	tengamos	tengáis	tengan
	Preterit	tuviera / tuviese	tuvieras / tuvieses	tuviera / tuviese	tuviéramos / tuviésemos	tuvierais / tuvieseis	tuvieran / tuviesen
Hypothetic		tuviere	tuvieres	tuviere	tuviéremos	tuviereis	tuvieren
Imperative			ten	tenga	tengamos	tened	tengan

TABLE III

CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION

Infinitive, habl**ar**; *participle*, habl**ado**; *gerund*, habl**ando**

		yo	tú	él	nosotros	vosotros	ellos
Indicative	*Present*	habl**o**	habl**as**	habl**a**	habl**amos**	habl**áis**	habl**an**
	Preterit	habl**é**	habl**aste**	habl**ó**	habl**ámos**	habl**asteis**	habl**aron**
	Future	habl**aré**	habl**arás**	habl**ará**	habl**aremos**	habl**aréis**	habl**arán**
	Postpreterit	habl**aría**	habl**arías**	habl**aría**	habl**aríamos**	habl**aríais**	habl**arían**
	Copreterit	habl**aba**	habl**abas**	habl**aba**	habl**ábamos**	habl**abais**	habl**aban**
Subjunctive	*Present*	habl**e**	habl**es**	habl**e**	habl**emos**	habl**éis**	habl**en**
	Preterit	habl**ara** / habl**ase**	habl**aras** / habl**ases**	habl**ara** / habl**ase**	habl**áramos** / habl**ásemos**	habl**arais** / habl**aseis**	habl**aran** / habl**asen**
Hypothetic		habl**are**	habl**ares**	habl**are**	habl**áremos**	habl**areis**	habl**aren**
Imperative			habl**a**	habl**e**	habl**emos**	habl**ad**	habl**en**

TABLE IV

CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION

Infinitive, vend**er**; *participle*, vend**ido**; *gerund*, vend**iendo**

		yo	tú	él	nosotros	vosotros	ellos
Indicative	*Present*	vendo	vendes	vende	vend**emos**	vend**éis**	vend**en**
	Preterit	vend**í**	vend**iste**	vend**ió**	vend**imos**	vend**isteis**	vend**ieron**
	Future	vend**eré**	vend**erás**	vend**erá**	vend**eremos**	vend**eréis**	vend**erán**
	Postpreterit	vend**ería**	vend**erías**	vend**ería**	vend**eríamos**	vend**eríais**	vend**erían**
	Copreterit	vend**ía**	vend**ías**	vend**ía**	vend**íamos**	vend**íais**	vend**ían**
Subjunctive	*Present*	venda	vendas	venda	vend**amos**	vend**áis**	vend**an**
	Preterit	vend**iera** / vend**iese**	vend**ieras** / vend**ieses**	vend**iera** / vend**iese**	vend**iéramos** / vend**iésemos**	vend**ierais** / vend**ieseis**	vend**ieran** / vend**iesen**
Hypothetic		vend**iere**	vend**ieres**	vend**iere**	vend**iéremos**	vend**iereis**	vend**ieren**
Imperative			vende	venda	vend**amos**	vend**ed**	vend**an**

TABLE V

CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION

Infinitive, permit**ir**; *participle*, permit**ido**; *gerund*, permit**iendo**

		yo	tú	él	nosotros	vosotros	ellos
Indicative	*Present*	permit**o**	permit**es**	permit**e**	permit**imos**	permit**ís**	permit**en**
	Preterit	permit**í**	permit**iste**	permit**ió**	permit**ímos**	permit**isteis**	permit**ieron**
	Future	permit**iré**	permit**irás**	permit**irá**	permit**iremos**	permit**iréis**	permit**irán**
	Postpreterit	permit**iría**	permit**irías**	permit**iría**	permit**iríamos**	permit**iríais**	permit**irían**
	Copreterit	permit**ía**	permit**ías**	permit**ía**	permit**íamos**	permit**íais**	permit**ían**
Subjunctive	*Present*	permit**a**	permit**as**	permit**a**	permit**amos**	permit**áis**	permit**an**
	Preterit	permit**iera** / permit**iese**	permit**ieras** / permit**ieses**	permit**iera** / permit**iese**	permit**iéramos** / permit**iésemos**	permit**ierais** / permit**ieseis**	permit**ieran** / permit**iesen**
Hypothetic		permit**iere**	permit**ieres**	permit**iere**	permit**iéremos**	permit**iereis**	permit**ieren**
Imperative			permit**e**	permit**a**	permit**amos**	permit**id**	permit**an**

TABLE VI

CONJUGATION OF SER

Infinitive, ser; *participle*, sido; *gerund*, siendo

		yo	tú	él	nosotros	vosotros	ellos
Indicative	*Present*	soy	eres	es	somos	sois	son
	Preterit	fuí	fuiste	fué	fuimos	fuisteis	fueron
	Future	seré	serás	será	seremos	seréis	serán
	Postpreterit	sería	serías	sería	seríamos	seríais	serían
	Copreterit	era	eras	era	éramos	erais	eran
Subjunctive	*Present*	sea	seas	sea	seamos	seáis	sean
	Preterit	fuera / fuese	fueras / fueses	fuera / fuese	fuéramos / fuésemos	fuerais / fueseis	fueran / fuesen
Hypothetic		fuere	fueres	fuere	fuéremos	fuereis	fueren
Imperative			sé	sea	seamos	sed	sean

TABLE VII

CONJUGATION OF ESTAR

Infinitive, estar; *participle*, estado; *gerund*, estando

		yo	tú	él	nosotros	vosotros	ellos
Indicative	*Present*	estoy	estás	está	estamos	estáis	están
	Preterit	estuve	estuviste	estuvo	estuvimos	estuvisteis	estuvieron
	Future	estaré	estarás	estará	estaremos	estaréis	estarán
	Postpreterit	estaría	estarías	estaría	estaríamos	estaríais	estarían
	Copreterit	estaba	estabas	estaba	estábamos	estabais	estaban
Subjunctive	*Present*	esté	estés	esté	estemos	estéis	estén
	Preterit	estuviera estuviese	estuvieras estuvieses	estuviera estuviese	estuviéramos estuviésemos	estuvierais estuvieseis	estuvieran estuviesen
Hypothetic		estuviere	estuvieres	estuviere	estuviéremos	estuviereis	estuvieren
Imperative			está	esté	estemos	estad	estén

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 3)

THE SUBSTANTIVE

CLASSES OF NOUNS

CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO MEANING AND USE

1. With regard to their meaning and use, nouns are divided into three main classes; namely: *proper nouns* (*nombres propios*), *common nouns* (*nombres apelativos*), and *surnames* (*apellidos*).

2. A **proper noun** is a noun that has no meaning by itself, and can be arbitrarily assigned to any individual thing* of a class, in order to distinguish it from other things of the same class.

Juan, *John*	Filadelfia, *Philadelphia*
Pedro, *Peter*	Misisipí, *Mississippi*
María, *Mary*	Atlántico, *Atlantic*

3. A **common noun** is a noun that has a meaning by itself, and is therefore capable of being defined.

hombre, *man*	virtud, *virtue*
mesa, *table*	quinina, *quinine*
historia, *history*	jueves, *Thursday*
química, *chemistry*	julio, *July*

*The word *thing* is here, as in other similar cases, used in its most general signification to denote whatever can be thought of: it includes, therefore, persons, animals, and abstract objects of thought (as beauty, virtue), no less than lifeless material beings.

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

4. A **surname,** or **family name,** is a noun used as the name of a family, and added to the baptismal name of every member of the family.

Cervera	Castro	Díaz
Quesada	Gómez	Calderón

CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO FORM

5. With regard to their form, nouns are divided into four classes; namely: *primitive nouns* (*nombres primitivos*), *derived nouns* (*nombres derivados*), *compound nouns* (*nombres compuestos*), and *simple nouns* (*nombres simples*).

It may be well to remark that this classification applies not only to nouns, but to all classes of words; that is, all words are either primitive or derived, simple or compound.

6. A **primitive noun** is a noun not obtained, or formed, from another word used in the language.

Juan, *John*	revolución, *revolution*
día, *day*	república, *republic*
oro, *gold*	libertad, *liberty*

7. A **derived noun** is one which is *derived*—that is, formed—from another word used in the language. Derived words are generally formed by the addition of some special endings to primitive words.

arboleda, *grove*—derived from **árbol,** *tree*
hermosura, *beauty*—derived from **hermoso,** *beautiful*
exactitud, *exactness*—derived from **exacto,** *exact*
comedor, *dining room*—derived from **comer,** *to eat*
comprador, *buyer*—derived from **comprar,** *to buy*

A derived word is also called a **derivative.**

A word from which another is derived is called the **primitive** of the latter word.

8. A **compound noun** is a noun consisting of two or more Spanish words. Nouns formed by the combination of foreign words are not treated as compound. Common compound nouns are generally written as one word; proper compound nouns, as two words.

mondadientes, *toothpick* (literally, *clean teeth*)—compound of the imperative **monda,** *clean*, and the noun **dientes,** *teeth*.

sinrazón, *injustice* (literally, *without reason*)—compound of the preposition **sin,** *without*, and the noun **razón,** *reason*.

hazmerreír, *laughing stock* (literally, *make me laugh*)—compound of the imperative **haz,** *make*, the pronoun **me,** *me*, and the verb **reír,** *to laugh*.

Nueva-York, *New York*—compound of the adjective **nueva,** *new*, and the proper noun *York*.

Puerto-Rico, *Porto Rico* (literally, *Rich Port*)—compound of the noun **puerto,** *port*, and the adjective **rico,** *rich*.

9. A **simple noun** is a noun that is not compound.

prerrogativa, *prerogative*	padre, *father*
constancia, *constancy*	ciudad, *city*

COLLECTIVE NOUNS

10. Definition.—A **collective noun** is a noun that serves as the name of a group of individuals of the same kind, considered as forming a class or whole, and therefore referred to as one object.

gente, *people*	el público, *the public*	congreso, *congress*
clero, *clergy*	populacho, *populace*	ejército, *army*

11. Important Syntactic Difference Between Spanish and English Collective Nouns.—In Spanish, a collective noun is, in general, treated as a singular noun, and therefore verbs and adjectives referring to it are put in the singular form. This rule applies whether the action or fact denoted by the verb, or the condition denoted by the adjective, applies to the body, as a whole, of which the collective noun is the name, or separately to every one of its individuals. In the latter case, the collective noun is in English treated as a plural noun, requiring the plural form of the verb.

El **clero** de los Estados Unidos *es* más *tolerante* que el de Europa.	The clergy of the United States are more tolerant than the clergy of Europe.
Mucha **gente** *cree* que el comercio conduce á la degradación moral.	Many people think that commerce leads to moral degradation.

It would not be permissible to say *son* and *tolerantes* in the first example, nor *muchas* and *creen* in the second.

Some special constructions in which the foregoing rule is deviated from will be fully treated in another place.

AUGMENTATIVE NOUNS

12. Definition.—An **augmentative noun,** in the strict sense of the term, is a noun derived from another by the addition of an ending indicating large size or unusually conspicuous characteristic properties. Such nouns are often rendered by the respective English equivalents of the primitives from which they are derived, preceded by *large*, *big*, or *great;* sometimes, by special English nouns. The most common augmentative endings are *-ón* and *-azo* (*-ona* and *-aza* for the feminine).

hombre, *man:*	hombr**ón**, *large man*
libro, *book:*	libr**azo**, *large book*
silla, *chair:*	sill**ón**, *easy chair* (literally, *large chair*)
ladrón, *thief:*	ladron**azo**, *great* or *cunning thief*
ignorante, *ignorant person:*	ignorant**azo**, ignorant**ón**, *ignoramus*
pícaro, *rascal:*	picar**ón**, *great rascal*

13. Rules for the Addition of Endings.—It will be observed that in *hombrón*, the noun *hombre* is modified by omitting its last vowel before the ending *-ón* is added; while in *ladronazo*, the ending *-azo* is added without any modification in the form of the primitive *ladrón* (except the accent mark, as the only vowel emphasized in the derived word is the *a* of the added ending). These are special cases of the following important general

Rule.—*When an ending beginning with a vowel is to be added to a word for the formation of a derivative, the primitive, if it ends in a vowel, loses that vowel; otherwise, its form remains unaltered.*

Endings beginning with a consonant do not require any alteration of form in the primitive word before adding. If, however, an ending beginning with *e* or *i* is to be added to a word whose last letter is *c* or *z*, the final *c* is changed to *qu*,

and the final *z* to *c*. Thus, the plural of **vez,** *time*, is *ve***ces,** and that of **frac,** *dress coat*, is *fra***ques.** The changing of final *z* into *c* before *e* or *i* is somewhat arbitrary, the only reason for it being that it is not customary to write *z* before either of these vowels. The changing of final *c* into *qu*, however, is necessary in order to preserve the pronunciation of the original word. Thus, *c* in *frac* is pronounced like English *k*, and so is *qu* in *fraques;* whereas, if *fraces* were written as the plural of *frac*, it would sound like the plural of *fraz*.

For similar prosodic reasons, some endings added after *g* or *gu* require a change in the form of the word to which they are affixed. Thus, the first person plural of the imperative of **averiguar,** *to inquire*, is written *averigüemos;* were not the *u* marked with a dieresis, it would be silent, and the imperative would not sound as if formed regularly; for the first person plural of the imperative of regular verbs ending in *-ar* is formed so that the *sound* of the ending *-ar* is replaced by that of *-emos*, as in *am***emos** from *am***ar,** *to love*. Likewise, the first person plural of the imperative of **pagar,** *to pay*, is written *paguemos;* a *u* is introduced after the *g*, as otherwise this letter would have the sound of Spanish *j*, which is not the sound it has in the infinitive of the verb.

These slight modifications introduced for the purpose of preserving the sounds of certain letters are not deemed irregularities.

14. Other Meanings of Augmentative Endings. An augmentative ending sometimes conveys the idea of grotesqueness, contemptibleness, or coarseness, either with or without the implication of large size or uncommonly conspicuous features. This is often true of the endings *-ón*, *-azo*, and nearly always of the ending *-ote* (feminine, *-ota*)—the other common augmentative termination.

una soltera, *an unmarried woman:*	una solter**ona,** *an old maid*
una mujer, *a woman:*	una mujer**ona,** *a coarse, big woman*
su boca, *his mouth:*	su boc**aza,** *his big mouth*

un negro, *a negro:* un negr**azo,** *a big nigger*
un hombre, *a man:* un hombr**ote,** *a big fellow*
una palabra, *a word:* una palabr**ota,** *a loud-sounding but undignified or vulgar word*

15. Remarks on Augmentative Nouns.—With few exceptions, the use of augmentative nouns is restricted to familiar conversation and light literature. The same remark applies to diminutive nouns, soon to be treated.

There are other augmentative endings besides those considered in Arts. **12** and **14;** but the nouns formed with them have meanings that in the majority of cases cannot be ascertained by inspection, even if one knows the significations of the primitive nouns from which they are formed. The meanings of such augmentatives must be independently learned, and it is therefore useless to enumerate the endings entering into their formation.

The student's attention is called to the fact that, although nearly all augmentative nouns end in *-ón*, *-azo*, or *-ote*, it is not conversely true that all nouns having these endings are augmentatives, or even derived nouns at all. The following primitive nouns will serve as examples:

carb**ón,** *coal*	ladr**ón,** *thief*	az**ote,** *lash*
jam**ón,** *ham*	abr**azo,** *embrace*	bell**ota,** *acorn*
lecci**ón,** *lesson*	t**aza,** *cup*	derr**ota,** *defeat*

DIMINUTIVE NOUNS

16. Definition.—A **diminutive noun,** in the strict sense of the term, is a noun derived from another by the addition of an ending indicating small size. Such nouns can usually be rendered by prefixing *little* or *small* to the respective English equivalents of the Spanish nouns from which they are formed. By an extension of meaning, diminutive nouns are employed sometimes as terms of endearment, sometimes as contemptuous terms.

17. Diminutive Endings.—The following are the principal diminutive endings; the notation *-a* indicates that the feminine is formed by replacing the last vowel in the ending with *a*:

-cillo,-a	**-ico,-a**
-cito,-a	**-illo,-a**
-ecillo,-a	**-ito,-a**
-ecito,-a	

In general, *-ito* is added to names of things to denote smallness, and to those of persons and animals either to denote smallness or tender age, or as a mark of affection or sympathy; *-illo* is affectionately applied to animals and children, and contemptuously to grown people and lifeless things; *-cito* and *-cillo* take the place of *-ito* and *-illo*, respectively, when the primitive noun ends in *d*, *n*, *r*, *e*, or in an accented vowel.

These rules cover the most common cases, although they are by no means absolute. The correct use of both augmentative and diminutive endings must be learned by practice.

The following are examples of diminutive nouns:

cuarto, *room:*	cuart**ito**, cuart**ico**, *small room*
casa, *house:*	cas**ita**, *small house*
lápiz, *pencil:*	lapic**ito**, *small pencil* (see Art. **13**)
niño, *child:*	niñ**ito**, *little child*
muchacho, *boy:*	muchach**ito**, *little boy*
muchacha, *girl:*	muchach**ita**, *little girl*
hermano, *brother:*	herman**ito**, *little brother*
amigo, *friend:*	amig**uito**, *little friend* (see Art. **13**)
mujer, *woman:*	muj**ercita**, *little woman*
hombre, *man:*	hombre**cito**, *little man*
lección, *lesson:*	leccion**cita**, *short lesson*
joven, *young man:*	joven**cito**, *very young man*
madre, *mother:*	madre**cita**, *mother dear*
ciudad, *city:*	ciudad**cita**, *pretty little city*
papá, *papa:*	papa**cito**, *papa dear*
pájaro, *bird:*	paj**arillo**, *little bird, sweet little bird*
chico,-a, *young one:*	chiqu**illo,-a**, *little one* (see Art. **13**)
maestro, *teacher:*	maestr**illo**, *teacher of no account*
gorrión, *sparrow:*	gorrion**cillo**, *dear little sparrow*
actor, *actor:*	actor**cillo**, *actor of no account*
indio, *Indian:*	indi**ecito**, *little Indian*
pez, *fish:*	pec**ecito**, pec**ecillo**, *pretty little fish*

The diminutives *tod***ito**, *nad***ita**, *poqu***ito**, of **todo**, *all;* **nada**, *nothing*, and **poco**, *little*, respectively, are used as

emphatic familiar terms, although they have practically the same meanings as the corresponding primitives.

18. Other diminutive endings are: *ececito,-a*, *ezuelo,-a*, *huelo,-a*, *-uelo,-a*, *zuelo,-a*, which sometimes indicate contemptibleness, and at other times smallness accompanied by some quality worthy of admiration, such as beauty, gracefulness, roguishness, etc.; *-aco,-a*, *-ejo,-a*, *-ucho,-a*, *uzo,-a*, which imply insignificance, and often smallness besides; *-ote*, which is added to a few nouns with no other meaning than that of small size; and *-ete,-a*, which is often depreciative, although in a few cases it simply indicates smallness. Of these, *-huelo* and *-uelo* are equivalent, but the former is added to nouns ending in a non-diphthongal two-vowel combination.

pie, *foot:*	pie**cecito,** *pretty little foot*
hoyo, *hole:*	hoy**uelo,** *dimple* (literally, *little hole*)
arroyo, *brook:*	arroy**uelo,** *brooklet*
ojos, *eyes:*	oj**uelos,** *roguish*, or *tempting*, or *treacherous little eyes*
autor, *author:*	autor**zuelo,** *author of no importance*
doctor, *doctor:*	doctor**zuelo,** *doctor of little account*
aldea, *village:*	alde**huela,** *obscure, insignificant village*
animal, *animal:*	animal**ejo,** *small animal* (in contempt)
libro, *book:*	libr**ejo,** libr**aco,** *not-good-for-much book*
casa, *house:*	cas**ucha,** *shanty*
gente, *people:*	gent**uza,** *people of no account, nobodies*
isla, *island:*	isl**ote,** *islet*
mozo, *young man:*	mo**cete,** *insignificant young fellow*
ala, *wing:*	al**eta,** *fin*
historia, *history:*	histori**eta,** *short story*
ópera, *opera:*	oper**eta,** *operetta*

It will be observed that *-ote* is both an augmentative and a diminutive ending.

19. Pet Names.—Diminutive endings—mainly *-ito,-a*, and *-cito,-a*—are added to names of persons in order to form pet names. Such pet names, when applied to children, naturally convey the idea of smallness or tender age; otherwise, they are used as terms of endearment, and very often simply as terms of familiarity or intimacy, as pet names are in English. When the proper name to which a diminutive

termination is added ends in *s*, and is not accented on the last syllable, the *s* is transposed and added to that termination.

Juan, *John:*	Juan**ito**, *Johnnie*
Ana, *Anna:*	An**ita**, *Annie*
Carlos, *Charles:*	Carl**itos**, *Charley*
Inés, *Agnes:*	Ines**ita**, *Aggie*
Antonio, *Anthony:*	Antoñ**ito** (somewhat irregular), *Tony*
Dolores:	Dolor**itas**, Dolor**citas**
Mercedes:	Merced**itas**
Carmen:	Carmen**cita**

Unlike English pet names, the Spanish diminutives applied to women are exclusively restricted to very familiar language, and never take the place of true names. A woman would never sign her name *Carmen***cita**, *An***ita**, or *Dolor***itas**, unless writing to a near relative or an intimate friend; nor would she be addressed by a diminutive name except by those with whom she were on very familiar terms.

All pet names, whether formed by means of diminutive endings or not, are usually, though perhaps improperly, classed as diminutives. Some of them are very irregularly derived, while others are not derived at all, being in reality primitive nouns. The following are examples:

José, *Joseph:*	Pepe, Chepe, *Joe*
Francisco, *Francis:*	Pacho, *Frank*
Francisca, *Frances:*	Pacha, *Frankie*, *Fannie*
Concepción:	Concha
Josefa:	Chepa, Pepa

These pet names carry no other implication than that of familiarity. By the addition of diminutive endings, they become terms of affection: *Pach***ita**, *Pep***ita**, *Chep***ito**.

20. Ending Combinations.—A diminutive or an augmentative noun is sometimes treated as a primitive, from which another diminutive or augmentative noun is formed. If the endings have the same meaning, their combination has a cumulative effect; otherwise, the first ending modifies the primitive, and the second modifies the word derived from the primitive by the addition of the first. The combined

endings may be both augmentative, both diminutive, or one augmentative and one diminutive. The following combinations will serve as examples:

-ON,-AZO

un hombr**onazo**, *a very big fellow* (see Art. **14**)
una solter**onaza**, *a big old maid* (see Art. **14**)

-ITO,-ICO

tod**itico**, *everything* (still more emphatic than *todito*, Art. **17**)
un poqu**itico**, *a very little, a little bit* (see Art. **17**)

-CILLO,-UELO

un autor**cilluelo**, *a very insignificant author*

-ÓN,-CITO

hipócrita, *hypocrite:* tú, hipocrit**oncito**, *you great little hypocrite* (said to a child, scoldingly)

NUMBER IN NOUNS

SIMPLE NOUNS

21. Simple Common Nouns.—The plural of simple common nouns is formed from the singular by the following rules:

Rule I.—*Nouns that in the singular end in a non-emphatic vowel or in an emphatic* **-e**, *add* **-s**.

hombre, *man:*	hombre**s**, *men*
casa, *house:*	casa**s**, *houses*
mano, *hand:*	mano**s**, *hands*
tribu, *tribe:*	tribu**s**, *tribes*
pie, *foot:*	pie**s**, *feet*
pagaré, *promissory order:*	pagaré**s**, *promissory orders*
corsé, *corset:*	corsé**s**, *corsets*
fe, *faith:*	fe**s**, *faiths*

EXCEPTIONS.—The one-syllable names of letters of the alphabet form the plural by adding *es*.

una **be**, *one b:*	dos be**es**, *two b's*
una **te**, *one t:*	dos te**es**, *two t's*

The plural *fe**es*** of **fe**, *faith*, and others formed by adding *-es* to nouns ending in an emphatic *e*, are sometimes met with.

The best usage, however, sanctions the formation of the plural of all such nouns according to the general rule.

Rule II. — *Nouns that in the singular end in a consonant or in an accented vowel other than* **e**, *add* **-es**.

mártir, *martyr:*	mártir**es**, *martyrs*
joven, *young man:*	jóven**es**, *young men*
baúl, *trunk:*	baúl**es**, *trunks*
ciudad, *city:*	ciudad**es**, *cities*
frac, *dress coat:*	frac**es**, *dress coats* (see Art. **13**)
alférez, *lieutenant:*	alférec**es**, *lieutenants* (see Art. **13**)
mes, *month:*	mes**es**, *months*
revés, *disaster:*	revés**es**, *disasters*
pachá, bajá, *pasha:*	pach**aes**, baj**aes**, *pashas*
rey, *king:*	rey**es**, *kings*
rubí, *ruby:*	rubí**es**, *rubies*
rondó, *rondeau:*	rondo**es**, *rondeaus*
bambú, *bamboo:*	bambú**es**, *bamboos*

Exceptions. — 1. The following nouns ending in *-á* and *-ó* form the plural by adding *-s*:

mamá, *mama:*	mamá**s**
papá, *papa:*	papá**s**
sofá, *sofa:*	sofá**s**
chacó, *military cap:*	chacó**s**
chapó, *four-handed billiard game:*	chapó**s**

Some good authorities form the plural of nouns ending in *-ó* or *-ú*, and that of the nouns **bisturí**, *surgeon's knife*, and **zaquizamí**, *garret*, by adding *-s*: *rondó***s**, *bambú***s**, *bisturí***s**, etc. The plural of *maravedí* — the name of a very small Spanish coin — is formed in any of the three following manners: *maravedí***es**, *maravedí***s**, *maravedi***ses**.

2. Nouns ending in *-s* or *-x* and not accented on the last syllable, and a few terms taken from the Latin, have the same form for both numbers.

un jueves, *one Thursday:*	dos jueves, *two Thursdays*
el paréntesis, *the parenthesis:*	los paréntesis, *the parentheses*
el fénix, *the phœnix:*	los fénix, *the phœnixes*
el ultimátum, *the ultimatum:*	los ultimátum, *the ultimatums*
el déficit, *the deficit:*	los déficit, *the deficits*

However, the plural of **álbum**, *album*, is *álbumes*.

3. The plural of **lord,** *lord*, is *lores*.

4. **Carácter,** *character*, has the irregularly-accented plural *caracteres* (emphasis on the first *e*). The plurals *regímenes* and *crateres* of **régimen,** *régime*, and **cráter,** *crater*, are also common, although the regular forms are preferable.

22. Surnames. — Surnames ending in *-z* and not accented on the last syllable have the same form for both numbers; all others follow the rules applying to common nouns.

el señor Pérez, *Mr. Perez:* los señores Pérez, *Messrs. Perez*
la señorita Ruiz, *Miss Ruiz:* las señoritas Ruic**es**, *the Misses Ruiz*
el señor Parra, *Mr. Parra:* los señores Parra**s**, *Messrs. Parra*
María Herrán, *Mary Herran:* las Herran**es**, *the Herran girls*
los Herran**es**, *the Herran family*
los Henao**s**, *the Henao family*

23. With few exceptions, foreign surnames have the same form in the plural as in the singular.

los Wáshington, los Franklin, los Bismarck

Indeed, some good authorities apply this rule to Spanish surnames also.

las señoritas **Parra** (not, *Parra***s**)
las **Herrán,** los **Henao** (not, *Herran***es**, *Henao***s**)

The best usage, however, agrees with the general rule given in Art. **22.**

24. Proper Nouns. — Proper nouns are only occasionally used in the plural, and, when so used, follow the rules applying to common simple nouns.

En esa familia hay muchos *Juan***es**.	There are many Johns in that family.
En los Estados Unidos hay muchos *Guillermo***s**, y en Irlanda muchos *Miguel***es**.	In the United States there are many Williams, and in Ireland, many Michaels.
El istmo de Panamá une las dos *América***s**.	The Isthmus of Panama joins the two Americas.

Proper nouns that by an extension of meaning are converted into common nouns, follow Rules I and II, Art. **21.**

Los *Homeros* (poetas como Homero) han sido muy raros en el mundo.	Homers (poets like Homer) have been very rare in the world.
Hoy he vendido veinte *Césares* y quince *Salustios* (veinte ejemplares de las obras de César, y quince de las de Salustio).	I have sold today twenty Cæsars and fifteen Sallusts (twenty copies of Cæsar's works, and fifteen of Sallust's).

COMPOUND NOUNS

25. Compound nouns form their plural according to the following rules:

Rule I.—*Compounds formed by the combination of two substantives, or of a substantive and an adjective, form the plural by the modification of both component words, according to the rules governing the plural of simple nouns (which apply to adjectives as well).*

la bocacalle, *the street intersection:*	las bocas**calles**, *the street intersections*
el ricohombre, *the grandee:*	los ricos**hombres**, the *grandees*

EXCEPTIONS.—The following compound nouns form the plural by adding *s* to the second component element:

bocamanga, *wristband:*	bocamanga**s**
montepío, *pawn shop:*	montepío**s**
padrenuestro, *paternoster:*	padrenuestro**s**
vanagloria, *boast:*	vanaglori**as**

Rule II.—*All other compound nouns form the plural as if they were simple nouns, and therefore follow the rules laid down in Art.* **21.**

sordomudo, *deaf mute:*	sordomudo**s**
hazmerreír, *laughing stock:*	hazmerreí**res**
pasatiempo, *pastime:*	pasatiempo**s**
el mondadientes, *the toothpick:*	**los** mondadientes (Art. **21**, Rule II, Exception 2)

EXCEPTIONS.—In the following compound nouns, only the first element is altered for the formation of the plural:

cualquiera, *any one:*	cual**es**quiera, *any ones*
quienquiera, *any person:*	quien**es**quiera, *any persons*
hijodalgo, *nobleman:*	hijos**d**algo, *noblemen*
hijadalgo, *noblewoman:*	hijas**d**algo, *noblewomen*

NOUNS USED IN THE PLURAL ONLY

26. The following nouns, and others of less importance, are used in the plural number only:

los aborígenes, *the aborigines*
los adentros (de uno), (*one's*) *inner self*
los afueras, *the outskirts*
las albricias, *the reward*
los alrededores, *the environs*
los Alpes, *the Alps*
los anales, *the annals*
las andas (*a portable platform for carrying images*)
los Andes, *the Andes*
los andurriales, *the byways*
las Antillas, *the West Indies*
los antípodas, *the antipodes*
los añicos, *the bits, the smithereens*
las Azores, *the Azores*
los bienes, *the property*
los calzoncillos, *the drawers* (*underclothing*)
los celos, *the jealousy*
los comicios, *the comitia*
las córtes, *the cortes* (*Spanish parliament*)
las efemérides, *the ephemeris*
las enaguas, *the underskirt*
los enseres, *the chattels*
los esponsales, *the betrothal*
las esposas, *the handcuffs*
las exequias, *the obsequies*
las Filipinas, *the Philippines*
las gafas, *the eye glasses*
los grillos, *the fetters*
las honras, *the obsequies*
las ínfulas, *the airs* (*haughtiness*)
las letras, *literature, belles lettres*
las mientes, *the mind*
los modales, *the manners*
las nupcias, *the nuptials*
las partes, *the parts* (*accomplishments*)
las pinzas, *the nippers*
los Pirineos, *the Pyrenees*
las tenazas, *the tongs*
las tijeras, *the scissors*
las tinieblas, *the darkness*
los víveres, *the provisions*

The singular form *enagua* is frequently heard, especially in Spain and Cuba, but is not sanctioned by good usage.

With reference to one of the antipodes, the singular *antípoda* is correct.

The poets often say *el Ande*, *el Alpe*, *la tiniebla*, and with reference to one of the West Indian islands, *la Antilla*.

27. The following nouns may be properly used as either singular or plural, although the plural form is preferable:

el calzón, los calzones, *the breeches*
el pantalón, los pantalones, *the trousers*
el funeral, los funerales, *the funeral*

28. Geographical names having a plural form but denoting a single object, are used as singular nouns.

Buenos-Aires **es** la capital de la República Argentina.	Buenos Ayres is the capital of the Argentine Republic.
El *Amazonas* **es** el río más caudaloso del mundo.	The Amazon is the largest river in the word.

It would not be permissible to say *son* in the first example, nor *el* and *son* in the second.

GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES AND OF SUBSTANTIVE PHRASES

GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES ACCORDING TO SEX

29. General Rule. — *All substantives denoting individuals of the male sex are masculine; those denoting individuals of the female sex are feminine.*

el caballo, *the horse*	**la** esposa, *the wife*
la yegua, *the mare*	**el** rey, *the king*
el hombre, *the man*	**la** reina, *the queen*
la mujer, *the woman*	**el** intérprete, *the man interpreter*
el presidente, *the president*	**la** intérprete, *the woman interpreter*
el esposo, *the husband*	

In the following examples, the gender is plainly indicated by the form of the adjectives:

José es casad**o**.	Joseph is married.
Josefina es casad**a**.	Josephine is married.
El hombre dijo, "*Yo* soy católic**o**," y *la mujer*, "*Yo* soy mahometan**a**."	The man said, "I am Catholic," and the woman, "I am Mohammedan."
¿Es *usted* español**a**, *señorita?*—Sí, *señor;* ¿y *usted* también es **español?**	Are you Spanish, miss?—Yes, sir; and are you also Spanish?

In this rule are included the names of beings that through ignorance or fancy are or have been represented as belonging to either sex.

el ángel, *the angel*	**el** diablo, *the devil*
el dios, *the god*	**el** centauro, *the centaur*
la diosa, *the goddess*	**la** ninfa, *the nymph*

30. Gender Forms.—Many nouns denoting persons or animals have special endings to indicate sex. In other cases, sex is indicated by independent words. The masculine form is customarily treated as the fundamental form of all nouns, and is used as a general term to include both males and females, when no distinction of sex is necessary. Thus, *el* **hombre**, like its English equivalent *man*, embraces all mankind, both men and women; and with reference to kings in general, the masculine form *los* **reyes** denotes both kings —*reyes*— and queens —*reinas*.

With regard to gender forms indicating sex, the following statements may be made:

1. Many nouns ending in *-o*, *-ante*, *-ente*, *-ete*, *-ote*, and those ending in a consonant (*y* excepted) and accented on the last syllable, form the feminine by adding *-a* (see Art. **13**).

el criad**o**, *the male servant:*	la criad**a**, *the female servant*
el amig**o**, *the male friend:*	la amig**a**, *the female friend*
el perr**o**, *the dog:*	la perr**a**, *the she-dog*
el sobrin**o**, *the nephew:*	la sobrin**a**, *the niece*
el hermán**o**, *the brother:*	la hermán**a**, *the sister*
el hij**o**, *the son:*	la hij**a**, *the daughter*
el elef**ante**, *the elephant:*	la elefant**a**, *the female elephant*
el hotentot**e**, *the Hottentot:*	la hotentot**a**, *the Hottentot woman*
el pari**ente**, *the relative:*	la parient**a**, *the woman relative*
el señ**or**, *the gentleman:*	la señor**a**, *the lady*
el marqu**és**, *the marquis:*	la marques**a**, *the marchioness*
el bailar**ín**, *the dancer:*	la bailarin**a**, *the woman dancer*
el zagal, *the shepherd:*	la zagal**a**, *the shepherdess*
el capitán, *the captain:*	la capitan**a**, *the woman captain*

The feminine of **hijodalgo**, *nobleman*, is **hijadalgo**. The nouns **testigo**, *witness;* **juez**, *judge;* **miembro**, *member*, and **reo**, *culprit*, have the same form for the two genders.

el juez, *la* juez	*el* miembro, *la* miembro
el testigo, *la* testigo	*el* reo, *la* reo

Many proper nouns of women are formed after the same rule.

Francisc**o**, *Francis:*	Francisc**a**, *Francess*
Juan, *John:*	Juan**a**, *Joan, Jane*
Rafael, Jesús:	Rafael**a**, Jesus**a**

2. Most all nouns in *-a*, *-e* (except those in *-ante*, *-ente*), and those ending in a consonant and not accented on the last syllable, have the same form for the two genders.

el patriota, *the man patriot:*	la patriota, *the woman patriot*
el contabilista, *the accountant:*	la contabilista, *the woman accountant*
el intérprete, *the interpreter:*	la intérprete, *the woman interpreter*
el cómplice, *the accomplice:*	la cómplice, *the woman accomplice*
el tigre, *the tiger:*	la tigre, *the tigress*
el mártir, *the martyr:*	la mártir, *the woman martyr*
el joven, *the young man:*	la joven, *the young woman*

The following are some of the exceptions to this rule:

el huésped, *the boarder:*	la huéspeda, *the woman boarder*
el monje, *the monk:*	la monja, *the nun*
el sastre, *the tailor:*	la sastra, *the woman tailor*

3. The following nouns form the feminine by adding *-esa:*

el abad, *the abbot:*	la abadesa, *the abbess*
el alcaide, *the warden:*	la alcaidesa, *the warden's wife*
el alcalde, *the mayor:*	la alcaldesa, *the mayor's wife*
el barón, *the baron:*	la baronesa, *the baroness*
el conde, *the count:*	la condesa, *the countess*
el duque, *the duke:*	la duquesa, *the duchess*

It will be observed that a woman assumes her husband's title of office. So, too, a general's wife is called *generala*. This, however, is not always permissible in serious style.

4. The following add *-isa:*

el diácono, *the deacon:*	la diaconisa, *the deaconess*
el poeta, *the poet:*	la poetisa, *the poetess*
el profeta, *the prophet:*	la profetisa, *the prophetess*
el sacerdote, *the priest:*	la sacerdotisa, *the priestess*

5. The following are peculiar forms not included in any of the foregoing paragraphs:

el actor, *the actor:*	la actriz, *the actress*
el cantor, *the singer:*	la cantatriz, *the woman singer*
el emperador, *the emperor:*	la emperatriz, *the empress*
el gallo, *the cock:*	la gallina, *the hen*
el héroe, *the hero:*	la heroína, *the heroine*
el rey, *the king:*	la reina, *the queen*
el príncipe, *the prince:*	la princesa, *the princess*

6. Surnames do not change to indicate sex.

el señor Cervera, *Mr. Cervèra:*	la señora Cervera, *Mrs. Cervera*
Pedro Henao, *Peter Henao:*	María Henao, *Mary Henao*

31. Sex Indicated by Independent Nouns.—In the following pairs of nouns, the masculine and the feminine are entirely independent words:

el caballo, *the horse:*	la yegua, *the mare*
el hombre, el varón, *the man:*	la mujer, *the woman*
el macho, *the male:*	la hembra, *the female*
el padre, *the father:*	la madre, *the mother*
el toro, *the bull:*	la vaca, *the cow*
el yerno, *the son-in-law:*	la nuera, *the daughter-in-law*

32. Epicene Nouns.—Some nouns, called **epicene nouns,** apply to both sexes, without changing either their form or their gender. To this class belong the names of birds and of nearly all small animals. As a rule, those ending in *-a*, *-e*, or *-iz* are feminine; all others, masculine.

la abeja, *the bee*	el loro, *the parrot*
la culebra, *the snake*	el avestruz, *the ostrich*
la hormiga, *the ant*	la codorniz, *the quail*
la liebre, *the hare*	la perdiz, *the partridge*
la chinche, *the bedbug*	el faisán, *the pheasant*
el gusano, *the worm*	el pez, *the fish*
el insecto, *the insect*	

The nouns **macho,** *male,* and **hembra,** *female,* are added to epicenes to denote sex.

la culebra **macho,** *the male snake:*	la culebra **hembra,** *the female snake*
un loro **macho,** *a male parrot:*	un loro **hembra,** *a female parrot*

It will be observed that, whatever the sex indicated, the article prefixed to an epicene noun remains unaltered. Other adjectives may be made to agree with the nouns *macho* and *hembra*, although it is preferable to make them agree with the article.

La *paloma* **macho** es muy *hermos***o,** or, better, **La** *paloma* **macho** es muy *hermos***a.**	The male pigeon is very handsome.

El *loro* **hembra** es tan *hablador***a** como el loro macho, or, better, **El** *loro* **hembra** es tan **hablador** como el loro macho.	The female parrot is as talkative as the male.

In cases of this kind, however, it is better to use an entirely different form of expression, saying **el macho de—**, *the male of—*; **la hembra de—**, *the female of—*. The adjective should then agree with either *macho* or *hembra*, as the case may be.

El macho de la paloma es muy *hermoso*.	The male of the pigeon is very handsome.
La hembra del loro es tan *hablador***a** como el macho.	The female of the parrot is as talkative as the male.

33. Among epicene nouns applying to human beings, **la persona**, *the person*, is worthy of notice. As indicated by the article, this noun is feminine—unlike the English *person*, which is used as masculine, being represented by the masculine pronoun *he*.

El señor Rodríguez es *persona* muy buen**a** (*not*, buen**o**) y muy honrad**a** (*not*, honrad**o**).	Mr. Rodriguez is a very kind and very honest person.
Aquí estuvieron vari**as** (*not*, vari**os**) *personas*, pero yo no hablé con ninguna (*not*, ninguno) de ell**as** (*not*, ell**os**).	Several persons were here, but I did not speak with any of them.

34. Use of the Masculine Plural to Indicate Individuals of Both Sexes.—It was stated (Art. **30**) that, when there are two nouns to indicate the sex of classes of persons or animals, the masculine noun is employed to denote the whole class: **los reyes**, like the English *kings*, means all kings and queens; and, similarly, speaking of the duties of children to their parents, the expression **los hijos**, *sons*, may be taken in a general sense to denote all sons and daughters, and the expression **los padres**, *fathers*, to denote all fathers and mothers.

The plural masculine form is likewise used to denote special groups of individuals belonging to the same class, but of different sexes.

padre, *father*
madre, *mother* } mis **padres**, *my parents*

rey, *king*
reina, *queen* } Ví á los **reyes**, *I saw the king and queen*

hijo, *son*
hija, *daughter* } mis hij**os**, *my children*

sobrino, *nephew*
sobrina, *niece* } mis sobrin**os**, *my nephews and nieces*

GENDER OF NOUNS ACCORDING TO ENDING

35. The gender of nouns not included in the foregoing articles is ascertained by the following

General Rule.—*Nouns ending in either* **-a** *or* **-d** *are feminine; other nouns, masculine.*

la casa, *the house*	**el** catre, *the cot*
la plata, *the silver*	**el** café, *the coffee*
la ciudad, *the city*	**el** libro, *the book*
la virtud, *the virtue*	**el** chacó, *the military cap*
la mitad, *the half*	**el** carbón, *the coal*
el rubí, *the ruby*	**el** gravamen, *the encumbrance*
el espíritu, *the spirit*	**el** comedor, *the dining room*
el frac, *the dress coat*	**el** martes, *the Tuesday*
el papel, *the paper*	**el** país, *the country*
el árbol, *the tree*	**el** carey, *the turtle shell*
el álbum, *the album*	**el** ajedrez, *the chess game*

There are a great many exceptions to this rule. The most important ones are given in the next article. As will be observed, some of the nouns that deviate from the general rule form special groups or classes, and can, therefore, be included under a secondary rule; others, on the contrary, cannot be classified, and their gender must be separately learned.

36. EXCEPTIONS.—1. *Names of Cities and Letters.*—The names of cities, and those of letters, are feminine.

La *i* es la tercera vocal.	*I* is the third vowel.
La *beta* es la segunda letra del alfabeto griego.	Beta is the second letter of the Greek alphabet.
Buenos-Aires está situad**a** en la boca del Plata.	Buenos Ayres is situated at the mouth of the Plata.
La bell**a** *Corinto* fué fácilmente conquistad**a**.	The beautiful Corinth was easily conquered.

The names of some cities are occasionally used as masculine, especially if they end in *-o*; but it is always correct to use them as feminine.

2. *Names of rivers, oceans, seas, mountains, and ships,* in which the nouns **río,** *river;* **océano,** *ocean;* **mar,** *sea;* **monte,** *mount;* **montes,** *mountains;* **buque,** *ship* are understood, are masculine, regardless of their ending. This can scarcely be considered an exception, as the gender of such nouns is naturally that of the common nouns understood before them.

el (río) *Plata*, **el** (río) *Magdalena*, **el** (océano) *Atlántico* **el** (mar) *Mediterráneo*, **el** (monte) *Etna*, **los** (montes) *Himalayas*.	the Plata (river), the Magdalena (river), the Atlantic (ocean), the Mediterranean (sea), the Etna (mount), the Himalaya (mountains).
El (buque) *María Teresa* y **el** (buque) *Vizcaya* fueron capturad**os** en la batalla de Santiago.	The Maria Teresa and the Vizcaya were captured at the battle of Santiago.

3. *Words Used as Their Own Names.*—Any word referred to simply as a word, irrespectively of its meaning, is treated as a masculine noun.

"*Naturaleza*" es femenin**o**.	"Nature" is feminine.
Este párrafo contiene much**os** "*paras*."	This paragraph contains many "for's."
Ese "*bella*" es innecessario en esa frase.	That "beautiful" is unnecessary in that phrase.

4. *Exceptions Among Nouns Ending in* **-a.**—The following are masculine:

(*a*) A few ending in *-á.*

el albalá, *the letter patent*	el maná, *the manna*
el sofá, *the sofa*	el Canadá, *Canada*

(*b*) Nearly all those derived from the Greek and ending in *-ma.*

el emblema, *the emblem*	el programa, *the program*
el poema, *the poem*	el síntoma, *the symptom*
el clima, *the climate*	el sistema, *the system*

The following, however, are feminine:

la apostema, *the gathering, the abscess*	la estratagema, *the stratagem*
el asma,* *the asthma*	la fantasma, *the apparition*
la broma, *the jest*	la flema, *the phlegm*
la diadema, *the diadem*	la tema, *the dislike, the animosity*

When *fantasma* means *phantasm*, it is masculine: *una fantasma* is a real apparition; **un** *fantasma*, something seen in imagination.

Anatema, *anathem*, is **ambiguous;** that is, can be used as either masculine or feminine at pleasure. It is, however, more commonly used as masculine.

(*c*) Also,

el cólera, *the cholera*	el día, *the day*
el cometa, *the comet*	el mapa, *the map*
el contra, *the cons* (in *the pros and the cons*)	el planeta, *the planet*

5. *Exceptions Among Nouns in* **-d.**—The following are masculine:

el almud (*a dry measure*)	el ataúd, *the coffin*
el alud, *the avalanche*	el césped, *the grass, the sod*
el ardid, *the ruse*	el laúd, *the lute*
el áspid, *the asp*	el sud, *the south*
el Talmud, *the Talmud*	

6. *Exceptions Among Nouns in* **-e.**—A great many nouns ending in *-e* are feminine. Only the most important will be given here.

(*a*) The names of mathematical lines.

la tangente, *the tangent*	la elipse, *the ellipse*

(*b*) Nouns ending in *-ie*, in which neither of these two vowels is emphasized.

la superficie, *the surface*	la intemperie, *the open air*
la serie, *the series*	la especie, *the species*

**Asma*, although feminine, takes the masculine form of the definite article, as do all feminine nouns beginning with an emphatic *a*, or with *ha*, the *a* being emphatic.

(*c*) Nouns ending in *-umbre* (except **el alumbre,** *the alum*).

la costumbre, *the custom*
la muchedumbre, *the throng*
la legumbre, *the vegetable* (*pulse*)
la lumbre, *the fire*
la azumbre (*a liquid measure*)
la cumbre, *the summit*

(*d*) Also,

la apócope, *the apocopation*
el ave,* *the fowl, the bird*
la calle, *the street*
la carne, *the meat, the beef*
la catástrofe, *the catastrophe*
la clase, *the class*
la clave, *the key* (*as to a text-book*)
la cohorte, *the cohort*
la corriente, *the current*
la corte, *the* (*royal*) *court*
la chinche, *the bedbug*
la creciente, *the freshet*
la estirpe, *the stock, the lineage*
la falange, *the phalanx*
la faringe, *the pharynx*
la fase, *the phase*
la fe, *the faith*
la fiebre, *the fever*
la frase, *the phrase*
la fuente, *the fountain; the source*
la frente, *the forehead*
la gente, *the people*
el hambre,* *the hunger*
la hueste, *the host* (*army*)
la índole, *the character*
la ingle, *the groin*
la laringe, *the larynx*
la leche, *the milk*
la liebre, *the hare*
la llave, *the key*
la mente, *the mind*
la mole, *the massive thing*
la muerte, *the death*
la mugre, *the dirt*
la nave, *the ship; the aisle*
la nieve, *the snow*
la noche, *the night*
la nube, *the cloud*
la paralaje, *the parallax*
la parte, *the part*
la patente, *the patent*
la peste, *the pest, the plague*
la pirámide, *the pyramid*
la plebe, *the populace*
la prole, *the offspring*
la salve, *the Salve Regina*
la sangre, *the blood*
la sede, *the See* (*ecclesiastical term*)
la serpiente, la sierpe, } *the serpent*
la simiente, *the seed*
la suerte, *the fate, the lot*
la tarde, *the afternoon*
la tilde, *the accent mark*
la torre, *the tower*
la ubre, *the udder*

The following are ambiguous [see Art. **36,** 4 (*b*)]:

el *or* la dote, *the dowry*
el *or* la estambre, *the stamen*
el *or* la lente, *the lens*
el *or* la trípode, *the tripod*

Arte, *art*, is ambiguous in the singular (although, like all feminine nouns beginning with an emphatic *a*, it requires

*See foot-note on page 22.

the masculine form of the definite article); in the plural, feminine. The plural form *artes*, used without any qualification, generally has the same meaning as **bellas artes,** *fine arts.*

El *arte* de la escultura estaba muy avanzado (*or*, avanzada) entre los griegos.	The art of sculpture was far advanced among the Greeks.
Las *artes* están muy atrasadas en los Estados Unidos.	The fine arts are very little advanced in the United States.

7. *Exceptions Among Nouns in* **-i.**—The only important feminine noun ending in *-i* is **la metrópoli,** which means either *the metropolis* or *the mother country.*

8. *Exceptions Among Nouns in* **-l.**—The following are feminine:

la cal, *the lime*	la hiel, *the gall*
la canal, *the gutter, the trench*	la miel, *the honey*
la capital, *the capital (city)*	la moral, *the morals, ethics*
la cárcel, *the jail*	la pastoral, *the pastoral*
la col, *the cabbage*	la piel, *the skin*
la credencial, *the credential*	la señal, *the signal, the mark*
la decretal, *the decretal*	

9. *Exceptions Among Nouns in* **-n.**—The following are feminine:

(*a*) Those ending in *-ión.*

la canción, *the song*	la religión, *the religion*
la oración, *the prayer*	la rebelión, *the rebellion*
la transacción, *the transaction*	la sugestión, *the suggestion*
la discusión, *the discussion*	la reflexión, *the reflection*

The following, however, are masculine:

el bastión, *the bulwark*	el sarampión, *the measles*
el gorrión, *the sparrow*	

(*b*) Augmentatives in *-ón*, even if derived from feminine primitives.

el jarrón, *the large vase* (from **la jarra,** *the vase*)	el mujerón, *the big woman* (from **la mujer,** *the woman*)

It is to be observed that feminine nouns denoting living beings have feminine augmentatives in *-ona* or masculine in *-ón.*

el mujer**ón**, *or* **la** mujer**ona**, *the big woman*

el culebr**ón**, *or* **la** culebr**ona**, *the big snake*

(*c*) Also,

la clin, *or* la crin, *the mane*
la imagen, *the image*
la razón, *the reason*
la sartén, *the pan*
la sazón, *the ripeness; the occasion*
la sien, *the temple* (*side of the head*)

Margen, *bank, margin*, is ambiguous in the singular; in the plural, it is generally used as feminine.

el *or* la margen del río — the bank of the river
el *or* la margen de esta página — the margin of this page
las márgenes del Amazonas — the banks of the Amazon

With reference to the margin of a page, however, the masculine form is preferred.

Orden, *order*, is masculine when it means arrangement, disposition of things, succession of events, orderly conditions; and also when it denotes a group in a scientific classification. In all other cases it is feminine.

El *orden* de los factores no altera el producto. — The order of the factors does not alter the product.
Lo que comúnmente se llama **el** *orden* universal es una de las fantasías de la ignorancia. — What is commonly called universal order is one of the fancies of ignorance.
Aún no se ha restablecido **el** *orden* públic**o.** — Public order has not yet been reestablished.
¿Á cuál de **los** *órdenes* de esta clase zoológica pertenece el hombre? — To which of the orders of this zoological class does man belong?
¿Quién ha dado esa *orden?* — Who has given that order?
San Pacomio de Egipto fué el fundador de **las** *órdenes* monástic**as.** — St. Pachomius of Egypt was the founder of monastic orders.

10. *Exceptions Among Nouns in* **-o.**—Of ordinary nouns ending in **-o**, only **la mano,** *the hand*, is feminine.

11. *Exceptions Among Nouns in* **-r.**—The following are feminine:

la bajamar, *the low tide*
la flor, *the flower*
la labor, *the labor*
la segur, *the axe* (emblem of the law), *the sickle*
la pleamar, *the high tide*

The following are ambiguous:

azúcar, *sugar* | calor, *heat* | color, *color* | mar, *sea*

Of these, however, the three last mentioned are today generally used as masculine. When *mar*, followed by a proper noun, denotes a special body of water of which the noun is the name, it is invariably masculine.

el *mar* Mediterráneo, *the Mediterranean sea*
el *mar* Blanco, *the White sea*
el *mar* de las Antillas, *the Caribbean sea*

Mar is feminine in the colloquial idiomatic expression **la mar,** *a great deal, a great many.* Also, in the phrase **la alta mar,** *the high seas.*

12. *Exceptions Among Nouns in* **-s.**—The following are feminine:

(*a*) Nouns in *-sis* and *-xis* derived from the Greek.

la crisis, *the crisis* | la tesis, *the thesis* | la sintaxis, *the syntax*

But *Apocalipsis*, *Génesis*, and *paréntesis* are masculine, and **análisis,** *analysis*, and **énfasis,** *emphasis*, are ambiguous.

(*b*) Plural nouns ending in *-as* (see Art. **26**).

las albricias, *the reward* | las nupcias, *the nuptiats*

But **los afueras,** *the outskirts*, is masculine.

(*c*) Also,

las Azores, *the Azores*
la bilis, *the bite*
las córtes, *the cortes*
las efemérides, *the ephemeris*
las mientes, *the mind*
la mies, *the seed*
las partes, *the accomptishments, the endowments*
la res, *the head of cattte*
la tos, *the cough*

Cutis, *skin*, is ambiguous.

13. *Exception Among Nouns in* **-u.**—The only feminine noun ending in *-u* is **la tribu,** *the tribe.*

14. *Exceptions Among Nouns in* **-x.**—There are two:

la ónix, *the onyx* | la sardónix, *the sardonyx*

15. *Exceptions Among Nouns in* **-y.**—There are two:

la grey, *the ftock* | la ley, *the taw*

16. *Exceptions Among Nouns in* **-z.**—The following are feminine:

(*a*) All derived nouns in *-ez* indicating qualities in the abstract.

la altivez, *the haughtiness*
la honradez, *the honesty*
la embriaguez, *the drunkenness*
la niñez, *the childhood*

(*b*) Also,

la cerviz, *the cervix, the neck*
la cicatriz, *the scar*
la codorniz, *the quail*
la coz, *the kick*
la cruz, *the cross*
la faz, *the face*
la haz, *the surface*
la hez, *the scum, the dregs*
la hoz, *the sickle*
la lombriz, *the worm*
la luz, *the light*
la matriz, *the womb*
la nariz, *the nose*
la nuez, *the nut*
la paz, *the peace*
la perdiz, *the partridge*
la pez, *the pitch*
la pómez, *the pumice*
la raíz, *the root*
la tez, *the hue of the skin*
la vez, *the occasion, the time*
la voz, *the voice*

17. *Compound Nouns.*—Compounds whose second element is an unaltered noun, generally are of the same gender as that noun.

la sinrazón, *the injustice* [compound of **sin,** *without*, and **razón,** *reason*, the latter being feminine, Art. **36,** 9 (*c*)].

However, most all compounds of a verb and a substantive are masculine, even if the substantive is feminine.

el pasamano, *the railing*
el tapaboca, *the slap in the mouth*
el cortaplumas, *the knife*
el guardarropa, *the wardrobe*

37. Nouns Having Two Genders, but with Different Meanings.—There are some nouns that are used as either masculine or feminine, but in different senses. Several of these—as **orden,** *order*—have been already mentioned, but, for convenience of reference, are here grouped with others of the same class.

el atalaya, *the guard in a watch tower*
la atalaya, *the watch tower*
el cometa, *the comet*
la cometa, *the kite*
el cólera, *the cholera*
la cólera, *the anger, the wrath*
el corneta, *the bugler*
la corneta, *the bugle*
el corte, *the cut, the cutting*
la corte, *the (royal) court*
el canal, *the canal, the strait, the passage*
la canal, *the ditch, the gutter*

el capital, *the capital (wealth)*	la capital, *the capital (city)*
el espada, *the swordsman*	la espada, *the sword*
el fantasma, *the phantom*	la fantasma, *the apparition*
el frente, *the front*	la frente, *the forehead*
el gallina, *the coward (man)*	la gallina, *the hen*
el guía, *the guide (a man)*	la guía, *the guide (in every other sense)*
el guardia, *the guard (one man)*	la guardia, *the guard (a body of sotdiers)*
el levita, *the Levite*	la levita, *the frock coat*
el moral, *the mulberry tree*	la moral, *the morals, the ethics*
el orden, *the order* [see Art. **36**, 9 (*c*)]	la orden, *the order* [see Art. **36**, 9 (*c*)]
el ordenanza, *the orderly*	la ordenanza, *the ordinance, the regulation*
el parte, *the despatch, the report, the communication*	la parte, *the part*
el pez, *the fish*	la pez, *the pitch*
el tema, *the theme*	la tema, *the dislike, the animosity*
el trompeta, *the trumpeter*	la trompeta, *the trumpet*

38. General Remark on the Gender of Nouns.—As will be seen from the foregoing articles, the gender of nouns is rather a complex subject. The rules and exceptions here given cover all nouns met with in ordinary conversation and literature, and certainly all those that a beginner is likely to need. In cases of doubt, the dictionary should be resorted to. In Spanish dictionaries, the gender of every noun is indicated by one of the abbreviations *m.* or *f.*—*masculino* and *femenino*, respectively—printed after the noun.

NEUTERS

39. Neuter Substantives and Gender.—There are substantives that cannot be represented in discourse by either *él* or *ella*. They are, therefore, neither masculine nor feminine; hence, the name **neuter substantives,** or simply **neuters,** by which they are known. (The term *neuter* is derived from a Latin word meaning *neither one nor the other.*) They are said to be of the **neuter gender,** and are referred to, or represented by, **ello,** which is called the **neuter personal pronoun.**

The following are some of the most important neuters:

esto, *this*, meaning *this thing* or *this fact*
eso, *that*, meaning *that thing* or *that fact*
aquello, *that*, *yonder thing*, and also *that fact*
algo, *something*
mucho, *much*, *a great deal*
nada, *nothing*
poco, *little*
cuanto, **todo**, *everything*, *all*

The first three—*esto*, *eso*, *aquello*—belong to the class of **demonstrative pronouns.** They are often employed instead of *ello* to represent other neuters. The difference between *aquello* and *eso* will be presently explained.

Ello, like other personal pronouns, is inflective. The nominative and the prepositional form are both *ello;* the accusative is *lo*, and the dative *le*. These forms, when they can be translated literally, are rendered by *it*.

Neuter substantives are always singular, and resemble masculine substantives in that they require the masculine form of adjectives modifying them.

El señor Rojas dejó *esto* aquí, diciendo que **ello** nos podría ser útil.
Mr. Rojas left this here, saying that it might be useful to us.

Eso no merece la importancia que los filósofos, creyendo ver en **ello** una solución del gran problema, **le** han dado últimamente.
That does not deserve the importance that philosophers, believing to see in it a solution of the great problem, have lately given to it.

Perdí *cuanto* tenía, y, aunque **ello** no era mucho, me hubiera servido para vivir cómodamente cuatro años—el tiempo que gasté en ganar**lo.**
I lost all I had, and although it was not much, it would have enabled me to live (*or*, served to support me) comfortably for four years—the time I spent earning it.

Parece que hablaban de *algo* seri**o,** pero yo no pude oír ni una palabra de **ello.**
It seems that they were speaking of something serious, but I could not hear one word of it.

¿Qué es *aquello* blanco que parece nieve? ¿No **lo** ve usted?—Sí **lo** veo; pero *eso* no puede ser nieve, pues aquí no nieva nunca.
What is yonder white thing that looks like snow? Do you not see it?—Yes, I do; but that cannot be snow, for it never snows here.

Todo en la vida es incierto.	Everything in life is uncertain.
Nada es más traicionero que la fortuna; nada más caprichoso.	Nothing is more treacherous than fortune; nothing more capricious.

REMARK.—The words *algo*, *mucho*, *nada*, *poco*, *cuanto* do not always perform the functions of substantives; they can all perform the office of adverbs, and *mucho* and *poco*, that of adjectives. They are classed as neuters only when employed as substantives.

40. Neuter Demonstrative Pronouns.—The demonstrative pronouns *esto*, *eso*, *aquello* should not be confounded with the adjectives **este**, *this;* **ese**, *that;* **aquel**, *that*, *yonder*, which have the feminine forms *esta*, *esa*, *aquella*, and will here be called **demonstrative adjectives.** Although these adjectives are by some grammarians called demonstrative pronouns, they will not be so classed in this work, in which the term *pronoun* will be applied to substantives only.

41. With reference to material things, *esto* denotes objects that are nearer to the first than to the second person; *eso*, objects that are nearer to the second person; and *aquello*, objects that are equally remote from both persons. It is, however, proper to employ *eso* instead of *aquello*, as in English *that* instead of *yonder;* but the converse proposition is not true—*aquello* cannot always take the place of *eso*.

A person, referring to something lying beside him, or which he is holding, would ask,

¿Qué es *esto?*	What is this?

and the person addressed would answer,

Eso es un instrumento de agrimensura.	That is a surveying instrument.

In this case, *aquello* would not be permissible.

Referring to a distant object, either of the two following forms is proper, although the first is both more elegant and more common:

¿Qué es *aquello?*	What is that thing yonder?
¿Qué es *eso?*	What is that?

42. *Esto* serves to announce or introduce a statement, and also to reproduce a statement just made by the speaker or writer.

La diferencia entre el anarquismo y el socialismo consiste en *esto:* el anarquismo defiende la abolición de todo gobierno; el socialismo, la extensión de la esfera del gobierno.

The difference between anarchism and socialism consists in this: anarchism advocates the abolishment of all government; socialism, the extension of the sphere of government.

Los trabajadores de las minas piensan declarar otra huelga; *esto* sin duda causará muchos desórdenes.

The miners intend to declare another strike; this will no doubt cause many disturbances.

Eso reproduces a statement made by the person spoken to or of.

Creo que debemos atacar las fortificaciones esta noche. — *Eso* sería sacrificar nuestro ejército inútilmente.

I think we ought to attack the fortifications tonight. — That would be to uselessly sacrifice our army.

He oído decir que el gobierno americano piensa intervenir en la guerra de África; mas creo que en *eso* no hay nada cierto.

I have heard that the American government intends to interfere in the African war; but I think there is no truth in that (*literally*, there is nothing true in that).

The speaker or writer that makes a statement may, however, consider it in either of two different manners: if he wishes to refer to it as representing an idea that he has in mind, he uses *esto*, as he would with reference to an object he was holding; if he wishes to refer to the statement as representing the idea that he assumes it to have aroused in the listener or reader, he regards it as representing something that is in the mind of the listener or reader, instead of in his own, and uses *eso*, as he would with reference to an object that the listener or reader was holding. The distinction is the same as that between *this* and *that* in English.

El amor al dinero será la ruina de los Estados Unidos. *Eso* (ó *esto*) no puede dudarse.

The love of money will be the ruin of the United States. That (*or*, this) cannot be doubted.

Las naciones, como los hombres, nacen, crecen, envejecen y mueren. La historia da testimonio de *esto* (ó *eso*).

Nations, like men, are born, grow, become old, and die. History bears witness to this (*or*, to that).

Either *aquello* or *eso* may be employed with reference to remote events, whether past or future.

Varios oficiales opinaban que el ataque debía hacerse ese mismo día; pero el general en jefe dijo que *aquello* (ó *eso*) sería sacrificar el ejército inútilmente.	Several officers were of the opinion that the attack ought to be made that very day; but the commander-in-chief said that that would be to uselessly sacrifice the army.

43. The neuter demonstratives—mainly *eso*—are often used instead of *ello* to represent a neuter substantive, as *this* and *that* are used in English instead of *it*.

Le dimos *cuanto* teníamos, pero nos dijo que **eso** (ó **ello**) no era suficiente.	We gave him all we had, but he told us that that was not sufficient.
Gana *poco*, pero vive holgadamente con **eso** (ó con **ello**).	He earns little, but he lives comfortably on it.

44. Neuter Pronouns Used to Represent a Sentence or a Phrase.—As appears from the examples given in Art. **42**, the neuter demonstratives can be used with reference not only to neuter substantives, but also to whole phrases or sentences. From the point of view of their reproduction or representation in discourse, sentences and phrases are neuter; they must be represented either by *ello* or by one of the neuter demonstratives. In all the examples given in Arts. **42** and **43**, *ello* may be substituted for *eso* and *esto*, although, as a rule, these demonstratives are to be preferred, except after a preposition. If the phrase or sentence is reproduced in the accusative, the accusative case *lo* (English *it*) is used instead of *ello*. In the following examples, the phrases and sentences reproduced by neuter pronouns are printed in Italic; the neuter pronouns, in bold type. It will be observed that in some cases these pronouns are rendered by *so*, or by the combination *do so*.

Mucho deseo *aprender el español*, pero no tengo paciencia para **ello**.	I wish very much to learn Spanish, but I have no patience to do so.

(*Eso* would be proper, but *ello* is better.)

Aunque *estos artículos son más caros que los otros*, **eso** no prueba que sean mejores.	Although these articles are more expensive than the others, that does not prove that they are better.

(*Ello* would be proper, but *eso* is preferable.)

Dijo *que de ningún modo aceptaría nuestra proposición*, y **lo** dijo de una manera tan terminante, que nos pareció inútil insistir.	He said that he would by no means accept our proposition, and he said it in so positive a manner that we thought it useless to insist.

(*Dijo esto* would be proper, but *lo dijo* is preferable.)

Los trabajadores *han rehusado la oferta que los dueños de las minas les han hecho*, y es probable que **esto** (ó **ello**) tenga consecuencias serias.	The working men have refused the offer the owners of the mines have made them, and it is likely that this will have serious consequences.
Nos han dicho *que usted piensa retirarse de los negocios.*— ¿Cuándo **lo** oyeron ustedes decir?	We have been told that you intend to retire from business.—When did you hear it?

45. The Infinitive as a Neuter.—The infinitive is a word that partakes both of the nature of a substantive and of that of a verb. With respect to its grammatical functions, it is always a substantive; for it always performs the office of either the subject of a sentence, the accusative of a verb, or the object of a preposition. It is, besides, modified by adjectives (the article among them), after the manner of other substantives. In other respects, however, its grammar is that of the verb: it often has a subject, and may be modified by an adverb, or take the accusative, the dative, or the prepositional case of a pronoun, as other verbal forms do. Furthermore, it is the fundamental form of the verb, from which other forms are derived, and by which the verb is named. Some grammarians class it as a verb; others as a substantive. Both classifications are open to objection, and it is preferable to treat the infinitive as belonging to a mixed class, having some of the characteristics of the substantive and some of those of the verb.

46. The infinitive, as a substantive, is singular, and adjectives modifying it must be placed in the singular masculine

form. In this respect, then, it is a neuter substantive, although it is the only one that takes the article.

Aguardar es siempre penos**o**.	Waiting is always painful.
El *comer* y **el** *beber* eran los principales placeres del emperador.	Eating and drinking were the main pleasures of the emperor.
El much**o** *trabajar* es daños**o** para la salud.	Too much working is injurious to health.

47. With regard also to its representation in discourse, the infinitive is a neuter.

Quiero *salir*, pero no tengo fuerzas para **ello**.	I wish to go out, but have no strength to do so.
(*Eso* would be proper, but *ello* is preferable.)	
Los espartanos creían que *mentir* era acción meritoria; se ejercitaban en **ello**, y **lo** enseñaban á sus hijos.	The Spartans thought that lying was a meritorious action; they trained themselves in it, and taught it to their children.

48. **The Neuter LO.**—The word *lo*, besides being the accusative case of both *él* and *ello*, is a neuter substantive having the same meaning as **la cosa**, *the thing*, **las cosas**, *the things*. Adjectives referring to it should, as in the case of other neuters, be placed in the masculine singular form. When *lo* is immediately followed by an adjective, it is rendered by *things*, if reference is made to material objects; by *the*, followed by the corresponding English adjective, if reference is made to abstract qualities taken in a general sense. The combination formed with *lo* and an adjective is itself treated as a neuter.

*Lo barat***o** siempre es car**o**.	Cheap things are always dear.
Parece que en el mundo *lo mal***o** es por desgracia más común que *lo buen***o**.	It seems that in the world the bad is unfortunately more common than the good.
Según algunos filósofos, *lo bell***o** y *lo buen***o** están íntimamente ligados.	According to some philosophers, the beautiful and the good are intimately related.
Lo difícil es encontrar comprador.	The difficult thing (about it) is to find a buyer.
*Lo mal***o** es que él partió sin darme su dirección.	The trouble (*literally*, the bad thing) is that he left without giving me his address.

El puente de Brooklyn es en mi opinión *lo* más *interesante* que un ingeniero puede ver en Nueva-York.	The Brooklyn bridge is, in my opinion, the most interesting thing an engineer can see in New York.
Lo estipulado entre los dos fué **lo** *siguiente*.	What was stipulated (*literally*, the stipulated thing) between the two was the following.
Aunque sé que *lo amargo* es bueno para la bilis, yo no **lo** tomo nunca, pues tengo repugnancia por **ello.**	Although I know that bitter things are good for biliousness, I never take them, for they are repulsive to me.

In the last example, the second *lo* is the accusative of *ello*, and represents the neuter combination *lo amargo*, to which also the adjective *bueno* and the pronoun *ello* refer.

49. Instead of *things*, such substantives as *part*, *point*, *affair*, *portion* may be implied in the neuter *lo*. The circumstances will indicate what the implied substantive is.

Lo mejor del cuento.	The best part of the story.
Esto es *lo* más importante de la obra.	This is the most important part of the work.
Estábamos en *lo* mejor del baile.	The ball was at its highest (*more literally*, We were in the best part of the ball).
Todavía está el congreso discutiendo *lo* del canal.	Congress is still discussing the canal affair.
En *lo* alto de la atmósfera es difícil respirar.	It is difficult to breathe in the upper regions (*more literally*, in the high regions) of the atmosphere.
Lo más granado del ejército pereció en el combate de aquel día.	The choicest part of the army perished in the battle of that day.

50. In some cases, *lo* followed by an adjective is used to denote a quality or property in the abstract, but with reference to a substantive; that is, the phrase is not used to denote that quality or property in general, but as applied to a particular object; and then it is better rendered by an English substantive expressing the same quality or property.

Wáshington se distinguió por *lo cauto*, no menos que por *lo valeroso*.	Washington distinguished himself for his prudence no less than for his bravery.

Lo hermoso de sus ojos cautiva á cuantos la miran.	The beauty of her eyes captivates all those who look at her.
Lo oscuro de su estilo, *lo complicado* de sus expresiones, y *lo largo* de sus frases, hacen á este autor en extremo tedioso.	The obscurity of his style, the complexity of his expressions, and the great length of his phrases, make this author extremely tedious.

51. The combination *lo que*, which literally means *the thing which*, or *that which*, is better rendered by *what*.

¿No sabe usted *lo que* me han dicho?	Do you not know what they have told me?
Lo que usted necesita es ejercicio.	What you need is exercise.
Es más *lo que* debo que *lo que* tengo.	What I owe is more than what I have.

In the expression *todo lo que*, the word *todo* is an adjective modifying the neuter *lo*. That phrase literally means *all that which*, but is better rendered simply by *all*, or *all that*.

Hemos perdido **todo** *lo que* teníamos.	We have lost all we had.
Todo *lo que* brilla no es oro.	All that glitters is not gold.

REMARK.—In connection with the examples given above, the student's attention is called to a most important subject; namely, that of translating from English into Spanish. In the explanations as well as in the examples he reads, he is likely to notice only what are the English words and forms of expression that render certain Spanish words and forms, without stopping to think of the reverse process; namely, what are the Spanish forms by which certain peculiar English forms are rendered. He should pay particular attention to the points of difference existing in some cases between the English way and the Spanish way of expressing the same thought, lest he should, when translating from English into Spanish, fall into the common error of translating everything literally. From the last two examples, for instance, he will learn that the English sentences in the right-hand column could not be literally rendered into Spanish, thus: *Hemos perdido todo nosotros teníamos*, *Todo que brilla no es oro*. These expressions have absolutely no meaning in Spanish—they are simply unintelligible. It is not sufficient for the student to know that the Spanish expression *todo lo que* means *all* or *all that:* he should also remember that the English expressions *all*, *all that* are rendered by *todo lo que*, and *not* by *todo*, or *todo que*.

52. In exclamatory sentences, *lo que* has the same meaning as **cuánto,** *how much*, and is really an adverbial phrase.

¡*Lo que* han robado los empleados de este gobierno!	How much have the employes of this government stolen!
¡*Lo que* vale el dinero en un país de mercaderes!	How much is money worth in a country of traffickers!

53. *Lo* serves to represent predicatively an adjective of either number or gender, or an adjectival phrase, after one of the verbs **ser,** *to be;* **estar,** *to be;* **parecer,** *to look*, and a few others. This *lo* is sometimes rendered into English by *so;* sometimes it is not rendered at all, while not infrequently the adjective must be repeated.

Aquí viven muchas personas *ricas*, y otras que, aunque no **lo** son, quieren parecer**lo.**	Many rich persons live here, and others that, although they are not rich, wish to appear so.
¿Está usted *listo?*—No **lo** estoy todavía, pero pronto **lo** estaré.	Are you ready?—I am not yet, but shall be soon.
Ese problema me parece muy *difícil.*—Á mi no me **lo** parece.	That problem seems very difficult to me.—It does not (seem so) to me.
¿Es éste el libro *de mi hermano?*—No **lo** es.	Is this my brother's book?—It is not.

A substantive or a substantive phrase modifying another substantive or substantive phrase through *ser*, *estar*, or *parecer* is similarly represented.

¿Es usted *el señor Gómez?*—Sí, señor, **lo** soy.	Are you Mr. Gomez?—Yes, sir, I am.
Aquel caballero parece *maestro de escuela.*—**Lo** es, en efecto.	Yonder gentleman looks like a school teacher.—He is so, in reality (*or*, *better*, He really is one).

54. Phrases of a peculiar character are formed with *lo* followed by an adjective or adverb (or their equivalents), the word *que*, and a verb. They can often be rendered by using, instead of the Spanish verb, the English gerund preceded by a possessive adjective, and modifying the English adjective or adverb corresponding to that placed between *lo* and *que*, by either *so* or *very*, as the combination *lo . . . que* always implies an intensification of the meaning of that adjective or adverb. In some cases, however, it is

necessary to have recourse to a much freer translation. It is to be observed that the adjective following *lo* in these constructions agrees in number and gender with the substantive to which it refers.

Lo enfermo que estaba me impidió ir á verlo.	My being then very sick prevented me from going to see you.
Me sorprende ver *lo mal que* esa señorita habla el español, á pesar de *lo mucho que* lo ha estudiado.	It surprises me to see how badly that young lady speaks Spanish, notwithstanding her having (*or*, that she has) studied it a great deal.
España es en gran parte responsable por *lo desmoralizadas que* aún están las repúblicas suramericanas.	Spain is to a great extent responsible for the great demoralization still existing in the South American republics (*more literally*, for the South American republics being still so much demoralized).
Lo egoístas que son los hombres de negocios, que tienen tanta influencia en la política exterior de los Estados Unidos, ha producido gran descontento entre los cubanos, á pesar de *lo agradecidos que* éstos naturalmente están al gobierno americano.	The great selfishness of business men, who have so much influence in the foreign policy of the United States, has produced great discontent among the Cubans, notwithstanding that the latter are naturally very grateful to the American government.

The following form of expression may be treated as an elliptical form of that just illustrated:

Perdieron cuanto tenían, por *lo ambiciosos*. (Here **que eran** is understood after *ambiciosos*).	They lost all they had, because of their too great ambition (*or*, because of their being too ambitious).

55. Other Uses of ELLO. — This neuter is often used:

1. In the sense of **el hecho**, *the fact*, to emphatically introduce a statement of an actual fact, with the implication that, so long as the statement is correct, it matters little what the causes of or the reasons for the existence of the fact in question are.

No sé lo que pasó entre los dos. *Ello* es que, cuando se separaron, ambos lloraban.	I do not know what passed between the two. The fact is that, when they separated, they were both weeping.
"*Ello* es que hay animales muy científicos."	"The fact is, there are some very scientific animals."

2. In the sense of **realmente, en efecto,** *really, indeed,* in which case it is of the nature of an adverb.

Ello, es imposible hacer otra cosa.	Truly, it is impossible to do otherwise.
"*Ello,* hay cuentos desgraciados."	"Indeed, there are some unfortunate stories."

Hence, the emphatic expressions **ello sí,** *most certainly;* **ello no,** *by no means, not at all,* which are often heard in some Spanish-speaking countries, and occasionally met with in print.

NOTE.—Some uses of *aquello, eso,* and *lo,* not mentioned in this section, will be treated in connection with demonstrative adjectives.

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 4)

THE SUBSTANTIVE—(Continued)

NON-NEUTER PERSONAL PRONOUNS

PLURAL FORMS USED WITH REFERENCE TO ONE PERSON

1. Nosotros Instead of Yo.—In Spanish, as in English, a writer often refers to himself by the plural pronoun **nosotros**, *we* (always in the masculine form, even if the writer is a woman) instead of **yo**, *I*. This fictitious pluralization, by which the writer appears as if writing in the name of others as their representative, rather than in his own name, is supposed to be a mark of modesty. Verbs, adjectives, and substantives referring to a person thus fictitiously represented by the pronoun *nosotros*, must all be put in the plural form. In English, on the contrary, the editorial *we* is constructed with the singular form of substantives, although it requires the plural of verbs.

Nosotros, como redactor**es** de este periódico, y enemigo**s** de los monopolios, no **podemos** dar **nuestra** aprobación á una ley tan arbitraria.	We, as editor of this paper, and an enemy of monopolies, cannot give our approval to so arbitrary a law.

2. Nós.—This plural pronoun, which was the original form of *nosotros*, is of rare occurrence at the present time: it is mainly employed by official bodies or corporations, and, as a sign of fictitious plurality, by high dignitaries of the church or the court. In the latter case, in which *nós*

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

corresponds to the English royal *we*, the verb should be put in the plural number; the adjective may be put in either number, although the plural is preferable.

Nós, el concilio, á nuestros hermanos, salud.	We, the council, to our brethren, greeting.
Nós, el rey, informados (*or*, informado) de los acontecimientos que han tenido lugar en esa colonia, **hacemos** saber que es nuestra voluntad. . . .	We, the king, being informed of the events that have taken place in that colony, make known that it is our wish. . . .

Outside of official style, *nós* takes the place of *nosotros* in the familiar phrase **entre nós**, *between you and me*, *between ourselves*, and in some prayers.

Entre **nós** le diré que González no piensa pagarle.	Between you and me, I will tell you that Gonzalez does not intend to pay you.
Venga á *nós* el tu reino.	Thy kingdom come (to us).

In republican countries, a public officer generally refers to himself in the third person, by using either his name followed by his official title, or that title alone.

El presidente de la República Argentina, en uso de las facultades que le confiere la Constitución, decreta:	The president of the Argentine Republic, in the exercise of the power conferred upon him by the Constitution, decrees: . . . .
Manuel Murillo, presidente de los Estados Unidos de Colombia, hace saber:	Manuel Murillo, president of the United States of Colombia, makes known: . . . .

Occasionally, a functionary, although employing his name or his title instead of *yo*, places the verb in the first person singular.

Manuel Murillo, presidente de los Estados Unidos de Colombia, *hago* saber: . . . .

This construction, although authorized by some good writers, is neither logical nor elegant. If, however, the sentence is introduced by *yo*, the first person of the verb is, and should be, used.

Yo, Manuel Murillo, presidente de los Estados Unidos de Colombia, *hago* saber: . . . .

3. Vos.—This was the original form of *vosotros*, but is now employed in formal and elevated style—as in prayers, and in speaking or writing to a high dignitary—with reference to one person. Till not long ago, it was the customary form of polite address, as *usted* is today. *Vos* has the peculiarity that, although the verb relating to it must be placed in the plural, thus agreeing with the form of the pronoun, the adjective is invariably placed in the singular, thus agreeing with the real number of the pronoun.

The declension of *vos* is the same as that of *vosotros*, except that the nominative and the prepositional case are both *vos*.

Vos, señor gobernador, **habéis** sido **generoso** sin ser **débil**, y **justo** sin ser **severo.**	You, honorable governor, have been generous without being weak, and just without being severe.
Vos **sabéis,** señora, cuánto placer tengo y he tenido siempre en serviros.	You know, madam, how much pleasure I take and have always taken in serving you.

THE DATIVE AND THE DATIVE CASE

4. The **dative** of a verb is a substantive or substantive phrase denoting the thing (persons included) which, without being the direct object (accusative) of the verb, is nevertheless affected by the meaning of the verb: as the thing to which something is conveyed, transmitted, or applied, from which something is taken, or for which, in behalf or to the detriment of which, something is done.

5. The dative is, as a rule, preceded by the preposition **á,** *to*, with which it forms a **dative prepositional phrase.** With some verbs, a phrase of this kind can be literally rendered, *to* being used in English as the equivalent of the Spanish *á;* although, if the verb is transitive and its accusative is expressed, the dative may in English be placed before the accusative, without any preposition. The latter construction is not permissible in Spanish: the preposition should not be omitted, whether the dative precedes or follows the accusative.

Escribiré *á Juan*.	I shall write to John.
¿Habló usted *á su padre?*	Did you speak to your father?
Hemos enviado diez barriles de naranjas *á Manuel González é Hijos*.	We have sent ten barrels of oranges to Manuel Gonzalez and Sons.
Mañana remitiré *á don Pedro* un cheque por esa suma.	Tomorrow I will send Mr. Peter a check for that amount.
¿Á quién ha comunicado usted la noticia?	To whom have you communicated the news?
¿Qué dijo usted *al niño?*	What did you say to the child?
Dé dos vueltas más *á ese tornillo*.	Give two more turns to that screw.
Agregue esto *á su lista*.	Add this to your list.

6. There are verbs, however, in which the dative relation indicated in Spanish by *á* must be indicated in English by a different preposition: as *for* or *from*, to indicate, respectively, the thing for which something is done or from which something is taken. The student should bear in mind that (with the exception of a few cases in which *para* is employed) no other preposition than *á* is used with the dative, and that, therefore, when in English such prepositions as *for*, *from*, *on* occur before a substantive whose relation to the verb is of the kind referred to in Art. **4**, they should not be translated literally; that is, *for* by *por* or *para*, *from* by *de*, or *on* by *sobre*. Thus, *to buy* **from** is rendered by *comprar* **á**, not by *comprar* **de**, and *to put a hat* **on** *a person* is rendered by *poner un sombrero* **á** *una persona*, not **sobre** *una persona*. No fixed rules can be given on this subject, as the relations included under the appellation of *dative* are exceedingly numerous and of many sorts, and, although a general idea of their nature can be given, it is impossible to formulate them into a short and precise statement that will serve as an absolutely certain criterion. The correspondence of prepositions in the following examples should be carefully noted:

He comprado dos máquinas de vapor **á** *Pardo y Compañía*.	I have bought two steam engines *from* Pardo and Company.
Los ladrones hurtaron un anillo de diamantes **á** *mi hija*.	The burglars stole a diamond ring *from* my daughter.
Voy á hacer una diligencia **al** *doctor López*.	I am going to do an errand *for* Doctor Lopez.

Trabajé **á** *esa firma* como dos años.
I worked *for* that firm about two years.

Es preciso poner una nueva rueda **al** *coche.*
It is necessary to put a new wheel *on* the carriage.

Pensamos poner una cerca **á** *nuestra finca.*
We intend to put a fence *around* our property.

¿Cuántos carros quitaron ustedes **al** *tren* cuando llegaron al pie de la pendiente?
How many cars did you take *off* the train when you arrived at the foot of the incline?

No podemos quitar ni un centavo más **á** *nuestros precios.*
We cannot take even one cent more *off* our prices.

Quitar **á** *los pobres* para dar **á** *los ricos:* tal es la máxima de nuestros millonarios.
To take away *from* the poor to give *to* the rich—such is our millionaires' maxim.

7. The accusative and the dative of a verb do not always correspond in the two languages: there are verbs that in Spanish take as datives the substantives that their respective English equivalents take as accusatives. The verb **robar,** *to rob*, for instance, takes the name of the person robbed as its dative, and the name of the thing of which the person is robbed as its accusative. The verbs **quitar,** *to deprive;* **pedir,** *to ask (for something);* **notificar,** *to notify;* **preguntar,** *to ask (as a question);* **agradecer,** *to thank;* **inspirar,** *to inspire (with some kind of feeling);* **fiar,** *to trust (for money)*, and some others, are similarly constructed. In the following examples, the accusative is printed in Italic; the dative phrase, in bold type:

Los salteadores robaron **al viajero** *cuanto tenía.*
The highwaymen robbed the traveler of all he had.

Los ingleses quitaron *la independencia* **á las repúblicas africanas.**
The English deprived the African republics of their independence.

El remordimiento quita *el sosiego* **al criminal.**
Remorse deprives the criminal of peace of mind.

Hágame el favor de pedir *un vaso de agua* **al criado.**
Do me the favor to ask the servant for a glass of water.

El juez notificó **al reo** *el fallo del jurado.*
The judge notified the culprit of the jury's verdict.

Pregunte **á ese agente de policía** *dónde queda la estación del ferrocarril.*
Ask that policeman where the railroad station is.

La pobre cautiva inspiró *compasión* **á sus verdugos.**	The poor captive inspired her executioners with pity.
No podemos fiar *más géneros* **á ese hombre.**	We cannot trust that man for any more goods.

8. The dative is occasionally preceded by **para**, *for*.

Compré unos libros **para** *mi hijo*.	I bought some books for my son.

The use of *á* instead of *para* would be proper in this case, although then the meaning of the sentence would be slightly changed: *para* indicates the mere fact that the speaker bought some books for his son, without any further implication; while *á* would indicate a certain interest taken by the speaker in the performance of the action—as if he had bought the books of his own accord and intended them as a present. The difference will be better understood by comparing the translation of the Spanish sentence given above with that of the following, in which *para* is replaced by *á*:

Compré unos libros **á** *mi hijo*.	I bought my son some books.

9. The Dative Case as a Substitute for a Dative Prepositional Phrase.—When the object of the preposition in a dative prepositional phrase would be the prepositional case of a personal pronoun, the dative case is used instead of the phrase. We say *would be*, because, with the exception of *usted*, the prepositional cases are seldom used by themselves as datives.

The dative cases and the dative prepositional phrases whose places they take are given below:

me, used instead of *á mí*
te, used instead of *á ti*
le, used instead of *á él* (*á usted*)
le, *la*, used instead of *á ella* (*á usted*)
nos, used instead of *á nosotros*, *á nosotras*, *á nós*
os, used instead of *á vosotros*, *á vosotras*, *á vos*
les, used instead of *á ellos*, *á ellas* (*á ustedes*)

As stated in Part 2, *le* and *la* are equally proper and equally common as dative cases of *ella;* the employment of one or the other is merely a matter of taste, although *la* is perhaps a little more formal and better adapted to elevated style.

Le escribiré (*not*, Escribiré *á él*) mañana.	I shall write to him tomorrow.
¿*Les* habló usted? (*not*, ¿Habló usted *á ellos?*)	Did you speak to them?
Nos comunicaron la noticia (*not*, Comunicaron la noticia *á nosotros*).	They communicated the news to us.
Cuando la señorita Mercedes entró, yo *le* ofrecí (or, *la* ofrecí) mi asiento.	When Miss Mercedes came in, I offered her my seat.
Lo que *os dije* (*not*, Lo que dije *á vosotros*) es cierto.	What I told you is true.
¿Quién *te* dió la vida? (*not*, ¿Quién dió la vida *á ti?*)	Who gave life to thee?
Mi socio no *me* ha enviado la carta de que usted habla.	My partner has not sent me the letter of which you speak.
¿Qué debo hacer ahora con este tornillo?—Dé*le* otra vuelta.	What must I do now with this screw?—Give it another turn.
¿Ha compuesto usted mis zapatos?—*Les* he puesto suelas nuevas, pero aún tengo que poner*les* tacones.	Have you repaired my shoes?—I have put new soles on them, but I have yet to put heels on them.
¿Qué ha comprado usted á Toral Hermanos?—*Les* he comprado diez mil sombreros de Panamá y como quinientos racimos de plátanos.	What have you bought from Toral Brothers?—I have bought from them ten thousand Panama hats, and about five hundred bunches of bananas.
Los ladrones *nos* hurtaron cuanto teníamos.	The burglars stole (from us) everything we had.
Aún no he podido conseguir*le* una colocación.	I have not yet been able to procure you a situation.
Siento mucho, hijo mío, no poder dar*te* lo que *me* pides.	I regret very much, my son, not to be able to give you what you ask me for.
Señora, *le* agradezco mucho su bondadosa invitación.	Madam, I thank you very much for your kind invitation.

10. Redundant Dative Constructions.—The dative case is often used in conjunction with a dative prepositional phrase. This form of expression is called a **redundant form** or **construction.** When the dative in the prepositional phrase is the prepositional case of a personal pronoun, the redundant construction generally serves to make the sentence either emphatic or clear.

¿Cómo osas decir*me* eso **á mí?**	How darest thou say that to *me?* [*Emphatic.*]
¿Á nosotros viénes á pedir*nos* favores, después de haber arruinado nuestra reputación?	You come to ask *us* [*emphatic*] for favors, after having ruined our reputation?
Aquí estuvieron el señor Arosemena y su hija: **á él** *le* hablé, pero **á ella** no pude hablar*le*.	Mr. Arosemena and his daughter were here. I spoke to him, but could not speak to her.
Les enviaré "El Heraldo" **á ustedes,** y "El Mundo" **á ellos.**	I will send "The Herald" to you, and "The World" to them.

In the last two examples, the prepositional phrases *á él*, *á ella*, *á ustedes*, *á ellos*, are evidently indispensable, as without them the sentences would not be clear. Similarly, if a person, speaking to another about a third person, says, *Ayer* **le** *envié un recado*, it may not be clear whether the speaker means, *I sent* **you** *a message yesterday*, or, *I sent* **him** *a message yesterday*, or, *I sent* **her** *a message yesterday*. To plainly convey the first meaning, he should say, *Ayer le envié un recado* **á usted;** to convey the second meaning, *Ayer le envié un recado* **á él;** and to convey the third meaning, *Ayer le envié un recado* **á ella.**

Only the dative cases *le*, *la*, *les* can give rise to ambiguity, as each of them is the case both of a pronoun (*usted*) of the second and of one of the third person, while *le* can, besides, be the dative case of either *él* or *ella*. These are, therefore, the only cases with which redundant constructions must be used for clearness.

11. The redundant form is indispensable when the dative is a personal pronoun modified by a word or phrase. All modifiers must be added to the prepositional case of the pronoun, the dative case not admitting any.

La firma de Tamayo y Peralta *me* envió una circular *á mí* **también.**	The firm of Tamayo and Peralta sent me also a circular.
Á vosotros **tampoco** *os* otorgarán ese privilegio.	They will not grant that privilege to you either.
¡Pedir*me* dinero *á mí*, **que nunca lo he tenido!**	To ask me for money—me, who have never had any!

Le dieron veneno *á él*, **que era la gloria de Atenas.**	They gave poison to him, who was the glory of Athens (*or*, They gave him poison—him, who was the glory of Athens).

12. Redundant forms are very common in familiar style, even where neither clearness nor emphasis requires them (see Part 2). The dative may be a personal pronoun or any other substantive: in the former case, the prepositional phrase is really superfluous; in the latter case, the dative case is equally unnecessary. The superfluous phrases and dative cases in the following examples are enclosed in brackets:

Le suplico [*á usted*] que me perdone.	I request you to excuse me.
Esta mañana [*le*] mandé unas flores *á la señorita María*.	I sent Miss Mary some flowers this morning.
[*Á mí*] *me* dijeron que la firma había quebrado.	They told me that the firm had failed.
[*Le*] preguntámos por usted *á su amigo*.	We asked your friend for you.
No sé si lo que *nos* han dicho [*á nosotros*] es cierto.	I do not know whether what they have told us is true.
¿Á quién [*le*] está usted escribiendo?—[*Le*] estoy escribiendo *á mi hermano*.	To whom are you writing?—I am writing to my brother.
¿[*Á ti*] *te* parece buena esta acción?	Does this action seem good to thee?

13. The Prepositional Case Used by Itself as Dative.—It was stated in Art. **9** that the prepositional case is seldom used by itself as a dative. The following sentences, although correct from a purely grammatical point of view, are so unusual, and sound so awkward, that no Spanish-speaking person would ever employ them (except, perhaps, in poetry):

Habló *á mí* del asunto.	He spoke to me about the matter.
El ruido quitó el sueño *á mí*.	The noise deprived me of sleep.
El capitán preguntó *á nosotros* por usted.	The captain asked us for you.
Conseguiré *á ti* una colocación.	I shall procure you a situation.

Instead of these, the following forms with the dative case are used:

Me habló del asunto.—El ruido *me* quitó el sueño.—El capitán *nos* preguntó por usted.—*Te* conseguiré una colocación.

The most important exceptions to this rule are:

1. *Usted*, which in many respects is treated like a noun rather than a pronoun, can be properly employed in the prepositional case as a dative, without being combined with the dative case. Where there is danger of ambiguity, either a redundant form or the phrase *á usted* alone should be substituted for the case *le*.

Ayer escribímos *á usted*.	We wrote to you yesterday.
¿El muchacho entregó la carta *á ustedes?*	Did the boy deliver the letter to you?

2. The dative prepositional phrases *á mí*, *á ella*, etc. are often employed by themselves in answers, the verb being understood. The dative case must always be accompanied by a verb expressed.

¿Á quién dió usted el cheque?—*Á ella*.	To whom did you give the check?—To her.
¿Á cuáles estudiantes les mandaron premios de Scranton?—*Á ti* y *á mí*.	To what students were prizes sent from Scranton?—To you and to me.

3. When datives of different persons refer to the same verb, and cannot be represented by one common dative case, the prepositional case is used alone as dative.

El presidente dió la orden *á mí*, no *á ti*.	The president gave the order to me, not to you.
Usted no debe entregar la carta *á ella*, sino *á ellos*.	You must not deliver the letter to her, but to them.

The following forms, however, are equally correct, and sometimes preferable, although not so logical:

El presidente **me** dió la orden *á mí*, no *á ti*.
Usted no debe entregar**le** la carta *á ella*, sino *á ellos*.

14. In a few other cases, the employment of the dative prepositional phrase without the dative case is sanctioned by

usage, especially if the dative is a pronoun whose prepositional case is the same as the nominative.

Á vosotros toca defender las leyes.	It belongs to you to defend the laws.
Debo *á ellos* la posición que ahora ocupo.	I owe them the position I now occupy.

Here, however, it would be equally proper to say,

Á vosotros **os** toca defender las leyes.
Les debo *á ellos* la posición que ahora ocupo.

The special constructions mentioned in this article cannot be reduced to any rule; they belong to those niceties of the language that can be learned only after long practice and study. When there is any doubt as to what form to employ, the dative case should be preferred to the bare prepositional phrase; or the two may be combined in a redundant form, should such form be deemed necessary for either clearness or emphasis.

15. The Dative Case of Interest and the Jocose Dative Case. — The dative case of the first person (*me*, *nos*) often indicates a special interest taken by the speaker in the performance or non-performance of the action denoted by the verb to which the case is affixed. This **dative case of interest**, as it is called, is nearly always accompanied by another dative or dative case, or by an accusative; it may sometimes be rendered by *for me*, *for us*, but generally it cannot be translated at all.

Hága*me*le un buen vestido á èste niño.	Make this child a good dress (for me).
Deseo que usted *me* le entregue estos papeles á su padre.	I wish you to deliver these papers to your father for me.
Don Samuel *nos* echó á perder el libro que le prestámos.	Mr. Samuel spoiled the book we lent him.
Hemos dejado á nuestra hija en el colegio de la señora Díaz, donde no dudamos que *nos* la tratarán bien.	We have left our daughter at Mrs. Diaz's college, where we have no doubt they will treat her well.
Mucho *me* temo que esa empresa se frustre.	I fear very much that that undertaking will fail.

Salúde*me* mucho á su señora y á sus hujas.	Give my best regards to your wife and daughters (*literally*, Greet your wife and daughters very much for me).
Cánte*nos* algo, señorita Mercedes.	Sing something for us, Miss Mercedes.

In all these examples, the dative cases printed in Italic might be omitted, although by them the speakers show more forcibly their concern for the persons or things affected by the meaning of the verb. The dative case of interest, however, is restricted to the familiar style of common conversation or light literature.

Similar remarks apply to the **jocose dative case,** which is used either humorously or ironically, and has no equivalent in English.

Con que á usted *me* lo han tratado como rey, ¿no?	And so you have been treated like a king, eh?
Ese oficial ha sido siempre muy insolente, pero ayer *me* le dió el general un regaño que sin duda le hará cambiar de conducta.	That officer has always been very insolent, but yesterday the general gave him a scolding that no doubt will make him change his behavior.

In these examples, *me* simply gives the expression a humorous or familiar tone: it might be omitted without altering the meaning of the sentences, but the omission would make them sound more formal and less forcible.

16. The Emphatic Dative Case.—Another very common familiar use of the dative case is to indicate completeness, thoroughness, exaggeration, earnestness, and the like.

Me leí todo el libro en una noche.	I read the whole book in one night.
Pensamos estudiar*nos* esta lección con mucho cuidado.	We intend to study this lesson with great care.
Nos comimos cuanto hallámos en el campamento del enemigo.	We ate all we found in the enemy's camp.
Tú *te* lo sabes todo.	You know it all. [*Ironical.*]

More detailed explanations of this form of construction will be given in connection with reflexive verbs.

17. The Dative Case of Possession. — The dative case is employed with some verbs having the name of a part of the body as their subject or accusative, to indicate the person whose body is referred to. The noun denoting the part of the body is preceded by either the definite or the indefinite article, according as there are one or more than one of those parts. Such combinations of the article with the dative case are rendered into English by means of a **possessive adjective** (as the adjectives *my*, *thy*, *your*, etc. are called), or of a possessive case, as seen in the following examples:

Me tocó *el* hombro.	He touched my shoulder (*or*, He touched me on the shoulder).
Le rompieron *una* pierna.	They broke one of his legs.
¿Aún *te* duele *la* cabeza, amigo Sancho?	Does thy head still ache, friend Sancho?
El pulso *me* late muy aprisa.	My pulse beats very fast.
Voy á hacer*me* cortar *el* pelo.	I am going to have my hair cut.
El médico opina que será necesario amputar*le la* mano *á usted*.	The physician is of the opinion that it will be necessary to amputate your hand.
Una bala de cañón *le* llevó *la* cabeza *al capitán*.	A cannon ball knocked off the captain's head.

The following constructions are of a similar character:

La influenza *me* principió con una tos muy fuerte.	My influenza began with a very severe cough.
¿Cuándo *le* empezó *la* neumonía *á su amigo*.	When did your friend's pneumonia begin?
Aún no *me* ha pasado *la* fiebre.	My fever has not yet passed away.
Don Carlos *me* llamó *la* atención á ese error.	Mr. Charles called my attention to that error.
Eso *me* acaba de venir á *la* memoria.	That has just come to my memory.

18. Verbs Whose Subject in English Is Their Dative in Spanish. — The verb **gustar,** *to like*, may be taken as the type of this class of verbs. In the English sentence, *I* **like** *those books*, the pronoun *I* is the subject, and *those books* is the accusative. The corresponding Spanish sentence is, *Me* **gustan** *esos libros*, in which **esos libros,** *those books*, is the subject, while *I* is represented by the

dative case *me*. As other examples, may be mentioned the verbs **chocar**, *to dislike;* **faltar**, *to lack*, and **sobrar**, *to have in excess*. These verbs always require the dative case, whether alone or in a redundant construction. It must be remembered that the substantive or phrase rendering the accusative of the English verb is the subject of the Spanish verb, and that, therefore, the latter must agree with it in person and number.

No **nos** *gustan* las costumbres de España.	We do not like the customs of Spain.
¿**Le** *gustan* **á usted** las novelas francesas?	Do you like the French novels?
Sé que **te** *choca* viajar en burro, pero aquí es imposible conseguir caballos.	I know that you dislike to travel on a donkey, but it is impossible to procure horses here.
Al general Weyler **le** *sobraba* valor, pero **le** *faltaba* diplomacia.	General Weyler had more than enough courage, but he lacked diplomacy.

19. The Dative and the Dative Case With Ser. The verb **ser**, *to be*, often takes a dative or a dative case. The forms of construction in which this occurs are more easily illustrated than described. When the dative is not a personal pronoun, it is, as a rule, combined with the dative case in a redundant form. The following examples will give a general idea of the class of sentences to which this construction is applicable:

Eso *nos* sería imposible.	That would be impossible for us.
Á don Ramón le ha sido muy difícil vender sus géneros de lino.	It has been very difficult for Mr. Ramon to sell his linen goods.
La ciudad en que uno nace siempre *le* es querida.	The city where one is born is always dear to one.
Dice Tácito que *á Nerón* no parecía ser*le* natural la crueldad.	Tacitus says that cruelty did not seem to be natural with Nero.
Nos es grato manifestar á ustedes que los artículos que nos enviaron llegaron á debido tiempo y sin avería alguna.	It gives us pleasure (*literally*, It is pleasing to us) to inform you that the articles you sent arrived in due time and without any damage whatever.

Me es muy penoso comunicar á usted esta triste noticia.	It is very painful for me to communicate this sad news to you.
Tantas revoluciones no pueden dejar de ser*les* perjudiciales *á los países de Sud-América.*	So many revolutions cannot fail to be prejudicial to the countries of South America.

THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

20. Distinction Between the Accusative and the Accusative Case. — The following distinction will hereafter be made for convenience: a substantive used as the accusative of a verb, and not represented by the accusative case of a personal pronoun, will be referred to simply as an *accusative*, or an *accusative substantive*, while the expression *accusative case* will be applied to that case of a personal pronoun which represents an accusative substantive.

Yo tengo *un libro.*	I have a book.
Yo *lo* tengo.	I have it.

In the first example, *tengo* is followed by the accusative *libro*, and in the second, *tengo* is preceded by the accusative case *lo*.

A phrase formed by the preposition *á* and an accusative will be called an **accusative prepositional phrase.**

21. Redundant Accusative Constructions. — Redundant forms with accusatives and accusative cases follow the same rules that apply to redundant dative constructions. There is, however, one difference, which must be carefully observed; and that is, that the accusative case never precedes the accusative substantive which it represents, unless the latter is the prepositional case of a personal pronoun: if the accusative is any other substantive, it must be expressed first, and then reproduced by the accusative case.

Tengo *el libro.* *El libro* **lo** tengo.	I have the book.
Conozco *á esa señora.* *Á esa señora* **la** conozco.	I know that lady.

In these examples, it would not be permissible to say, **Lo** *tengo* **el libro,** nor, **La** *conozco* **á esa señora.** With

a prepositional case as accusative, however, either construction is correct.

Á él no **lo** ví ayer, pero *á ella* **la** ví. No **lo** ví *á él* ayer, pero **la** ví *á ella*.	I did not see him yesterday, but I saw her.

The following examples will further illustrate the use of the accusative and the accusative case:

Le mataron (*not*, Mataron *á él*). (Art. **9.**)	They killed him.
¿*Las* vió usted? (*not*, ¿Vió usted *á ellas?*) (Art. **9.**)	Did you see them?
Nos invitaron á comer (*not*, Invitaron *á nosotros* á comer). (Art. **9.**)	They invited us to dine.
Sé *eso* muy bien. *Eso* **lo** sé muy bien.	I know that very well.
He perdido *cuanto tenía*. *Cuanto tenía* **lo** he perdido.	I have lost all I had.
No comprendo *lo que usted dice*. *Lo que usted dice* no **lo** comprendo.	I do not understand what you say.
Comprámos *estos géneros* en un almacén. *Estos géneros* **los** comprámos en un almacén.	We bought these goods in a store.
Lo envenenaron *á él*, **que era la gloria de Atenas.** (Art. **10.**)	They poisoned him, who was the glory of Athens.
Ellos *me* han calumniado *á mí*, **que tanto he hecho por ellos.** (Art. **10.**)	They have slandered me, who have done so much for them.
Ayer ví *á usted* en el teatro. (Art. **13**, 1.)	I saw you in the theater yesterday.
¿Á quién llaman?—*Á mí*. (Art. **13**, 2.)	Whom are they calling?—Me.
El presidente nombró *á mí*, no *á ti*. El presidente **me** nombró *á mí*, no *á ti*. (Art. **13**, 3.)	The president appointed me, not you.
Á vosotros hará (*or*, **os** hará) la posteridad responsables. (Art. **14.**)	*You*, will posterity hold responsible.

22. The Accusative Case of Generalization.—The accusative case is very often employed with reference to a preceding substantive, not to indicate the object itself denoted by the substantive, but the whole class to which that object belongs; it is, therefore, equivalent to the substantive taken in its most general signification. When this case is thus employed, it may be called the **accusative case of generalization:** it is then variously rendered by *some*, *any*, *one*, or *ones*, while in some special constructions it is not translated at all.

Es inútil pedir *dinero* á ese señor, pues nunca **lo** tiene.	It is useless to ask that gentleman for money, for he never has any.
Si usted desea comprar *máquinas de coser*, nosotros **las** vendemos muy buenas.	If you wish to buy sewing machines, we sell very good ones.
¡Qué *vino* tan excelente! Nunca **lo** he tomado mejor.	What excellent wine! I have never taken any better.
El gobierno tiene *muchos elementos de guerra*, mientras que los rebeldes no **los** tienen.	The government has many war elements, while the rebels have not any.
¿Compra usted sombreros de Panamá?—Sí, señor, **los** compro.	Do you buy Panama hats?—Yes, sir, I do.

REFLEXIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

23. A **reflexive construction** is the form taken by a sentence in which an oblique case of a personal pronoun refers to or represents the same thing (persons included) as the subject of the verb. When the oblique pronominal case does not refer to the same thing as the subject of the verb, the construction is called **non-reflexive.** The oblique case of a pronoun is said to be used **reflexively** or **non-reflexively,** according as the construction in which it occurs is reflexive or non-reflexive.

The personal pronouns of the first and of the second person (*usted* excepted) have no special reflexive forms: *me*, *nos*, *te*, *os* are used both reflexively and non-reflexively. When employed in reflexive constructions, these cases are rendered by the English compound forms *myself*, *ourselves*, *thyself*, *yourselves*, respectively.

ACCUSATIVE REFLEXIVE CONSTRUCTION

Yo *me* afeito.	I shave myself.
Nos hemos dedicado al ejercicio de nuestra profesión.	We have devoted ourselves to the practice of our profession.
Si no *te* reformas, pronto *te* arruinarás.	If you do not reform (yourself), you will soon ruin yourself.
Yo no *me* creo competente para eso.	I do not believe myself competent for that.
Hemos comprado armas para protegernos de los ladrones.	We have bought weapons to protect ourselves from robbers.
Estúdiate, y aprende á conocerte.	Study thyself, and learn to know thyself.
Me he presentado al general, y *me* le he ofrecido como guía.	I have presented myself to the general, and offered myself to him as a guide.

DATIVE REFLEXIVE CONSTRUCTION

Ponte el sombrero.	Put your hat on (yourself).
Vosotros *os* habéis granjeado el respeto y la admiración de vuestros enemigos.	You have won for yourselves the respect and admiration of your enemies.
Dice que *nos* hemos causado muchas pérdidas.	He says we have caused ourselves many losses.
Me he quebrado una pierna. (Art. **17.**)	I have broken one of my legs.
Voy á comprarme un nuevo traje.	I am going to buy a new dress for myself.

24. When the prepositional case is used reflexively, it is sometimes rendered by a compound form, sometimes by a simple form, of the corresponding English pronoun.

He alquilado un coche para usted, y uno *para mí*.	I have hired a carriage for you, and one for myself.
Cuando vengas, trae á tu hermano *contigo*.	When you come, bring your brother with you.
Piensa menos *en ti*, y más en tus semejantes.	Think less about thyself, and more about thy fellow beings.
Pronto veréis los resultados del odio *contra vosotros* que habéis despertado en el corazón de vuestros esclavos.	You shall soon see the results of the hatred that you have aroused against you in the hearts of your slaves.
¿Tenéis dinero *con vosotros?*	Have you any money with you?

25. **The Reflexive Form Se.**—In the reflexive construction, the accusative and the dative case of *usted* and of

the personal pronouns of the third person take the form *se;* the prepositional case, the form *sí*. Both of these forms apply to pronouns of all numbers and genders. For shortness, *se* is often referred to as being itself a pronoun, having the prepositional case *sí;* although, properly speaking, *se* and *sí* are both cases of the pronouns *él*, *ella*, *ellos*, *ellas*, *usted*, and *ustedes*. After the preposition *con*, the form *sigo*, joined to the preposition to form one word with it, takes the place of *sí:* thus, *consigo* instead of *con sí*.

Accusative Reflexive Construction With Se

Catón *se* mató en África.	Cato killed himself in Africa.
Los españoles *se* creían invencibles, como *se* creen ahora los americanos.	The Spaniards believed themselves invincible, as the Americans do now.
Los dos jóvenes *se* sacrificaron por su patria.	The two young men sacrificed themselves for their country.
No *se* engañe usted, amigo mío.	Do not deceive yourself, my dear friend.
¿Cómo *se* llama usted?	What is your name? (*literally*, What do you call yourself?)
El preso, en su desesperación, *se* arrojó al mar.	The prisoner, in his despair, threw himself into the sea.
Los gobernantes *se* exponen á la censura del público.	Rulers expose themselves to the censure of the public.
Ustedes *se* arruinarán en esa empresa.	You will ruin yourselves in that enterprise.
Ellos *se* tratan muy bien.	They treat themselves very well.

Dative Reflexive Construction With Se

Los generales africanos *se* han ganado la estimación del mundo civilizado.	The African generals have won for themselves the esteem of the civilized world.
El pobre loco pasa la mayor parte del tiempo escribiéndo*se* cartas y hablándo*se*.	The poor lunatic spends the greater part of his time writing letters to himself and talking to himself.
Pónga*se* el sombrero, y venga conmigo.	Put your hat on (yourself), and come with me.
Mis amigos *se* consiguieron colocaciones muy buenas.	My friends procured very good situations for themselves.
Hay personas ricas que *se* niegan aun cosas que son absolutamente indispensables.	There are rich persons who deny themselves even things that are absolutely indispensable.

PREPOSITIONAL REFLEXIVE CONSTRUCTION WITH SÍ

Compre un boleto para mí y otro *para sí.*	Buy a ticket for me and one for yourself.
¿Tiene usted dinero *consigo?*	Have you any money with you?
Los capitalistas han despertado *contra sí* el odio de los obreros.	The capitalists have aroused against themselves the hatred of the working men.
Lo hizo *pór sí* y *para sí.*	He did it by himself and for himself.
Sólo un criado traían las señoras *consigo.*	The ladies were bringing only one servant with them.
El señor Pardo estaba sentado en su oficina, con un periódico delante *de sí.*	Mr. Pardo was sitting in his office, with a newspaper before him.

26. The Reciprocal Construction.—When the individuals represented by a plural subject or by several subjects of one verb, perform on one another the action indicated by the verb, or are each affected by the action of the others, the sentence is called a **reciprocal construction,** and the oblique cases of the pronouns that refer to the subject or subjects of the verb are said to be used **reciprocally.** It will readily be seen that the reciprocal construction is but a special case of the reflexive.

In the reciprocal construction, the same cases of the personal pronouns are used as in other reflexive constructions, but, instead of being rendered by the compound forms of the corresponding English pronouns, they are translated by the expressions *each other*, *one another*, *to each other*, *to one another*, etc. When, however, the verb has several plural subjects, it may be necessary to give the English sentence a somewhat different turn from the Spanish, in order to avoid ambiguity. An instance of this kind is afforded by the fourth of the examples that follow:

Don Manuel y yo no *nos* conocemos.	Mr. Manuel and I are not acquainted with each other (*literally,* do not know each other).
Sé que tú y ella *os* amáis.	I know that thou and she love each other.
Usted y su madre *se* parecen.	You and your mother resemble each other.

Los alemanes y los franceses *se* odian.	The Germans hate the French, and the French the Germans.
Él y yo no *nos* hablamos.	He and I do not speak to each other.
Parece que esas dos firmas no *se* fían. (Art. 7.)	It seems that those two firms do not trust each other.
Los dos antagonistas *se* miraron* sin hablar*se*.	The two antagonists looked at each other without speaking (to each other).

27. Mismo.—In the redundant form of the reflexive construction, the adjective *mismo* (feminine, *misma;* plural, *mismos*, *mismas*), which means *same*, *self*, is generally added to the prepositional case of the pronoun. In accusative reflexive constructions having a singular subject, the redundant form is not considered necessary, and is employed merely for emphasis or for rhetorical effect. Thus, in the following examples, either form can be used at pleasure:

Conóce*te*. Conóce*te á ti mismo*.	Know thyself.
El reo *se* envenenó. El reo *se* envenenó *á sí mismo*.	The culprit poisoned himself.

With the dative, however, the redundant form is very often required by usage, although, strictly speaking, it is not grammatically necessary.

Se habla *á sí mismo*.	He speaks to himself.
Pregúnte*se*, señora, *á sí misma* si eso es justo.	Ask yourself, madam, whether that is just.

No general rule can be given on this subject, there being cases in which the non-redundant form is as common, and sounds as natural, as the redundant.

"¿Es posible?" *me* dije. "¿Es posible?" *me* dije *á mí mismo*.	"Is it possible?" said I to myself.

When in doubt, the student should employ the dative redundant form, which is always proper and never sounds

**Mirar* is a transitive verb, taking as an accusative the substantive that in English serves as the object of the preposition *at*.

unusual, while there are cases in which the non-redundant form would seem awkward.

28. The adjective *mismo* is also joined to the prepositional cases preceded by other prepositions than *á*; that is, when these cases are not used redundantly. It is not then absolutely necessary, but it sometimes adds emphasis, sometimes smoothness, to the expression. It may be well for the student to learn that the phrase *sí mismo* (with the appropriate inflections of the adjective *mismo* for number and gender) means either *himself*, *itself*, *themselves*, *yourself*, *yourselves*, or *oneself*, according to the person and number of the substantive to which it refers. Similarly, *mí mismo*, *ti mismo*, etc., mean *myself*, *thyself*, etc.

La acción en *sí misma* es perfectamente inocente.	The action in itself is perfectly innocent.
Ese argumento está en contradicción *consigo mismo*.	That argument is in contradiction with itself.
Creo que en esto está el emperador obrando contra *sí mismo*.	I think that in this the emperor is acting against himself.
Puedes huír de los demás, pero nunca de *ti mismo*.	Thou mayest flee from others, but never from thyself.
La orden se aplica tanto á nuestros empleados como á *nosotros mismos*.	The order applies as much to our employes as to ourselves.

29. Special Redundant Forms Used for Clearness in Reciprocal and Other Reflexive Constructions. It is often necessary to make use of a redundant form in order to distinguish a reciprocal construction from one which, being also reflexive, is not reciprocal. For instance, the sentence, *Ellos se aman*, may mean either, *They love* **each other**, or, *They love* **themselves**. The latter meaning would be made clear by adding one of the redundant prepositional phrases *á sí*, *á sí mismos*. The former meaning is conveyed by means of the substantives **uno**, *one*, and **otro**, *other*, *another*, with the appropriate forms for gender and number, and with the preposition *á* between them. Thus, if the subject *ellos* refers to two persons, we should say, *Ellos se aman* **uno á otro**; if to more than two persons, the

expression *unos á otros* should be employed. The definite article may be prefixed to each of the substantives *uno* and *otro*, although it is not strictly necessary.

The second person plural of the imperative, when followed by the case *os*, which may be either dative or accusative, loses its final *d*, as will be observed in the first of the examples given below.

Amaos *unos á otros* (or, *los unos á los otros*).	Love ye one another.
Amaos *á vosotros mismos*.	Love yourselves.
Se desprecian *unos á otros*.	They despise one another.
Se desprecian *á sí mismos*.	They despise themselves.
Los penitentes *se* daban fuertes golpes *unos á otros*.	The penitents were giving heavy blows to one another.
Los penitentes *se* daban fuertes golpes *á sí mismos*.	The penitents were giving themselves heavy blows.
Tales mujeres siempre *se* aborrecen *unas á otras*, y aun *se aborrecen á sí mismas*.	Such women always hate one another, and even hate themselves.
¿Cuándo aprenderemos á ver*nos á nosotros mismos* como los demás nos ven?	When shall we see ourselves as others see us?

30. Reciprocal Construction Without Either the Accusative or the Dative Case. — When a verb refers to several individuals acting on or for one another, but is one of those verbs that do not take a dative or an accusative, the reciprocal construction takes one of the forms illustrated in the following sentences, in which either the preposition **entre,** *between*, *among*, followed by the prepositional case of a pronoun, or the substantives *uno* and *otro*, connected by the preposition that the verb usually takes, is used. It should be particularly observed that this preposition is always placed between the substantives *uno* and *otro*, and never before them, as in the English expressions **with** *each other*, **for** *one another*, etc. The literal renderings of the Spanish phrases *uno contra otro*, *uno con otro*, and the like, are *one against the other*, *one with the other*, etc.

Luchaban *el uno contra el otro.* Luchaban *entre sí.*	They were struggling with each other.

Cuando yo llegué, los senadores hablaban *unos con otros* (ó *hablaban entre sí*).
Hemos estado discutiendo este asunto *unos con otros* (ó *entre nosotros*).
Allí ví á varias mujeres que disputaban *unas con otras* (ó *entre sí*).

When I arrived, the senators were talking with one another (*or*, among themselves).
We have been discussing this matter with one another (*or*, among ourselves).
I saw several women there who were disputing with one another (*or*, among themselves).

31. The prepositional phrase *entre sí* is also commonly used with reference to plural substantives that are not the subjects of the verb, in constructions that are, therefore, not properly reflexive. This is done mainly with verbs expressing distinction or classification, and serves the purpose of avoiding ambiguity. The same end is attained by employing the substantives *uno* and *otro*, connected by the preposition usually following the verb.

Aún me es muy difícil distinguir las estrellas *unas de otras* (ó *entre sí*).
Es imposible tratar las ciencias naturales como independientes *unas de otras* (ó *entre sí*).

It is still very difficult for me to distinguish the stars from one another (*or*, among themselves).
It is impossible to treat the natural sciences as independent of one another.

32. Adverbs Used Instead of Prepositional Phrases in Redundant Reciprocal Constructions. In constructions of this kind, such adverbs as **mutuamente**, *mutually*, **recíprocamente**, *reciprocally*, often take the place of the prepositional phrases *á nosotros*, *á sí mismos*, etc.

Nos amamos *mutuamente*.
Ese hombre y esa mujer no pueden vivir juntos, pues *se* odian *recíprocamente*.
Los dos frailes *se* daban azotes *mutuamente*.

We love each other.
That man and that woman cannot live together, for they hate each other.
The two friars were giving lashes to each other.

33. Emphatic Use of Mismo in Non-Reflexive Constructions. — This adjective may be joined to a substantive in non-reflexive constructions for the purpose of emphasis. It is then rendered by the emphatic compound pronouns *myself*, *himself*, etc.

Yo *mismo* lo hice.	I did it myself.
Sus hijas *mismas* me lo han dicho.	Your daughters themselves have told it to me.
Los géneros los embarcámos nosotros *mismos*.	We shipped the goods ourselves.
Envié la carta á usted *misma*, señora.	I sent the letter to yourself, madam.
Mi esposa *misma* salió á recibir á las señoritas Gómez.	My wife herself went out to receive the Misses Gomez.

34. When *mismo* precedes a proper noun, the definite article is placed before it.

Wáshington *mismo* dió la orden. *El mismo* Wáshington dió la orden.	Washington himself gave the order.
Jesús *mismo* condenó todas esas ceremonias. *El mismo* Jesús condenó todas esas ceremonias.	Jesus himself condemned all those ceremonies.
Remití el cheque á don Juan *mismo*. Remití el cheque *al mismo* don Juan.	I remitted the check to Mr. John himself.

35. *Mismo* is further used after a verb, with the nominative case of a personal pronoun, to emphatically reproduce the subject of the sentence, when that subject has been expressed before the verb.

Creo que Wáshington dió la orden *él mismo*.	I think that Washington gave the order himself.
Ella escribió la carta *ella misma*.	She wrote the letter herself.

This form of expression applies to reflexive constructions as well as to non-reflexive.

Yo *me* afeito *yo mismo*.	I shave myself.
Esos señores *se* han arruinado *ellos mismos*.	Those gentlemen have ruined themselves.
Muchos grandes hombres *se* han educado *ellos mismos*.	Many great men have educated themselves.
Póngase el sobretodo *usted mismo*.	Put on your overcoat yourself.

The student should understand that in cases of this kind the nominative followed by *mismo* does not really take the

place of a redundant prepositional phrase. Thus, in the first example, *yo mismo* does not mean the same as *á mí mismo*, the second *yo* being an emphatic reproduction of the first, and not of the accusative case *me*. The literal translation really is, *I, myself, shave myself.* The same remarks apply to all sentences of a similar form.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

ON RELATIVES IN GENERAL

36. Preliminary Illustrations and Explanations. The character and functions of relatives will be better understood by carefully comparing the following pairs of sentences:

1	
James left this letter for you; *he* just went out.	James, *who* just went out, left this letter for you.
2	
This is the letter; James left *it*.	This is the letter *that* James left.
3	
Gibbon was a great historian; you have just read *his* biography.	Gibbon, *whose* biography you have just read, was a great historian.
4	
I arrived at eight o'clock; the performance was *then* beginning.	I arrived at eight o'clock, *when* the performance was beginning.

In example 1, we have, on the left, two separate sentences which, although each complete in itself, are presented in a disconnected manner, and as if having little or no relation to each other. The speaker seems to have first thought of the bare fact that *James left this letter for you*, without any other idea entering his mind; and afterwards of the fact that *he just went out*. In the right-hand column the same two thoughts are expressed—that James left the letter, and that he just went out;—but here they do not appear as independent of each other: the two sentences are so connected by the word *who*, that it is at once seen that, when the speaker thought of James, he thought both of his having left the letter and of his having just gone out; the two thoughts are no longer represented as disconnected and independent, but as component elements of a complex mental act. Here, then, the function

of *who* is to show the interdependence of the two sentences, and the combination into one compound thought of the two simple thoughts that they express.

A similar explanation applies to the words *that*, *whose*, and *when* in examples 2, 3, and 4, respectively.

37. Definition of Relatives.—The words *who*, *that*, *whose*, *when*, just considered, partake of the nature of conjunctions, since they connect sentences; but they differ from mere conjunctions in an important respect. Reverting to example 1, the expression **who** *just went out* is the equivalent of **he** *just went out*, or **James** *just went out*. In examples 2, 3, and 4, the expressions **that** *James left*, **whose** *biography you have just read*, **when** *the performance was beginning* are the equivalents, respectively, of *James left* **it, his** *biography you have just read*, *the performance was beginning* **then** (or, **at eight o'clock**). The words *who*, *that*, *whose*, *when*, therefore, besides performing the functions of conjunctions, serve as the representatives of preceding words or phrases, to which they refer after the manner of personal pronouns. Words thus combining the functions of conjunctive and representative or reference words are called **relatives**. The word or phrase represented by a relative is called the **antecedent** of the relative.

38. Classification of Relatives.—A relative may be the representative of a substantive (examples 1 and 2, Art. **36**), of an adjective (example 3), or of an adverb or adverbial phrase (example 4). In the first case, the relative is called a **relative pronoun**; in the second, a **relative adjective**; in the third, a **relative adverb.**

A relative, besides its conjunctive or connective function, performs the same grammatical office as would be performed by its antecedent, were the latter substituted for the relative. Thus, in example 1, Art. **36**, *who* is the subject of the verb *went*, since *who just went out* stands for **James** *just went out*. In example 2, *that* is the accusative of *left* (*James left* **it**); in example 3, *whose* is an adjective modifying the substantive *biography* (*you have just read* **his** *biography*); and in example 4,

when is an adverb modifying the verbal expression *was beginning*, as the adverb *then* does in the expression *was beginning* **then.**

39. Propositions.—The sentence introduced by a relative, and that with which this sentence is connected by the relative, are called **propositions.** In example 1, Art. **36,** *James left this letter for you*, and *who just went out* are propositions forming a complete **compound sentence.** The relative *who*, which is the representative of *he*, or of *James*, is the subject of the second proposition. The compound sentence given in example 2 consists of the propositions *this is the letter* and *that James left:* subject of first proposition, *this;* subject of second, *James.*

40. Restrictive Propositions and Coordinating Propositions.—In the sentence, *This is the book* **that James left,** the proposition *that James left* performs the office of a restrictive adjective modifying the substantive *book*, since it serves to point out or specify a particular book. Propositions that, like this, are introduced by a relative and serve the purpose of restrictively modifying the antecedent of the relative, are called **restrictive propositions.** Other propositions introduced by relatives are called **coordinating** or **explanatory propositions.** They serve to explain, or point out in a somewhat parenthetical way, some circumstance or condition of the antecedent, without restricting the meaning of the latter. In all propositions of this kind, the relative may, after a proper transposition of words, be replaced by a pure conjunction, without either changing the meaning of the compound sentence or making its elements appear disconnected. Thus, the compound sentence, *My father*, **who is ill,** *wants a doctor*, in which *who is ill* is a coordinating proposition, may be replaced by this, *My father is ill*, **and** *wants a doctor.* Orthographically, a coordinating proposition is distinguished from a restrictive by being placed between commas.

A relative is said to be used **restrictively** or **coordinatingly** according as the proposition to which it belongs

is restrictive or coordinating. Of the two propositions connected by a relative, the one containing the antecedent is called the **principal proposition**, or simply the **principal**; the other, the **subordinate proposition.**

THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS QUE, QUIEN

41. Que.—This relative pronoun is used, without change of form, with reference to both animate and inanimate things, whatever their gender and number. It may be the subject or accusative of a verb, or the object of a preposition, either in a coordinating or in a restrictive proposition. As the object of a preposition, however, it is not often employed with reference to people, its place being then taken by *quien*. It is variously rendered by *which*, *that*, *who*, *whom*, according to the character of its antecedent. The student should notice very particularly that *que* (and the same remark applies to other relatives) is never omitted, as its English equivalents often are, and that in Spanish the preposition is never placed after its object.

Un agente viajero *que* no entiende español no puede conseguir muchos pedidos en Sud-América. (*Subject, used restrictively.*)	A traveling agent who does not understand Spanish cannot secure many orders in South America.
El agente, *que* no sabía español, no pudo hacerse entender. (*Subject, used coordinatingly.*)	The agent, who did not know Spanish, could not make himself understood.
¿Son éstas las cartas *que* ella le escribió á usted? (*Accusative, used restrictively. It would not be permissible to omit this* **que.**)	Are these the letters she wrote to you?
Las máquinas, *que* recibí antier, llegaron en muy mal estado. (*Accusative, employed coordinatingly.*)	The machines, which I received yesterday, arrived in very bad condition. (*Reference is here made to all the machines.*)
Las máquinas *que* recibí ayer llegaron en muy mal estado. (*Accusative, used restrictively.*)	The machines that I received yesterday arrived in very bad condition. (*Here reference is made to those machines only that arrived yesterday, and the relative* **that** *may be omitted.*)

Los géneros á *que* usted se refiere no han llegado aún. (*Object of preposition, used restrictively.*)	The goods that you refer to have not yet arrived.
El Oregón, de *que* antes he hablado, acababa de llegar del Pacífico. (*Object of preposition, used coordinatingly.*)	The Oregon, of which I have spoken before, had just arrived from the Pacific.

42. *Que* may have two or more substantives as its antecedents.

Acabo de enviarle *los dibujos* y *las fotografías* **que** le prometí.	I have just sent you the drawings and photographs I promised you.
La señorita Sofía y *una prima de ella*, *que* estuvieron aquí esta mañana, le dejaron esta caja.	Miss Sophie and a cousin of hers, who were here this morning, left this box for you.

43. *Que* may be a neuter pronoun, and as such have a neuter substantive, a phrase, or several substantives considered as a whole for its antecedent.

Esto **que** te ofrezco es *lo único* **que** tengo.	This that I am offering you is the only thing I have.
El Pentateuco refiere la muerte de Moisés; de **que** se sigue que él no puede haberlo escrito todo.	The Pentateuch relates the death of Moses; from which it follows that he cannot have written it all.
He dado á mi hijo *mi casa* y *mis dos tiendas*, **que** era cuanto yo poseía.	I have given my son my house and my two stores, which was all I possessed.

44. Quien, Who.—This relative is today applied to people only. It does not change for gender, but has the plural form *quienes*, which represents more than one person. As subject, it is used only in coordinating propositions coming after their respective principals, especially if the latter are long and involved. As the object of a preposition, it is preferable to *que* in coordinating propositions. It is also preferable to *que* after the prepositions **por**, *for;* **sin**, *without;* **tras**, *after*, and after all prepositions of more than one syllable: this applies both to coordinating and to restrictive propositions. In propositions of the latter class, however, *que* is preferable to the accusative phrase *á quien*. *Que* has this

peculiarity—that it can, as an accusative, refer to people without being preceded by *á*. The employment of *quien* instead of *que* is governed by the same rules that apply to the relative phrase *el cual*, treated in Art. **49.** The student will there find a great many additional illustrations.

Formerly, *quien* was applied both to people and to animals and inanimate things, and was not changed for number.

Ayer hablé con el ingeniero, *quien* (ó *que*) me aseguró que el puente estaría terminado antes del fin del mes.	I spoke with the engineer yesterday, who assured me that the bridge would be finished before the end of the month.
Creo que la ciudad fué fundada por unos aventureros españoles en el siglo XVII (diez y siete), *quienes* le dieron el nombre que hoy tiene.	I think the city was founded by some Spanish adventurers in the 17th century, who gave it the name it has today.
Los hombres por *quienes* fueron escritos esos libros eran muy inferiores á los hombres para *quienes* escribían.	The men by whom those books were written were far inferior to the men for whom they wrote.
El almirante Cervera, á *quien* los americanos hicieron prisionero en Santiago, mandaba la escuadra española.	Admiral Cervera, whom the Americans took prisoner at Santiago, commanded the Spanish squadron.
Estos son los señores de *quienes* (or, *de que*) le he hablado y *á quienes* (better, *y que*) usted desea conocer.	These are the gentlemen of whom I have spoken to you and whom you wish to know.
Enseñé la escritura á mi socio, *quien*, después de leerla, rehusó firmarla.	I showed the deed to my partner, who, after reading it, refused to sign it.

45. *Quien* may include its antecedent, being then equivalent to **el hombre que,** *the man who,* **la persona que,** *the person who.* It is then better rendered by *he who, he that,* and in the plural by *those who* or *those that.* The English *who* may be used in the same sense, though only in poetical or elevated style.

"*Quien* ama el peligro, perecerá en él."	"He who loveth danger shall perish in it."
No confíes en *quien* una vez te ha engañado.	Do not trust him who has once deceived thee.

"Amad á *quienes* os aborrecen."	"Love ye those who hate you."
"*Quien* no ama el vino, las mujeres y el canto," . . .	"Who loves not wine, women, and song," . . .

46. The antecedent **persona,** *person*, is frequently included in *quien*. If a preposition precedes, it must be placed after *persona*, when the latter substantive is expressed. Thus, *con quien* is equivalent to *persona con quien*, or *persona con que*. Sentences in which *quien* is used in this manner often have to be rendered rather freely, but the student may in every case be guided by the literal translation, which will at once indicate the proper translation.

No tengo á *quien* pedir lo que tanto necesito.	I have no one (*literally*, no person whom) to ask for what I need so much.
No encontré con *quien* hablar.	I did not find anybody to speak with (*literally*, I found no person with whom to speak).
¿Hay aquí *quien* hable español?	Is there any one here who speaks Spanish?
Él fué *quien* me lo dijo.	It was he who told it to me (*literally*, He was the person who told it to me).
Allí viene *quien* puede dar la orden.	There comes the person who can give the order.

47. The Interrogatives Qué and Quién. — The words *qué* and *quién* (with an accent mark over the *e*) belong to the class of **interrogative pronouns,** and are equivalent, respectively, to *what* and *who* (or *whom*, according to case). The interrogative *qué* is neuter, and, therefore, requires the masculine singular form of adjectives referring to it.

¿*Qué* es eso?	What is that?
¿*Quién* es esa señora?	Who is that lady?
¿*Quiénes* son aquellos caballeros?	Who are yonder gentlemen?
¿Con *quién* vino usted?	With whom did you come?
¿*Qué* es más honroso que morir por nuestra patria?	What is more honorable than to die for our country?
¿De *qué* hablaban ustedes?	What were you speaking about?

48. Indirect Questions. — The interrogative sentences just given are **direct questions,** so called because they are independent sentences serving the purpose of asking a

question directly. When expressions having the form of interrogative sentences are employed in other sentences as phrases, they become **indirect questions,** or **indirectly interrogative sentences.** No interrogation mark is used with these, but the interrogative pronoun should, as in the direct question, be marked with the orthographic accent. It will be observed that in Spanish the position of the verb is the same in a direct as in an indirect question; which, as a rule, is not the case in English.

No sé *quién es ese señor.*	I do not know who that gentleman is.
Aún no hemos podido averiguar *qué es eso.*	We have not yet been able to find out what that is.
Hágame el favor de preguntar *quién dejó esta esquela.*	Please ask who left this note.
¿Sabe usted con *quién salió Juan?*	Do you know whom John went out with?
Es preciso averiguar *quiénes fueron los autores de este horroroso crimen.*	It is necessary to find out who were the authors of this horrible crime.

PHRASE RELATIVES

49. El Que and El Cual. — These two phrases perform the functions of single relatives, and often take the place of *que* or *quien*. *El que* applies mainly to animals and inanimate things; *el cual*, both to these and to people. They have the masculine plural forms *los que*, *los cuales*, and the feminine plural forms *las que*, *las cuales* — a circumstance that often affords an easy means of avoiding the ambiguity that might arise from the employment of *que* or *quien*. Although, with reference to inanimate things and to animals, *el que* and *el cual* are synonymous, the latter is considered preferable in all cases. These relatives seldom perform the office of subject or accusative in restrictive propositions, except in involved sentences in which *que* would be ambiguous.

Debemos presentar una protesta al gobernador del Estado, *la cual* haga conocer nuestra actitud en esta materia.	We must present a protest to the Governor of the State, which will make known our attitude in this matter.

If *que* were substituted for *la cual*, it would not be plain whether the relative referred to *protesta* or to *el gobernador del Estado*. In the following arrangement, however, all danger of ambiguity disappears, and *que* is preferable:

Debemos presentar al gobernador del Estado una protesta *que* haga conocer nuestra actitud en esta materia.

50. *El cual* (or, *el que*) is further employed:

1. In coordinating propositions, when the latter are preceded by their respective principals. This is usually the case when the antecedent is the accusative of a verb or the object of a preposition. If there is no danger of ambiguity, *el cual*, *el que* may be replaced by *que* or *quien;* otherwise, only phrase relatives are permissible.

El enemigo atacó entonces nuestra ala izquierda, *la cual* (or, *que*, or, *la que*) tuvo que abandonar sus posiciones.	The enemy then attacked our left wing, which had to abandon its positions.
Hállase este pasaje en las obras de Tácito, *al cual* (or, *á quien*) nadie acusará de parcialidad.	This passage is found in the works of Tacitus, whom no one will accuse of partiality.
Llegaron cuatro señoras acompañadas de sus esposos, *las cuales* empezaron inmediatamente á dar órdenes.	Four ladies accompanied by their husbands arrived, and immediately began to give orders.

Neither *que* nor *quienes* would be permissible in the last example, as both would be ambiguous.

Varios fragmentos de sus obras fueron descubiertos el año pasado, *los cuales* están ahora en el Museo Británico.	Several fragments of his works, which were discovered last year, are now in the British Museum.

In this example, the masculine form *los cuales* at once points to *varios fragmentos* as its antecedent. *Que* would not be permissible, for, aside from the fact that it would be ambiguous, this relative must as a rule be immediately preceded by its antecedent.

2. After the prepositions **por**, *for;* **sin**, *without*, and **tras**, *after*, both in coordinating and in restrictive propositions.

La razón *por* **la cual** no aprobamos sus planes es la siguiente.

The reason why (*literally*, for which) we do not approve your plans is the following.

Según Ruskin, éstos son requisitos *sin* **los cuales** una obra de arte no puede serlo verdaderamente.

According to Ruskin, these are requisites without which a work of art cannot be truly such.

El pianista, *sin* **el cual** no puede principiar la función, no ha llegado aún.

The pianist, without whom the performance cannot begin, has not yet arrived.

El dinero, *tras* **el cual** todos corremos, es la causa de la mayor parte de los males que afligen la sociedad.

Money, after which we are all running, is the cause of the greater part of the evils with which society is afflicted (*literally*, that afflict society).

3. After prepositions of more than one syllable, such as **contra,** *against;* **bajo,** *under;* **para,** *for.* When, however, reference is made to people, *quien* is equally common.

La competencia *contra* **la cual** tenemos que luchar es muy intensa.

The competition with which we have to contend is very keen.

No sé el nombre del emperador *bajo* **el cual** (or, *bajo* **quien**) el suceso tuvo lugar.

I do not know the name of the emperor under whom the event took place.

Napoleón, *sobre* **el cual** (or, *sobre* **quien**) tanto se ha escrito, aún no ha encontrado un biógrafo digno de contar su vida.

Napoleon, about whom so much has been written, has not yet found a biographer worthy of recounting his life.

4. After a preposition preceded by an adverb, an adverbial phrase, or another preposition. This rule may be considered as but a special case of the preceding one, for a combination of an adverb or adverbial phrase with a preposition, or of two prepositions with each other, is nearly always equivalent to a single preposition.

La costa *cerca de* **la cual** estábamos presentaba un aspecto sublime.

The coast near which we were presented a sublime aspect.

Estos son los castillos *enfrente de* **los cuales** se dió la batalla.

These are the castles opposite (*or*, in front of) which the battle was fought (*literally*, given).

51. El Cual as an Adjective.—Like the English *which*, the phrase *el cual* sometimes modifies a substantive. It is then an adjective equivalent to **este**, *this*, although partaking, like all relatives, of the character of a conjunction. This construction, however, should be avoided as much as possible, as the resulting sentence is seldom elegant.

Vimos una casa al otro lado de la cañada á que tan penosamente descendíamos; **la cual** *casa* (or, better, *casa* **que**), según nos dijo nuestro guía, pertenecía al gobernador de la provincia.

We saw a house on the other side of the ravine to which we were so painfully descending; which house, as our guide told us, belonged to the governor of the province.

He estado muy enfermo, *por* **el cual** *motivo* (or, better, *motivo por* **el cual**) no he podido venir á verte.

I have been very ill, and this is why (*literally*, for which motive) I have not been able to come to see you.

52. Use of Cuyo Instead of El Cual.—Although *cuyo* is properly a relative possessive adjective meaning *whose*, and although its employment as a substitute for *el cual* in the sense of *este* has been condemned by some eminent grammarians, it is nevertheless used in the latter sense by very good authorities, mainly to avoid the awkward construction formed by *el cual* followed by a substantive. *Cuyo* always precedes the substantive it modifies.

Vimos una casa al otro lado de la cañada á que tan penosamente descendíamos; *cuya* casa (*instead of*, **la cual** casa), según nos dijo nuestro guía, etc.

He estado muy enfermo, por *cuyo* motivo (*instead of*, por **el cual** motivo) no he podido venir á verte.

53. Lo Que and Lo Cual.—As *el cual*, *el que* can have reference only to masculine or feminine antecedents, either *que* (Art. **43**), *lo que*, or *lo cual* is employed to represent sentences, which, for the purposes of representation, are always considered as neuters (see Part 3). *Lo que* and *lo cual* are, like *el que* and *el cual*, treated as single relatives, but of the neuter gender. The relative phrase *lo que* should not be confounded with the expression **lo que**, *that which*, *what*, formed by the neuter substantive *lo* and the neuter

relative *que* (see Part 3). *Lo cual* and *lo que* are synonymous relatives, although the former is considered more elegant. Either of them is, as a rule, preferable to *que* for the representation of a sentence or phrase. As representatives of a neuter substantive, *lo cual* and *lo que* are admissible only in coordinating propositions coming after their respective principals.

El tráfico entre Colón y Panamá está interrumpido, *lo cual* (*or*, *lo que*) nos está causando muchas pérdidas.	The traffic between Colon and Panama is now interrupted, which is causing us many losses.
Mi padre te dejó esto, *lo cual* (or, *lo que*, or, better, *que*), según entiendo, es una caja de instrumentos de dibujo.	My father left this for you; which, I understand, is a box of drawing instruments.
Le dijimos que no le venderíamos las calderas que deseaba por menos de dos mil pesos; á *lo cual* (*or*, á *lo que*) contestó que podía conseguirlas mejores por mil seiscientos.	We told him that we would not sell him the boilers he wished for less than two thousand dollars; to which he answered that he could get better ones for sixteen hundred.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

DEFINITION—COMBINATION OF NEGATIVES

54. The Indefinite Pronouns. — The name **indefinite pronoun** is given to certain substantives employed to denote persons in an indefinite manner; that is, without referring to any persons or classes of persons in particular: they refer to people in general, or to unspecified individuals.

The most important indefinite pronouns are:

alguien, *somebody*, *anybody*
alguno, *anybody*
cada cual, **cada uno**, } *everybody*
cualquiera, **quienquiera**, } *any one*, *whoever*
nadie, *nobody*, *anybody*
ninguno, *nobody*
uno, *one*

Some of these words often assume the functions of adjectives; but here they will be treated in their substantive capacity only.

55. Rule for the Combination of Negatives.—As will be observed, several of the indefinite pronouns are of a negative character. Their syntax is governed by the following general

Rule.—*The verb relating to a negative indefinite pronoun should be preceded by the negative adverb* **no** *if the pronoun follows the verb; otherwise,* **no** *should not be employed.* The two forms are equally proper and equally common, except in interrogative sentences, in which the pronoun is preferably placed after the verb.

As the indefinite pronouns have reference to persons, they should, when serving as accusatives, be preceded by *á*.

Á nadie conozco aquí. *No* conozco aquí *á nadie.*	I know no one here.
Ninguno se atrevió á hablar. *No* se atrevió *ninguno* á hablar.	No one dared to speak.
¿*No* ha visto usted *á nadie?* better than ¿*Á nadie* ha visto usted?	Have you not seen anybody? Have you seen nobody?

REMARKS ON THE USE OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

56. Alguien, Alguno, Nadie, and Ninguno.—The first of these pronouns is used in affirmative sentences and in direct questions; the second, usually in direct questions; the third and the fourth, in negative and in interrogative sentences.

Alguien toca á la puerta.	Some one is knocking at the door.
Sé que mataron á *alguien*, pero nó sé á quién.	I know they killed somebody, but I do not know whom.
¿Habló usted con *alguien?* ¿Habló usted con *alguno?*	Did you speak with anybody?
Ninguno ha venido. *Nadie* ha venido. *No* ha venido *ninguno.* *No* ha venido *nadie.*	No one has come.
¿No ha venido *nadie?* ¿No ha venido *ninguno?*	Has no one come?

57. Cada Uno and Cada Cual.—The use of these phrase pronouns is illustrated by the following examples:

Cada uno (or, *Cada cual*) tiene derecho á expresar sus opiniones.	Everybody has a right to express his opinions.
¿No está *cada uno* (or, *cada cual*) obligado á respetar las leyes?	Is not every one obliged to respect the laws?

58. Cualquiera and Quienquiera.—These pronouns cannot, like the English *whoever*, or like the Spanish *quien*, be employed as relatives including their antecedents; that is, they cannot be employed in the sense of *any one who*. Either of them may be, and *quienquiera* nearly always is, the antecedent of the relative *que*, but the relative must always be expressed. They are employed in affirmative sentences only.

Eso lo sabe *cualquiera*.	Anybody knows that.
Cualquiera (or, *Quienquiera*) que haya estudiado el asunto, le dirá que usted está equivocado.	Whoever (*or*, Any one who) has studied the matter, will tell you that you are mistaken.
Cualquiera le enseñará la estación.	Anybody will show you the station.

59. Uno.—This pronoun is the equivalent of the English indefinite pronoun *one*.

Uno debe cumplir su palabra.	One must keep one's word.

As shown by this example, *uno*, like any other third-person substantive, takes the third person possessive adjective **su**, *his*, there being no Spanish word corresponding literally to the English *one's*. Likewise, the pronominal cases of *él* are applied to *uno*, as to any other third-person substantive.

¿No tiene *uno* el derecho de defenderse cuando **lo** (ó **le**) atacan?	Does not one have the right to defend oneself when one is attacked?
Uno no debe desear para los demás lo que no desea para **sí**.	One should not desire for others what one does not desire for oneself.

A woman, referring to something that applies exclusively to women, says *una*, not *uno*.

Una no debe casarse demasiado joven.	A woman should not marry too young.

Some other important uses of this pronoun will be given in connection with the infinitive.

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 5)

THE ADJECTIVE

INTRODUCTORY DEFINITIONS

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES AND POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

NOTE.—The various kinds of adjectives here defined will be treated at length in subsequent articles.

1. Demonstratives.—The general term **demonstratives** is applied to certain words of reference—mainly substantives and adjectives—primarily employed for pointing out objects by their position with respect to the first or to the second person, or for directing the attention to words or groups of words by indicating their positions in the sentence.

Demonstratives are divided into **demonstrative pronouns, demonstrative adjectives,** and **demonstrative adverbs,** according as they are substantives, adjectives, or adverbs. The student is already familiar with the neuter demonstrative pronouns *esto*, *eso*, *aquello*, treated in Part 3. The principal demonstrative adjectives are **este,** *this;* **ese,** *that;* **aquel,** *yonder.*

2. Possessive Adjectives.—This name is given to adjectives indicating to whom or to what belong or appertain the things denoted by the substantives they modify. The following are examples:

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

mi, *my*	mío, *mine*	su, *your, his, its, her, their*
nuestro, *our, ours*	tu, *thy*	tuyo, *thine*

The relative **cuyo,** *whose,* belongs to this class.

NUMERALS

3. The term **numerals** is applied to certain nouns and adjectives expressing definite numbers or numerical relations. Such are **tres,** *three;* **ambos,** *both;* **segundo,** *second.* Words like **muchos,** *many,* which indicate number in an indefinite manner, are not classed as numerals.

4. Classes of Numerals.—Numerals are divided into the following classes:

1. **Cardinal numerals,** which convey no other idea than that of number.

uno, *one* | cuatro, *four* | veinticinco, *twenty-five* | mil, *one thousand*

2. **Ordinal numerals,** which indicate numerical order or position in an enumeration or series.

primero, *first* | quinto, *fifth* | décimo, *tenth*

3. **Multiple numerals,** which denote multiplication.

doble, *double* | triple, *triple* | cuatrotanto, *fourfold*

4. **Partitive,** or **fractional, numerals,** which denote numerical division.

medio, *half* | tercio, *third* ($\frac{1}{3}$) | mitad, *half*

This class is really but a subdivision of cardinal numerals, but, for grammatical purposes, it is better to consider it as an independent class.

5. **Collective numerals,** which are the names of certain groups of units—groups that are themselves used as units of a higher order than those of which they consist. A collective numeral may also be defined as the special name given to a number when the things it serves to count are taken collectively, that is, as forming a whole or one object.

docena, *dozen* | veintena, *score* | par, *pair*

THE SUBSTANTIVIZED ADJECTIVE AND THE ADJECTIVIZED SUBSTANTIVE

THE SUBSTANTIVE ADJECTIVE

5. Definition.—In Spanish, the substantive to which an adjective refers is often not mentioned, being understood. The adjective then takes the place of the substantive phrase that would be formed by it and the modified substantive, and is said to be **used substantively,** to be **substantivized** (Spanish, *sustantivado*), or to be a **substantive adjective.**

6. Cases in Which the Adjective Is Substantivized. The following are the most important cases of substantivation of the adjective:

1. Adjectives expressing qualities, properties, or conditions of persons are used substantively, both in the singular and in the plural, sometimes with the definite article, sometimes without it, to denote persons to whom such adjectives may be applied. The substantives implied are **hombre,** *man;* **hombres,** *men;* **persona,** *person;* **mujer,** *woman;* **mujeres,** *women,* according to circumstances and to the number and gender of the adjective. It should be observed that when in English the adjective is substantivized under similar circumstances, the plural form of the substantive is always understood. Thus, *the* **rich,** *the* **good,** mean, respectively, *rich* **men,** *good* **men.**

Bienaventurados son los *pobres*.	Blessed are the poor.
Bienaventurado es el *pobre*.	Blessed is the poor man.
Los *inteligentes* tienen una alta opinión de esta obra.	Intelligent people have a high opinion of this work.
Las *bellas* harán mofa de usted.	The fair ones (*more literally,* Pretty women) will ridicule you.
Había en el baile muchas *solteras* y pocos *solteros*.	There were many unmarried women and few unmarried men at the ball.
La esperanza es el consuelo del *desgraciado* (*or,* de los *desgraciados*).	Hope is the consolation of the unfortunate.

Teóricamente, *ricos* y *pobres* deben obedecer las leyes; en la práctica, sin embargo, el *rico* disfruta de muchos privilegios que al *pobre* le son negados.

Theoretically, the rich and the poor must obey the laws; in practice, however, the rich enjoy many privileges that are denied to the poor.

Las *demasiado jóvenes* no saben bastante, y las *muy viejas* saben demasiado.

Women that are too young do not know enough, and those that are very old know too much.

No fué escrito ese libro para *ignorantes*, sino para *sabios*. — ¿Cómo puede un *ignorante* escribir para los *sabios?*

That book was not written for the ignorant, but for the learned. — How can an ignorant man write for the learned?

Los dos *enfermos* — una *anciana* de sesenta años y un *joven* de veinte — ocupaban dos cuartos en el mismo piso.

The two sick persons — an elderly woman of sixty years and a young man of twenty — occupied two rooms on the same floor.

2. When a plural noun to which an adjective refers has already been mentioned, and it is not necessary to repeat it, the adjective is used substantively. In English, the substantive is often reproduced by *ones*.

Tenemos muchos parroquianos españoles, pero pocos *franceses*.

We have many Spanish customers, but few French ones.

¿Qué clase de guantes desea usted ver — *de lana* ó *de cabritilla?* (*Notice the substantivized adjectival phrases* **de lana** *and* **de cabritilla.**)

What kind of gloves do you wish to see — woolen or kid?

¿Va usted á comprar cigarrillos *cubanos*, ó *americanos?*

Are you going to buy Cuban cigarettes, or American (ones)?

En esta caja hay dos corbatas blancas y dos *negras*.

In this box there are two white neckties and two black ones.

3. Either the definite or the indefinite article, followed by an adjective or an adjectival phrase, may refer to a substantive that, having been previously mentioned, is understood. Grammarians consider that, in such cases, the adjective following the article, not the article itself, is substantivized. It seems more logical, however, to consider the article as being the substantivized adjective, and the adjective following, as a modifier of the article thus substantively employed. The substantivized indefinite article has the masculine

singular form *uno*, while the adjective form is *un*. For the masculine plural, and both numbers of the feminine, the substantive form is the same as the adjective—*unos*, *una*, *unas*.

In English, the substantive implied in the substantivized Spanish article is generally represented by *one*, *ones*, although in some cases it is necessary to repeat the substantive, while in others a form of construction similar to the Spanish is permissible. It will be observed that the substantivized article may include a substantive whose number is different from that of the expressed substantive.

He traducido las cartas españolas, pero no **las** *francesas*.	I have translated the Spanish letters, but not the French.
¿Cuál botella me pidió usted, **la** *llena* ó **la** *vacía?*	Which bottle did you ask me for, the full one or the empty one?
La raza blanca es muy superior á **la** *negra*.	The white race is far superior to the black.
De las dos tiendas que tenemos, **la** *nueva* nos produce más que **la** *vieja*.	Of the two stores we have, the new one produces more than the old one.
La lengua inglesa no es tan melodiosa como **las** *romances*.	The English language is not so melodious as the Romance languages.
Este ferrocarril posee muchas ventajas que **los** *ingleses* no tienen.	This railroad possesses many advantages that English roads do not have.
Llévese esta servilleta, y tráigame **una** *limpia*.	Take away this napkin, and give me a clean one.
¿Conoce usted un buen libro para aprender español?—Sí; las Escuelas de Scranton acaban de publicar **uno** *muy bueno*.	Do you know a good book for learning Spanish?—Yes; the Scranton Schools have just published a very good one.

When the substantivized definite article is modified by a prepositional phrase or by a restrictive relative proposition, it is rendered either by *the one* or by *that*.

Hágame el favor de llevar este libro á don Miguel, y pedirle **el** *que le presté ayer*.	Please take this book to Mr. Michael, and ask him for the one I lent him yesterday.
Los caminos de los Estados Unidos son mucho mejores que **los** *de la República Argentina*.	The roads of the United States are much better than those of the Argentine Republic.

El estudio de la filosofía no es tan importante como **el** *de las ciencias naturales.*	The study of philosophy is not so important as that of the natural sciences.
Ni las herramientas que ustedes nos mandaron el mes pasado, ni **las** *que recibímos ayer*, son **las** *que nosotros necesitamos.*	Neither the tools you sent us last month nor those we received yesterday are the ones that we need.

7. Adjectives Become Substantives After the Preposition De. — Words that usually perform the office of adjectives may perform that of substantives, forming prepositional phrases with *de.* They are then classed by grammarians as substantivized adjectives. In reality, however, this peculiar use of adjectives transforms them into true substantives denoting qualities in the abstract: no substantive is nor can possibly be understood with or included in them; hence, the definition of a substantivized adjective can hardly be applied tó them. Besides, these adjectives can in many cases be replaced by words ordinarily classed as substantives. The masculine singular form of the adjective is the only one that can be thus changed into a substantive.

The expression *tener de*, followed by an adjective, conveys the idea of degree or quantity. With adjectives of dimension, *tener de* is rendered by *to be*, or *to be in;* in the former case, an adjective is used in English after *to be;* in the latter, a substantive denoting in the abstract the same property as the adjective. With adjectives not expressing dimension, the translation can generally be made by means of *there to be*, as appears from the examples given below.

largo, *long;* **longitud,** *length*

El puente de Brooklyn no *tiene* tres millas *de* **largo** (or, *de* **longitud**).	The Brooklyn bridge is not three miles long (*or*, in length).

ancho, *wide;* **anchura,** *width*

La calle Real *tiene* doscientos pies *de* **ancho** (or, *de* **anchura**).	Royal Street is two hundred feet wide (*or*, in width).

hondo, *deep;* **hondura,** *depth*

El río *tiene* allí seis metros *de* **hondo** (or, *de* **hondura**).	The river is there six meters deep (*or*, in depth).

Eso no *tiene* nada *de* **extraño.**	There is nothing strange in that.
Lo que usted dice *tiene* mucho *de* **nuevo,** pero poco *de* **útil.**	There is much that is new, but little that is useful, in what you say.

In cases like the last two, the verb **haber,** *there to be*, may take the place of *tener*. (The indicative present of *haber*, used in this sense, is *hay*, which means both *there is* and *there are*.)

En eso no **hay** nada *de extraño*.
En lo que usted dice **hay** mucho *de nuevo*, pero poco *de útil*.

The following examples illustrate the substantive office of adjectives preceded by *de*, without either of the verbs *haber* or *tener:*

Las dos haciendas están separadas por un arroyo de quince metros *de* **ancho** (or, *de* **anchura**).	The two cattle ranches are separated by a stream fifteen meters wide (*or*, in width).
El canal tiene curvas muy agudas, que hacen la navegación imposible para botes de más de doce metros *de* **largo** (or, *de* **longitud**).	The canal has very sharp curves, which make navigation impossible for boats of more than twelve meters in length.

THE ADJECTIVE SUBSTANTIVE

8. Definition.—A substantive that modifies another, and performs, therefore, the office of an adjective, is called an **adjective substantive,** and is said to be **used adjectively,** or to be **adjectivized** (Spanish, *adjetivado*).

9. Cases in Which the Substantive Is Adjectivized.—A very important difference between the Spanish and the English language is that in the former the substantive is comparatively seldom adjectivized, while the latter abounds in combinations in which the substantive is used adjectively to denote a great variety of relations. In the majority of cases, these combinations can be rendered into Spanish only by prepositional phrases. This subject will be presently explained more at length.

The principal cases in which the Spanish substantive is adjectivized are given below. Following the general syntactic rule applying to nearly all adjectives, an adjectivized substantive is placed after the substantive it modifies.

1. When a person combines the properties, qualities, functions, or any other distinguishing features denoted by two different substantives, one of these may be used adjectively to modify the other, the modifying substantive serving the purpose of pointing out—often in an emphatic manner and as an unusual circumstance—the fact that the person denoted by the modified substantive combines the properties or functions expressed by the latter substantive with those expressed by the former.

Los americanos han levantado varios monumentos á su *presidente* **mártir** (Lincoln).	The Americans have raised several monuments to their martyr president (Lincoln).
Las máximas de Epicteto, el *esclavo* **filósofo,** ejercieron grande influjo sobre Marco Aurelio, el *filósofo* **emperador.**	The maxims of Epictetus, the philosopher slave, exercised great influence over Marcus Aurelius, the emperor philosopher.
Según los Evangelios, Jesús descendía del gran *profeta* **rey** (David).	According to the Gospels, Jesus descended from the great king prophet (David).
Tomás Paine, el *héroe* **escritor,** votó contra la ejecución de Luis XVI (Diez y seis).	Thomas Paine, the author hero, voted against the execution of Louis XVI.
En lenguaje religioso, Jesús es llamado el *Hombre* **Dios.**	In religious language, Jesus is called the God Man.

The order of the two substantives indicates which one is to be treated as modifier and which as modified. In the phrase, *el esclavo* **filósofo,** the dominant idea, the one to be made prominent, is that Epictetus was a slave, while in the phrase, *el filósofo* **emperador,** the main idea to be expressed is that Marcus Aurelius was a philosopher. Likewise, we may say either, **el orador muchacho,** *the boy orator*, or, **el muchacho orador,** *the orator boy*, according to which attribute of the person referred to we wish to emphasize—whether his being a boy or his being an orator.

2. A substantive may be used to modify another in

order to show that the thing denoted by the modified substantive serves the purpose, performs the functions, or has the characteristic properties of the thing denoted by the modifying substantive.

dormitorio, *dormitory;* carro, *car:*	carro dormitorio, *sleeping car* (*a car used as a dormitory*)
cárcel, *jail;* casa, *house:*	casa cárcel, *jail house* (*a house temporarily used as a jail*)
moneda, *money;* papel, *paper:*	papel moneda, *paper money* (*paper used as money*)

The literal translation of the last phrase is *money paper*, as the idea conveyed by it is not that the money is made of paper or consists of paper, but that the paper is used as, or takes the place of, money.

As an exception, the adjective substantive **madre,** *mother*, is placed before the modified substantive **patria,** *country*, in the phrase **madre patria,** *mother country*.

In the following examples, the adjective substantives **monstruo,** *monster*, and **modelo,** *model*, indicate that the peculiar properties they express are possessed by the things that the modified substantives denote.

Roma tuvo *emperadores* **monstruos,** como Nerón, y *emperadores* **modelos,** como Marco Aurelio.	Rome had monster emperors like Nero, and model emperors like Marcus Aurelius.
El metro es la longitud de una *barra* **modelo** que se conserva en los archivos de París.	The meter is the length of a standard bar which is preserved in the Paris archives.

10. Substantives in Apposition. — When a substantive immediately follows another, explaining or characterizing the latter, the two being different terms applied to the same thing, they are said to be **in apposition.** This definition is applicable to substantive phrases as well as to substantives. In the following examples, the modifying substantives and phrases are printed in bold type; the modified substantives and phrases, in Italic. The student will

notice that the modifying substantive or phrase is not preceded by the indefinite article, and that two substantives in apposition do not necessarily agree in gender or number.

Pedro, **obispo,** á los fieles, salud.	Peter, bishop, to the faithful, greeting.
Los derechos de aduana, **obstáculo** que impide la importación, desaparecerán en el porvenir.	Custom-house duties, an obstacle that prevents importation, will disappear in the future.
El canal de Suez, **obra** de grande importancia comercial, fué construído por Lesseps.	The Suez canal, a work of great commercial importance, was constructed by Lesseps.

11. Adjectival Prepositional Phrases Rendering English Adjectivized Substantives.—In the majority of cases, the relation that in English is expressed by adjectivizing the substantive, is expressed in Spanish by means of prepositions. What preposition should be used can sometimes be readily seen by replacing the English adjective substantive by a prepositional phrase. Thus, *gold watch*, which is equivalent to *watch* **of** *gold*, is rendered by *reloj* **de** *oro*. Likewise,

medias **de** *seda*	silk socks (socks *of* silk)
estilo **de** *París*	Paris style (style *of* Paris)
el gobierno **de** *los Estados Unidos*	the United States government (the government *of* the United States)
aceite **de** *hígado* **de** *bacalao*	cod-liver oil (oil *from* the liver *of* cod)
desagüe **de** *casas*	house drainage (drainage *of* houses)
ley **sobre** *la libertad de la prensa*	liberty-of-the-press law (*better*, law *on* the liberty of the press)
impuesto **sobre** *fincas raíces*	real-estate tax (tax *on* real estate)
vasos **para** *champaña*	champagne glasses (glasses *for* champagne)

12. The prepositions most commonly used in adjectival prepositional phrases are *de* and *para*.

1. *De* is mainly employed:

(*a*) To denote the substance or material of which a thing is made.

un reloj **de** *plata*	a silver watch
una casa **de** *ladrillo*	a brick house
una mesa **de** *madera*	a wooden (*literally*, wood) table
unos guantes **de** *lana*	some woolen (*literally*, wool) gloves

(*b*) To denote the place where a thing is found or produced, or the object or place from which the thing is extracted or obtained.

extracto **de** *carne;* sal **de** *mar*	beef extract; sea salt
carbón **de** *madera;* miel **de** *abejas*	charcoal (coal from wood); beeswax
brisa **de** *mar;* café **de** *Java*	sea breeze; Java coffee

(*c*) To indicate that a person belongs to a certain class characterized by the kind of place where persons belonging to that class customarily work or live, or which they habitually frequent.

muchacho **de** *oficina*	office boy
médicos **de** *hospital*	hospital physicians
un hombre **de** *campo*	a country man
gente **de** *teatro*	theater people
una mujer **de** *iglesia*	a church woman

(*d*) To indicate that one thing forms part of another, or belongs with another, as a distinguishing or characteristic feature. It is then equivalent to the English *with*.

una máquina **de** *condensador*	a condensing engine (an engine with a condenser)
una máquina **de** *tres cilindros*	a three-cylinder engine
una casa **de** *dos pisos*	a two-story house
un reloj **de** *péndulo*	a pendulum clock
un sombrero **de** *copa alta*	a high-crown hat
una escopeta **de** *dos cañones*	a double-barreled gun (a gun with two barrels)

(*e*) To indicate the physical agent by which something is operated, or by means of which a thing performs its characteristic functions.

máquina **de** *vapor*	steam engine
buque **de** *vapor*	steamer (steamship)
buque **de** *vela*	sailing vessel (sail ship)

lámpara **de** *petróleo*	oil lamp
calentador **de** *agua caliente*	hot-water radiator
refrigerador **de** *amoníaco*	ammonia refrigerator

(*f*) To indicate the purpose served by a thing, or that for which the thing is intended.

buque **de** *guerra;* banco **de** *ahorros*	war ship; savings bank
lámpara **de** *seguridad;* saco **de** *viaje*	safety lamp; traveling bag (*more literally*, journey bag)
caballo **de** *silla;* caballo **de** *carrera*	saddle horse; race horse
bata **de** *baño;* traje **de** *baile*	bath robe; ball dress
ropa **de** *domingo*	Sunday clothes
anillo **de** *matrimonio*	wedding ring

(*g*) To indicate location.

puerto **de** *mar;* puerto **de** *río*	seaport; river port
estación **de** *ferrocarril*	railroad station
escuelas **de** *aldea*	village schools

(*h*) To indicate dimensions, value, price, or weight.

un cilindro **de** *veinte pulgadas*	a twenty-inch cylinder
una cadena **de** *cincuenta metros*	a fifty-meter chain
un billete **de** *cien pesos*	a one-hundred-dollar bill
una moneda **de** *veinticinco centavos*	a twenty-five-cent coin
un sombrero **de** *quince pesos*	a fifteen-dollar hat
un buque **de** *dos mil toneladas*	a two-thousand-ton vessel

The preposition *á* is usually placed after *de* before a substantive phrase indicating price or value.

un billete *de* **á** *cien pesos*
una moneda *de* **á** *veinticinco centavos*
un sombrero *de* **á** *quince pesos*

(*i*) To denote the substance produced by, or found in, an object or place.

minas **de** *oro* y **de** *plata*	gold and silver mines
caña **de** *azúcar*	sugar cane
lago **de** *asfalto*	asphalt lake
los países **del** *algodón*	the cotton countries

(*j*) In many other adjectival prepositional phrases that it

would be difficult to classify. The following may serve as examples:

el dolor **de** *muelas*	the toothache
los reglamentos **de** *policía*	the police regulations
hora **de** *comida*, **de** *almuerzo*	dinner, breakfast time (hour)
plantación **de** *café*	coffee plantation
mariscal **de** *campo*	field marshal
ayudante **de** *campo*	aide-de-camp (*literally*, field aid)
día **de** *fiesta*	holiday (day of festival)
sistema **de** *educación*	education system
discursos **de** *elecciones*	election speeches
teneduría **de** *libros*	bookkeeping (keeping of books)

2. *Para* often takes the place of *de* in adjectival prepositional phrases indicating the use or purpose of the things named by the substantives that those phrases modify.

carbón **para** *locomotoras*	locomotive coal
estantes **para** *libros*	bookcases
prendedores **para** *corbatas*	necktie pins
alambre **para** *telégrafos*	telegraph wire
cables **para** *puentes colgantes*	suspension-bridge cables
sombreros **para** (*or*, **de**) *verano*	summer hats
géneros **para** *cortinas*	curtain goods
camisas **para** *niños*	children's shirts
zapatos **para** *señoras*	ladies' shoes

13. Adjectival Phrases Formed by the Prepositions De and Para With an Infinitive as Object. Among adjectival phrases formed with *de*, one of the most important classes consists of phrases in which the object of the preposition is an infinitive, the purpose of the phrase being to express that the thing denoted by the modified substantive is used for the performance of the action denoted by the infinitive. This relation is usually expressed in English by means of the present participle (literal equivalent of the Spanish gerund), which takes the place of the Spanish prepositional phrase.

Nosotros vendemos máquinas **de** *coser*.	We sell sewing machines.
Hoy hemos pedido á Nueva-York varias prensas **de** *copiar* y máquinas **de** *escribir*.	Today we have ordered from New York several copying presses and typewriters (writing machines).

El título de este dibujo está escrito con tinta **de** *escribir*, y no con tinta **de** *dibujar*.	The title of this drawing is written with writing ink, and not with drawing ink.
En esta ciudad no hay bombas **de** *apagar incendios*.	In this town there are no fire-(extinguishing) engines.
Necesito una navaja **de** *afeitar*.	I need a razor (shaving knife).

The preposition *para* is used in the same manner, although not so often as *de*.

colores **para** *pintar*	painting colors
instrumentos **para** *medir el tiempo*	time-measuring instruments
pólvora **para** *reventar rocas*	rock-blasting powder

14. The Predicate Substantive. — When a substantive is used in the predicate of a sentence, and the purpose of the sentence is to state that the thing denoted by the subject possesses the properties or the characteristic features of the thing denoted by the substantive in the predicate, the latter is called a **predicate substantive.**

The student will notice that in Spanish a predicate substantive is not preceded by the indefinite article.

Mi hermano es *general*.	My brother is a general.
Nosotros somos *comerciantes*.	We are merchants.
Ese metal parece *plata*, pero es *aluminio*.	That metal looks like silver, but it is aluminum.

Some grammarians class predicate substantives with adjectivized substantives. This classification is neither logical nor necessary. There is, however, a special case in which the predicate substantive really performs the functions of an adjective, and it can then be modified by adverbs, as true adjectives are. This takes place when a substantive is taken metaphorically to represent only those properties that are characteristic of the class of objects it names or that form the distinguishing, essential, or most important features of that class of objects. When the substantive is thus adjectivized, it is generally modified by an adverb, such as **muy,** *very*, or **más,** *more*. The following examples will serve to illustrate the meaning of such combinations and the way in which they are rendered:

Esa mujer es *muy* **señora.**

That woman is quite a lady (*or*, very much of a lady).

Esa señora es *muy* **mujer.**

That lady is quite a woman.

El coronel me pareció *tan* **hombre** como **caballero;** pero su ayudante es *más* **mujer** que **soldado:** no habla sino de modas y otras trivialidades, y casi se desmaya cuando oye un disparo de cañón.

I found the colonel to be as manly as he is gentlemanly; but his aide-de-camp is more woman-like than soldierly: he speaks of nothing but fashions and other trifles, and almost faints away when he hears the report of a cannon.

AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES

COLLOQUIAL AUGMENTATIVE AND DIMINUTIVE ADJECTIVES

15. These adjectives, which occur only in very familiar style, are derived from others by the addition of the endings mentioned in connection with augmentative and diminutive substantives. Such endings generally intensify the meaning of the adjective to which they are added, being then equivalent to the adverb **muy,** *very;* and, as in the case of substantives, often serve as marks of contempt, pity, affection, disgust, etc. This is a subject that cannot be reduced to any fixed rules: in the style of familiar intercourse, augmentative and diminutive adjectives are used somewhat as the colloquial words and expressions *nice*, *sweet*, *nice and—*, *cute*, *horrid*, *awful* are used in English; they include a great variety of meanings and shades of meaning that cannot be properly conveyed by written explanations, and that cannot be learned except by constant contact with Spanish-speaking people. For these reasons, only a few of the most important uses of this class of adjectives will be given here.

1. A diminutive ending is added to an adjective that qualifies a substantive denoting a small object or a very young person, to emphasize the smallness of the object or the tender age of the person, often with the implication of affection, admiration, etc. Not infrequently, the ending is added to the substantive also.

amueblado, *furnished*

El cuarto que nos dieron estaba muy bien *amuebladito.*	The little room they gave us was very nicely furnished.

elegante, *stylish*

La niñita de usted es muy *elegantica.*	Your little girl is quite stylish.

pequeño, *small, little*

Sus manos *pequeñuelas* no estaban acostumbradas al trabajo.	Her pretty little hands were not accustomed to work.

cuadrado, *square;* **envuelto,** *wrapped*

Los pañuelos vinieron en una cajita *cuadradita* muy bien *envueltica* en papel de seda.	The handkerchiefs came in a fine square little box, very nicely done up in tissue paper.

2. The same endings often denote daintiness, neatness, or pleasing arrangement.

Los pañuelos vinieron muy bien *envueltícos.*	The handkerchiefs came very nicely wrapped.

arreglado, *orderly kept*

Me gusta ver una casa tan bien *arregladita.*	I like to see a house so carefully (*or*, nicely) kept.

3. As already stated, some diminutive endings intensify the meaning of the adjective, and are equivalent to **muy,** *very*, although, for emphasis, they may be used in combination with this adverb.

claro, *plain*

Eso me parece *clarito.*	That seems to me as plain as can be.

limpio, *clean*

Los comedores de ese hotel están siempre *limpiecitos.*	The dining rooms of that hotel are always nice and clean.

pobre, *poor*

Ahora estamos muy *pobrecitos.*	We are quite poor now.

pequeño, *small*

¿No desea usted más carne?—Déme una tajada *pequeñita.*	Do you not wish some more meat? Give me a very small slice.

4. In other cases, on the contrary, a diminutive ending, or the augmentative ending *-ón*, serves to diminish the degree of the adjective, being therefore equivalent to **algo**, *somewhat*, *rather*. Here, also, the diminutive may be redundantly used with the adverb.

independiente, *independent;* **abatido**, *downhearted*

Su novia, que es *independient***ona**, hace muchas cosas que á él no le gustan, y esto lo tiene algo *abatid***illo** (or, *abatid***ón**).	His sweetheart, who is rather independent, does many things he does not like, and this keeps him somewhat downhearted.

triste, *sad*

¿Qué le pasa? Tiene usted una cara *trist***ona.**	What is the matter with you? You have a rather sad face.

subido, *high*

El precio de esos artículos me parece *subid***ito** (or, *subid***ón**).	The price of those articles strikes me as being rather high.

mejor, *better*

¿Cómo está usted?—Estoy *mejor***cito.**	How are you?—I am a little better.

5. Diminutive endings often convey the idea of contemptibleness or insignificance, while the augmentative endings *-ote* and *-ón* convey that of repulsiveness or coarseness.

bajo, *short;* **delgado**, *thin;* **grande**, *large;* **gordo**, *fat*

El hombre era *baj***ito** y *delgad***ito;** la mujer, *grand***ota** y *gord***ota.**	The fellow was very short and thin; the woman, big and fat.

ignorante, *ignorant*

Ése es un viejo *ignorant***ón**, con quien no es posible discutir un asunto de esta clase.	That is an ignorant old man, with whom it is impossible to discuss a subject of this kind.

6. Some diminutive adjectives indicate affection, pity, or sympathy.

querido, *dear;* **pobre**, *poor*

mi hijo *querid***ito;** mi hermana más *querid***ita.**	my darling son; my dearest sister.
¡*Pobre***cito** Antonio!	Poor Anthony!

DIMINUTIVE ADVERBS

16. Although the general properties of the adverb are not here under consideration, a passing reference to **diminutive adverbs** will not be deemed out of place, considering the close relation they bear to diminutive adjectives. The meaning of adverbs, like that of adjectives, may be either intensified or diminished by the addition of diminutive endings.

cerca, *near;* **poco,** *little*

El hotel está *cerqu***ita.**	The hotel is quite near.
Estoy un *poqu***ito** mejor.	I am a little bit better.

ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVES

17. Definition.—The augmentative ending *-ísimo,-a*, added to an adjective denotes a high degree of the quality expressed by the adjective; it has an effect similar to that of the adverb **muy,** *very*, but is stronger, and is better rendered by either of the adverbs *exceedingly*, *most*.

cansado, *tired;* **elocuente,** *eloquent;* **liberal,** *liberal*

La señorita Rosa dice que está *cansad***ísima.**	Miss Rose says she is exceedingly tired.
Daniel Wébster era un orador *elocuent***ísimo.**	Daniel Webster was a most eloquent orator.
Tenemos una constitución *liberal***ísima.**	We have a most liberal constitution.

These augmentatives, which, unlike others, are adapted to serious and elevated as well as to familiar style, are called **absolute superlatives.** The name *superlative* is given to them because they denote a high degree of quality; and this name is qualified by the adjective *absolute*, because they refer to the quality itself, regardless of the object or objects possessing it. Other superlatives, which will be dealt with elsewhere, relate to the comparison of objects with regard to properties they have in common. These superlatives are called **relative superlatives.**

18. The ending *-ísimo* serves also to form absolute superlative adverbs, although these are mostly restricted

to familiar style. If the primitive adverb ends in *s*, this letter is transposed and added to the ending.

tarde, *late;* **temprano,** *early;* **lejos,** *far*

Anoche comimos *tard***ísimo** (*better*, **muy** *tarde*).	We dined very late last evening.
Es *tempran***ísimo** (*better*, **muy** *temprano*).	It is very early.
El puerto está *lej***ísimos** (*better*, **muy** *lejos*) de aquí.	The port is exceedingly far from here.

With adverbs in *-mente*, the ending *-ísima* is added to the adjectives from which they are formed.

Está *grav***ísima***mente* enfermo.	He is very seriously ill.
Lo hizo *facil***ísima***mente*.	He did it most (*or*, very) easily.

19. Irregularly Formed Absolute Superlatives. The following classes of adjectives form their absolute superlatives in an irregular manner:

1. Adjectives in *-ble* lose this ending, which is replaced with the ending *-bilísimo*.

nota**ble,** *notable:* nota**bilísimo,** *exceedingly notable*
proba**ble,** *probable:* proba**bilísimo,** *exceedingly probable*

The following, however, form the superlative regularly:

doble, *deceitful:* dobl**ísimo,** *exceedingly deceitful*
endeble, *weak, delicate:* endebl**ísimo,** *exceedingly delicate*
feble, *feeble:* febl**ísimo,** *exceedingly feeble*

2. Adjectives ending in *-io*, the *i* not being emphatic, replace this ending with *-ísimo*.

limp**io,** *clean:* limp**ísimo,** *very clean*
suc**io,** *dirty:* suc**ísimo,** *exceedingly dirty*
agr**io,** *sour:* agr**ísimo,** *exceedingly sour*

If the *i* is emphatic, the superlative is formed regularly, although the emphasis is transferred to the *i* of the added termination.

fr**ío,** *cold:* fri**ísimo,** *exceedingly cold*

3. Most all adjectives having one of the diphthongs *ie* or *ue* in the syllable next to the last, change it into *e* or *o*, respectively, before taking the ending.

ardiente, *ardent:*	ardentísimo, *exccedingly ardent*
bueno, *good:*	bonísimo, *exccedingly good*
nuevo, *new:*	novísimo, *exceedingly new*

The regular superlatives of such adjectives, however, are not uncommon: *ardientísimo*, *nuevísimo*.

4. Adjectives ending in *-fico* and accented on the antepenultimate syllable, replace this ending with *-ficentísimo*.

magnífico, *magnificent:*	*magnificentísimo, most magnificent*
maléfico, *malignant:*	*maleficentísimo, most malignant*

5. The following superlatives are formed by means of the ending *-érrimo* instead of *-ísimo*. As will be observed, some of the primitives undergo a notable change of form before taking the ending.

acre, *bitter:*	acérrimo, *exceedingly bitter*
áspero, *rough, harsh:*	aspérrimo, *exceedingly rough*
célebre, *celebrated:*	celebérrimo, *very much celebrated*
íntegro, *upright:*	integérrimo, *most upright*
libre, *free:*	libérrimo, *very free*
mísero, *wretched:*	misérrimo, *most wretched*
pobre, *poor:*	paupérrimo, *exceedingly poor*
salubre, *healthful:*	salubérrimo, *most healthful*

The regular superlatives of these adjectives are equally proper, and some of them equally common.

asperísimo | celebrísimo | integrísimo | pobrísimo

6. The following are irregular superlatives not included in the classes just enumerated:

antiguo, *ancient:*	antiquísimo, *very ancient*
benévolo, *benevolent:*	benevolentísimo, *very benevolent*
fiel, *faithful:*	fidelísimo, *very faithful*
sabio, *wise, learned:*	sapientísimo, *very learned*
sagrado, *sacred:*	sacratísimo, *very sacred*

7. The following have both a regular and an irregular superlative, of which only the latter is here given:

amigo, *friendly:*	amicísimo, *very friendly*
difícil, *difficult:*	dificílimo, *very difficult*
frío, *cold:*	frigidísimo, *very cold*

20. Adjectives Having No Absolute Superlative. There are many adjectives from which no absolute superlative can be formed; some, because their meaning is not susceptible of more or less—**primero,** *first;* **eterno,** *eternal;* **dos,** *two;*—others, because the superlative formed from them would be difficult to pronounce, or would have a harsh or otherwise unpleasant sound. Among adjectives of the latter class may be mentioned:

1. Those that end in *-eo, -imo, -ico* (except those in *-fico*), *-fero*, and are accented on the antepenultimate syllable.

extemporáneo, *extemporaneous*	cínico, *cynical*
legítimo, *legitimate*	aurífero, *gold bearing*

2. Those ending in *-í* or *-uo* (except *antiguo*, for which see Art. **19,** 6).

baladí, *trivial* | carmesí, *crimson* | arduo, *arduous* | oblicuo, *oblique*

3. Augmentatives and diminutives.
4. Adjectives indicating comparison.

mayor, *greater* | menor, *less* | peor, *worse*

In case of doubt, the student should use the adverb **muy,** *very*, instead of the ending *-ísimo*. With adjectives of the class mentioned under 4, however, **mucho,** *much*, takes the place of *muy*.

INFLECTION OF ADJECTIVES FOR NUMBER AND GENDER

NUMBER

21. The plural form of adjectives is obtained from the singular by the same rules that were given for substantives. The following are the only exceptions:

aquel, *yonder:*	*plural*, aquellos
cualquiera, *any:*	*plural*, cualesquiera
el, *the:*	*plural*, los
ese, *that:*	*plural*, esos
este, *this:*	*plural*, estos

GENDER

22. General Rule.—*All adjectives in* **-o, -án, -ón, -or;** *diminutive adjectives in* **-ete** *and augmentatives in* **-ote,** *and adjectives of nationality ending in a consonant, form the feminine by the addition of* **-a,** *or by replacing their last vowel with* **-a,** *according as their last letter is a consonant or a vowel. All other adjectives have the same form for both genders.*

el libro roj**o**; *la* mesa roj**a**	the red book; the red table
un hombre holgaz**án**; *un***a** mujer holgazan**a**	a lazy fellow; a lazy woman
un niño juguet**ón**; *un***a** niña juguetona	a playful boy; a playful girl
un programa halagad**or**; *un***a** promesa halagadora	an attractive program; an attractive promise
un hombre grand**ote**; *un***a** mujer grandot**a**	a coarse big man; a coarse big woman
el idioma español; *la* nación española	the Spanish language; the Spanish nation
el gobierno francés; *la* música francesa	the French government; French music
un país agrícola; *un***a** región agrícola	an agricultural country; an agricultural region
un soldado valiente; *un***a** mujer valiente	a brave soldier; a brave woman
un traje carmesí; *un***a** nube carmesí	a crimson dress; a crimson cloud
un instrumento útil; *un***a** lección útil	a useful instrument; a useful lesson
un hombre joven; *un***a** mujer joven	a young man; a young woman
un campo circular; *un***a** figura circular	a circular field; a circular figure
Él es feliz; *Ella* es feliz	He is happy; She is happy

23. Exceptions.—1. Comparative adjectives ending in *-or* have but one form. The principal ones are:

anterior, *anterior, front*	mejor, *better*
exterior, *exterior, outer*	menor, *smaller*
inferior, *inferior, lower*	peor, *worse*
interior, *interior, inner*	posterior, *posterior, back*
mayor, *greater*	superior, *superior, upper*

2. As stated in another place, the adjectives **el**, *the;* **este**, *this;* **ese**, *that;* **aquel**, *yonder*, have the feminine forms *la*, *esta*, *esa*, *aquella*, respectively.

3. Cardinal numerals in *-o* are invariable, except those ending in *-uno*.

cuatro bailarinas	four dancing girls
veintiocho hermanas de caridad	twenty-eight sisters of charity
veintiuna ciudades	twenty-one cities

4. Plural adjectives ending in *-os* change this ending to *-as* for the feminine.

ambos, ambas, *both*	muchos, muchas, *many*

5. Some adjectives in *-dor* and *-tor* have a regular feminine form obtained by the addition of *-a*, and an irregular form obtained by substituting *-triz* for those endings.

motor, *moving, motive;* **acelerador**, *accelerating*

La ambición es la fuerza *mo*triz del progreso.	Ambition is the motive power of progress.
La gravedad es una fuerza *acelera*triz.	Gravity is an accelerating force.

THE DEMONSTRATIVES ÈSTE, ESE, AQUEL

ADJECTIVAL USES OF THESE DEMONSTRATIVES

24. The demonstratives *este, ese, aquel* are used under the same general circumstances as the neuter pronouns *esto, eso, aquello*, except that they are adjectives instead of substantives. They are the equivalents of the English adjectives *this, that, yonder*, respectively.

Este reloj me costó cien pesos.	This watch cost me a hundred dollars.
¿Cuándo recibió usted *esa* carta?	When did you receive that letter?
¿No ve usted *aquella* canoa en el otro lado del río?	Do you not see yonder canoe on the other side of the river?

25. As the purpose of these demonstratives is to make the substantives to which they refer determinate, by pointing out the position of things, or the place of words in discourse,

they are unnecessary before substantives followed by modifiers that serve the same purpose. Under such circumstances, it is better to use the definite article instead of a demonstrative adjective. The form given in the first example of each of the following pairs is preferable to the second. Although the latter form is grammatically correct, it is inelegant and should be avoided.

El lápiz *que yo tengo* no sirve.	The pencil I have is not good.
Este lápiz *que yo tengo* no sirve.	This pencil I have is not good.
El libro *que está sobre la mesa* es mío.	The book that is on the table is mine.
Ese libro *que está sobre la mesa* es mío.	That book which is on the table is mine.
¿Conoce usted á **la** señora *de quien le acabo de hablar?*	Do you know the lady of whom I have just spoken to you?
¿Conoce usted á **esa** señora *de quien le acabo de hablar?*	Do you know that lady of whom I have just spoken to you?

26. Referring to far-off things, or to events that happened in the remote past or will happen in the distant future, *aquel* is preferable to *ese*.

Nuestro viaje al través de la Patagonia fué muy desagradable, pues en *aquella* (or, *esa*) región hay pocos caminos y recursos.	Our journey across Patagonia was very unpleasant, for in that region there are few roads and resources.
La vista de *aquel* monte majestuoso nos llenó de admiración.	The sight of that majestic mountain filled us with admiration.
Las leyes romanas empezaron á compilarse bajo Justiniano, que ordenó la redacción del Código. Aún en nuestros días hay pocas naciones que no hayan sacado algunas de sus leyes de *aquel* documento inmortal.	The Roman laws began to be compiled under Justinian, who ordered the editing of the Code. Even in our own day there are few nations that have not taken some of their laws from that immortal document.
En *aquellos* tiempos no había gas ni luz eléctrica.	In those times there was neither gas nor electric light.
La gente de *aquella* época negaba la redondez de la tierra.	The people of that time denied the roundness of the earth.

27. *Este*, like the English *this*, applies to a period of time including the present.

este siglo, *this century*	**esta** semana, *this week*

It is also used in the expressions,

esta mañana, *this morning* | **esta** noche, *this evening, tonight*
esta tarde, *this afternoon*

28. *Este, ese, aquel* are usually placed before the modified substantive. This order is reversed in familiar style, as a mark of contempt or indifference. The demonstrative does not then perform the function of pointing out the thing referred to, although it indicates that that thing is known to the listener, or has been already mentioned. The definite article should always precede a substantive modified and followed by a demonstrative, and, if the circumstances are not sufficient to determine the thing denoted by this substantive, a modifying phrase must be added. With reference to a man of whom two persons have been talking, one of them may say,

El hombre *ese* no parece muy bien informado.	That fellow does not seem very well posted.

Referring to a woman who was the subject of conversation sometime ago, one may say,

La vieja **aquella** *de que usted me habló el otro día* estuvo aquí esta mañana.	That old woman of whom you spoke to me the other day was here this morning.

Similarly,

El negocio **este** *de que le he estado hablando* no asciende á mucho.	The business of which I have been speaking to you does not amount to much.

29. *Aquel* is used with reference to a well-known or oft-repeated saying, proverb, or the like, in the same sense as the English *that*.

Aquel dicho de Sócrates, "Conócete á ti mismo."	That saying of Socrates, "Know thyself."
Repite á menudo *aquella* máxima estoica, que la virtud es una ley de la naturaleza.	He often repeats that Stoical maxim, that virtue is a law of nature.

. *Aquello de* and *lo de* are used in a similar manner, their application being more general, as the neuters *aquello* and *lo* may include such ideas as *the fact*, *the case*, *the saying*, etc., as the case may be.

Aquello de, "Conócete á ti mismo."	The saying, "Know thyself."
Lo de que Colón creía en la existencia del Nuevo Mundo es una fantasía de sus admiradores.	The statement that Columbus believed in the existence of the New World is a fancy of his admirers.
Yo no creo en *aquello de* que la virtud es en sí misma una recompensa.	I do not believe what is often said—that virtue is in itself a reward.

THE SUBSTANTIVIZED DEMONSTRATIVES ÉSTE, ÉSE, AQUÉL

30. When *este*, *ese*, *aquel* are used substantively, an accent mark is placed over the emphatic vowel of each. These substantivized adjectives differ from other adjectives used substantively in that they do not take the definite article.

Esta factura llegó ayer; *ésa* llegó antier.	This invoice arrived yesterday; that one arrived the day before yesterday.
Llévele este cheque al señor Gómez, y *éste* al doctor Verea.	Take this check to Mr. Gomez, and this one to Doctor Verea.
Aquélla es la casa que buscamos.	That is the house we are looking for.

31. When applied to people, *éste*, *ése*, *aquél* imply disrespect or contemptuousness, and, unless they are expressly employed for this purpose, should be avoided.

¿Quién es *ése?*	Who is that fellow?
Allí viene *aquélla.*	There comes that woman.

32. In the plural, however, *aquéllos* is perfectly proper as the equivalent of the substantivized article *los* (Art. **43**), although the latter is preferable except before a preposition. *Aquéllos* is then rendered by *those.*

Aquéllos que han estudiado la situación opinan que no es tan seria como parece.	Those who have studied the situation think that it is not so serious as it seems.

Ésta es una obra muy útil para todos *aquéllos* que tienen negocios en la Argentina.

This is a very useful work for all those doing business in the Argentine.

El pueblo cometió el error de quitar el poder á *aquéllos* bajo cuyo gobierno el país había hecho tantos progresos.

The people committed the error of taking the power away from those under whose government the country had made so much progress.

33. In correspondence, *ésta* is used in the sense of **esta ciudad,** *this city*, or **esta carta,** *this letter*, and *ésa*, in the sense of **esa ciudad,** *that city, the city where you are;* the context always indicates which substantive is to be understood. Other adjectives are likewise substantivized in letter writing; **carta,** *letter*, being understood.

Acaba de llegar á *ésta* un vapor español, que seguirá mañana para *ésa*.

A Spanish steamer has just arrived at this place, and will proceed to that city tomorrow.

En mi *próxima* le escribiré más detalladamente sobre ese asunto, pues *ésta* ya está demasiado larga.

In my next letter I shall write to you more in detail about that matter, for this one is already too long.

34. The substantivized demonstrative pronouns often take the place of the corresponding neuter demonstratives.

Eso es un lápiz. | That is a pencil.

Here *eso* means **ese objeto,** *that object*, and, logically, is the only permissible demonstrative. Usage, however, sanctions the use of the substantivized adjective *ése* instead: **Ése** *es un lápiz.* Although, literally, this sentence means, *That pencil is a pencil*, the masculine *ése* must here be interpreted as being the equivalent of the neuter *eso*.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS ÉSTE, AQUÉL

35. These two words, when used as substantives (not as substantivized adjectives), become demonstrative pronouns meaning *the latter* and *the former*, respectively. It will be observed that the order of reference in Spanish is the reverse of the English order.

En cuanto á las máquinas de coser y los arados, *éstos* saldrán mañana, y *aquéllas* la semana entrante.

Los Estados Unidos pueden establecer grandes relaciones comerciales con los países hispanoamericanos, pues lo que *éstos* más necesitan es precisamente lo que *aquéllos* más producen.

As to the sewing machines and the plows, the latter will leave tomorrow, and the former next week.

The United States may establish extensive commercial relations with the Spanish-American countries, as what the latter most need is just what the former most produces.

THE ARTICLES

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

36. Forms of the Article. — The definite article has the following forms, all of which are rendered by *the:*

masculine singular, **el**	feminine singular, **la**
masculine plural, **los**	feminine plural, **las**

37. Contractions. — As already stated, the prepositional phrases *á el*, *de el* are contracted into *al* and *del*, respectively. When, however, the article forms part of a name or title, the contraction does not take place.

Envié *á* "*El* Imparcial" de Madrid un ejemplar *de* "*El* Cristiano."

He leído una descripción *de El* Dorado, país fabuloso en que el oro era más abundante que las piedras.

I sent a copy of "The Christian" to "The Impartial" of Madrid.

I have read a description of El Dorado, a fabulous country in which gold was more abundant than stones.

Some good authorities prefer the full form *de el* to the contraction *del*, when the article is substantivized, and the contraction is followed by another of the same form. The object of replacing the first *del* by *de el* is to avoid the unpleasant sound of two consecutive identical syllables.

El clima de los trópicos es muy diferente **de el** *del* polo.

The climate of the tropics is very different from that of the pole.

38. The following contractions, which today are permissible in poetry only, were formerly used instead of the respective phrases:

dese, deso *for* de ese, de eso, *of that*
deste, desto *for* de este, de esto, *of this*
dél *for* de él, *of him*
della *for* de ella, *of her*
dello *for* de ello, *of it*

39. The Masculine Form of the Article Before Feminine Nouns.—As stated elsewhere, nouns beginning with an emphatic *a*-sound take the masculine instead of the feminine form of the article. Some authors say that this rule applies only to true substantives, not to substantivized adjectives, and they give examples like this:

la torre baja y **la** *alta*	the low tower and the high one

Here, however, what is really substantivized is the article, not the adjective. (Art. **6**, 3.) The rule has the following exceptions:

1. **La** *a*, **la** *hache*—names of the letters *a* and *h*, respectively—are preferable to **el** *a*, **el** *hache*.

2. The Spanish name of the Dutch city, the Hague, is **la** *Haya*, not **el** *Haya*.

3. Proper names of women, which, as will be presently explained, are often preceded by the article, never take the masculine form *el:* **la** *Álvarez*, **la** *Ángela*.

40. Uses of the Definite Article With Common Nouns.—With common nouns, the definite article is used:

1. To indicate that a noun refers to some particular or definite object or group of objects among those of which the noun is a name; which object or group is supposed to be known to the listener or reader, either from its having been already mentioned, or from some other circumstance, such as position, prominence, or importance.

Sobre mi escritorio hay una carta y cuatro circulares: tráigame **la** *carta*, y llévele **las** *circulares* á mi socio.	There is a letter and four circulars on my desk: bring me the letter, and take the circulars to my partner.
¿Piensa usted ir á **la** *ciudad* hoy?	Do you intend to go to the city today?

El *presidente* murió anoche.	The president died last night.
Hay cuatro vapores anclados en **el** *río*, y diez en **la** *bahía*.	There are four steamers anchored in the river, and ten in the bay.

2. When a noun is taken in its most general signification; that is, in statements applying to all things included in the class denoted by the noun, if the noun is the general name of a class of things (*man*, *table*); or to the one thing denoted by the noun, if the noun denotes but one thing (*nature*, *air*). This rule comprises nouns of all kinds, whether they express material things, abstract conceptions, or any other objects of thought whatever. In the translations of the examples that follow, those nouns that take the article in Spanish, but not in English, are printed in Italic. As the use of the article forms one of the most important grammatical differences between the two languages, the student should pay special attention to the correspondence of the nouns thus printed.

El *oro* es un metal.	*Gold* is a metal.
El *hombre*, como **el** *mono*, está sujeto á las leyes de **la** *naturaleza*.	*Man*, like the ape, is subject to the laws of *nature*.
La *electricidad* y **la** *mecánica* hicieron grandes progresos en el siglo pasado.	*Electricity* and *mechanics* made great progress in the last century.
César decía que las miserias de **la** *vida* acaban con **la** *muerte*.	Cæsar used to say that the miseries of *life* end with *death*.
La *experiencia* es la madre de **la** *sabiduría*.	*Experience* is the mother of *wisdom*.
La *historia* se repite.	*History* repeats itself.
Los *americanos* son muy emprendedores.	*Americans* are very enterprising.
El *domingo* es el primer día de la semana.	*Sunday* is the first day of the week.
El *verano* me gusta más que **el** *invierno*.	I like *summer* better than *winter*.
La *materia* es eterna.	*Matter* is eternal.
Draper escribió un libro titulado "Conflicto entre **la** *religión* y **la** *ciencia*."	Draper wrote a book entitled "Conflict between *Religion* and *Science*."
¿Qué son **el** *destino* y **la** *fortuna*, sino nombres que **la** *ignorancia* ha dado á las leyes de **la** *naturaleza*?	What are *destiny* and *fortune*, but names that *ignorance* has given to the laws of *nature*?

La *metafísica* no ha podido aún contestar estas preguntas importantes: "¿Qué es **el** *espacio?* ¿qué es **el** *tiempo?*"	*Metaphysics* has not yet been able to answer these important questions: "What is *space?* what is *time?*"
El sol sale por **el** *oriente* y se pone por **el** *occidente.*	The sun rises in the east and sets in the west.
El *amor* es la pasión dominante de **los** *españoles.*	*Love* is the dominant passion of the Spaniards.
La *imaginación* es una facultad maravillosa.	*Imagination* is a wonderful faculty.
Los *animales* son á veces más generosos que **los** *hombres.*	*Animals* are sometimes more generous than *men.*
Los *negros* no son progresistas.	*Negroes* are not progressive.
Parece que sólo **la** *guerra* puede poner fin á las disputas entre **el** *capital* y **el** *trabajo.*	It seems that only *war* can put an end to the disputes between *capital* and *labor.*
¿Qué es **el** *socialismo?*	What is *socialism?*
¿Cuáles son las funciones **del** *gobierno* en un país republicano?	What are the functions of *government* in a republican country?
Todos **los** *derechos* son formas de **la** *libertad.*	All *rights* are forms of *liberty.*
El *corazón* es un órgano importantísimo.	The heart is a most important organ.
Nosotros **los** *americanos* somos muy aficionados á **los** *negocios.*	We *Americans* are very fond of *business.*
Ustedes **los** *matemáticos* prestan más atención á **la** *teoría* que á **la** *práctica.*	You *mathematicians* give more attention to *theory* than to *practice.*
La *viruela* no es absolutamente incurable.	The smallpox is not absolutely incurable.

EXPLANATIONS AND EXCEPTIONS.—(*a*) The names of the months do not take the definite article.

Abril es el cuarto mes del año.	April is the fourth month of the year.

(*b*) Nouns taken in a partitive or absolutely negative sense—that is, when either of the adjectives **alguno,** *some*, or **ninguno,** *not any*, is understood before them—do not properly come under the rule given above, and are used without the article. In the following examples, the adjectives understood, or that can be introduced without changing the sense of the sentence, are enclosed in brackets:

Hay [algunos] *hombres* que difieren poco de los monos.	There are [some] men that differ little from the apes.
Cuba exporta [algún] *tabaco* y *azúcar*.	Cuba exports [some] tobacco and sugar.
No tengo [ningún] *dinero*.	I have no money.
¿Tiene usted [algunos] *instrumentos astronómicos?*	Have you any astronomical instruments?
Nosotros vendemos [algunos] *implementos de agricultura*.	We sell [some] agricultural implements.
Déme [algún] pan.	Give me some bread.
La Argentina produce [algún] *trigo*, *carne* y *lana*.	The Argentine produces [some] wheat, beef, and wool.
No tengo [nada de] *tiempo* para ir al teatro esta noche.	I have no time to go to the theater tonight.
Esa joven tiene [algún] *talento*, pero le falta [alguna] *aplicación*.	That young lady has [some] talent, but she lacks [some] application.

When, however, *ninguno* may be introduced, not as a quantitative adjective, as in the examples just given, but as a qualitative adjective; that is, not with reference to number or quantity, but with reference to quality, the article is not omitted.

No me gusta **el** *vino*. (No me gusta **ningún** *vino*.)	I do not like wine. (I like no wine.)

Here *ningún* means **ninguna clase de**, *no kind of*.

(*c*) The article is omitted before the names of personified things.

Dióle *Naturaleza* gran talento y ambición sin límites, así como un corazón cruel.	Nature gave him a great talent and ambition without limit, as well as a cruel heart.
Fortuna, como una coqueta, halla placer en engañar á los que la buscan.	Fortune, like a coquette, takes pleasure in deceiving those who seek her.

(*d*) The article is omitted in some proverbs. This omission adds force to the expression by giving it the concise, laconic, and, in a certain manner, dogmatic form of a maxim.

Á menudo pagan *justos* por *pecadores*.	The innocent often pay for the guilty.

(*e*) In enumerations, especially if they are of a contrasting character, the omission of the article gives emphasis and elegance to the phrase, although, according to sections 1 and 2, its employment is correct.

"*Gloria*, *honor*, *libertad*, sagrados nombres que veneran los hombres, ¿qué fueron para ti?"	"Glory, honor, liberty, sacred names That men revere, What were they to thee?"
Ricos y *pobres*, *capitalistas* y *trabajadores*, *tiranos* y *esclavos*—todos son movidos por el egoísmo.	Rich and poor, capitalists and workingmen, tyrants and slaves—they are all prompted by selfishness.
Los invasores mataron á *hombres* y *mujeres*, *niños* y *viejos*, sin distinción de sexo ni de edad.	The invaders killed men and women, young and old, without distinction of sex or age.
Padre é *hijo* murieron en el cadalso sin lanzar una queja.	Father and son perished on the scaffold without uttering a complaint.

3. Before a noun modified by a restrictive adjective or adjectival phrase limiting the application of the noun to a determinate thing or group of things.

El *caballo* **que usted me mandó** es muy hermoso.	The horse you sent me is very handsome.
Los *caballeros* **con quienes comimos anoche** son muy alegres.	The gentlemen with whom we dined last night are very lively.
El *hombre* **sin honor** es peor que **el** *hombre* **sin educación.**	A man without honor is worse than a man without education.
La juventud es **el** *abril* **de la vida.**	Youth is the April of life.
El *mes* **pasado** recibí una carta de mi padre en que me dice que vendrá á vernos **el** *año* **que viene** (*or*, **el** *año* **entrante**).	Last month I received a letter from my father in which he tells me that he will come to see us next year.

Explanations and Exceptions.—(*a*) Demonstrative and possessive adjectives exclude the definite article, except when placed after the noun (Art. 28).

ese hombre, **el** *hombre* **ese**	that man
mis deudas, **las** *deudas* **mías**	my debts

(*b*) Indefinite adjectives, which do not restrict the application of the noun to any determinate thing or class of things among those denoted by the noun, are excluded from the rule, and the nouns they modify do not take the definite article, even if followed by a restrictive modifier.

Muchos *pasajeros* perecieron.	Many passengers perished.
Esta costumbre no se observa sino entre **algunos** *salvajes* **del África Central.**	This custom is observed only among some savages of Central Africa.
Ninguna *persona* **que conozca los hechos** puede negar la gran probabilidad de la teoría darwiniana.	No person that knows the facts can deny the great probability of the Darwinian theory.

When, however, the partitive sense of these adjectives is made explicit by means of the preposition *de*, the noun should be preceded by the article.

Muchos **de los** *pasajeros* perecieron.	Many of the passengers perished.
Cualquiera **de los** *oficiales* puede dar á usted los informes que usted desea.	Any of the officers may give you the information you desire.

(*c*) The adjective **todo,** *all*, requires some special explanation. When it modifies a plural noun, the noun should be preceded by the definite article.

Todos **los** *planetas* giran al rededor del sol.	All the planets revolve around the sun.
Todas **las** ciencias están íntimamente ligadas entre sí.	All the sciences are intimately related to one another.
Todos **los** *movimientos sociológicos* son fenómenos naturales.	All sociological movements are natural phenomena.
No *todos* **los** *versos* son poesía.	Not all verses are poetry.
Nosotros vamos al teatro *todas* **las** *noches*.	We go to the theater every evening.
Pasamos *todos* **los** *diciembres* en el campo.	We spend all Decembers in the country.
Él viene á verme *todos* **los** *domingos*.	He comes to see me every Sunday.

In the last two examples, *todos* may be omitted.

Pasamos **los** *diciembres* en el campo.
Él viene á verme **los** *domingos*.

When the singular *todo* is used distributively in the sense of *every*, it excludes the article.

Todo *negocio* es más ó menos incierto.	Every business is more or less uncertain.
Toda *regla* tiene excepciones.	Every rule has exceptions.

The singular form *todo*, placed before a noun which, by the nature of the thing it denotes, can have no plural, indicates that the noun is taken in all its generality. The same idea is expressed by the article; but, while *todo* may be omitted and the article used alone, the latter should not be omitted when the former is used.

Toda **la** *naturaleza* proclama la ley de la evolución.	All nature proclaims the law of evolution.
Todo **el** *cielo* está cubierto de estrellas.	All the sky is covered with stars.
No *todo* **el** *carbón* se extrae de las minas americanas.	Not all coal is extracted from the American mines.

In the following examples, in which *todo* is also used in the sense of *the whole*, the article is necessary.

No dormí en *toda* **la** *noche*.	I did not sleep any all night.
El médico estuvo aquí *todo* **el** *día*.	The physician was here the whole day.

(*d*) With reference to dates (in which, with the exception of **primero,** *first*, the cardinal numerals are used instead of the ordinal), the article is not employed either in dating a letter or in giving the date of a day that is otherwise specified, as by naming it (**lunes,** *Monday;* **martes,** *Tuesday;* etc.).

Quito, *seis* de enero de 1893.	Quito, January the sixth, 1893.
Si ayer fué *catorce*, hoy es *quince*.	If yesterday was the fourteenth, today is the fifteenth.
El sábado de la semana pasada fué *primero*.	Saturday of last week was the first.
Llegámos á Londres *el* ocho de mayo.	We arrived at London on the eighth of May.
La independencia fué declarada *el* cuatro de julio.	Independence was declared on the fourth of July.

(*c*) The article is similarly omitted before any numeral placed after the noun it modifies.

Luis *Catorce*, rey de Francia	Louis the Fourteenth, king of France
libro *cuarto*, capítulo *segundo*	book the fourth, chapter the second

Formerly, however, ordinals placed after the names of sovereigns were preceded by the article, as they are in English.

Alejandro **el** *Sexto*, Carlos **el** *Quinto*	Alexander the Sixth, Charles the Fifth

4. Before the names of parts of a person's body or wearing apparel. In these cases the article is usually rendered by an English possessive adjective.

Me duele **la** *cabeza*.	My head aches.
Sufro **del** *hígado*.	I am suffering from my liver.
No se quite **el** *sombrero*.	Do not remove your hat.
¿Cuánto dinero tiene usted en **el** *bolsillo?*	How much money have you in your pocket?
Lo hirieron en **la** *espalda*.	He was wounded in the back.
Déme **la** mano.	Give me your hand.

EXCEPTION.—In idiomatic expressions like the following, the article may be either used or omitted:

Usted tiene **el** *pelo* negro.	Your hair is black (*or*, You have black hair).
Esa señorita tiene **las** *manos* muy pequeñas.	That young lady has very small hands.

When, however, the noun is preceded by a modifying adjective or adjectival phrase, the article should be omitted.

Su amiga tiene **muy bonitos** *ojos*.	Your lady friend has very pretty eyes.
El hombre que acababa de entrar tenía **ancho** *pecho* y **musculosos** *miembros*.	The man who had just come in had a broad chest and muscular limbs.

5. Before the first twelve cardinal numerals to express the hour of day.

Son **las** *siete*.	It is seven o'clock.
Llegámos á **las** *cinco y cuarto*.	We arrived at a quarter past five.
Aún no es **la** *una*.	It is not one yet.
Faltan veinticinco minutos para **las** *tres*.	It lacks twenty-five minutes of three.

6. Before an infinitive or an infinitive phrase used as a noun taken in its most general signification, or modified by a restrictive adjective or adjectival phrase. These are but special cases of those stated in 2 and 3, above. The employment of the article before an unmodified infinitive, however, is not necessary, and while in some cases it is conducive to elegance, in other cases, on the contrary, it has the opposite effect. No definite rule can be given in this respect, except that in cases of doubt the article should preferably be dispensed with. As already explained, the infinitive is a neuter, and therefore must be constructed with the masculine singular form of the article.

El *hacer una promesa* es fácil; pero no siempre es tan fácil **el** *cumplirla*.	It is easy to make a promise, but it is not always so easy to keep it.
Cuando **el** *vivir* es un infortunio, **el** *morir* es una bendición.	When living is a misfortune, dying is a blessing.
El *cantar de los poetas* no es siempre tan natural como **el** *cantar de las aves*.	The singing of poets is not always so natural as the singing of birds.

In the first two examples, in which the infinitive is not modified by a restrictive adjective or phrase, the article may be omitted.

7. Before the name of a unit, in stating the rate of prices or values, the price or value of the unit being taken as a basis. The student's attention is especially called to the differences between the Spanish and the English forms of expression. The Spanish preposition *á*, like the English *at*, denotes rate.

Vendí esos sombreros á treinta pesos **la** *docena*.	I sold those hats at thirty dollars a dozen.
El azúcar cuesta hoy á diez centavos **la** *libra*.	Today, sugar costs ten cents **a** pound.

Quiere que le compremos esos cigarros á cinco pesos **el** *ciento*.	He wishes us to buy those cigars from him at fifteen dollars a hundred.
Hoy está el carbón á quince pesos **la** *tonelada*.	Coal sells (*literally*, is) today at fifteen dollars a ton.
Á mí me pagan ochocientos pesos **al** *mes*.	They pay me eight hundred dollars a month.
En ese hotel cobran veinte pesos á **la** *semana*.	At that hotel they charge twenty dollars a week.

Explanations and Exceptions.—(*a*) If the preposition **por,** *per*, is used instead of *á*, the article is dispensed with.

Vendí esos sombreros á treinta pesos **por** *docena*.
Á mí me pagan ochocientos pesos **por** *mes*.

(*b*) In commercial language, both the article and the preposition *por* are often omitted in stating prices.

Vendí esos sombreros á treinta pesos *docena*.
Hoy está el carbón á quince pesos *tonelada*.

8. Before a number followed by the phrase **por ciento,** *per cent*. In this case, however, the use of the article is optional.

Las letras están **al** (*or*, **á**) *veinticinco* **por ciento.**	Drafts are now at twenty-five per cent.
El *noventa* **por ciento** (or, *Noventa* **por ciento**) de los irlandeses son católicos.	Ninety per cent. of the Irish are Catholics.
Más **del** (*or*, **de**) *cuarenta* **por ciento** de los barriles llegaron abiertos.	More than forty per cent. of the barrels arrived opened.

Explanations and Exceptions.—(*a*) If the phrase stating the percentage is preceded by a noun modified by the indefinite article, the definite article should not be used.

Le daremos **un** *descuento* de veinte *por ciento* (*or*, un veinte por ciento de descuento).	We shall give you a discount of twenty per cent.
El oro americano tiene ahora **un** *premio* de doscientos cincuenta por ciento.	American gold has now a premium of two hundred and fifty per cent.

(*b*) The indefinite article is often employed instead of the definite, except after the preposition *á*.

Un noventa por ciento de los irlandeses son católicos.
Más de *un* cuarenta por ciento de los barriles llegaron abiertos.

REMARK.—As this is a somewhat complicated subject, on which no fixed rules can be given, the student should, in cases of doubt, omit the article entirely.

9. Before the partitive numeral **mitad,** *half.*

La *mitad* de las fábricas están cerradas.	Half of the factories are closed.

10. Before the partitive phrases **tercera parte,** *one-third;* **cuarta parte,** *one-fourth;* etc., when they refer to one part of an object independently of the other parts; that is, when the other parts are not mentioned.

La *tercera parte* del ferrocarril está terminada.	One-third of the railroad is finished.
Las *dos quintas partes* de la ciudad fueron destruídas.	Two-fifths of the city was destroyed.
Las exportaciones de ese país son menos de **las** *tres décimas* partes de las importaciones.	The exports of that country are less than three-tenths of the imports.

but

Déme **una** *cuarta parte* de ese dinero en oro, y *las otras tres cuartas partes* en billetes.	Give me one-fourth of that money in gold, and the other three-fourths in bills.
Dos sétimas partes de la tripulación eran blancos; *las otras cinco sétimas partes* se componían de indios y negros.	Two-sevenths of the crew were white; the other five-sevenths consisted of Indians and negroes.

REMARK.—The phrases *tercera parte, cuarta parte,* etc., literally mean *one-third part, one-fourth part,* etc., and should not be confounded with the numbers **un tercio,** *one-third;* **un cuarto,** *one-fourth;* etc., which will be treated in connection with numerals.

11. Before a noun restrictively modifying another noun and immediately following or preceding the latter. This rule applies to all titles of address and of office; to nouns denoting a profession or occupation; to descriptive nouns that, having been used to characterize certain persons, especially sovereigns, have become parts of their names; and finally, to substantivized adjectives.

El *señor* Quesada ha regresado de Cuba.	Mr. Quesada has returned from Cuba.
El *doctor* Rodríguez y **el** *general* Restrepo fueron presentados á **la** *reina* Victoria por **el** *mariscal de campo* Roberts.	Doctor Rodriguez and General Restrepo were presented to Queen Victoria by Field-Marshal Roberts.
Antonino **el** *Filósofo* y Juliano **el** *Apóstata* fueron grandes emperadores.	Antoninus the Philosopher and Julian the Apostate were great emperors.
Mi primo **el** *zapatero* vive en la casa siguiente.	My cousin, the shoemaker, lives in the next house.
Pacha **la** *francesa* me vendió estos pañuelos.	Fannie, the Frenchwoman, sold me these handkerchiefs.
El *joven* Cervera piensa estudiar ingeniería.	Young Cervera intends to study engineering.
Le dí diez centavos á Carlos **el** *ciego*.	I gave ten cents to Charles, the blind man.
el *río* Hudson, **el** *monte* San Elías	the Hudson river, Mount St. Elias

Exceptions.—(*a*) When a person is addressed, either in speech or in writing, by his title and name, or by his title alone, the article is dispensed with. It will be noticed that *señor* does not exclude other titles.

Señor general Máximo Gómez, Santiago.	General Maximo Gomez, Santiago.
Capitán Parra, el general desea hablarle.	Captain Parra, the general wishes to speak to you.
Doctor Mendoza, ¿usted qué opina de la propagación de la fiebre por el mosquito?	Doctor Mendoza, what do you think of the propagation of fever by the mosquito?

(*b*) The following titles exclude the article:

don, doña	lord, *lord*
fray, *brother* (*of a religious order*)	madama, *madame*
frey, *brother* (*of a military order*)	sor, *sister* (*of a religious order*)

To these must be added the French *monsieur*, the English *Mr.* and *sir*, and the German *herr*.

los escritos de *monsieur* Rochefort	the writings of M. Rochefort
los descubrimientos de *sir* William Thomson	the discoveries of Sir William Thomson
la filosofía de *Mr.* Spencer	the philosophy of Mr. Spencer

12. As a substitute for the possessive adjective *su* used in the third person—that is, when this possessive means *his*, *her*, *their*—before a noun denoting relationship. This is done mainly to avoid ambiguity, as *su* has several meanings.

Don Antonio estuvo aquí con **la** señora.	Mr. Anthony was here with his wife.
El señor Ortiz y **las** *hijas* acaban de salir.	Mr. Ortiz and his daughters have just gone out.

13. Before a noun followed by a prepositional phrase with *de* indicating possession. This is but a special case of the general rule laid down in 3.

la *casa* **de mi hermano**	my brother's house
el *libro* **de usted**	your book
las *tiendas* **de ellos**	their stores

41. Use of the Definite Article Before a Substantive Proposition Introduced by Que.—This use of the article is illustrated by the following examples:

El *que el gobierno republicano tenga algunos defectos* no implica que sea el peor sistema.	The fact that the republican government has several defects does not imply that it is the worst system.
El *que él lo haya dicho* no prueba que ello sea cierto.	The fact that he has said it does not prove that it is true. His having said it does not prove that it is true.
El *que la tierra gira al rededor del sol* es un hecho demostrado.	That the earth revolves about the sun is a demonstrated fact.
Contribuyó mucho al triunfo **el** *que los americanos estuviesen bien preparados para la guerra.*	The fact that the Americans were well prepared for the war contributed a great deal toward the victory.
No nos pareció justo **el** *que nos tratasen de esa manera.*	It did not seem fair to us that they should treat us in that manner. Their treating us in that manner did not seem fair to us.

As will be noticed, the combination *el que* in expressions of this kind means *the fact that*, although it is often better rendered by giving the English sentence a form entirely different from the Spanish.

42. Uses of the Definite Article With Proper Nouns. — The definite article is used:

1. Before a proper noun modified by an adjective or adjectival phrase. (Art. **40**, 3.)

el *virtuoso* Wáshington	the virtuous Washington
el *ambicioso* Napoleón	the ambitious Napoleon
el *siempre generoso* Lafayette	the ever generous Lafayette
la *muy emprendedora* Nueva-York	the very enterprising New York
el *omnipotente* Dios	the all-powerful God
la Europa *central*	Central Europe
el África *del Sur*	South Africa
la América *del Norte*	North America

2. Before the names of rivers, oceans, seas, mountains, and volcanoes.

el Amazonas; *el* Sena	the Amazon; the Seine
el Atlántico; *el* Pacífico	the Atlantic; the Pacific
el Caspio; *el* Mediterráneo	the Caspian; the Mediterranean
los Alpes; *el* Chimborazo	the Alps; Chimborazo
el Vesuvio; *el* Etna	Vesuvius; Etna

3. Before descriptive or characterizing adjectives forming part of the names of sovereigns.

Carlos **el** *Calvo;* Alejandro **el** *Grande*	Charles the Bald; Alexander the Great
Escipión **el** *Africano*	Scipio Africanus

EXCEPTIONS. — (*a*) Numeral adjectives are excluded from this rule. [See Art. **40**, 3 (*e*).]

(*b*) The Spanish name of the Roman emperor Antoninus Pius is *Antonino Pío*, not **el** *Pío;* or, with the article, *Antonino* **el** *Piadoso.*

(*c*) The adjectives of nationality added to the names of Roman generals to characterize their victories are often added to their names without the article, after the manner of surnames: *Escipión Africano* is as common as *Escipión* **el** *Africano.*

4. Before geographical names consisting of a substantive modified by a descriptive adjective or substantive, or by a prepositional phrase.

los Estados Unidos; *los* Países Bajos	the United States; the Netherlands (*literally*, the Low Countries)
la República de Colombia; *la* Sierra Madre	the Republic of Colombia; the Sierra Madre

5. Before the following geographical names.

el Afganistán, *Afghanistan*	**la** Habana, *Havana*
la Argentina, *the Argentine*	**el** Havre, *Havre*
el Beluchistán, *Beluchistan*	**la** India, *India*
el Brasil, *Brazil*	**el** Japón, *Japan*
el Cairo, *Cairo*	**la** Meca, *Mecca*
el Callao, *Callao*	**el** Salvador, *Salvador*
el Canadá, *Canada*	**el** Paraguay, *Paraguay*
el Ecuador, *Ecuador*	**la** Patagonia, *Patagonia*
la Guaira, *La Guayra*	**el** Perú, *Peru*
la Guayana, *Guiana*	**el** Uruguay, *Uruguay*

6. Usually, before the names of the American states.

la Florida, *Florida*	**el** Connecticut, *Connecticut*
la Carolina, *Carolina*	**el** Massachusetts, *Massachusetts*
la Virginia, *Virginia*	**el** Misisipí, *Mississippi*

7. Optionally, before the names of the five parts of the world, of large islands, and of all countries not specified under 5.

la Europa, *Europe*	**la** Alemania, *Germany*
el África, *Africa*	**el** Portugal, *Portugal*
la América, *America*	**la** Turquía, *Turkey*
la Australia, *Australia*	**la** China, *China*
la Nueva Zelandia, *New Zealand*	**el** Turquestán, *Turkestan*
la Francia, *France*	**el** Egipto, *Egypt*
la Suiza, *Switzerland*	**la** Argelia, *Algiers*
la Inglaterra, *England*	

With these names, the article is emphatic, and is particularly adapted to phrases in which it is desired to lay special stress on the importance or prominence of the country named. Unless the article serves this purpose, it is preferable to dispense with it, especially after a preposition.

¡Han osado hacer este insulto á *la* Francia!	They have dared offer this insult to France! (*Emphatic.*)

EXCEPTIONS.—The names of Spanish-American countries (those mentioned in 5 excepted) do not take the article.

Méjico	Guatemala	Venezuela
Nicaragua	Costa-Rica	Bolivia
Cuba	Colombia	Chile

8. Before the names of the following Italian poets:

el Ariosto, *Ariosto*	**el** Petrarca, *Petrarch*
el Dante, *Dante*	**el** Tasso, *Tasso*

9. In familiar and lively style, before the names, and more commonly before the surnames, of women.

la María	*la* Gómez	*la* Álvarez

When an actress is referred to by her surname alone, the latter is always preceded by the article.

la Russell, *Miss Russell*	**la** Patti, *Patti*

10. Before a person's name, as a mark of contempt, or to give the expression a lively or familiar tone.

El Manuel Díaz estuvo aquí hoy.	That fellow Manuel Diaz was here today.
El Antonio es muy sospechoso.	That man Anthony is very suspicious.

11. Occasionally, especially in legal language, before a person's name that has already been mentioned in connection with other names. It is then equivalent to **dicho,** *said.*

Presentáronse ante mí Juan Hurtado y Antonio Sánchez; *el* Hurtado, natural de la Habana, y *el* Sánchez, de Santiago.	John Hurtado and Anthony Sanchez appeared before me; said Hurtado, a native of Havana, and said Sanchez, of Santiago.
"En Florencia vivían Anselmo y Lotario; *el* Anselmo era más inclinado á los pasatiempos amorosos que *el* Lotario."	"In Florence there lived Anselm and Lothair; Anselm was more inclined to amorous pastimes than Lothair."

12. Before the title of a book, even if the article does not form part of the title.

El "*Don Quijote*" es una grande obra.	"Don Quixote" is a great work.
¿Ha leído usted **la** "*María*" de Jorge Isaacs?	Have you read George Isaacs' "Maria"?

13. Before a proper noun used as a common noun to denote certain characteristic qualities.

Daniel Wébster fué **el** *Demóstenes* de América.	Daniel Webster was the Demosthenes of America.
París ha dejado de ser **la** *Atenas* de Europa.	Paris has ceased to be the Athens of Europe.

43. The Substantivized Definite Article. — The article is used substantively in Spanish, either with reference to a substantive previously mentioned in the sentence, in which case that substantive is understood after it (Art. **6**, 3), or independently, in which case it refers to persons, one of the substantives **hombre,** *man;* **mujer,** *woman;* **persona,** *person;* etc., being understood after it. It is then rendered by *he*, *those*, etc. (Compare Art. **32.**)

Los que pretenden saberlo todo, generalmente no saben nada.	Those who pretend to know everything, generally know nothing.
El que mucho habla mucho yerra.	He who talks much errs a great deal.
Los de que más tenemos que quejarnos son los oficiales del segundo regimiento.	Those of whom we have to complain the most are the officers of the second regiment.
Los encargados de administrar justicia deben conocer las leyes.	Those intrusted with the administration of justice must know the laws.

As appears from the first two examples, the substantivized article followed by *que* is equivalent to *quien* (Part 4, The Relative Quien). In expressions like the following, also, *el que* is a synonym of *quien:*

Él fué *el que* (or, *quien*) me lo dijo.	It was he who told it to me.
Le pregunté *al que* (*or*, á *quien*) estaba en la oficina.	I asked the man that was at the office.

44. As the substantivized demonstrative *ése* takes the place of the neuter *eso*, in the somewhat anomalous constructions pointed out in Art. **34,** so, too, the substantivized article may take the place of the neuter *lo.*

Lo que parecía hombre, resultó ser un mono.	What looked like a man, proved to be an ape.

Here *lo* means **la cosa,** *the thing*, or **el objeto,** *the object*, and is logically the proper word to employ. Usage, however, sanctions the employment of *el* instead: **El** *que parecía hombre resultó ser un mono.* The literal rendering of this sentence is, *The ape that looked like a man proved to be an ape.*

In the following example, the anomaly is still greater.

El que parecía soldado, era una pastora.	What (*or*, The person that) looked like a soldier, was a shepherdess.

The literal rendering of this sentence is, **He** *who looked like a soldier*, *was a* **shepherdess.**

Although in all cases of this kind the use of the substantivized article is correct, being sanctioned by some of the best writers, it is preferable to use in its place the neuter *lo*, which is grammatically as proper, and logically more so.

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE

45. Forms of the Indefinite Article. — The forms of the indefinite article are as follows:

masculine singular, **un**	feminine singular, **una**
masculine plural, **unos**	feminine plural, **unas**

It has been already explained that the plural forms *unos*, *unas*, are rendered by *some*. They are also employed before numbers in the sense of *about*, *more or less*.

La construcción de ese puente costará *unos* veinte ó treinta mil pesos.	The construction of that bridge will cost about (*or*, some) twenty or thirty thousand dollars.

The form *un* is never used substantively, *uno* being used instead (Art. **6**, 3): **un** *rico* means *a rich man*, not *a rich one.*

Un ciego tenía dos perros: **uno** *blanco* y **uno** *negro.*	A blind man had two dogs—a white one and a black one.

Here *un* is the adjective form of the article, modifying the substantivized adjective *ciego;* while *uno* is the substantivized form, modified by the adjectives *blanco* and *negro.*

46. Uses of the Indefinite Article. — The indefinite article is used:

1. Before a common noun, or a substantive phrase, to indicate that one, but not any particular one, of the things belonging to the class of which the noun or phrase is the name is referred to.

Hoy llegó **un** *vapor* de Buenos-Aires.	A steamer from Buenos Ayres arrived today.
El hombre es **un** *animal*.	Man is an animal.
Póngale **un** *sello de á dos centavos* á esta carta.	Put a two-cent stamp on that letter.
Aquí vive **una** *señora francesa*.	Here lives a French lady.

In the third example, the substantive *sello* is modified by a restrictive phrase, which specifies the kind of *sello* referred to; the article *un*, however, does not refer to this substantive, but to the phrase *sello de á dos centavos*, considered as the name of a whole class. A similar remark applies to the fourth example, in which *una* modifies the phrase name *señora francesa*.

Explanations and Exceptions. — (*a*) A predicate common noun takes the indefinite article when that noun serves as a partial definition of the subject of the sentence, as in the second example given above; or as a descriptive definition, such as that of an animal or any other material object.

El oro es *un* metal de color amarillo, cuyo peso específico es 19,5 (diez y nueve y cinco décimos), indiferente á la acción del ácido nítrico, etc.	Gold is a metal of yellow color, having a specific gravity of 19.5, indifferent to the action of nitric acid, etc.

In definitions of abstract conceptions or generalizations, which are of a purely logical character, the definite article is employed in place of the indefinite.

La geometría es *la* ciencia de la extensión.	Geometry is the science of extension.

(*b*) When a predicate noun is modified by an adjective or adjectival phrase that, although grammatically referring to

that noun, is really intended as a characterization of the subject, the predicate noun is preceded by the indefinite article.

La geología es **una** ciencia *muy interesante*.	Geology is a very interesting science.
Napoleón fué **un** hombre *de mucho genio*.	Napoleon was a man of great genius.
La gramática es **un** estudio que *á pocos les gusta*.	Grammar is a study that few like.

(*c*) The indefinite article is likewise used before a predicate noun preceded by an unmodified adjective.

Wáshington fué **un** *grande* hombre.	Washington was a great man.
Esta estatua es **una** *grande* obra de arte.	This statue is a great work of art.
Lincoln era **un** *pobre* leñador.	Lincoln was a poor wood cutter.
La minería es **un** *mal* negocio.	Mining is a bad business.

(*d*) Except in the cases just mentioned, a predicate noun takes neither article. This rule constitutes a very important difference between English and Spanish, and should receive much attention from the student.

Mi hermano es *general*.	My brother is *a* general.
¿Es usted *comerciante comisionista?*	Are you *a* commission merchant?
Esta niñita es *huérfana*.	This little girl is *an* orphan.
Miguel es irlandés de nacimiento, pero *ciudadano americano* por naturalización. Hasta hace poco era *criado* en un restaurante; ahora es *agente de policía*.	Michael is an Irishman by birth, but *an* American citizen by naturalization. Until lately he was *a* waiter in a restaurant; now he is *a* policeman.
Ese color amarillento de los ojos es *mal síntoma*.	That yellowish color of the eyes is *a* bad symptom.
La huelga que los maquinistas han declarado es *cuestión* muy seria.	The strike that the machinists have declared is *a* very serious question.

In connection with this subject, the student's attention is called to the fact that nationality is indicated in Spanish by adjectives, not by substantives, as appears from the literal translation of the following sentences:

Soy *mejicano*, pero mi madre es *canadense*.	I am Mexican, but my mother is Canadian.

The political party, religious denomination, or the faction or side to which a person belongs is likewise indicated by an adjective.

¿Es usted *católico* ó *protestante?*	Are you a Catholic or a Protestant?
Mi padre es *republicano*, pero yo soy *demócrata*.	My father is a republican, but I am a democrat.

This difference is better illustrated by the following examples, in which the adjectives are modified by adverbs:

Parece que usted es **muy** *católico*.—No, señor; no **tan** *católico* como usted cree.	It seems that you are a great Catholic.—No, sir; not so much of a Catholic as you think.
El profesor Huxley era **más** *darwinista* que el mismo Darwin.	Professor Huxley was more Darwinian than Darwin himself.
Blanc era **demasiado** *socialista*.	Blanc was too much of a socialist.

2. Emphatically, before a predicate adjective referring to a substantive denoting a person. The adjective is then substantivized, and is used for the purpose of presenting the quality or property it expresses as being a characteristic or prominent feature of the subject, always with the implication of contempt, admiration, disgust, pity, etc., according to the meaning of the adjective. This use of the article applies both to the singular and to the plural form.

Juan es **un** *estúpido*.	John is a stupid fellow.
Esa mujer es **una** *infeliz*.	That woman is a wretched creature.
El general Botha es **un** *valiente*.	General Botha is a hero (*more literally*, a brave man).
Los que defienden esa teoría son **unos** *ignorantes*.	Those who defend that theory are great ignoramuses.

3. Emphatically, before a proper noun, to lay stress on the importance or prominence of the thing denoted by the noun. In this form of construction, the article is often preceded by **todo**, *all*, which serves no other purpose than that of adding emp[illegible] the phrase.

Todo un *Napoleón* fué incapaz de vencer á la Inglaterra.	Even a Napoleon was unable to vanquish England.
Si los norte-americanos tienen **un** *Misisipí*, nosotros tenemos **un** *Amazonas*.	If the North Americans have a Mississippi, we have an Amazon.

4. Before the name of a person—usually in contempt—to indicate that the person is unknown.

Acabo de leer un artículo por **un** *José Castillo*. ¿Quién es ése?	I have just read an article by a Jose Castillo. Who is that?

47. Cases in Which the Indefinite Article Should Not Be Used.—In addition to those already mentioned, the following are important cases in which the indefinite article should not be employed in Spanish:

1. Before a substantive or substantive phrase in apposition with a preceding substantive, but not serving to restrict or specify the meaning of the latter.

Newton, *ilustre matemático*, fué el descubridor de la ley de gravitación.	Newton, *an* illustrious mathematician, was the discoverer of the law of gravitation.
El aluminio, *metal* muy ligero y muy durable, sería mejor para ese objeto.	Aluminum, *a* very light and very durable metal, would be better for that purpose.

If a substantive explains the meaning of another with which it is in apposition, and the explained substantive represents a thing known to the listener or reader, the explanatory substantive should be preceded by the definite article.

Esto sucedió en Méjico, **la** *capital* del país del mismo nombre.	This happened in Mexico, the capital of the country of the same name.
Mr. Gladstone, **el** *grande orador inglés*, pronunció ayer un magnífico discurso.	Mr. Gladstone, the great English orator, delivered a magnificent address yesterday.

2. Before the name of a unit of measure, if the latter is followed by one of the partitive numerals **mitad,** *half*, or **cuarto,** *quarter*. The article is likewise omitted before these

partitives, whenever they are preceded by the conjunction **y**, *and*. In these cases, the adjective *a* used in English is rather a numeral than an article.

Déme *libra* y *media* de azúcar.	Give me *a* pound and *a* half of sugar.
Son las dos y *cuarto*.	It is *a* quarter past two.
Llegámos á las tres y *media*.	We arrived at half past three.
Esta camisa me costó dos pesos y *medio*.	This shirt cost me two dollars and *a* half.

3. Before a noun preceded by one of the words **cierto**, *certain;* **como**, *as;* **otro**, *other;* **tal, semajante**, *such*.

Esto me lo dijo **cierta** *persona*.	*A* certain person told me this.
Yo he venido aquí **como** *ciudadano*, no **como** *presidente*.	I have come here as *a* citizen, not as president.
Ayer compré **otro** *caballo*.	I bought *an*other horse yesterday.
Yo no he dicho **tal** *cosa*.	I have not said such *a* thing.
Jamás habíamos oído **semejante** *ruido*.	We had never heard such *a* noise.

4. In comparisons, before a substantive modified by an adjective preceded by the adverb **tan**, *so*. If, however, the substantive is the accusative of a verb, the article may be used. Notice the difference between the Spanish and the English construction.

No hay en el mundo *lugar* **tan** *bello* como éste.	There is not in the world so beautiful *a* spot as this.
¿Ha visto usted alguna vez *estatua* **tan** *perfecta?*	Have you ever seen so perfect *a* statue.
Inglaterra no es *nación* **tan poderosa** como generalmente se cree.	England is not so powerful *a* nation as is generally believed.

Although this rule is not absolute, it should be applied in all cases of doubt. In the last example, the use of the article would not be improper, but it would be superfluous.

5. Before a substantive preceded by the exclamatory adjective **qué**, *what*.

¡Qué hombre! ¡qué jefe!	What *a* man! what *a* leader!

6. After the verbs **tener**, *to have*, and **estar**, *to be*, followed by the name of a disease or ailment, unless that name is modified by a restrictive adjective or adjectival phrase.

Tengo (*or*, Estoy con) *dolor de cabeza*.	I have *a* headache.
Tengo (*or*, Estoy con) *catarro*.	I have *a* cold.
Mi hermano tiene (*or*, está con) **un** *dolor de cabeza* **muy fuerte.**	My brother has a very severe headache.

7. After **tener**, in expressions like the following, which are very similar in form to those just mentioned:

Tiene buen corazón.	He has *a* good heart.
Tengo mala memoria.	I have *a* bad memory.
Tenemos gusto por eso.	We have *a* taste for that.
Tengo deseo de comer.	I have *a* desire to eat.
Don Antonio tiene muy buen apetito.	Mr. Anthony has *a* very good appetite.

8. Before the titles of books and articles.

"Tratado elemental de termodinámica."	"An Elementary Treatise on Thermodynamics."
"Nueva teoría de la producción."	"A New Theory of Production."

9. Before a noun preceded by **con**, *with*, or **sin**, *without*, in adverbial phrases in which naturally or usually only one thing of the class named by the noun is referred to.

Estudio **sin** *maestro;* **con** *maestro*.	I study without *a* teacher; with *a* teacher.
Juan salió **sin** *sombrero;* **con** *sombrero*.	John went out without any hat on; with his hat on.

Exception.—If the noun is modified by a restrictive adjective or adjectival phrase, the article should be used.

Estudio *sin* **un** *maestro que entienda el idioma*.	I study without a teacher who understands the language.
Juan salió *con* **un** *sombrero* **prestado.**	John went out with a borrowed hat on.

UNCLASSIFIED FORMS OF EXPRESSION CONTAINING ARTICLES

48. There are a great many expressions in which one of the articles is used in one language and not in the other, and that do not come under any of the foregoing rules. It would be difficult to give them all, and still more difficult to classify them in a satisfactory and useful manner. The following forms are some of the most commonly met with:

Voy á *la* iglesia, *al* colegio, á *la* escuela.	I am going (am on my way) to *church*, to *college*, to *school*.
Estoy en *el* colegio, en *la* escuela.	I go to (attend) *college*, to *school*.
El presidente acaba de salir de *palacio*.	The president has just gone out of *the* palace.
Tome *asiento*.	Take *a* seat.
El criminal tembló en *presencia* del cadalso.	The criminal trembled in *the* presence of the scaffold.
Filadelfia queda á *orillas* del Delaware.	Philadelphia lies on *the* banks of the Delaware.
Se fué sin hablar *palabra*.	He left without saying *a* word.
Salió á ver *mundo* y á buscar *fortuna*.	He went out to see *the* world and seek *his* fortune.
El hombre tiene *derecho* á la libertad.	Man has *a* right to liberty.
Soy de *opinión* que el pueblo protestará contra esa ley.	I am of *the* opinion that the people will protest against that law.

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 6)

THE ADJECTIVE—(Continued)

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

PERSONAL POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

1. Definitions.—Possessive adjectives have already been defined as those that restrict the meaning of nouns by indicating that the things denoted by the nouns belong or appertain to other things (people included). In dealing with adjectives of this class, the thing to which another belongs or appertains is referred to as the **possessor.**

Possessive adjectives are of two kinds, namely:

Personal possessive adjectives, which by their form indicate the grammatical person of the possessor, and can, therefore, be of the first, the second, or the third person.

Relative possessive adjectives, which combine the general characteristics of possessives with those of relatives.

2. Personal Possessive Adjectives Used Before the Modified Substantives.—These are:

First Person	Second Person
mi, *my* [**yo**]	**tu,** *thy* [**tú**]
nuestro, *our* [**nosotros**]	**vuestro,** *your* [**vosotros**]

Third Person

su, *his, hèr, one's* (also, *your*) [**él, ella, uno** (also, **usted**)]
su, *their* (also, *your*) [**ellos, ellas** (also, **ustedes**)]

The words in brackets are the pronouns by which the possessors are represented. These possessives follow the

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

general rules governing the inflection of adjectives for number and gender: *mi*, *tu*, *su* may modify either masculine or feminine singular substantives; they have the plural forms *mis*, *tus*, *sus*, which apply to either gender. *Nuestro* and *vuestro* have the masculine plural forms *nuestros*, *vuestros*, and the feminine forms *nuestra*, *nuestras; vuestra*, *vuestras*.

mi libro; *tu* casa	my book; thy house
mis libros; *tus* casas	my books; thy houses
nuestro establecimiento	our establishment
nuestras calamidades	our calamities

3. Forms Used After the Modified Substantives. A possessive adjective may follow, instead of preceding, the substantive it modifies. In such a case, that substantive should be preceded by the definite article, and the forms *mi*, *tu*, *su*, which are called **apocopated forms,** should be replaced by *mío*, *tuyo*, *suyo*, respectively.

el lápiz *mío; las* plumas *tuyas*	my pencil; thy pens
la casa *suya; los* amigos *nuestros*	his, her, their, your, house; our friends

In direct address, however, the possessive follows the modified substantive without the latter being preceded by the definite article. The possessive is then rather a mark of affection or respect than a sign of possession, and can usually be rendered by the corresponding English possessive adjective followed by *dear*.

hijo *mío;* madre *mía*	my dear son; my dear mother
muy señora *nuestra*	our very dear madam
muy señores *míos*	my very dear sirs

The last two expressions are common forms employed at the beginning of a letter, and would be customarily rendered by *dear madam*, *dear sirs*, respectively.

If the adjective **querido,** *dear*, which is implied in the possessive placed after a noun denoting a person, is expressed before the noun, the possessive should usually precede the substantive phrase thus obtained. This form of expression, however, is limited to familiar style.

mi querido hijo	my dear son
mi muy querida esposa	my very dear wife

Such forms as *querido hijo mío*, *amada esposa mía*, in which an adjective of endearment occurs in combination with a possessive following the noun it modifies, are more emphatic than the forms *hijo mío* or *mi querido hijo*, *esposa mía* or *mi amada esposa*, and may be rendered by means of superlative English adjectives: *my dearest son*, *my most beloved* (or, *darling*) *wife*.

4. In a few adverbial prepositional phrases, the possessive follows its substantive, without the latter being preceded by the definite article. Among them are:

á fe mía, *upon my word*	por causa vuestra, *on your account*
á petición suya, *on his petition, at his request*	á pesar nuestro, *in spite of us*

Perdimos todo ese dinero *por culpa vuestra*.	We lost all that money through your fault (*or*, You are to blame for our having lost all that money).
Se rieron mucho *á costa mía*.	They laughed a great deal at my expense.

The phrase *á pesar mío* means *in spite of me*, while *á mi pesar* means *to my regret*, *against my feelings*.

Lo hice muy *á mi pesar*.	I did it much against my feelings (*or*, against my wishes).

5. A possessive, when combined with the definite article, always refers to a special and determinate thing. In some cases, the article is omitted, thus giving to the possessive an indeterminate sense, usually expressed in English by the indefinite article, or, in negative and in interrogative sentences, by the adjectives *no* and *any*, respectively.

Ayer recibí *su* carta (or, *la* carta *suya*).	I received *his* letter yesterday.
Ayer recibí carta *suya*.	I received *a* letter from him yesterday.
¿No recibió *mi* carta?	Did you not receive *my* letter?
¿No recibió carta *mía?*	Did you not receive *any* letter from me?

6. As predicate adjectives, *mío*, *tuyo*, *suyo*, *nuestro*, and *vuestro* are rendered by *mine; thine; his*, *hers*, *theirs; ours*, and *yours*, respectively. The same rule applies when these possessives are substantivized, or when they follow the substantivized definite article. In the latter case, the combination formed by the article and the modifying possessive is rendered by the English possessive alone.

Este caballo es *mío*.	This horse is mine.
La tienda de que ustedes hablan es *nuestra*.	The store of which you speak is ours.
¿De quién es esa maleta?—*Mía*.	Whose is that satchel?—Mine.
¿Es ésta la casa de tu amo, ó **la** *tuya?*	Is this thy master's house, or thine?

The student should be careful to distinguish between the two forms, *Este libro es mío*, and *Este libro es* **el** *mío*, both of which are rendered, *This book is mine*. In the first, the speaker simply makes the statement that the book belongs to him, without referring to any other books. The literal rendering of the second is, *This book is the one mine:* here the speaker wishes to refer, among several books, to a particular one—the one that belongs to him. This distinction may perhaps be made plainer by comparing the two expressions just considered with these other two, in which the adjective is not a possessive:

Estos sobretodos son *importados*.	These overcoats are imported.
Estos sobretodos son **los** *importados*.	These overcoats are the imported ones.

7. A possessive adjective modifying a neuter substantive should follow, never precede, that substantive.

Creo que aquí hay *algo* **tuyo.**	I think there is something of yours here.
Tú sabes que *lo* **mío** es tuyo.	Thou knowest that what is mine is thine (*literally*, that the things mine are thine).

8. When a demonstrative adjective precedes a substantive modified by a possessive, the latter may be placed either after the substantive or before the demonstrative.

The latter order is better adapted to lively or humorous composition.

ese **tu** amigo; *ese* amigo **tuyo**	that friend of thine

9. The use of the possessive adjective with the indefinite article is illustrated by the two following examples:

¿Quién es Pedro Díaz?—Es **un** amigo *mío*.	Who is Peter Diaz?—He is a friend of mine.
¿Conoce usted á Pedro Díaz?—Sí, señor; él es amigo *mío*.	Do you know Peter Diaz?—Yes, sir; he is a friend of mine.

In the first example, the speaker refers to a person not known to the listener, and explains who he is by stating that he is one of his friends. In the second example, the person referred to by the speaker is supposed to be known to the listener, and the speaker simply wishes to state the circumstance that that person is one of his friends.

When either the definite or the indefinite article is used with a possessive adjective, the latter is seldom placed before the substantive it modifies. The reverse order is only permissible in familiar style, in poetry, and in a few devotional phrases. When the definite article is employed, the combination formed by it and the accompanying possessive is rendered by the corresponding English possessive placed before the modified substantive.

Vino con *un su* amigo.	He came with a friend of his.
"Vosotros cantaréis *la mi* muerte cada día."	"Ye will sing my death every day."
"Santificado sea *el tu* nombre; venga á nós *el tu* reino."	"Hallowed be thy name; thy kingdom come (to us)."

10. Ambiguity of the Possessives Suyo and Su. As *suyo* is the possessive adjective of the third person, both singular and plural, and also of the second person, when the latter is represented by *usted* or *ustedes*, some ambiguity may arise from its employment. Thus, *la casa* **suya** may mean either **his** *house*, **her** *house*, **their** *house*, or **your** *house*. When the context or the circumstances are not sufficient to make the sense clear, the ambiguity is removed by replacing

the possessive with a phrase formed by *de* with the prepositional case of the appropriate personal pronoun. In the following examples, the replaced possessive is enclosed in brackets:

Esta llave es *de usted* [*suya*].	This key is yours.
¿Es este paraguas el *de usted* [*suyo*], ó el *de ella* [*suyo*]?	Is this umbrella yours, or hers?
Los señores Gómez me han dicho que, si no conseguimos caballos hoy, tendrán mucho gusto en prestarnos los *de ellos* [*suyos*].	The Messrs. Gomez have told me that, if we cannot get horses today, they will be much pleased to lend us theirs.

11. The same substitution applies to the apocopated form *su*, after replacing this form with the full form *suyo* combined with the article. Thus, *su casa*, which is equivalent to *la casa suya*, may be replaced by *la casa de usted*, *la casa de él*, etc., according to circumstances.

Su padre envió *la carta de usted* [*su carta*] al vapor esta mañana.	Your father sent your letter to the steamer this morning.
La tienda de ellos [*su tienda*] no está tan convenientemente situada como la *de ustedes* [*suya*].	Their store is not so conveniently located as yours.

12. Referring to a person's relatives, the definite article often takes by itself the place of the possessive adjective of the third person, no prepositional phrase being then added.

El señor Fajardo llegó ayer de Europa con *la* señora y *los* hijos.	Mr. Fajardo arrived yesterday from Europe with his wife and children.
Don Antonio Andrade acaba de recibir un cablegrama en que le comunican la muerte *del* hijo.	Mr. Anthony Andrade has just received a cablegram in which they communicate to him the death of his son.
Cuando una mujer no quiere *al* marido, lo mejor que puede hacer es separarse de él.	When a woman does not love her husband, the best thing she can do is to separate herself from him.

13. Instead of the definite article, the possessives *su*, *suyo*, are sometimes employed in combination with a prepositional phrase.

Sus hermanas *de usted* desean verlo.	Your sisters wish to see you.
Su madre nos suplicó que le enviásemos este sombrero á *su* casa *de ella*.	Your mother requested us to send this hat to her house.
De los dos métodos, *el suyo de ustedes* me parece mucho mejor.	Of the two methods, yours seems to me much better.

This form of construction, although not uncommon, is considered very inelegant, and should be avoided as much as possible, especially when the object of the preposition *de* is other than *usted* or *ustedes*.

14. Parts of the Body, Wearing Apparel, Etc. In treating of the dative case (Part 4) and of the articles (Part 5), it was explained that the definite article often takes the place of a possessive adjective before a substantive denoting a part of the body, a mental faculty, a piece of wearing apparel, and, in general, anything that naturally belongs to a person as part of either his physical or his mental constitution, or that he usually wears or carries with him.

Póngase este termómetro debajo de **la** *lengua*.	Place this thermometer under your tongue.
Galileo perdió **la** *vista*.	Galileo lost his sight.
No puedo concentrar **la** *atención* en ese asunto.	I cannot concentrate my attention on that subject.
El soldado arrojó **el** *rifle* al suelo, y, tomando **la** *bayoneta*, saltó sobre su adversario.	The soldier threw his rifle on the ground, and, taking his bayonet, sprang on his adversary.

In the last example, the definite article is employed with *rifle* and *bayoneta*, because these are things that a soldier usually carries with him, and with which he is naturally associated. Under different circumstances, the indefinite article should be used instead of the definite.

El ladrón entró en mi aposento con **un** *puñal* en la mano.	The burglar came into my apartment with a dagger in his hand.

The general rule may be stated that, when a part of the body, a faculty, etc. is referred to, and the possessor is represented in the same sentence by either the subject of

the verb or by a dative case (see Part 4), the definite article should be employed; otherwise, the possessive adjective, as in English.

Su *cuerpo* era robusto, casi atlético; **su** *rostro*, bello y delicado, casi como el de una mujer.	His body was robust, almost athletic; his face, beautiful and delicate, almost like that of a woman.
Una lágrima rodó por **mi** *mejilla* y cayó sobre **su** *frente*.	A tear rolled down my cheek and fell upon her forehead.

15. Idiomatic Uses of the Possessive Adjectives. The plural masculine form of a possessive adjective preceded by the definite article serves to denote a person's relatives, friends, constituents, or other people with whom he is naturally or temporarily connected or associated. The persons referred to are always indicated by the circumstances.

Nos alegramos de que usted y *los suyos* estén bien de salud.	We are glad that you and yours are in good health.
El senador Arosemena y yo estamos seguros de que *los nuestros* aprobarán nuestra conducta.	Senator Arosemena and I are sure that our constituents will approve our conduct.

16. In familiar style and light literature, *su* is occasionally employed in an indefinite sense to indicate vaguely the existence or occurrence of something without specifying the particulars. It is then rendered by means of such expressions as *not a few*, *not without*, *some kind of*, etc., according to circumstances. This is one of those constructions about the translation of which no definite rules can be given, and whose character is better understood from examples than from explanations.

Este plan no carece de *sus* desventajas.	This plan is not without (*or*, is not lacking in) some disadvantages.
Él y su socio como que tuvieron *su* molestia.	It seems that he and his partner had some kind of trouble.
No le faltan á don Eugenio *sus* amigos.	Mr. Eugene is not without a few friends.
Siempre ha habido aquí *sus* millonarios.	There have always been one or two (*that is*, a few) millionaires here.

THE POSSESSIVE RELATIVE CUYO

17. This relative applies to both animate and inanimate things, and is equivalent to either *de que*, *del cual*, *de quien*, or *de lo cual*, according to the character of its antecedent. Like other adjectives, it agrees in number and gender with the substantive it modifies. It corresponds to the possessive adjective *whose* and to the possessive phrase *of which*.

No conozco á la señora *cuyo* retrato me ha enseñado usted.	I do not know the lady whose picture you have shown me.
El general Galindo, *cuyas* hijas llegaron en el vapor Santander, saldrá de Buenos-Aires con el resto de su familia á principios del mes entrante.	General Galindo, whose daughters arrived on the steamer Santander, will leave Buenos Ayres with the rest of his family in the early part of next month.
No recuerdo el nombre del árbol de *cuya* corteza se extrae esta sustancia.	I do not remember the name of the tree from the bark of which this substance is extracted.
Á los americanos no les gusta aprender sino aquello *cuya* utilidad práctica es manifiesta.	Americans like to learn only that (*or*, those things) the practical usefulness of which is manifest.

18. Occasionally, *cuyo* is used as a predicate adjective with the verb *ser*, in which case it is rendered by the phrase *to whom* combined with the verb *to belong*.

"el caballero *cuya* era la espada"	"the gentleman to whom the sword belonged"

19. With reference to people, *cuyo* may include its antecedent, being then equivalent to *la persona de quien*, *el hombre de quien*, *la mujer de quien*, etc. The antecedent is always indicated by the circumstances. This use of *cuyo* is not common at the present time.

"Entregaron la ciudad á *cuya* era."	"They delivered the city to those to whom it belonged."
"*Cuyo* soy me mandó no dijese que era suyo."	"She to whom I belong ordered me Not to tell I was hers."

20. It was stated in Part 5 that *cuyo* often performs the functions of a demonstrative adjective, being then equivalent to *este* or *ese*. Although this application of *cuyo* is very strongly

condemned by grammarians, it is of frequent occurrence, even among some of the best writers. The following examples may serve as illustrations:

Carecíamos de víveres y de municiones, por *cuyo* motivo (*better*, por *ese* motivo; *or*, motivo por *el cual*) tuvimos que entregarnos.	We lacked provisions and ammunition, for which reason (*better*, and for that reason) we had to surrender.
Es necesario que los empleados conozcan sus deberes, para *cuyo* fin (*better*, para *este* fin; *or*, fin para *el cual*) he escrito este reglamento.	It is necessary that the employes should know their duties, and to this end I have written these regulations.
El congreso ha resuelto no otorgar el privilegio; *cuya* decisión (*better*, decisión *que;* or, *esta* decisión) ha sido aprobada por el presidente.	Congress has decided not to grant the privilege; a decision that (*or*, which decision) has been approved by the president.

21. In those forms of construction in which reference is made to a part of the body, wearing apparel, etc., and possession is indicated by a dative case or a dative prepositional phrase, the relative *cuyo* is replaced by the dative phrase *á quien*.

El joven *á quien* el barbero le estaba cortando el pelo es mi hermano.	The young man whose hair the barber was cutting is my brother.
Un hombre *á quien* el corazón le late tan aprisa no puede estar en buena salud.	A man whose heart beats so fast cannot be in good health.

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES

CUÁL AND QUÉ

22. *Qué* is used, without change of form, for both genders and numbers; *cuál* has the plural *cuáles*. As an adjective immediately preceding the substantive it modifies, *cuál* has a more definite sense than *qué;* it indicates that the thing or things about which a question is asked belong to a particular

group or form part of a special number of things known both to the listener and to the speaker, either from their having been mentioned or from some other circumstances.

¿Cuál llave tiene usted en la mano, la mía ó la suya?	Which key have you in your hand, mine or yours?
Aquí tiene usted varias camisas de color: *¿cuál* color le gusta á usted más?	Here you have several colored shirts: which color do you like best?
¿Cuáles condiciones le parecen á usted más aceptables, las del gobierno ó las mías?	Which terms seem to you more acceptable, the government's or mine?

Qué, on the contrary, has reference to things having no necessary or implied connection with others of the same kind; that is, it applies when the thing answering the question may be any one of those denoted by the noun that *qué* modifies. In the first of the examples given above, the number of objects denoted by the noun *llave* that can answer the question is restricted to two; in the second, only one of the colors shown to the person addressed will answer the question. In the following sentences, there are no such restrictions; the answer to the first question may be any *llave;* the answer to the second, any *color:*

¿Qué llave tiene usted en la mano?	What key have you in your hand?
Deseo una camisa de color.—*¿Qué* color le gusta á usted más?	I want a colored shirt.—What color do you like best?

23. Although *qué* can be a neuter interrogative pronoun, as explained in Part 4, it cannot be a substantivized adjective. *Cuál*, on the contrary, is often used in this capacity.

¿Cuál (that is, *¿Cuál nombre*) es su nombre?	What is your name?
¿Ve usted aquel edificio?—*¿Cuál?* (that is, *¿Cuál edificio?*)	Do you see yonder building?—Which?
¿Cuáles (that is, *¿Cuáles obras*) son las mejores obras de la literatura española?	Which are the best works of Spanish literature?
Hay sopa de tomates y de fideos. *¿Cuál* (that is, *¿Cuál sopa*) prefiere usted?	There is tomato and vermicelli soup. Which do you prefer?

No se sabe *cuál* (that is, *cuál hombre*) de los dos disparó primero. [*Indirect question.*]	It is not known which of the two (men) fired first.

24. *Cuál* may be a neuter interrogative pronoun, as in the following example:

¿Cuál es peor, morir de hambre, ó mendigar para vivir?	Which is worse, to die of hunger, or to beg in order to live?

CUÁNTO, CUÁNTOS

25. *Cuánto, -a*, relates to quantity, and means *how much;* while *cuántos, -as*, relates to number, and means *how many*. Like other adjectives, both of these can be substantivized.

¿Cuánto oro produce su mina mensualmente?	How much gold does your mine yield monthly?
No recuerdo *cuánta* lana exportámos el mes pasado.	I do not remember how much wool we exported last month.
¿Cuántos bancos de ahorros hay en esta ciudad?	How many savings banks are there in this city?
Tenga usted la bondad de averiguar *cuántas* docenas de camisas hemos embarcado esta semana.	Please find out how many dozens of shirts we have shipped this week.

26. *Cuánto* may be a neuter, meaning *how much*.

¿Cuánto perdió usted en ese negocio?	How much did you lose in that business?
¿Cuánto vale esto?	How much is this worth?

CÚYO

27. Formerly, *cúyo* was extensively used as an interrogative adjective equivalent to the English *whose*.

¿Cúyo criado eres tú?	Whose servant art thou?
¿Cúyo es este palacio?	Whose palace is this?
¿Cúyo ejército obtuvo la victoria?	Whose army obtained the victory?

At present, however, *de quién* generally takes the place of *cúyo*. When this phrase immediately modifies a substantive, it follows that substantive.

¿Criado *de quién* eres tú?—*¿De quién* es este palacio?
¿El ejército *de quién* (better, *¿Cuál* ejército) obtuvo la victoria?

NUMERALS

CARDINAL NUMERALS

28. Integral Numbers.—The following table shows how integral numbers are named in Spanish:

cero, 0
uno, 1
dos, 2
tres, 3
cuatro, 4
cinco, 5
seis, 6
siete, 7
ocho, 8
nueve, 9
diez, 10
once, 11
doce, 12
trece, 13
catorce, 14
quince, 15
diez y seis, dieciséis, } 16
diez y siete, diecisiete, } 17
diez y ocho, dieciocho, } 18
diez y nueve, diecinueve, } 19
veinte, 20
veintiuno, 21
veintidós, 22
veintitrés, 23
veinticuatro, 24
veinticinco, 25
veintiséis, 26
veintisiete, 27
veintiocho, 28
veintinueve, 29
treinta, 30
treinta y uno, 31
treinta y dos, 32
treinta y nueve, 39
cuarenta, 40
cuarenta y uno, 41
cuarenta y dos, 42
cincuenta, 50
cincuenta y uno, 51
sesenta, 60
setenta, 70
ochenta, 80
noventa, 90
ciento, 100
ciento uno, 101
ciento veintiocho, 128
ciento noventa y nueve, 199
doscientos, 200
doscientos uno, 201
doscientos noventa y nueve, 299
trescientos, 300
cuatrocientos, 400
quinientos, 500
seiscientos, 600
setecientos, 700
ochocientos, 800
novecientos, 900
mil, 1,000
mil uno, 1,001
mil dos, 1,002
mil novecientos noventa y nueve, 1,999
dos mil, 2,000
dos mil uno, 2,001
dos mil trescientos veintiocho, 2,328
tres mil, 3,000
cuatro mil, 4,000
diez mil, 10,000
cien mil, 100,000

un millón, 1,000,000	dos millones uno, 2,000,001
un millón uno, 1,000,001	tres millones, 3,000,000
un millón, trescientos cuarenta y cinco mil, quinientos dieciocho, 1,345,518	mil millones, 1,000,000,000
	un billón, 1,000,000,000,000
dos millones, 2,000,000	mil billones, 1,000,000,000,000,000

29. In Spanish, as in English, the names of the numbers may be either adjectives, substantivized adjectives, or substantives. As adjectives, they precede the nouns they modify, but follow pronouns and substantivized demonstrative adjectives. The following examples illustrate these three uses:

Tengo **veinte** *pesos*.	I have twenty dollars.
¿Cuántos pesos tiene usted?—*Veinte*.	How many dollars have you?—Twenty.
Veinte es mayor que *diez*.	Twenty is greater than ten.
Nosotros **tres** vivimos aquí.	We three live here.
¿Cuántos baúles tiene usted?—No tengo sino *éstos* **dos**.	How many trunks have you?—I have only these two.

30. *Uno* and all numbers ending in *-uno* lose the final *o* before a masculine substantive or a substantive phrase consisting of a masculine substantive and its modifiers. Before feminine substantives, the *o* is replaced by *a*.

un peso; *un***a** botella	one dollar; one bottle
veinti*ún* pesos; veinti*un***a** botellas	twenty-one dollars; twenty-one bottles
ciento *un* pesos; ciento *un***a** botellas	one hundred one dollars; one hundred one bottles
cuarenta y *un* miserables emigrantes con cuarenta y *un***a** miserables familias	forty-one wretched emigrants with forty-one wretched families

When a number ending in *-uno* is multiplied by one thousand, the final *o* of *uno* is invariably dropped.

treinta y *un* mil botellas	thirty-one thousand bottles
ciento *un* mil familias	one hundred one thousand families

31. With the exception of numbers ending in *-uno*, and the hundred multiples (*doscientos*, *trescientos*, etc.) between one hundred and nine hundred, the names of all numbers

have only one form for the two genders. Those between one hundred and one thousand change the ending *-os* into *-as* for the feminine, whether they stand alone or are followed by other numbers.

cuatro botellas; *cinco* casas	four bottles; five houses
*doscient***as** mujeres	two hundred women
*trescient***as** *once* cajas	three hundred eleven boxes
*cuatrocient***as** mil *quinient***as** *veintiocho* locomotoras	four hundred thousand five hundred twenty-eight locomotives

32. *Ciento* loses the syllable *-to* before a substantive or substantive phrase, regardless of gender; also, before *mil*, but not before lower numbers.

cien hombres sentados en *cien* hermosas sillas	one hundred men seated in one hundred handsome chairs
cien mil *cien* niñas	one hundred thousand one hundred girls
ciento ochenta y cinco	one hundred eighty-five

33. Neither *ciento* nor *mil* should be preceded by *un;* that is, the English *a* or *one* in *a hundred*, *one thousand* has no Spanish equivalent; or, rather, it is included in the words *ciento* and *mil* themselves.

mil doscientos pesos	one thousand two hundred dollars
ciento veinte caballos	one hundred twenty horses

In such expressions as *trescientos* **un** *mil*, 301,000, the *un* forms part of the number 301, and is not by itself a modifier of *mil*.

34. The conjunction *y* is used only with numbers between thirty and forty, forty and fifty, etc., up to *noventa* **y** *nueve*, 99.

doscientos treinta *y* cinco (*not*, doscientos *y* treinta y cinco)	two hundred thirty-five

35. Reckoning by hundreds does not extend above novecientos, 900. It would not be permissible to say *quince cientos*, *veinticuatro cientos* for *mil quinientos*, *dos mil cuatrocientos*.

36. *Millón*, *billón*, *trillón*, etc. are always treated as masculine collective substantives, and should be preceded by *un*, when used in the singular. When preceded by a cardinal higher than *uno*, they take the plural forms *millones*, *billones*, etc. A noun preceded by a cardinal expressing a *round number* of millions should be preceded by *de;* otherwise, the preposition is not used. The same remark applies to *billón*, *trillón*, and, in general, to all collective numerals.

un *millón* **de** habitantes	one million inhabitants
tres *billones* **de** millas	three billion miles
un *millón cuatrocientas mil* toneladas	one million four hundred thousand tons

REMARK.—It will be observed that, in Spanish, one billion is one million millions, not one thousand millions. Likewise, one trillion is one million billions.

37. **Ambos.**—This numeral is equivalent to **los dos,** *the two*, and is rendered by *both*. When it refers to a plural subject, or to two substantives connected by *y*, which are subjects of the same verb, it should be placed after the verb, never before the two substantives, as *both* often is in English.

Ambos poetas vivieron en el siglo XVI (diez y seis).	Both poets lived in the 16th century.
He leído *ambas* obras.	I have read both works.
Mandámos mercancías por *ambos* vapores.	We sent goods by both steamers.
Don Juan Concha y su señora viven **ambos** aquí (*never*, **Ambos** *don Juan Concha y su señora* viven aquí).	Mr. John Concha and his wife both live here (*or*, Both Mr. John Concha and his wife live here).
Nosotros trabajamos **ambos** en esta fábrica (never, *Nosotros* **ambos** trabajamos en esta fábrica).	We both work in this factory.

38. *Ambos* is always either an adjective or a pronoun, and cannot, therefore, be employed in rendering English expressions in which *both* has an adverbial or conjunctional value. Thus, the sentence, *I am* **both** *tired and sick*, cannot be translated, *Estoy* **ambos** *cansado y enfermo;* nor can the

phrase **both** *here and there* be rendered by **ambos** *aquí y allá*. In such cases, it is necessary to give the Spanish sentence a form different from the English.

Estoy cansado y enfermo.	I am both tired and sick (*literally*, I am tired and sick).
Estoy cansado, así como enfermo.	I am tired, as well as sick.
Eso sucede aquí, como allá.	That happens both here and there (*literally*, That happens here, as there).
Eso sucede aquí tanto como allá.	That happens here as much as there.

39. *Ambos* is never joined to a personal pronoun, either immediately or through the preposition *de*. Instead of forming combinations of this kind, it is used by itself as a pronoun.

Acabo de ver al doctor Gómez y al general Aguilera; *ambos* llegaron en un buque de guerra español.	I have just seen Doctor Gomez and General Aguilera; they both arrived on a Spanish warship.

Here it would not be permissible to say *ellos ambos* nor *ambos de ellos*.

40. In negative sentences, the meaning of the verb applies to only one of the two things denoted by *ambos*.

Ambas proposiciones no pueden ser verdaderas.	Both propositions cannot be true.
Ambos (better, *Los dos*) no salimos por el mismo vapor.	We do not both leave by the same steamer.

41. As a pronoun, *ambos* resembles personal pronouns in that it may either precede or follow the accusative case, when it is employed in a redundant accusative construction.

Los veo *á ambos*. *Á ambos* **los** veo.[1]	I see them both.
Creo que **los** vendimos *ambos*. Creo que *ambos* **los** vendimos.	I think we sold them both.

REMARK.—The numeral *entrambos* has the same signification as *ambos*, but the latter is more common.

[1] The preposition *á* indicates that reference is made to people.

ORDINAL NUMERALS

42. The following table shows how the ordinal numerals up to **centésimo,** *hundredth*, are formed, and gives a few higher ordinals of frequent use:

primero, *first*
segundo, *second*
tercero, *third*
cuarto, *fourth*
quinto, *fifth*
sexto, *sixth*
sétimo, séptimo, } *seventh*
octavo, *eighth*
noveno, nono, } *ninth*
décimo, *tenth*
undécimo, *eleventh*
duodécimo, *twelfth*
décimo tercio, *thirteenth*
décimo cuarto, *fourteenth*
décimo quinto, *fifteenth*
décimo sexto, *sixteenth*
décimo sétimo, décimo séptimo, } *seventeenth*
décimo octavo, *eighteenth*
décimo noveno, décimo nono, } *nineteenth*
vigésimo, *twentieth*
vigésimo primero, *twenty-first*
vigésimo segundo, *twenty-second*
trigésimo, *thirtieth*
trigésimo primero, *thirty-first*
cuadragésimo, *fortieth*
quincuagésimo, *fiftieth*
sexagésimo, *sixtieth*
septuagésimo, *seventieth*
octagésimo, *eightieth*
nonagésimo, *ninetieth*
centésimo, *hundredth*
milésimo, *thousandth*
diez milésimo, *ten thousandth*
millonésimo, *millionth*

43. The ordinals above *décimo* are comparatively little used, the cardinals taking their place. A cardinal thus employed should ordinarily follow the noun it modifies.

capítulo *octavo*, versículo *veinticuatro*	chapter eighth, twenty-fourth verse
Pío *Quinto;* Felipe *Segundo*	Pius the Fifth; Philip the Second
Carlos *Doce;* Luis *Dieciséis*	Charles the Twelfth; Louis the Sixteenth

With the days of the month, *primero* is the only ordinal used, the cardinals applying to all the other days.

el *primero* de enero	the first of January
el *cuatro* de julio	the fourth of July
el *veintiséis* de mayo	the twenty-sixth of May
el *treinta y uno* de agosto	the thirty-first of August

44. *Primero* and *tercero* lose the final *o* before a masculine singular substantive. Before a feminine singular substantive, either the short forms *primer*, *tercer*, or the complete forms *primera*, *tercera* are permissible; but the latter are generally preferred.

el *primer* capítulo; el *tercer* edificio	the first chapter; the third building
la *primera* ocasión; la *tercera* circular	the first occasion; the third circular
los *primeros* acontecimientos	the first events

PARTITIVE NUMERALS

45. Formation of Partitives.—The partitives corresponding to the first ten integral numbers have special names, nearly all of which are the same as those of the respective ordinals. After ten, the partitive is formed by adding *-avo* to the cardinal, the latter undergoing no change of form, whether it ends in a vowel or in a consonant. For numbers ending in *mil*, *millón*, *billón*, *trillón*, however, the ending *-ésimo* is preferred. This ending serves likewise for the formation of ordinals, as illustrated in Art. **42.** The form *cent***ésimo** is preferable to *cien***avo**, *one-hundredth.*

un medio, *one-half*	cinco mil-trescientos-veinticinco-**avos**, *five thirteen-hundred-twenty-fifths.*
un tercio, *one-third*	un cent**ésimo**, *one-hundredth*
un cuarto, *one-fourth*	siete cent**ésimos**, *seven hundredths*
un quinto, *one-fifth*	dos mil**ésimos**, *two thousandths*
un sexto, *one-sixth*	tres cuarenta-mil**ésimos**, *three forty-thousandths*
un sétimo, *one-seventh*	cinco millon**ésimos**, *five millionths.*
un octavo, *one-eighth*	nueve diez-millon**ésimos**, *nine ten-millionths*
un noveno, *one-ninth*	
un décimo, *one-tenth*	
un once**avo**, *one-eleventh*	
un doce**avo**, *one-twelfth*	
un treinta-y-cuatro**avo**, *one thirty-fourth*	
siete doscientos**avos**, *seven two-hundredths*	

46. Remarks on the Partitives.—These numerals are always masculine substantives, and, as in the case of

collective numerals, the names of the things to which they refer should be preceded by the preposition *de*, but not by the indefinite article.

un tercio *de* yarda	one-third of a yard
cuatro quintos *de* legua	four-fifths of a league
ocho centésimos *de* pulgada	eight-hundredths of an inch

This rule applies to *un medio*, in arithmetical language; but, in ordinary language, *medio* is used as an adjective, and is neither preceded by *un* nor followed by *de*.

medio peso; *media* hora	half a dollar; half an hour

47. Outside of mathematical terminology, *un* (or, *una*) is omitted when it forms the integral part of a mixed number; it is also omitted before *medio* and *cuarto*, when these partitives form the fractional part of a mixed number, and are therefore preceded by *y*.

Lo hemos esperado *hora y tres cuartos*.	We have waited for you an hour and three-quarters.
Tenemos *cuatro* barriles *y medio* (or, *cuatro y medio* barriles) de naranjas.	We have four and a half barrels of oranges.
Hace más de *hora y cuarto* que llegó el vapor.	The steamer arrived more than an hour and a quarter ago.

48. Partitive Phrases Formed With the Substantive Parte.—The ordinal numerals from *tercero* to *décimo*, and the partitives after *décimo*, preceded by the definite or by the indefinite article and followed by **parte**, *part*, are employed to form phrases having the same meanings as the corresponding partitive substantives: *la tercera parte*, for instance, has the same meaning as *un tercio*, and *la veinticuatroava parte* is equivalent to *un veinticuatroavo*. The employment of the article in expressions of this kind was explained in Part 5. The use of the substantive **mitad**, *half*, which, preceded by the definite article, takes in ordinary language the place of **un medio**, *one-half*, was illustrated there also.

APOCOPATION OF ADJECTIVES

APOCOPATED FORMS

49. Definitions.—Some adjectives lose one or more of their final letters when they precede the substantives they modify. This alteration is called **apocopation**, and the short form resulting therefrom is called an **apocopated form**. The unapocopated adjective is called the **full form**.

50. Adjectives Undergoing Apocopation.—The following table gives the adjectives that have both a full and an apocopated form:

Full Form	Apocopated Form
alguno, *some*	**algún**
bueno, *good*	**buen**
ciento, *a hundred*	**cien**
cualquiera, *any*	**cualquier**
grande, *great, large*	**gran**
ninguno, *not any*	**ningún**
postrero, *last*	**postrer**
primero, *first*	**primer**
santo, *saint*	**san**
tercero, *third*	**tercer**
uno, *a, one*	**un**

To these must be added all cardinals ending in *-uno* (see Art. **30**).

EMPLOYMENT OF APOCOPATED FORMS

51. General Rule.—*No adjective undergoes apocopation when it is used substantively, nor when it follows the substantive it modifies, nor when it modifies a plural substantive.*

52. Algún, Ningún, Un, Buen, Mal.—These forms are exclusively masculine. They must immediately precede the substantive or substantive phrases they modify.

Eso debe de haber sucedido en **algún** *país* bárbaro, ó durante *alguna guerra*.	That must have happened in some barbarous country, or during some war.
Ningún *descubrimiento* ha requerido tanto estudio; *ninguna demostración*, tanta paciencia.	No discovery has required so much study; no demonstration, so much patience.
El emperador, que era **un buen** *hombre*, creía que su esposa era *una buena mujer*.	The emperor, who was a good man, believed that his wife was a good woman.
Nuestro **buen** *segundo jefe* murió de sus heridas.	Our good second commander died of his wounds.

In the last sentence, *buen* does not modify the substantive *jefe* alone, but the substantive phrase *segundo jefe*. In the following phrase, apocopation is not permissible, because the adjective does not immediately precede the modified substantive:

el **bueno** y amable *señor Márquez*	the good and amiable Mr. Marquez

For euphony, *un*, *algún*, *ningún* may precede a feminine noun beginning with an emphatic *a*-sound. The full forms *una*, *alguna*, *ninguna* are, however, equally proper, and generally preferred.

un *alma*, or, *una alma*	a soul
ningún *harpa*, or, *ninguna harpa*	no harp

A singular adjective modified by an adverb usually follows its substantive, and is therefore not apocopated.

un libro *muy* **bueno**	a very good book
un presidente *muy* **malo**	a very bad president

53. Cien.—For the use of this apocopated form, see Art. **32.**

54. Cualquier, Postrer, Primer, Tercer.—These forms are necessary before masculine substantives. Before feminine substantives, they are permissible, but the full forms are preferred.

cualquier *hombre*	any man
cualquiera / **cualquier** *mujer*	any woman
el **postrer** *esfuerzo*	the last effort
la *postrera* / la **postrer** *palabra*	the last word

For *primero* and *tercero*, see Art. **44.**

One of the few exceptions to the rule governing the use of the apocopated forms here considered occurs in the following sentence of the Creed:

"Resucitó de entre los muertos al **tercero** día."	"He arose from the dead on the third day."

55. Gran.—This form should be used before a substantive of either gender beginning with a consonant sound. Before a substantive beginning with a vowel sound, either the full or the apocopated form is permissible, but the former is preferable.

un **gran** *libro;* una **gran** *nación*	a great book; a great nation
un *grande* / un **gran** *acontecimiento*	a great event
un *grande* / un **gran** *hombre*	a great man
una *grande* / una **gran** *invención*	a great invention

Occasionally, the full form is employed for emphasis before a noun beginning with a consonant.

Tú, Inglaterra, manchaste tu *grande triunfo* con el tratamiento que diste á tu ilustre prisionero.	Thou, England, soiledst thy great victory with the treatment thou gavest thy illustrious prisoner.

56. San.—This form occurs only before the names of saints of the male sex, with which it forms compound names by which certain personages are usually known. In all other cases, the full form *santo* should be employed.

San Pablo; *San* Andrés	St. Paul; St. Andrew
*San***ta** Ana; *San***ta** Cecilia	St. Ann; St. Cecilia
el *santo* Buda	the holy Buddha
el *santo* padre (el papa)	the Holy Father (the pope)
un *santo* consolador	a saintly comforter

EXCEPTIONS.—The full form is prefixed to the names **Domingo,** *Dominic;* **Tomás** or **Tomé,** *Thomas;* and **Toribio,** *Toribius.*

*San***to** Domingo; *San***to** Tomás	St. Dominic; St. Thomas

REMARK.—The Spanish name of the island of St. Thomas is **San** *Tomas* (emphasis on the *o*), not *San***to** *Tomás*.

THE VERB

THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND THE HYPOTHETIC MODE

INTRODUCTORY DEFINITIONS

57. Time Forms and Verbal Derivatives.—The infinitive, the participle, and the gerund are called **verbal derivatives.** All other verbal forms are called **time forms,** or **tenses,** of the verb. They are also called **predicating forms,** as they are indispensable elements of the predicate of every sentence, there being no predicate, and therefore no sentence, without a verbal time form. When the term *verb* is applied without any qualification to one of the words entering a phrase or sentence, a time form is meant.

58. Propositions—The Complex Sentence.—Every complete expression that contains a verb is called a **proposition.** A proposition may form a sentence, or it may enter a sentence simply as one of its component elements (see Part 4). A sentence consisting of two or more propositions is called a **complex sentence.** In the following complex sentences, the different propositions are enclosed in brackets:

[Le hablaré] [cuando venga].	I shall speak to him when he comes.
[Si ustedes desean ver el vapor,] [yo tendré mucho gusto en presentarlos al capitán.]	If you wish to see the steamer, I will be very glad to introduce you to the captain.

[Newton probó] [que la tierra y la luna se atraen según la ley de la gravitación.]	Newton proved that the earth and the moon attract each other according to the law of gravitation.

When a proposition contains and is introduced by a connective word, such as *cuando*, *si*, and *que*, in the examples just given, and serves to complement another proposition, it is called a **dependent proposition.** With respect to a dependent proposition, the complemented proposition is called the **principal.** The verb in a principal proposition is called the **principal verb;** that in a dependent proposition, the **dependent verb.**

59. The Announcing Que.—When, as in the third example in Art. **58**, the word *que* serves to introduce a dependent proposition, it is called the **announcing que** (Spanish, **que** *anunciativo*)—a self-explaining name clearly indicating the functions of the word to which it is applied. A very important principle that the student should carefully observe is that (with a few exceptions to be afterwards pointed out) the announcing *que* should not be omitted after a verb, as its equivalent *that* is in English.

Creo *que* usted habla el español muy bien.	I think you speak Spanish very well.
El secretario me dijo *que*, si usted deseaba verlo, él estaría en su oficina mañana á las diez.	The secretary told me, if you wished to see him, he would be in his office tomorrow at ten o'clock.

USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN PROPOSITIONS INTRODUCED BY THE ANNOUNCING QUE

60. After Verbs Expressing Desire.—The verb in a dependent proposition introduced by the announcing *que* and performing the office of accusative of a verb expressing desire should be in the subjunctive mode. In this rule are included not only verbs in which desire is explicitly stated, but also those in which the same idea is more or less indirectly implied, being expressed in the form of a command, request,

entreaty, suggestion, prohibition, resolution, or the like. The Spanish subjunctive entering expressions of this kind may sometimes be rendered by the English subjunctive, but in the majority of cases it is better rendered by the infinitive. The subject of the subjunctive verb in the Spanish dependent proposition is often omitted, being understood, especially if the thing denoted by it has been already mentioned in the principal proposition.

Deseo que usted **escriba** esta carta.	I wish you to write this letter (*more literally*, I wish that you write this letter).
Don Pedro *quiere* que le **paguemos** antes del fin del mes.	Mr. Peter wishes us to (*more literally*, Mr. Peter wishes that we) pay him before the end of the month.
Los dueños de las factorías *querían* que los obreros **trabajasen** doce horas por día.	The owners of the factories wished the working men to work twelve hours a day.
Señores, *deseo* que nos **entendamos.**	Gentlemen, I wish that we should understand each other.
El capitán *ordenó* que la tripulación **descolgase** los botes.	The captain ordered the crew to lower the boats.
He resuelto que usted **regrese** á la Argentina por el vapor del sábado.	I have decided that you return to the Argentine by Saturday's steamer.
Hijo mío, ¿no te *prohibí* que **hablaras** á esos muchachos?	My dear son, did I not forbid you to speak to those boys?
Le *suplico* que me **perdone.**	I beg you to pardon me.
Nos *rogaron* que **entrásemos.**	They requested us to come in.
El senador Arango *propuso* que el presidente **nombrara** los miembros de la comisión.	Senator Arango proposed that the president should appoint the members of the commission.
El concilio *decretó* que los herejes **fuesen** excomulgados, y *prohibió* que los fieles **leyesen** sus libros.	The council decreed that the heretics should be excommunicated, and forbade the faithful to read their books.
Pido que la votación **sea** secreta.	I ask that the voting be secret.
Suplique á su señora madre que **tenga** la bondad de enviarle estas cartas á don Ramón.	Request your mother to have the kindness to send these letters to Mr. Ramon.

61. The forms of **desear,** *to desire*, are understood after some imperatives, and the subjunctive mode is employed, as

if those forms were expressed. Thus, the first of the two following sentences is an abbreviated form of the second:

Dígale que **éntre.**	Tell him to come in.
Dígale que yo *deseo* que **éntre.**	Tell him that I wish him to come in.

The imperative itself is an abbreviated complex sentence in which only the dependent proposition is expressed, the verb in the tacit principal proposition being a form of *desear*, as appears from the following examples:

Escriba esta carta. *Deseo* que usted **escriba** esta carta.	Write this letter. I wish you to write this letter.
Que me *espere.* *Deseo* que me **espere.**	Let him wait for me. I wish him to wait for me.
Que nadie *hable.* *Deseo* que nadie **hable.**	Let no one speak. I wish that no one should speak.

As stated in Part 2, and as shown by these examples, the imperative of the third person is usually preceded by *que*—a word that clearly points to the implied form of the governing verb *desear*.

62. The interjection *ojalá*, which literally means *would that*, is equivalent to **yo deseo,** *I desire*, and requires, therefore, the subjunctive form of the verb following. The announcing *que* may be employed or not, at pleasure, after *ojalá;* if omitted, the verb should be placed immediately after the interjection.

Ojalá que no **llueva** hoy. *Ojalá* no **llueva** hoy.	I hope it will not rain today (*literally*, Would that it may not rain today).
Ojalá que nuestro presidente **viva.** *Ojalá* **viva** nuestro presidente.	Would that our president may live.

63. After Verbs or Phrases Expressing Command, Compulsion, Necessity, Permission, Prohibition, or Hindrance.—This application of the subjunctive is similar to that explained in Art. **60,** and the resulting sentences are

similarly translated, although here the English subjunctive is generally preferable to the infinitive.

La Constitución *manda* que el presidente **sea** elegido por el pueblo.	The Constitution directs that the president be elected by the people.
Las circunstancias *exigían* que **avanzásemos** muy despacio.	The circumstances required that we should advance very slowly.
La ley *requiere* que la criminalidad del reo **sea** decidida por el jurado, no por el juez.	The law requires that the criminality of the culprit be decided by the jury, not by the judge.
La doctrina Monroe no *permite* que las naciones de Europa **funden** nuevas colonias en América.	The Monroe Doctrine does not permit that the nations of Europe should found new colonies in America.
Nos *prohibieron* que **entrásemos** á los cuarteles, pero nos *permitieron* que **visitásemos** las fortificaciones.	We were forbidden to enter the barracks, but were allowed to visit the forts.
La política *ha impedido* que nuestras relaciones con Cuba **sean** más amistosas.	Politics has prevented that our relations with Cuba should be more friendly (*or*, *better*, our relations with Cuba from being more friendly).
Hay necesidad de que nos **embarquemos** hoy mismo.	It is necessary (*literally*, There is necessity) that we should embark this very day.
Me parece *indispensable* que ustedes **lean** el documento.	I think it indispensable that you should read the document.

64. After Verbs Expressing Feeling or Emotion. Under this heading are included verbs denoting feelings of pleasure, dissatisfaction, approval, preference, expectation, hope, wonder, surprise, etc. The Spanish subjunctive employed in dependent propositions governed by such verbs is rendered sometimes by the English indicative, sometimes by the subjunctive.

Siento que usted no **esté** bien.	I regret that you are not well.
Le *agradezco* que me lo **haya dicho.**	I thank you for having told it to me (*literally*, I thank you that you have told it to me).
Nos escribieron que *sentían* mucho que **hubiésemos cambiado** de resolución.	They wrote to us they were very sorry we had changed our minds.

Me *alegro* que sus negocios **marchen** tan bien.	I am glad that your business is going so well.
Los médicos *temían* que el enfermo **muriese** aquella noche.	The physicians feared that the patient would die that night.
Preferimos que usted **hable** con él personalmente.	We prefer that you speak with him personally.
Á mi padre no le *gusta* que nosotros **fumemos.**	My father does not like us to smoke (*literally*, that we should smoke).
Aguardo que usted me **excuse.**	I hope you will excuse me.
Me *sorprende* que el río **haya subido** tanto en tan corto tiempo.	It surprises me that the river has risen so much in so short a time.
Confío en que usted **obre** cautamente.	I trust you will act cautiously.

65. After Verbs of Attainment.—Among these may be mentioned **lograr,** *to succeed;* **conseguir,** *to get;* and **obtener,** *to obtain.*

Al fin *logré* que esos señores me **pagasen.**	At last I succeeded in having those gentlemen pay me.
He conseguido que nos **prolonguen** el plazo.	I have got them to extend our time (*or*, I have obtained an extension of time from them).
Después de mucho trabajo, *obtuve* que me **dejaran** pasar.	After a great deal of trouble, I succeeded in being (*literally*, obtained to be) allowed to pass.

66. In Subject Propositions of Impersonal Sentences.—In the following sentence, the proposition introduced by *que* performs the office of a substantive serving as the subject of the sentence:

Es evidente *que la tierra gira alrededor del sol.*	It is evident that the earth revolves about the sun.

In the English translation, the grammatical subject is the indefinite pronoun *it.* This pronoun, when so employed, has no Spanish equivalent. The dependent proposition (or *clause*, as it is called in English grammar) introduced by *that* may, by a change in the order of words—a change equally permissible in Spanish—become the subject of the English sentence.

Que la tierra gira alrededor del sol, es evidente.	That the earth revolves about the sun, is evident.

Sentences like this, in which the subject is a proposition, are called **impersonal sentences.**

67. When, as in the example just considered, the express purpose of an impersonal sentence is to affirm or deny the fact denoted by the verb in the subject proposition, that verb should be in the indicative mode; otherwise, in the subjunctive.

Basta *que usted lo* **diga.**	It is sufficient that you say it.
Urge *que* **lleguemos** *mañana á la ciudad.*	It is urgent that we should arrive at the city tomorrow.
Importaba *que* **publicásemos** *la carta antes de nuestra partida.*	It was important that we should publish the letter before our departure.
No tiene nada de raro *que los ignorantes aún* **continúen** *buscando el movimiento perpetuo.*	It is not at all strange that the ignorant should still continue looking for perpetual motion.
Es extraño *que esos géneros no* **hayan llegado** *aún.*	It is strange that those goods have not yet arrived.
Es probable *que el cambio* **suba** *dentro de una ó dos semanas.*	It is likely that the par of exchange will rise within one or two weeks.
Mi padre me escribió que era mejor *que yo no me* **casase** *antes de concluír mis estudios.*	My father wrote to me that it was better that I should not marry (*or*, for me not to marry) before finishing my studies.
Es curioso *que las virtudes de un hombre vivo rara vez* **sean** *reconocidas*, y *que las de un hombre muerto rara vez* **sean** *negadas.*	It is curious that the virtues of a living man are seldom recognized, and that those of a dead man are seldom denied.
Es de esperarse *que el señor Guerrero* **acepte** *la propuesta.*	It is to be hoped that Mr. Guerrero will accept the proposition.
Era de temerse *que la* **compañía** *quebrase.*	It was to be feared that the company would (*or*, might) fail.

68. After Verbs or Phrases Expressing Doubt, Denial, or Uncertainty.—In constructions of this kind, the Spanish subjunctive is rendered sometimes by the

English indicative, sometimes by the potential (form with *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*).

La compañía *dudaba* que los ingenieros **terminasen** sus trabajos en el tiempo estipulado.	The company doubted that the engineers would finish their work in the stipulated time.
No me parece que usted **tenga** razón.	It does not seem to me that you are right.
No creí que las letras sobre los Estados Unidos **estuviesen** á la par.	I did not think that drafts on the United States were at par.

69. With regard to interrogative principal propositions containing the verb **creer,** *to believe*, it is necessary to make a distinction. If that verb indicates belief in the sense of certainty or conviction, the dependent verb should be in the indicative mode; in all other cases, in the subjunctive.

¿*Cree* usted que Dios **existe?**	Do you believe that God exists?
¿*Cree* usted que Mahoma **recibió** el Corán de un ángel?	Do you believe that Mohammed received the Koran from an angel?
¿*Creía* Darwin que el hombre **desciende** del mono?	Did Darwin believe that man descends from the ape?

In all these examples, *creer* indicates conviction. In the following, it indicates conjecture or supposition:

¿*Cree* usted que el doctor **esté** ahora en su oficina?	Do you think that the doctor is now at his office?
¿*Creen* ustedes que el reo **haya cometido** el crimen?	Do you think that the culprit has committed the crime?

70. In interrogative sentences relating to a future event, and containing a governing verb of doubt or uncertainty in the principal proposition, the dependent verb may be put either in the subjunctive present or in the indicative future.

¿*Cree* usted que el vapor **llegue** (or, **llegará**) temprano?	Do you think the steamer will arrive early?

71. To Render the English Present Participle Preceded by a Possessive.—The gerund is not employed in Spanish as a substantive, and English expressions that contain, or are equivalent to others that contain this verbal

derivative (usually called *present participle*) preceded by a possessive adjective or case, or by a substantive which is its subject, are rendered by means of the announcing *que* or the phrase *el que* followed by a subjunctive form. Propositions introduced by *el que* will be treated in a subsequent article.

Tales son las consecuencias de *que* usted **haya obrado** con tanta ligereza.	Such are the consequences of your having acted with so much hastiness.
Los antecedentes contribuían á *que* los naturales **dudasen** de la buena fe de los conquistadores.	The antecedents contributed to the natives' doubting the good faith of the conquerors.
¿Quién fué responsable de *que* el toro **matase** á los dos niños?	Who was responsible that the bull killed the two children (*more literally*, for the bull killing the two children)?
Insisto en *que* **abramos** un túnel para atravesar la cordillera.	I insist on our opening a tunnel to cross the mountain.
No hay peligro de *que* esta bomba **estalle.**	There is no danger of this shell exploding.
Nadie sabe la causa de *que* la isla **haya desaparecido.**	No one knows the cause of the island having disappeared.
No pudimos pasar sin *que* el centinela nos **viese.**	We could not pass without the sentinel seeing us.

72. Omission of the Announcing Que.—The announcing *que* is occasionally omitted before a subjunctive form, when the governing verb expresses desire, request, command, or emotion. This, however, is done comparatively rarely and only when no word intervenes between the principal proposition and the dependent verb. As no fixed rule can be given on this subject, the best course for the learner to pursue is to employ *que* in all cases of doubt.

Deseo me *examine* usted muy cuidadosamente.	I wish you to examine me very carefully.
Suplico á usted *perdone* mi indiscreción.	I request you to pardon my indiscretion.
El congreso ordenó *fuesen* reinstalados los conventos.	Congress ordered that the convents should be reinstated.
Siento *llegue* usted tan tarde.	I am sorry you arrive so late.
Temíamos *lloviese* aquella noche.	We feared it might rain that night.

73. *Que* is also often omitted before the imperative of the third person, especially in elevated style, to express an humble supplication or an earnest wish.

"Santificado *sea* el tu nombre. *Venga* á nós el tu reino."	"Hallowed be thy name. Thy kingdom come."
Descanse en paz.	May he rest in peace.
Quiera Dios que no tengas que arrepentirte de tu obstinada desobediencia.	God grant that thou mayest not have to repent of thy obstinate disobedience.
Dios se lo *pague.*—(*A common phrase used by beggars as an expression of gratitude.*)	God bless you (*literally*, May God pay you for it).
"*Perezca* el día en que nací."	"Let the day perish wherein I was born."

USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE RELATIVE PROPOSITIONS

74. After an Indefinite Antecedent or a Negative Principal Proposition.—When the principal proposition is negative, and also when the antecedent of a relative is indefinite, or denotes anything that may possess certain properties or qualifications, or fulfil certain requirements expressed in the subordinate proposition, the verb in this proposition should be in the subjunctive mode. This rule applies to dependent propositions introduced by the absolute *quien;* that is, when *quien* includes its antecedent.

Necesito *una persona* que **hable** español.	I need a person who speaks Spanish.
Los Estados Unidos *no* han producido matemáticos que **puedan** compararse á Newton, Gauss ó Lagrange.	The United States has produced no mathematicians that can compare with Newton, Gauss, or Lagrange.
No pudimos encontrar un hotel que nos **gustase.**	We could not find a hotel that we liked.
¿Hay *alguien* que **crea** semejante cosa?	Is there any one who believes such a thing?
Cualquiera que **haya probado** ese remedio le dirá que no sirve para nada.	Any one who has tried that remedy will tell you that it is good for nothing.
Haga *lo que* **quiera.**	Do whatever you please.

En esta ciudad *no* hay *ninguno* que **comprenda** las ventajas de la reforma que usted propone.	There is no one in this city who understands the advantages of the reform you propose.
No había *quien* nos **enseñase** el camino.	There was no one to show us the road.
Suplico á *quienes* **lean** este libro que lo lean con imparcialidad.	I request those who may read this book to read it with impartiality.
Pregúntele al *primer hombre* que **encuentre.**	Ask the first man you meet.
La política lo ha cegado, y *no* hay argumento que lo **convenza.**	Politics has blinded him, and there is no argument that will convince him.

75. After the Adjective Cualquiera, and the Adverbs Comoquiera, Cuandoquiera, and Dondequiera. — When these words are employed as antecedents of *que*, and the predicate of the subordinate proposition is presented as a possibility, supposition, or contingency, the verb in that proposition should be in the subjunctive.

cualquier hombre que **llegue**	any man that may arrive
cualquiera que **sea** su resolución	whatever his resolution may be
comoquiera que ustedes **obren**	however you may act
cuandoquiera que ellos nos **escriban**	whenever they may write to us
dondequiera que los **encontremos**	wherever we may find them

76. After Donde and Como. — When these adverbs are employed indefinitely; that is, when *donde* does not denote a determinate or known place, nor *como* a determinate or known manner, the verb in the dependent proposition introduced by either of them should be placed in the subjunctive.

Iremos á *donde* usted **guste.**	We shall go wherever you please.
El alcalde me dijo que lo aprehendiera á usted *donde* lo **encontrase.**	The mayor told me to arrest you wherever I found you.
Obraré *como* usted **ordene.**	I shall act as you may order.
Me prometieron que harían las máquinas *como* yo las **desease.**	They promised me that they would make the machines as I might wish them.
Vaya *donde* él **viva** y entréguele estos papeles.	Go wherever he may live and deliver these papers to him.

In the following examples, *donde* refers to a definite place—a place supposed in advance to be known—and the indicative is, and should be, used:

Vaya *donde* él **vive.**	Go where he lives.
Iremos á *donde* usted **estuvo** ayer.	We shall go where you were yesterday.

A similar rule applies to *como.*

Obraré *como* usted **obra.**	I shall act as you do (act).
Me prometieron que harían las máquinas *como* yo las **deseaba.**	They promised me they would make the machines as I wanted them.

In the last example, the indicative form *deseaba* implies that those making the promise knew already how *I* wished the machines to be made.

77. After Cuando.—When the verb in a dependent proposition introduced by **cuando,** *when*, refers to a future time, it should be in the subjunctive mode.

Le hablaré *cuando* **venga.**	I shall speak to him when he comes.
Cuando el señor Gómez **llegue,** dígale que me espere.	When Mr. Gomez arrives, tell him to wait for me.

If the principal verb is in the preterit or copreterit and the dependent verb relates to a time subsequent to that indicated by the former verb, the dependent verb should be in the preterit subjunctive.

Me *dijo* que, *cuando* usted **llegase,** le entregase esta carta.	He told me, when you arrived, to deliver this letter to you.
Sabíamos que, *cuando* el pánico **pasara,** los precios bajarían.	We knew that, when the panic should be over, the prices would go down.

78. When *cuando* means *whenever*, and the verb does not refer to the future, the indicative should be used.

Cuando yo **estudio** mucho, no me siento bien.	When I study very much, I do not feel well.
Cuando el secretario **está** de mal humor, es mejor no hablarle de negocios.	When the secretary is in bad humor, it is better not to talk to him about business.

79. Dependent propositions introduced by *cuando* and expressing, not contingent events, but facts already accomplished, require the indicative form of the verb.

Cuando el vapor **llegó,** nosotros no estábamos en el muelle.	When the steamer arrived, we were not on the wharf.
Bruto se suicidó *cuando* **vió** que su causa y la de la república estaban perdidas.	Brutus committed suicide when he saw that his cause and that of the republic were lost.

80. In Dependent Propositions of Doubtful Predicate.—The character of propositions of this class will be explained by referring to the two following examples:

Le daré *lo que* **tengo.**	I shall give you what I have.
Le daré *lo que* **tenga.**	I shall give you whatever I may have.

In the first sentence, the form *tengo* indicates as a certainty that the speaker has something, and, usually, that he knows what he has; in the second, the form *tenga* implies that the speaker does not know what he has, and, as an extreme case, that he does not know whether he has anything at all. Propositions in which the predicate is thus presented as indeterminate and uncertain will here be called **propositions of doubtful predicate.** In them, the verb should be placed in the subjunctive mode. This is a general rule including many of those given in the foregoing articles; it applies to dependent propositions introduced by pure relatives, relative phrases, neuters, adverbs, or adverbial phrases. The following examples may serve as additional illustrations:

El ladrón me ordenó que le diese *cuanto* **tuviese.**	The burglar ordered me to give him all I had (*more literally*, all I might have).

[*The burglar was not supposed to know how much I had, nor even that I had anything.*]

Creo que no recibiré muchos cigarros hoy; sin embargo, le enviaré *los que* **reciba.**	I think I shall not receive many cigars today; however, I shall send you those I receive (*more literally*, whatever number I may receive).

Le entregaré la carta *tan pronto como* él **llegue.**	I shall deliver the letter to him as soon as he arrives.
Venga á verme *inmediatamente que* **termine** sus cálculos.	Come to see me as soon as you finish your calculations.
Envíe este telegrama *lo más pronto que* le **sea** posible.	Send this telegram as soon as possible (*literally*, the soonest that it may be possible for you).

81. After the Phrase El Que.—When the phrase *el que* means *the fact that* (see Part 5), and the purpose of the proposition it introduces is not exclusively to make a direct affirmation or negation, the verb in that proposition should be in the subjunctive mode. (Compare Arts. **66** and **71.**)

Me sorprende *el que* usted **hable** español tan bien.	I am surprised that you speak Spanish so well (*more literally*, Your speaking Spanish so well surprises me).
El que el gobierno **haya prohibido** la circulación de ese libro prueba que el libro es inmoral.	The fact that the government has forbidden the circulation of that book proves that the book is immoral.
La gente de aquellos tiempos creía que *el que* un hombre no **fuese** católico era razón suficiente para odiarlo y despreciarlo.	The people of those times believed that the fact that a man was not a Catholic was a sufficient reason to hate and despise him.

The same rule applies to the expression **el hecho de que,** *the fact that*, which is equivalent to *el que*.

El hecho de que el gobierno **haya prohibido** la circulación, etc.
La gente de aquellos tiempos creía que *el hecho de que* un hombre no **fuese** católico, etc.

USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER CERTAIN CONJUNCTIVE AND ADVERBIAL WORDS AND PHRASES

82. The subjunctive mode is employed in dependent propositions introduced by certain conjunctions, adverbs, and phrases of a conjunctive or adverbial character. In all these propositions the predicate is exhibited as a contingent, doubtful, or conditional future event, never as an actual fact.

The student should remember that the verb of a proposition whose purpose is to directly affirm the actual or future existence of that which is denoted by the verb, should be placed in the indicative mode.

The main words and phrases governing the subjunctive are given in the following articles. Some of them could be brought under the rules already laid down, but are here given again for the sake of completeness.

83. Time Expressions.—Most all of these consist of an adverb or preposition followed by *que*.

antes que, } *before*
antes de que, }
cuando, } *whenever*
siempre que, }
después que, } *after*
después de que, }
hasta que, *until*

inmediatamente que, } *as soon as*
tan pronto como, }
luégo que, *shortly after*
mientras, } *as long as*
mientras que, }

Antes que (or, *Antes de que*) **declaremos** la huelga, pensemos en lo que debemos hacer *después que* (or, *después de que*) la **hayamos declarado.**	Before we declare the strike, let us think of what we must do after we have declared it.
Cuando (or, *Siempre que*) me **escribas,** dáme cuenta de tus estudios, tus amigos y tus diversiones.	Whenever you write to me, give me an account of your studies, your friends, and your amusements.
Aguárdeme *hasta que* yo **regrese.**	Wait for me until I return.
Regresaremos *tan pronto como* **podamos.**	We shall return as soon as we can.
Luégo que **almorcemos** saldremos á dar un paseo.	After we breakfast, we shall go out to take a walk.
Me acordaré de ti *mientras* **viva.**	I will remember thee as long as I live.
Mientras que usted **continúe** escribiendo versos, será pobre: la poesía no es negocio.	As long as you continue writing verses, you will be poor: poetry is no business.

84. Expressions of Condition.—These, also, consist of an adverb or a prepositional adverbial phrase followed by *que*. They all mean *provided that* or *on condition that*.

Iré, *con la condición de que* usted **envíe** un coche por mí.	I shall go, on condition that you send a carriage for me.
Dijo que terminaría el camino antes del fin del mes, *con tal que* el número de trabajadores no **disminuyese.**	He said he would finish the road before the end of the month, provided the number of laborers did not diminish.
Cortaremos estos árboles, *siempre que* el ingeniero lo **crea** necesario.	We shall cut down these trees, provided the engineer thinks it necessary.

85. Adverbs of Uncertainty.—Among these may be mentioned *quizá*, *quizás*, *tal vez*, all of which mean *perhaps.*

Quizá le **venda** mi caballo al doctor Rojas.	I shall perhaps sell my horse to Doctor Rojas.
Tal vez **enviemos** nuestro hijo á Alemania.	Perhaps we shall send our son to Germany.
Creíamos que *tal vez* la erupción del volcan **cesase** pronto.	We thought that perhaps the eruption of the volcano would cease soon.

In these cases, however, the future and postpreterit indicative may be substituted for the present and the preterit subjunctive, respectively.

Quizá le **venderé** mi caballo al doctor Rojas.
Creíamos que tal vez la erupción del volcán **cesaría** pronto.

86. Expressions of Purpose.—The expressions of this kind most commonly used are *á fin de que*, *de manera que*, *de modo que*, *que*, and *para que*, all of which mean *that, in order that;* and **no sea que,** *lest.*

Me envió unas muestras para que yo las **examinase.**	He sent me some samples for me to examine (*literally*, that I might examine them).
Procedamos con moderación, *de modo que* el público no **crea** que estamos movidos por pasiones indignas.	Let us act with moderation, that the public may not think we are prompted by unworthy passions.
Hable en voz baja, *que* no nos **oigan.**	Speak in a low tone, that they may not hear us.
No hable tan recio, *no sea que* nos **oigan.**	Do not speak so loud, lest they should hear us.

87. Under this heading may be included some idiomatic expressions formed by the verbs **ir,** *to go;* **venir,** *to come,*

and a few others, followed by *á que*, which phrase indicates purpose and is literally equivalent to *that*, *in order that*, although in the majority of cases it is necessary to translate the Spanish sentence rather freely.

Vengo á que me **preste** diez pesos.	I come to borrow ten dollars from you (*lilerally*, I come that you may lend me ten dollars).
Ayer tarde *fuí á que* el doctor me **examinase.**	Yesterday afternoon I went and had the doctor examine me (*lilerally*, I went that the doctor might examine me).
Hemos venido á que ustedes nos **enseñen** su establecimiento.	We have come to ask you to (*or*, to have you) show us your establishment.

88. Expressions of Supposition, Concession, and Exception.—Among these may be mentioned **aunque, aun cuándo,** *even if*, and a great many phrases with *que*, such as **en caso que,** *in case that;* **sea que,** *whether;* **dar por sentado que,** *to take for granted that;* **á menos que, á no ser que,** *unless;* etc.

Ésa no es la verdadera doctrina cristiana, *aunque* la Iglesia **enseñe** lo contrario.	That is not the true Christian doctrine, although the Church may teach the contrary.
Deje la ropa en casa del señor López, *aun cuando* él no **esté** allí.	Leave the clothes at Mr. Lopez's, even if he is not there.
En caso que estos cigarros no le **gusten,** devuélvamelos	In case you do not like these cigars, return them to me.
Doy por sentado que la expedición **descubra** el polo; mas ¿cuál será la utilidad de semejante descubrimiento?	I grant that the expedition may discover the pole; but what will be the use of such a discovery?
Supongamos que Bacón **haya escrito** las obras atribuídas á Shakespeare.	Let us suppose that Bacon wrote the works attributed to Shakespeare.
Haré el traje como éste, *á menos que* usted lo **desee** diferente.	I shall make the dress like this one, unless you wish it different.
Á no ser que **atribuyamos** estas semejanzas al acaso, debemos aceptar la teoría trasformista.	Unless we attribute these similarities to chance, we must accept the transformist theory.

89. The Expressions Por . . . . Que, Cuanto Más . . . . Tanto Más, Etc.—The following combinations require the subjunctive mode:

por . . . . que, with an intervening adjective, adjectival phrase, or adverb. It may be rendered by *however* or *how . . . . soever*.

cuanto más . . . . tanto más, *the more . . . . the more*, and other equivalent expressions, such as **mientras más . . . . más, mientras más . . . . tanto más**; and also the corresponding expressions with **menos**, *less*, instead of **más**. The intervening verb taking the place of the dots should be subjunctive.

Por valeroso que un general **sea**, su valor le servirá de poco, si no tiene juicio.	However brave a general may be, his courage will avail him little, if he has no judgment.
Por más que **trate**, no conseguirá el privilegio.	However much you may try, you will not obtain the privilege.
No creo que lleguemos esta noche, *por muy aprisa* que **naveguemos.**	I do not think we shall arrive tonight, however fast we may sail.
Por mucho que **intrigue**, y *por muchos votos que* **compre**, no será elegido.	No matter how much he may intrigue, and how many votes he may buy, he will not be elected.
Mientras más le **cobremos** á ese hombre, *tanto más* demorará el pago.	The more we dun that man, the longer he will delay payment.
Cuanto menos **gasten** ustedes en esa empresa, *tanto mejor* será para ustedes.	The less you spend in that undertaking, the better it will be for you.
Mientras menos **exijamos**, *tanto más* obtendremos.	The less we demand, the more we shall obtain.

OTHER USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

90. With the Hypothetic Mode, to Express Disregard of, or Indifference to, Certain Possibilities. When the Spanish verb entering an expression of this kind has no subject, the subjunctive is usually rendered by the English subjunctive, and the hypothetic by a form with *may;* otherwise, the translation is better effected by means of a

form with *may* preceded by an indefinite word or phrase, such as *whoever*, *whenever*, etc., according to circumstances. This use of the subjunctive is illustrated by the following examples:

sea como *fuere*	be it as it may
suceda lo que *sucediere*	happen what may (*or*, whatever may happen)
llegue quien *llegare*	whoever may arrive (*or*, no matter who arrives)
venga de donde *viniere*	wherever he may come from (*or*, no matter where he may come from)
sea cual *fuere* su resolución	whatever be his resolution

91. In Alternative Expressions.—In this form of construction, the subjunctive is generally, though not always, preceded by *que;* the equivalent English verb, by *whether.*

Tendremos que partir mañana, *que* **queramos** ó no (or, *que* **queramos** ó *que* no **queramos**).	We shall have to leave tomorrow, whether we wish to or not.
Ven á verme esta noche, *que* **llueva** ó *que* **truene.**	Come to see me this evening, whether it rains or thunders.
Que esta teoría **sea** verdadera ó falsa, su autor es digno de admiración.	Whether this theory be true or false, its author is worthy of admiration.
Continúe enviándole el periódico á don Alfonso, *que* **pague** ó *que* no.	Continue to send the newspaper to Mr. Alphonso, whether he pays or not.
Nos dijo que al día siguiente, *hubiesen* ó no *escrito* los abogados, firmásemos la escritura como estaba.	He told us to sign the deed, as it was, on the following day, whether the lawyers had written or not.
La semana entrante, *hayamos* ó no *recibido* contestación á nuestro cablegrama, saldremos para Liverpool.	Next week, whether or not we have received an answer to our cablegram, we will leave for Liverpool.

92. With Que, to Qualify a Preceding Statement. In this form of construction, *que* is often equivalent to *so far as;* and, even if it cannot be rendered by this phrase, it has a qualifying meaning similar to it.

Este hombre no estaba en el cuarto, *que* yo **sepa.**	This man was not in the room, so far as I know.
El acusado no dijo tal cosa, *que* yo **recuerde.**	The defendant did not say such a thing, so far as I remember.
No hubo entre los dos palabras desagradables, *que* yo **oyera.**	There were no disagreeable words between the two, so far as I could hear.

93. In Certain Emphatic Affirmative Sentences Having a Conditional Form.—The following examples will indicate the class of sentences here referred to. As will be observed, the Spanish subjunctive is rendered by *may* or *let*. The *que* preceding the subjunctive form is sometimes omitted.

Que me **maten** si no digo la verdad. **Mátenme** si no digo la verdad.	May I be killed if I do not tell the truth.
Que **pase** yo por villano, si no hago lo que ahora prometo.	May I pass for a villain, if I do not do what I now promise.
Que nos **ahorquen,** si no obtenemos el triunfo.	May we be hanged (*or*, Let them hang us), if we do not obtain the victory.
Sea yo el objeto de tu odio y tu desprecio, si te he mentido.	May I be the object of thy hate and contempt, if I have lied to thee.

94. Rendering of the English Imperative of the First Person Singular.—There is no special form corresponding to the English imperative *let me*. When this expression is addressed to a second person, *let* properly means *allow*, and may be rendered by such verbs as **permitir** or **dejar** followed by either an infinitive or a subjunctive form.

Déjeme *pasar*.	Let me pass.
Permítame que *vea* (or, **Déjeme** *ver*) su reloj.	Let me see your watch.
Permíteme que te *dé* un consejo.	Let me (*or*, Allow me to) give you a piece of advice.

When the speaker addresses himself, he may, by a sort of fictitious pluralization, use the first person plural of the

imperative, while otherwise regarding himself as a second person, represented by a second-person pronoun.

Veamos, Sancho, lo que piensas hacer con esa tu ínsula.	Let me see, Sancho, what thou intendest to do with that island of thine.

GENERAL REMARKS ON THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

95. In the foregoing articles have been given the most common uses of the subjunctive; others will be given in connection with the meanings of the tenses. It is impossible to formulate in a general rule, or even in a few clear and comprehensive rules, the great variety of constructions requiring the employment of that mode. The student may, however, be guided by the principle that, in general, subjunctive forms are dependent on indicative forms expressed or understood, and represent the meaning of the verb as doubtful, uncertain, or contingent. This is why they apply mainly to future events, or events that are represented as likely to take place after the time indicated by the governing verb.

Many of the words and phrases that, according to the preceding rules and illustrations, govern—that is, require—the subjunctive, cease to do so when the predicate in the dependent proposition is not exhibited as a possibility, but as an actuality. This aspect of the subject has been already referred to, and is further illustrated by the following pairs of examples:

Mientras él *duerme*, yo trabajo.	While he sleeps, I work.
Mientras él *duerma*, yo trabajaré. (See Art. **83.**)	While he sleeps (*that is*, may sleep), I shall work.
Cuanto más *insultas*, tanto más te desprecian.	The more thou insultest, the more they despise thee.
Cuanto más *insultes*, tanto más te despreciarán. (See Art. **89.**)	The more thou mayest insult, the more they will despise thee.

The indicative form *duerme* implies that the person referred to is actually sleeping; the predicate of the dependent proposition is here presented as an actuality. The form *duerma*,

on the contrary, presents the predicate as something uncertain and indefinite; indeed, it does not exclude the possibility that the person referred to may not at all realize the meaning of the verb—that he may not sleep. Similar remarks apply to the forms *insultas* and *insultes*.

THE HYPOTHETIC MODE

96. Form of This Mode.—As will be observed by referring to the conjugation tables in Part 2, the hypothetic may be obtained from the preterit subjunctive form in *-ra* by changing the second *a* of the terminations *-ara*, *-aras*, *-áramos*, *-arais*, *-aran*, and that in the terminations *-iera*, *-ieras*, *-iéramos*, *-ierais*, *ieran*, into *e*.

Preterit Subjunctive	Hypothetic
hablara, habláramos	hablare, habláremos
vendiera, vendiéramos	vendiere, vendiéremos
permitiera, permitiéramos	permitiere, permitiéremos

This rule applies to irregular as well as to regular verbs.

97. Uses of the Hypothetic.—The hypothetic mode is used:

1. In propositions of doubtful predicate introduced by **si**, *if*.

Si alguien **preguntare** por mí, diga que pronto volveré.	Should any one ask for me, say I shall soon return.
Si, cuando ella llegue, no **hubiere recibido** usted mi carta, póngame un cablegrama.	If, when she arrives, you have not received my letter, send me a cablegram.
Si sus géneros **fueren** tan buenos como usted dice, puede usted estar seguro de que le haremos un gran pedido.	If your goods are as good as you say, you may be sure that we shall give you a large order.

In all sentences of this form, the hypothetic may be replaced by the indicative simple or compound present, as the case may be.

Si alguien **pregunta** por mí, diga que pronto volveré.

Si, cuando ella llegue, no **ha recibido** usted mi carta, póngame un cablegrama.

2. In propositions introduced by **cuando,** *when*, and relating to future events.

Cuando los Estados Unidos **emprendieren** guerras de conquista, la república empezará á decaer.	When the United States should undertake wars of conquest, the republic will begin to decline.
Cuando te **hirieren**, calla, y sufre tu suerte con paciencia.	When they should strike thee, keep silent, and bear thy lot with patience.
Cuando el tiempo **hubiere expirado,** la propiedad volverá al gobierno.	When the time shall have expired, the property shall revert to the government.
Cuando el hombre **hubiere dejado** de correr tras el lujo y los placeres frívolos, habrá paz universal.	When man shall have ceased to run after luxury and frivolous pleasures, there will be universal peace.

In all sentences of this form, the hypothetic may be replaced by the simple or the compound present subjunctive, as the case may be.

Cuando los Estados Unidos **emprendan** guerras de conquista, la república empezará á decaer.

Cuando el hombre **haya dejado** de correr tras el lujo y los placeres frívolos, habrá paz universal.

3. In dependent propositions that are introduced by **mientras,** *while*, or by a relative pronoun or adverb, and relate to a future contingency, the verb in the principal proposition being in the indicative future.

Mientras **viviéremos,** combatiremos por la libertad.	As long as we live, we will fight for liberty.
Lo aprehenderemos *donde* lo **encontráremos.**	We will arrest him wherever we may find him.
No se permitirá que entren al país los *que* no **tuvieren** pasaporte.	Those who shall have no passport, shall not be permitted to enter the country.
Los *que* **desearen** separarse de la compañía, recibirán lo *que* **hubieren pagado.**	Those who may desire to separate themselves from the company, will receive whatever they shall have paid.

Here, as in the preceding case, and as has been explained in previous articles, the hypothetic may be replaced by the subjunctive.

4. In phrases indicating indifference to or disregard of certain possibilities, as illustrated in Art. **90.** In this form of construction also, the subjunctive may take the place of the hypothetic.

98. General Remark on the Use of the Hypothetic. This mode is today almost exclusively restricted to formal style. In familiar style, the forms of the indicative and of the subjunctive mentioned in the last article are employed in its place, except in the constructions included under 4, and in a few idiomatic expressions, in which, although the subjunctive is permissible, the hypothetic is generally preferred.

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 7)

THE VERB—(Continued)

PRONOMINAL OR REFLEXIVE VERBS

DEFINITIONS

1. The reflexive construction and the reflexive use of the oblique cases of the personal pronouns were fully treated in Part 4. The sentence, *Él* **se habla,** means *He talks to himself*, and *hablar***se** means *to talk to oneself.* So, too, *Nosotros* **nos hablamos,** may mean either, *We talk to each other*, or, *We talk to ourselves.* In these constructions, the pronominal case accompanying the verb is the substitute and equivalent of a dative prepositional phrase; it does not properly form part of the verb, but serves to complement its meaning.

Some verbs are always accompanied by a pronominal oblique case having the form such cases have in reflexive dative or accusative constructions, but not being equivalent to either a dative prepositional phrase or an accusative substantive. The pronominal case is then really a part of the verb, having no meaning by itself; and the sentence, although reflexive in form, is not so in sense. These verbs are called **pronominal,** or **reflexive;** all others, **non-pronominal,** or **non-reflexive.** As the term *reflexive*, being employed for other purposes, might give rise to ambiguity, the term *pronominal* will hereafter be applied

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

to the class of verbs under consideration. The following are examples of verbs belonging to this class:

atrever**se**, *to dare*	sentar**se**, *to sit down*
quejar**se**, *to complain*	abstener**se**, *to abstain*

CONJUGATION OF PRONOMINAL VERBS

2. Although the case *se* is always affixed to, and forms part of, the infinitive of every pronominal verb, the verb is considered to belong to the conjugation characterized by the ending of the part preceding that case, and is conjugated accordingly. Thus, *atreverse* (*atrever-se*) is classed with verbs ending in *-er* and belonging, therefore, to the second conjugation. The inflections of this verb are formed according to the rules governing the conjugation of verbs ending in *-er*, but every form should be accompanied by the reflexive dative case corresponding to the grammatical person of the subject to which that form refers: *se* for the third person, both numbers; *me* for the first person singular; *te* for the second person singular; *nos* for the first person plural; *os* for the second person plural. The rules for the position of these cases, when used as parts of pronominal verbs, are the same as those for their position when used reflexively. It will be remembered that *usted* is constructed with the third person of the verb, and requires therefore the pronominal cases of the third person.

As an illustration of the rules just stated, some forms of **alegrarse**, *to rejoice, to be glad*, are here given:

INDICATIVE PRESENT

yo **me** alegro	I am glad
tú **te** alegras	thou art glad
él (*usted*) **se** alegra	he is (you are) glad
nosotros **nos** alegramos	we are glad
vosotros **os** alegráis	ye are glad
ellos (*ustedes*) **se** alegran	they (you) are glad

COMPOUND POSTPRETERIT

yo **me** habría alegrado	I should have been glad
tú **te** habrías alegrado	thou wouldst have been glad
él (*usted*) **se** habría alegrado	he (you) would have been glad

nosotros **nos** habríamos alegrado	we should have been glad
vosotros **os** habríais alegrado	ye would have been glad
ellos (*ustedes*) **se** habrían alegrado	they (you) would have been glad

IMPERATIVE

alegrémo**nos**; alegra**os**	let us be glad; be ye glad

As will be noticed, the first person plural of the imperative loses the final *-s* characteristic of that form (*hablemos*), before adding the ending *-nos*, and the second person loses the final *-d* (*hablad*) before taking the ending *-os*. The first of these two changes is very common, but not strictly necessary, *alegrémosnos* being as proper as *alegrémonos;* the second is required in all cases, except with the verb **irse,** *to go away*, *to leave*, which has the imperative *idos*. These changes apply whether the cases *nos*, *os* are parts of pronominal verbs, or are used reflexively with the imperatives of other verbs.

ayudémonos; ayudaos	let us help one another; help ye one another

---

REMARKS ON PRONOMINAL VERBS

3. Transitive Verbs Used Pronominally.—In English, many verbs can be employed both transitively and intransitively. Not so in Spanish. Thus, *to open* may be either transitive or intransitive, but the Spanish *abrir* can belong to the former class only. There are, however, transitive verbs that can be made intransitive by making them pronominal. The pronominal form of such verbs can generally be rendered by the English equivalent, used intransitively, of the corresponding Spanish transitive form, or by *to be* or *to become* followed by the participle of that equivalent.

TRANSITIVE

abrir, *to open;* **asustar,** *to frighten;* **irritar,** *to exasperate*

El criado *abrió* la puerta.	The servant opened the door.
El trueno *asustó* á mi señora.	The thunder frightened my wife.
Eso nos *ha irritado* mucho.	That has exasperated us very much.

PRONOMINAL AND INTRANSITIVE

abrirse, *to open;* **asustarse,** *to be* or *become frightened;* **irritarse,** *to be* or *become exasperated*

La puerta **se** *abrió* en aquel momento.	The door opened at that moment.
Nosotros **nos** *asustámos* mucho cuando vimos las llamas.	We became very much frightened when we saw the flames.
Yo tengo mal carácter, y **me** *irrito* fácilmente.	I have a bad temper, and am easily exasperated.

The following are additional examples of this transformation:

mejorar, *to improve, to make better*

Últimamente *hemos mejorado* mucho nuestro proceso.	We have lately improved our process a great deal.
Esperamos que ustedes **se** *mejoren* pronto.	We hope you will soon be better.

casar, *to marry* (*unite in marriage*)

El padre Uribe *casó* á mi hija.	Father Uribe married my daughter (*that is*, My daughter was married by Father Uribe).
Yo **me** *casé* hace cuarenta años.	I married forty years ago.

cansar, *to tire*

El sermón estuvo demasiado largo, y nos *cansó* mucho.	The sermon was too long, and it tired us very much.
Nosotros **nos** *cansamos* de todo.	We tire of everything.

reducir, *to reduce, to diminish*

Últimamente *hemos reducido* mucho nuestras relaciones comerciales.	We have lately reduced our commercial relations a great deal.
Nuestras relaciones comerciales **se** *han reducido* mucho.	Our commercial relations have been very much reduced.

4. There are verbs in which the case of the pronoun may be regarded either as a mere part of the verb, or as its accusative; they may therefore be classed either as pronominal or as transitive verbs. Thus, *vestirse* may be rendered by either the intransitive verb *to dress*, or by the phrase *to dress oneself.* Similarly with **lavarse,** *to wash*, and **bañarse,** *to bathe.*

Cuando usted llegó, estábamos *vistiéndonos*.	When you arrived, we were dressing (ourselves).
Voy á *lavarme* ahora mismo.	I am just now going to wash (myself).
¿Le gusta á usted *bañarse* en el mar?	Do you like to bathe in the sea?

5. There are other transitive verbs that generally take a dative case, but are not pronominal, properly speaking, as the dative case really performs its usual functions, being employed reflexively. Such are **apropiarse,** *to appropriate to oneself;* **procurarse,** *to procure for oneself;* **ponerse,** *to put on* (*wearing apparel*), and many others.

Nos apropiámos cuanto encontrámos.	We appropriated to ourselves everything we found.
Póngase el sobretodo.	Put on your overcoat.
El pugilista *se quitó* el saco y *se puso* los guantes.	The pugilist removed his coat and put on his gloves.

6. As stated in Part 4, the dative case is added to some transitive verbs to indicate eagerness, thoroughness, etc. Thus, *beber* means *to drink* in general, and *beberse* means *to drink the whole of; fumar* means *to smoke* in general, and *fumarse, to smoke the whole of; leer* means *to read*, and *leerse, to read the whole of with eagerness.* The pronominal form of verbs of this kind is applied when the accusative of the verb is quantitatively determined, and often, as in *leerse*, implies interest, effort, or the like.

Yo nunca bebo *vino*. **Me** *he bebido* dos botellas de champaña.	I never drink wine. I have drunk two whole bottles of champagne.
¿No *fuma* usted, señor Rojas? *Fúmese* este cigarro habano.	Do you not smoke, Mr. Rojas? Smoke this Havana cigar.
¿No han leído ustedes el "Gil Blas?"—Sí, señor, **nos** lo *leímos* en un día.	Have you not read "Gil Blas?"—Yes, sir, we read the whole of it in one day.

7. Finally, many transitive verbs undergo a radical change of meaning when made pronominal. The two meanings must be independently learned. The following may serve as examples:

acostar, *to put to bed:*	acostar**se**, *to go to bed, to lie down*
levantar, *to raise:*	levantar**se**, *to rise*
sentar, *to lay down:*	sentar**se**, *to sit down*
hallar, *to find:*	hallar**se**, *to be*

Literally, the forms *hallar*se and *encontrar*se mean to *find oneself*, and *ver*se, *to see oneself;* but the pronominal case seems to have lost its primary signification, and these three verbs are employed merely to indicate a state or condition, and are equivalent to **estar**, *to be.*

Me hallo en una gran dificultad.	I am in a great difficulty.
¿Cómo *se encuentra* su señora esposa hoy?	How is your wife today?
Nos vemos obligados á devolver los pañuelos que usted nos envió, pues no son de la clase que pedímos.	We are compelled to return the handkerchiefs you sent us, for they are not the kind we ordered.

8. Intransitive Verbs Made Pronominal.—Many intransitive verbs are used pronominally. The addition of the pronominal case may not substantially alter the meaning of the verb; it may change that meaning but slightly, or it may form practically a different verb. Thus, *estar* means *to be*, and *estar*se, *to remain; ir* means *to go*, and *ir*se, *to go away, to leave.* This subject cannot be reduced to any fixed rules, and belongs rather to lexicography than to grammar: all dictionaries give the meanings of the pronominal in conjunction with those of the non-pronominal forms of verbs that admit both forms. Here, however, the verbs *dormir*, *morir*, and *reír* will receive some attention, on account of their frequent occurrence.

Dormir means *to sleep*, while *dormir*se means *to go to sleep, to fall asleep.*

Anoche no *dormí* nada.	I did not sleep at all last night.
Me acosté á las diez, pero no pude *dormir*me antes de las doce.	I went to bed at ten, but could not go to sleep before twelve.

9. *Morir* and *morir*se both mean *to die*, but the former is a much more dignified term, better adapted to elevated style and to respectful language. Another difference is that *morir*se applies only to living things.

El hombre, como los otros animales, nace, vive, y *muere*.	Man, like other animals, is born, lives, and dies.
¿De qué *murió* su señora madre?	What did your mother die of?
"Mi amor," dijo el joven enamorado, "no *morirá* sino en la tumba."	"My love," said the enamored young man, "will die only in the grave."
¿De qué **se** *murió* ese viejo?	What did that old man die of?

The pronominal form *morirse* is also employed in the sense of *to be on the point of death*, especially in familiar expressions like the following:

Nos estamos *muriendo* de hambre.	We are dying with hunger.
Dijo que **se** estaba *muriendo* de calor.	He said he was dying with the heat.

10. In the sense of *to laugh* in general, *reír* and *reír***se** are equally proper, although the former is better adapted to serious style. *Reír***se** *de* means *to laugh at*.

En las vicisitudes de la vida, el que hoy *ríe* mañana llora.	In the vicissitudes of life, he who laughs today weeps tomorrow.
Nos *reímos* casi hasta reventarnos.	We laughed until we almost burst.
"Medio mundo **se** *ríe* *del* otro medio, y yo **me** *río* *del* mundo entero."	"Half the world laughs At the other half, And I laugh At the whole world."

11. With some intransitive verbs, the pronominal form indicates effort or obstinacy, or voluntary or purposive action. Thus, *salir* is simply *to go out*, while *salir***se** is to go out overcoming some obstacle or disregarding some prohibition; it may sometimes be rendered by *to get out*.

¿Piensa usted *salir* esta noche?	Do you intend to go out tonight?
El reo, después de tratar de *salir***se** por la puerta de atrás, **se** *salió* por una ventana.	The culprit, after trying to escape through the back door, escaped through a window.
El centinela nos dijo que no *entrásemos*, pero nosotros le quitámos el rifle y **nos** *entrámos*.	The sentinel told us not to go in, but we took his rifle away from him and forced our way in.

12. The Participle of Pronominal Verbs.—When the participle of a pronominal verb performs the functions of an adjective, that is, when it is not combined with *haber* in compound tenses, it is not accompanied by the pronominal case.

Nunca **me** *había cansado* tanto.	I had never tired so.
Nunca había estado tan *cansado*.	I had never been so tired.
El doctor aún no **se** *ha levantado*.	The doctor has not yet risen.
¿Está el doctor *levantado?*	Is the doctor up (*or*, risen)?
¿Porqué no **se** *ha puesto* usted los guantes?	Why have you not put on your gloves?
¿Tiene usted los guantes *puestos?*	Have you your gloves on (*literally*, put on)?

13. Pronominal Verbs Requiring a Dative Case. A few pronominal verbs are employed with a third-person subject only—usually a neuter pronoun or a proposition introduced by *que*,—and require a dative case to complement their meaning. Among them may be mentioned **ocurrirse,** *to occur*, and **figurarse,** *to imagine*. The dative case should follow the case *se* that makes the verb pronominal, and may be used redundantly with a dative prepositional phrase.

Eso *se* **me** *ocurrió* ayer.	That occurred to me yesterday.
Se **me** *ha ocurrido* una idea muy buena.	A very good idea has occurred to me.
Se **le** *ocurrió* que sería mejor criar ovejas que ganado vacuno.	It occurred to him that it would be better to rear sheep than (bovine) cattle.
Á nosotros *se* **nos** *figuraba* que la ingeniería de minas era cosa muy sencilla.	We imagined that mining engineering was a very simple thing.

Ocurrirse may be used as a non-pronominal verb, without change of meaning.

Eso me *ocurrió* ayer.
Me *ha ocurrido* una idea muy buena.

Figurarse, on the contrary, may be employed pronominally without the dative case; the person that was represented by this case is now represented by the subject of the verb, and

what before was the subject becomes the accusative. The last of the sentences translated above, whose subject is the proposition introduced by *que*, may be replaced by the following, in which the same proposition is the accusative of the verb:

Nosotros *nos figurábamos* que la ingeniería de minas era cosa muy sencilla.

14. The verb **olvidar**, *to forget*, may be used, without change of meaning:

1. As a non-pronominal transitive verb.

Olvidé mi pasaporte.	I forgot my passport.
Habíamos olvidado que la comisión debía reunirse aquella tarde.	We had forgotten that the commission must (was to) meet that evening.

2. As a pronominal verb without a dative case. In this construction, the verb is followed by *de*.

Me olvidé **de** mi pasaporte.
Nos habíamos olvidado **de** que la comisión debía reunirse aquella tarde.

3. As a pronominal verb with the dative case. The construction is similar to that of *ocurrirse*.

Se **me** *olvidó* mi pasaporte.
Se **nos** *había olvidado* que la comisión debía reunirse aquella tarde.

THE PASSIVE AND THE QUASI-REFLEXIVE CONSTRUCTION

THE PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION

15. Definitions.—When a transitive verb and its accusative enter a sentence, the verb is said to be in the **active voice**, or **active form**; and, with reference to the verb, the form of the sentence is called the **active construction.**

Cervantes *escribió* el "Don Quijote."	Cervantes wrote "Don Quixote."

This sentence may be changed in such a manner as to convert its accusative into subject, and its subject into the object of the preposition **por,** *by*, by substituting for the preterit *escribió* the same tense of the verb **ser,** *to be*, combined with the participle *escrito*.

El "Don Quijote" **fué escrito** *por Cervantes*.	"Don Quixote" was written by Cervantes.

With respect to the verb *escribir*, the form of the last sentence is called the **passive construction,** and the form *fué escrito*, obtained by combining the verb *ser* with the participle of the verb, is called the **passive voice,** or the **passive form,** of the verb.

The terms just explained apply to other transitive verbs in which a similar transformation is permissible. In the passive voice, the participle of the verb is syntactically treated like an ordinary adjective, and should therefore agree with the subject in number and gender.

ACTIVE CONSTRUCTION

Colón *descubrió* la América.	Columbus discovered America.
La guerra *causa* muchos males.	War causes many evils.
Creo que la compañía *ha reconstruído* el muelle.	I think the company has reconstructed the wharf.

PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION

La América **fué descubierta** *por Colón*.	America was discovered by Columbus.
Muchos males **son causados** *por la guerra*.	Many evils are caused by war.
Creo que el muelle **ha sido reconstruído** *por la compañía*.	I think the wharf has been reconstructed by the company.

16. Use of the Preposition De in the Passive Construction.—With some transitive verbs, especially those denoting feeling or emotion rather than action, *de* may take the place of *por* in the passive construction.

Este hombre extraordinario *es amado* aún **de** sus enemigos.	This extraordinary man is loved even by his enemies.
Cumple con tu deber, y *serás respetado* **de** tus semejantes.	Do thy duty, and thou shalt be respected by thy fellow beings.

Although the rule that verbs of emotion should take the preposition *de* is quite general, it is not absolute. Thus, in the following examples, *por* is as proper as *de*:

Es temido **por** sus enemigos.	He is feared by his enemies.
El tirano *era despreciado* **por** todos.	The tyrant was despised by all.

It is often difficult to decide whether a verb denotes emotion or true action. The student is advised to use *por* in all cases of doubt.

17. Passive Voice With Dative Case.—By its very nature, the passive voice excludes an accusative, since the only substantive that could be the accusative of the verb is converted into its subject. The dative and the dative case, however, are not excluded by the passive form of the verb.

La noticia **le** *fué comunicada* por un amigo.	The news was communicated to him by a friend.
Los demás pormenores **os** *serán explicados* por el portador.	The other particulars will be explained to you by the bearer.
El poema **le** *será dedicado* por el autor **al presidente de la Academia.**	The poem will be dedicated by the author to the president of the Academy.

18. Passive Construction With No Equivalent Active Construction.—In all the foregoing examples of passive construction, the agent of the verb, which in the active construction is the subject of the sentence, is denoted by the object of the preposition *por* or *de* following the participle. In all such cases, the passive construction may be readily transformed into the active. Thus, the last example in Art. **17** may be changed in this manner:

El autor le *dedicará* el poema al presidente de la Academia.	The author will dedicate the poem to the president of the Academy.

When, however, the agent, not being specified, is left indeterminate, the transformation of the construction from passive to active cannot be effected in the regular manner. In none of the following examples of passive construction is there a substantive that could perform the function of subject in an equivalent active sentence:

La noticia le *fué comunicada* ayer.	The news was communicated to him yesterday.
La América *fué descubierta* en 1492.	America was discovered in 1492.
Fuimos vergonzosísimamente *engañados*.	We were most shamefully deceived.

In some cases, the transformation can be effected by introducing an indeterminate pronoun, such as **alguien,** *some one;* but this is only permissible when the agent is really unknown, or its identity is of no importance.

Alguien le *comunicó* la noticia ayer.	Some one communicated the news to him yesterday.

19. Estar Followed by a Participle.—The passive voice is always formed with *ser*, never with *estar*. A participle following the latter verb is merely an adjective expressing a condition of the subject, regardless of any agent; while in the passive voice, there is always an agent expressed or understood. The following pairs of examples will serve to illustrate this difference; in the second example of each pair, the construction is passive; in the first, it is not:

Este libro *está* muy bien *escrito*.	This book is very well written.
Este libro *fué escrito* en el siglo pasado.	This book was written in the last century.
La niñita *está asustada*.	The little girl is frightened.
La niñita *ha sido asustada* por unos muchachos traviesos.	The little girl has been frightened by some mischievous boys.
El capitolio *estaba terminado* cuando yo estuve allí.	The capitol was (already) finished when I was there.
El capitolio *será terminado* por un arquitecto italiano.	The capitol will be finished by an Italian architect.

THE QUASI-REFLEXIVE CONSTRUCTION

20. Definitions.—The student is already familiar with the reflexive accusative construction of the third person, in which the accusative case *se* represents the same thing as the subject of the verb.

Ese hombre *se alaba* demasiado.	That man praises himself too much.

Here the subject of the verb denotes the agent or performer of the action, and the accusative *se* represents the same agent as being acted upon by himself.

We come now to a class of constructions similar in form to that just considered, but entirely different in meaning.

Eso *se comprende* fácilmente.	That is easily understood.
Aquí *se viaja* con comodidad.	Here one travels with comfort.

It might seem that in the first of these two examples, *se* represents *eso* and is the accusative of *comprende*. This, however, is not really so, for *se* can only be a reflexive accusative, and this requires that the thing denoted by the subject should perform on itself the action denoted by the verb; and, in the present case, this is obviously impossible. The *se* affixed to *comprende* is simply a sign of indetermination, employed when the agent—the person or persons that *understand*—is not specified. Similarly, in the second example, *se viaja* means *one travels*, or *people travel*, or *men travel*.

This form of construction, in which *se* is indefinitely employed with a verb, the action or condition denoted by the verb not being attributed to any specified person, is called a **quasi-reflexive construction** (Spanish, *construcción cuasi-refleja*).* The combination of the verb and the indefinite *se* entering these constructions is called the **quasi-reflexive form** of the verb. For convenience, this *se* will here be called the **quasi-reflexive** *se*.

It should be understood that, although the quasi-reflexive form of a verb is often rendered by introducing such pronouns as *one*, *they*, or such nouns as *people*, *men*, this by no means implies that *se* is a substantive: it is simply a mark of indetermination—a kind of particle attached to the verb but having no meaning by itself. With respect to its position in the sentence, however, it is treated exactly like the true reflexive case *se*.

21. Rendering of Quasi-Reflexive Forms.—A quasi-reflexive form can always be literally rendered by

* The word *quasi* means *apparently*, *in form only*.

giving to the English equivalent of the Spanish verb an indefinite subject, such as *one*, *they*, *people*. Although this translation may not always be the most appropriate, it may serve as a guide in finding one that will be better adapted to English usage. Thus, *Se envió por un médico*, may be rendered, *They sent for a physician*, and this literal translation leads to the more usual form, *A physician was sent for*. Likewise, *se dice* may be rendered by *people say*, *they say*, or, in more common language, *it is said*.

This general principle is sufficient to enable the student to properly translate any quasi-reflexive form. It is, however, important that he should acquire the habit of giving his translation the most appropriate English form without having to resort first to a literal translation. Careful study of the following special cases will greatly aid him in accomplishing this end:

1. When the verb in the quasi-reflexive construction has a subject, the quasi-reflexive form is rendered by the English passive voice.

La proposición *se aprobó* unánimemente.	The proposition was unanimously approved.
En algunos países de Sud-América, la llama *se emplea* como bestia de carga.	In some countries of South America, the llama is employed as a beast of burden.
Todos los preparativos *se terminaron* en dos días.	All the preparations were finished in two days.
Cuanto *se ha hecho* y cuanto *se haga* por la salud del enfermo será inútil.	All that has been done, and all that may be done, for the health of the patient will be useless.
El francés *se habla* muy generalmente en todos los países de Europa.	French is very extensively spoken in all the countries of Europe.
Esta obra de arte es muy digna de *admirarse*.	This work of art is very worthy of being admired.
Tómese este remedio según nuestras direcciones.	Let this remedy be taken according to our directions.

Except in the imperative (last example), the passive construction is equally proper in Spanish, although not so commonly employed as in English.

La proposición *fué aprobada* unánimemente.
Todos los preparativos *fueron terminados* en dos días.
Esta obra de arte es muy digna de *ser admirada*.

(*a*) This rule applies to impersonal constructions, in which the subject of the Spanish verb is a proposition, an infinitive, or an infinitive phrase. In the equivalent English sentence, the grammatical subject is the indefinite pronoun *it*. This kind of construction has no passive equivalent in Spanish.

Se cree que el baile no tendrá lugar antes del quince.	It is thought that the ball will not take place before the fifteenth.
Se dice que la señorita Luisa cantará esta noche en el concierto.	It is said that Miss Louise will sing this evening at the concert.
Ayer *se decía* que este año no habría suficiente trigo para suplir las necesidades del país; hoy *se asegura* que la cosecha será abundantísima.	It was said yesterday that this year there would not be enough wheat to supply the needs of the country; today, it is asserted that the crop will be most abundant.
No *se sabe* cómo principió el incendio.	It is not known how the fire began.
Se pensaba dar un banquete á los miembros de la embajada.	It was intended to give a banquet to the members of the embassy.
Recuérdese que Cuba acaba de pasar por una situación muy seria.	Let it be remembered that Cuba has just passed through a very serious situation.
Téngase en cuenta que la República Americana es aún muy joven.	Let it be considered (*more literally*, taken into account) that the American Republic is still very young.

In imperative sentences, however, the second person of the imperative is often preferable in English to the impersonal form with *let it be*.

Agréguese á esto que la cantatriz tenía un fuerte resfriado.	Add to this that the singer had a very severe cold.

(*b*) If the verb is accompanied by a dative case denoting a human being, the translation is effected according to the general rule, or, in some special cases, by giving to the English verb a subject representing the person to which the Spanish dative case refers.

Se **nos** *envió* un telegrama.	A telegram was sent to us.
Se **me** *dijo* que usted estaba muy enfermo.	I was told (*or*, It was said to me) that you were very ill.
Se **les** *prohibió* entrar.	They were forbidden to go in.
Se **nos** *negaron* las concesiones que pedímos.	We were denied the concessions we asked for (*or*, The concessions we asked for were denied to us).

2. When the Spanish verb has no subject, or the subject is an interrogative pronoun, the translation must be effected by giving to the English verb an indefinite subject, such as *one*, *they*, *people*. The pronouns *you* and *we*, which often have an indefinite meaning, are sometimes used for rendering such expressions. There are cases in which the translation must be made very freely, in order to give it a usual English form. No definite rule can be given in this respect, except that the general principle stated at the beginning of this article should be applied as a guide.

Se habla mucho de lo que está sucediendo en Cuba, pero parece que *se sabe* muy poco de la verdadera condición de la isla.	People talk a great deal of what is happening in Cuba, but it seems that very little is known of the true condition of the island.
Apenas con dificultad *se podía* entrar.	Only with difficulty could one go in.
Se bailó hasta el amanecer.	We danced (*or*, They danced) until dawn.
¿Qué debe *saberse* para entrar á ese colegio?	What must one know to enter that college?
¿Qué quiere usted que *se haga* con estas máquinas?	What do you want us to do with these machines?
¿Cómo *se sube* á la cima de esa roca?	How can (*literally*, does) one go up to the top of that rock?
Temo que *se* nos *haya engañado*.	I fear they have deceived us (*or*, that we have been deceived).
En esos países *se bebe* mucho y *se trabaja* muy poco.	In those countries people drink a great deal and work very little.
Se debe comer para vivir, y no vivir para comer.	One should eat to live, and not live to eat.
¿Á qué hora *se almuerza* aquí?	What time do they (*or*, do you) breakfast here? (*or*, What time do they have breakfast here?)

The subjectless quasi-reflexive imperative is better rendered by the second person of the English imperative, used in a general or indefinite sense.

Para otros pormenores, *escríbase* á Toral & Cía.	For other particulars, write to Toral & Co.
En caso de duda, *acúdase* al superintendente.	In case of doubt, apply to the superintendent.

3. When the verb has no subject and is accompanied by an accusative or a dative case, the corresponding nominative case is employed in English as subject of the passive voice of the verb. It should be observed that in all quasi-reflexive constructions *le* and *les* are used as accusatives instead of *lo* and *los*, respectively.

Se **les** *perdonará*, si se manejan bien.	They shall be pardoned, if they behave well.
Se ha dado poca importancia á la filosofía idealista, porque no *se* **la** *ha estudiado* á fondo, ó, si *se* **la** *ha estudiado*, no *se* **la** *ha comprendido*.	Little importance has been given to idealistic philosophy, because it has not been thoroughly studied, or, if it has been studied, it has not been understood.
Los monopolios son un grandísimo obstáculo al progreso económico; donde *se* **les** *permite*, la industria se paraliza ó retrocede.	Monopolies are a very great obstacle to economic progress; where they are permitted, industry becomes paralyzed or retrogrades.
Al general *se* **le** *condenó* á muerte, y á sus oficiales *se* **les** desterró.	The general was sentenced to death, and his officers were banished.

4. When the quasi-reflexive form of the verb is modified by a prepositional phrase, the object of the preposition is often made the subject of the passive form of the verb in the English translation, the preposition being placed after the verb. There is no Spanish literal equivalent of this peculiar English construction.

De esta preposición *se hace* uso en construcciones como las siguientes.	This preposition is made use of in constructions like the following.
Se envió **por un médico.**	A physician was sent for.

No *se había contado* **con una resistencia tan obstinada.**	So obstinate a resistance had not been reckoned with.
Se habla muy bien **de ese escritor.**	That writer is very well spoken of.

5. The quasi-reflexive construction is much used in advertisements and other public notices. The quasi-reflexive form of the verb, if it has a subject, is best rendered by the English participle, or by the infinitive; if it has no subject, an indefinite subject, or the pronoun *we*, must be provided for the English sentence, in which the active form of the verb should be employed. This last mode of translating applies also in some cases in which the quasi-reflexive verb has a subject, as in the last of the examples that follow:

Se presta dinero sobre prendas.	Money loaned on chattels.
Aquí *se habla* francés.	French spoken here.
No *se permite* fumar.	Smoking not allowed.
Se alquila una casa de tres pisos en la calle de la Lealtad.	To let: a three-story house on Lealtad street.
Hoy no *se fía*, mañana sí.	We do not trust today; tomorrow we do.
No *se vende* sino al contado.	We sell only for cash.
No *se aceptan* sellos de correo.	We do not accept postage stamps (*or*, Postage stamps not accepted).

22. Remarks on the Syntax of Quasi-Reflexive Constructions. — With transitive verbs, a substantive that in the active construction would be the accusative, becomes the subject of the verb in the quasi-reflexive construction, if it denotes an animal, an inanimate thing, or an indeterminate human being. The verb should therefore agree with that substantive in number. If the substantive denotes a determinate human being or class of human beings, it is the accusative of the verb in the quasi-reflexive as well as in the active construction; it should be preceded by the preposition *á*, and the verb should be in the singular number.

Se examinaron **los proyectiles** muy cuidadosamente.	The projectiles were very carefully examined.

(Subject, *los proyectiles*)

Mañana *se traerán* **los otros minerales.**	The other ores will be brought tomorrow.

(Subject, *los otros minerales*)

Se nombraron **varios jefes.**	Several commanders were appointed.

(Subject, *varios jefes*—indeterminate persons)

Se examinó á **los acusados.**	The accused were examined.

(Accusative, *los acusados*—determinate persons)

Se guillotinó á **los conspiradores.**	The conspirators were guillotined.

(Accusative, *los conspiradores*—determinate persons)

Entonces *se guillotinaban* **conspiradores** sin piedad.	Conspirators were then guillotined without mercy.

(Subject, *conspiradores*—indeterminate persons)

23. A predicate adjective may refer to the indefinite subject implied in the quasi-reflexive form. Only the masculine singular form of the adjective can perform this function.

Se vive **feliz** cuando se tiene la conciencia limpia.	One lives happy when one has a clear conscience.
Se nace **ignorante.**	Man is born ignorant.

This construction, although not grammatically incorrect, is objectionable in several respects, and should be avoided as much as possible. A form similar to the English may be employed in its place.

Uno vive *feliz* cuando tiene la conciencia limpia.
El hombre nace *ignorante*.

The verbs *ser* and *estar* should not be employed in the quasi-reflexive form. Expressions like the following, which are occasionally met with, are condemned by all grammarians:

Se es **feliz** cuando *se es* **virtuoso.**	One is happy when one is virtuous.
No *se está* **de acuerdo** acerca de los pormenores.	People are not agreed about the particulars.

In cases like these, the quasi-reflexive form should be replaced by the ordinary form of the verb, and an appropriate subject introduced.

El hombre es feliz cuando es virtuoso.	Man is happy when he is virtuous.
La gente no está de acuerdo acerca de los pormenores.	People are not agreed about the particulars.

24. Agent of Transitive Verb in Quasi-Reflexive Construction.—As in the passive construction, a transitive verb used in the quasi-reflexive form may be modified by a prepositional phrase consisting of the preposition *por* and the name of the agent that performs the action indicated by the verb.

La proposición *se rechazó* **por la mayoría.**	The proposition was rejected by the majority.
Se ha dicho **por muchos** que la religión es un elemento indispensable de la moral.	It has been said by many that religion is an indispensable element of morality.
Estos libros *se escribieron* **por autores anónimos,** *se copiaron* **por copistas descuidados,** y *se tradujeron* **por traductores ignorantes.**	These books were written by anonymous authors, copied by careless copyists, and translated by ignorant translators.

In most all cases of this kind, however, either the passive or the active construction is preferable, being both more elegant and more logical.

La proposición *fué rechazada* por la mayoría.

Muchos *han dicho* que la religión es un elemento indispensable de la moral.

Estos libros *fueron escritos* por autores anónimos, *copiados* por copistas descuidados, y *traducidos* por traductores ignorantes.

25. Ambiguity in the Use of Quasi-Reflexive and Pronominal Forms.—It was explained in Art. 8 that some transitive verbs become intransitive by being used pronominally. Thus, *quemar* means *to burn*, and *quemar***se**, *to take fire*. With these verbs, some ambiguity may arise when *se* is affixed to them, as it may not be clear whether this particle serves to make the verb pronominal or to make the construction quasi-reflexive. The following sentence may serve as an illustration:

Poco antes de empezar la marcha hacia el interior del país, *se quemaron* los buques.	Shortly before beginning the march toward the interior of the country, the ships were burned (*or*, the ships took fire—were destroyed by fire—*according to circumstances*).

A good writer would avoid this ambiguity by giving the sentence an entirely different form, unless the circumstances were such as to clearly indicate the meaning intended.

The reflexive and the quasi-reflexive *se* may also be mistaken for each other, especially as used by careless or ignorant writers or speakers. The sentence, *El papa* se *considera infalible*, properly means *The pope considers himself infallible;* but the general rule laid down in Art. **22** is often disregarded, and the sentence is employed in the sense of, *The pope is considered infallible.* The proper rendering of this last sentence would be, *Se considera al papa infalible;* or, with a redundant dative case, *Al papa se le considera infalible.*

26. The Third Person Plural Used Instead of the Quasi-Reflexive Form.—The quasi-reflexive form may in many cases be replaced by the third person plural of the verb. The construction is similar to the English construction with the indefinite *they;* but in Spanish the pronoun *ellos* is neither expressed nor understood, the verb being considered as having no subject whatever.

Dicen que el congreso pasará una ley prohibiendo las corridas de toros.	They say that congress will pass a law forbidding bull fights.
Han hecho un parque muy hermoso cerca del muelle.	They have made a very beautiful park near the wharf.
Hoy nos *enviaron* unas muestras de terciopelo muy fino, pero no sabemos quién las envió.	Some very fine velvet samples were sent to us today, but we do not know who sent them.
En ese hotel *cobran* demasiado.	They charge too much at that hotel.
¿Á qué precio *están* vendiendo ahora los boletos de ida y vuelta?	At what price are they now selling return tickets?

IRREGULAR VERBS

ORTHOGRAPHIC CHANGES NOT CONSTITUTING IRREGULARITIES

27. The conjugation of regular verbs was treated in Part 2. The endings there given represent *sounds* to be added to the *sounds* of the stems of all regular verbs; and, therefore, when one of those endings added to the unmodified stem of the verb would alter the sound that stem has in the infinitive, an orthographic alteration is made in the stem in order to preserve its sound. These orthographic changes are not deemed irregularities. Thus, the present subjunctive of **vencer,** *to vanquish*, is written *venza*, *venzas*, *venzamos*, etc. Here the *c* of the infinitive is changed to *z*, as otherwise the sound of the stem of the verb would be altered, since the *c* in *venca* would have the *k*-sound, instead of the *z*-sound it has in the infinitive. The present subjunctive of **coger,** *to catch*, is written *coja*, *cojamos*, etc., the *g* of the stem being replaced by *j*, as *g* before *e* or *i* has the same sound as *j*, but a different sound before *a* or *o*. Likewise, the first person singular of the indicative present is written *cojo*, not *cogo*. The first person singular of the preterit of **tocar,** *to touch*, is written *toqué*, not *tocé*, because in the latter form the *k*-sound that the *c* has in the infinitive would disappear. The first person singular of the indicative preterit of **averiguar,** *to inquire*, is written *averigüé*, not *averigué*, for in the latter form the *u* would be silent, and the sound of the stem of the verb would therefore be altered. The subjunctive of **pagar,** *to pay*, is written *pague*, *paguemos*, etc., not *page*, *pagemos*, as in the latter form the *g* would have a *j*-sound. The first person singular of the indicative present of **distinguir,** *to distinguish*, is written *distingo*, not *distinguo*, for in the latter form the *u* would be pronounced, while in the infinitive it is silent.

It is not customary to write *z* before *e* or *i*, and in verbs whose stem ends in *z*, this letter is changed to *c* before

endings beginning with either of those vowels. Thus, the first person singular of the indicative preterit of **empezar,** *to commence*, is written *empecé*, not *empezé*.

The letter *q* is used only in the combinations *que*, *qui*, in which the *u* is silent and the *q* has the sound of *k*. Before *a* or *o*, the same sound is represented by *c*. For instance, the first person singular of **delinquir,** *to be delinquent*, is written *delinco*, and not *delinquo*.

Similar changes occur in the inflections of irregular verbs, but are not counted among the irregularities of such verbs. Thus, **empezar,** *to begin*, changes the sound of the stem to *empiez-* in certain tenses; but the form of this stem must be changed to *empiec-* when the first letter of the ending is *e*, as in the subjunctive present: *yo empiece*. Likewise, the sound of the stem in **desplegar,** *to unfold*, is in certain tenses changed to *despliег-*, which requires the introduction of a *u* after the *g* when the ending begins with *e*, as in the subjunctive present: *yo despliegue*.

CLASSIFICATION OF IRREGULAR VERBS

28. Classes of Irregular Verbs. — Nearly all irregular verbs can be included in one or another of several groups called **classes.** Each class is characterized by certain irregularities that are common to all the verbs included in it. A few isolated verbs are not susceptible of being grouped with others, each having irregularities peculiar to itself alone, and are for this reason called **unclassified irregular verbs.**

Irregular verbs may be divided into classes in various manners, according to the basis on which the classification is founded. In this work, they are divided into eleven classes, the characteristics of which will be presently explained and illustrated. A list of the most important irregular verbs is given at the end of this part of the Course, each verb being followed by a reference to the article where the verb itself or another that may be taken as a model for its inflection is conjugated.

29. Irregular Participles.—In the classification of irregular verbs, the participle is not customarily taken into account. Thus, **escribir**, *to write*, is considered regular, although its participle is *escrito* instead of *escribido*. The verbs having irregular participles are comparatively few, and will be separately treated.

30. Derivative Verbs.—Many verbs are formed from others by the prefixing of some particles—mainly of Latin origin. With respect to the verbs from which they are formed, they are called **derivative verbs.** For instance, *des***atar**, *to untie*, is a derivative of **atar**, *to tie;* *tras***poner**, *to transpose*, is a derivative of **poner**, *to put;* and *contra***decir**, *to contradict*, is a derivative of **decir**, *to say*. With few exceptions, derivative verbs follow the irregularities of their respective primitives.

31. Imperative Forms.—As the imperative forms of the first person plural, and of the third person (*usted* included) singular and plural, are the same as the corresponding forms of the subjunctive present, it will not be necessary to specify their irregularities. Furthermore, no verb is irregular in the second person plural of the imperative (the form with *vosotros* or *vos*), and when the imperative of a verb is mentioned as irregular, the second person singular (the form with *tú*) is meant. It should also be remembered (see Part 2) that the negative imperative for all persons and numbers is the same as the present subjunctive.

32. Verbs Ending in -llir, -ñer, and -ñir.—These verbs have a special irregularity that does not exclude others, and that must be overlooked in classing them with verbs whose irregularities are of a different character. This irregularity consists in that the *i* of endings beginning with *ie* or *io* is dropped before the ending is added to the stem of the verb. This occurs in the third persons of the indicative preterit, in all the subjunctive preterit, and in the hypothetic.

Rebullir, *to stir*

INDICATIVE PRETERIT

él rebull**ó** (*not*, **-ió**) ellos rebull**eron** (*not*, **-ieron**)

SUBJUNCTIVE PRETERIT		HYPOTHETIC	
yo, él	rebull**era** (*not*, **-iera**) rebull**ese** (*not*, **-iese**)	yo, él	rebull**ere** (*not*,**-iere**)
tú	rebull**eras** (*not*, **-ieras**) rebull**eses** (*not*, **-ieses**)	tú	rebull**eres** (*not*, **-ieres**)
nosotros	rebull**éramos** (*not*, **-iéramos**) rebull**ésemos** (*not*, **-iésemos**)	nosotros	rebull**éremos** (*not*, **-iéremos**)
vosotros	rebull**erais** (*not*, **-ierais**) rebull**eseis** (*not*, **-ieseis**)	vosotros	rebull**ereis** (*not*, **-iereis**)
ellos	rebull**eran** (*not*, **-ieran**) rebull**esen** (*not*, **-iesen**)	ellos	rebull**eren** (*not*, **-ieren**)

Some writers extend this irregularity to verbs ending in *-chir*, as **henchir;** *to stuff.* This practice, though common, has not yet been authorized by grammarians.

CLASS I

33. To this class belong:

1. A great many verbs ending in *-ar* and *-er*, having the letter *e* in the next to the last syllable of the infinitive.

2. The verbs **concernir,** *to concern*, and **discernir,** *to discern.*

3. The verbs **adquirir,** *to acquire*, and **inquirir,** *to inquire.*

The irregularity of these verbs consists in that the last vowel of the stem is changed to *ie* in the three singular persons and in the third person plural of the present indicative and of the present subjunctive, and in the second person singular of the imperative. The verbs are regular in all other respects.

Pensar, *to think*

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo pienso	yo piense
tú piensas	tú pienses
él piensa	él piense
ellos piensan	ellos piensen

Imperative

piensa tú

Perder, *to lose*

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo pierdo	yo pierda
tú pierdes	tú pierdas
él pierde	él pierda
ellos pierden	ellos pierdan

Imperative

pierde tú

Discernir, *to discern*

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo discierno	yo discierna
tú disciernes	tú disciernas
él discierne	él discierna
ellos disciernen	ellos disciernan

Imperative

discierne tú

Adquirir, *to acquire*

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo adquiero	yo adquiera
tú adquieres	tú adquieras
el adquiere	él adquiera
éllos adquieren	ellos adquieran

Imperative

adquiere tú

34. The verb **errar,** *to err, to mistake,* belongs to this class, but, for euphonic reasons, changes the *e* to *ye* instead of *ie: yo* **yerro,** *tú* **yerras,** *él* **yerra,** etc.

CLASS II

35. To this class belong:

1. A great many verbs ending in *-ar* and *-er* and having the letter *o* in the next to the last syllable of the infinitive.

2. The verb **jugar**, *to play*.

The irregularity of these verbs consists in that the last vowel of the stem is changed to *ue* in the three singular persons and in the third person plural of the present indicative and of the present subjunctive, and in the second person singular of the imperative. The verbs are regular in all other respects.

Contar, *to count*

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo cuento	yo cuente
tú cuentas	tú cuentes
él cuenta	él cuente
ellos cuentan	ellos cuenten

Imperative

cuenta tú

Mover, *to move*

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo muevo	yo mueva
tú mueves	tú muevas
él mueve	él mueva
ellos mueven	ellos muevan

Imperative

mueve tú

Jugar, *to play*

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo juego	yo juegue (see Art. 27)
tú juegas	tú juegues
él juega	él juegue
ellos juegan	ellos jueguen

Imperative

juega tú

36. The verb **oler,** *to smell,* belongs to this class, but an *h* is introduced before the diphthong *ue*, as no Spanish word begins with this vowel combination: *yo* **huelo**, *tú* **hueles**, *él* **huele**, etc. Similarly with **desosar,** *to bone* (*to remove the bones from meat*), and **desovar,** *to spawn: yo* des**hueso**, *ellos* des**huesan**; *él* des**hueva**, *ellos* des**huevan**, etc. The last two verbs are derived from the substantives **hueso,** *bone*, and **huevo,** *egg*, respectively.

CLASS III

37. To this class belong all verbs in *-acer* (except **hacer,** *to make*), *-ecer* (except **mecer,** *to swing*), and *-ocer* (except **cocer,** *to cook by boiling*), and a few in *-ucir*. Their irregularity consists in that they take *z* before the last *c* of the stem in the first person singular of the indicative present, and in all the persons of the subjunctive present. The conjugation of *hacer* will be given in a subsequent article; *mecer* is regular; *cocer* belongs to Class II, and is therefore conjugated like *mover* (Art. **35**).

Nacer, *to be born*

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo nazco	yo nazca
	tú nazcas
	él nazca
	nosotros nazcamos
	vosotros nazcáis
	ellos nazcan

Ofrecer, *to offer*

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo ofrezco	yo ofrezca
	tú ofrezcas
	él ofrezca
	nosotros ofrezcamos
	vosotros ofrezcáis
	ellos ofrezcan

Conocer, *to know, to be acquainted with*

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present	
yo conozco	yo	conozca
	tú	conozcas
	él	conozca
	nosotros	conozcamos
	vosotros	conozcáis
	ellos	conozcan

Lucir, *to shine*

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present	
yo luzco	yo	luzca
	tú	luzcas
	él	luzca
	nosotros	luzcamos
	vosotros	luzcáis
	ellos	luzcan

38. The verb **yacer,** *to lie, to be,* may be conjugated like *nacer* (*yo yazco, yo yazca,* etc.), or by changing the *c* into *g*: *yo yazgo, yo yazga,* etc.

CLASS IV

39. This class includes all verbs in *-ducir*, which, besides having the irregularities of verbs belonging to Class III, are irregular in both preterits and in the hypothetic mode. They are conjugated after the following model:

Traducir, *to translate*

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present	
yo traduzco	yo	traduzca
	tú	traduzcas
	él	traduzca
	nosotros	traduzcamos
	vosotros	traduzcáis
	ellos	traduzcan

Indicative Preterit

yo	**traduje**	nosotros	**tradujimos**
tú	**tradujiste**	vosotros	**tradujisteis**
él	**tradujo**	ellos	**tradujeron**

Subjunctive Preterit		Hypothetic	
yo, él	**tradujera** / **tradujese**	yo, él	**tradujere**
tú	**tradujeras** / **tradujeses**	tú	**tradujeres**
nosotros	**tradujéramos** / **tradujésemos**	nosotros	**tradujéremos**
vosotros	**tradujerais** / **tradujeseis**	vosotros	**tradujereis**
ellos	**tradujeran** / **tradujesen**	ellos	**tradujeren**

CLASS V

40. This class includes all verbs in *-eer*. They change the *i* of all endings beginning with *ie* or *io* to *y*, when the *i* is not accented; which takes place in the gerund, in the third persons of the indicative preterit, and in all persons of the subjunctive preterit and of the hypothetic.

Creer, *to believe*

Gerund	Indicative Preterit
creyendo	él creyó ellos creyeron

Subjunctive Preterit		Hypothetic	
yo, él	creyera / creyese	yo, él	creyere
tú	creyeras / creyeses	tú	creyeres
nosotros	creyéramos / creyésemos	nosotros	creyéremos
vosotros	creyerais / creyeseis	vosotros	creyereis
ellos	creyeran / creyesen	ellos	creyeren

CLASS VI

41. To this class belong several verbs in *-ir* having the letter *e* in the last syllable but one of the infinitive. They change this *e* to *i* in the gerund, the three singular persons and the third person plural of the indicative present, the third persons of the indicative preterit, all persons of the subjunctive and of the hypothetic mode, and the second person singular of the imperative.

Servir, *to serve*

GERUND

sirviendo

INDICATIVE PRESENT	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT
yo sirvo	yo sirva
tú sirves	tú sirvas
él sirve	él sirva
	nosotros sirvamos
	vosotros sirváis
ellos sirven	ellos sirvan

INDICATIVE PRETERIT

él sirvió ellos sirvieron

SUBJUNCTIVE PRETERIT	HYPOTHETIC
yo, él sirviera / sirviese	yo, él sirviere
tú sirvieras / sirvieses	tú sirvieres
nosotros sirviéramos / sirviésemos	nosotros sirviéremos
vosotros sirvierais / sirvieseis	vosotros sirviereis
ellos sirvieran / sirviesen	ellos sirvieren

IMPERATIVE

sirve tú

42. Verbs in *-eír* are considered to belong to this class, but they have the further irregularity that they discard the first *i* of the endings *-iendo*, *-ió*, *-ieron*, *-iera*, *-iese*, *-iésemos*, *-iere*, etc.

Reír, *to laugh*

GERUND

riendo (*not*, riiendo)

INDICATIVE PRESENT	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT
yo río	yo ría
tú ríes	tú rías
él ríe	él ría
	nosotros riamos
	vosotros riáis
ellos ríen	ellos rían

INDICATIVE PRETERIT

él rió (*not*, riió) ellos rieron (*not*, riieron)

SUBJUNCTIVE PRETERIT		HYPOTHETIC	
yo, él	riera (*not*, riiera) riese (*not*, riiese)	yo, él	riere (*not*, riiere)
tú	rieras (*not*, riieras) rieses (*not*, riieses)	tú	rieres (*not*, riieres)
nosotros	riéramos (*not*, riiéramos) riésemos (*not*, riiésemos)	nosotros	riéremos (*not*, riiéremos)
vosotros	rierais (*not*, riieras) rieseis (*not*, riieseis)	vosotros	riereis (*not*, riiereis)
ellos	rieran (*not*, riieran) riesen (*not*, riiesen)	ellos	rieren (*not*, riieren)

IMPERATIVE

ríe tú

43. Some verbs ending in *-ñir* belong to this class, but, in conjugating them, the irregularity mentioned in Art. **32** should be borne in mind. Thus, **teñir**, *to dye*, has the preterit *ciñó*, *ciñeron*, not *ciñió*, *ciñieron*.

CLASS VII

44. To this class belong several verbs ending in *-ir*—nearly all those in *-entir*, *-erir*, *-ertir*,—which in the indicative and in the subjunctive present have the irregularities of Class I, and in the gerund, the first and the second person plural of the subjunctive present, the two preterits, the hypothetic, and the imperative, have those of Class VI.

Preferir, *to prefer*

GERUND

prefiriendo

INDICATIVE PRESENT		SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT	
yo	prefiero	yo	prefiera
tú	prefieres	tú	prefieras
él	prefiere	él	prefiera
		nosotros	prefiramos
		vosotros	prefiráis
ellos	prefieren	ellos	prefieran

INDICATIVE PRETERIT

él prefirió ellos prefirieron

SUBJUNCTIVE PRETERIT		HYPOTHETIC	
yo, él	prefiriera / prefiriese	yo, él	prefiriere
tú	prefirieras / prefirieses	tú	prefirieres
nosotros	prefiriéramos / prefiriésemos	nosotros	prefiriéremos
vosotros	prefirierais / prefirieseis	vosotros	prefiriereis
ellos	prefirieran / prefiriesen	ellos	prefirieren

IMPERATIVE

prefiere tú

45. The verb **erguir,** *to erect*, may be conjugated as belonging to either this class or to Class VI, but it changes initial *i* before *e* to *y*: *yo* **i**rgo, or *yo* **y**ergo; *yo* **i**rga, or *yo* **y**erga, etc.

CLASS VIII

46. This class comprises only the verbs **dormir,** *to sleep;* **morir,** *to die*, and a few derivatives of these. Besides having the irregularities of Class II, they change the *o* of the stem to *u* in the gerund, the third persons of the indicative preterit, the first and the second person plural of the subjunctive present, all the subjunctive preterit, and the hypothetic.

Dormir, *to sleep*

GERUND

durmiendo

INDICATIVE PRESENT	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT
yo duermo	yo duerma
tú duermes	tú duermas
él duerme	él duerma
	nosotros durmamos
	vosotros durmáis
ellos duermen	ellos duerman

INDICATIVE PRETERIT

él durmió ellos durmieron

Subjunctive Preterit		Hypothetic	
yo, él	durmiera / durmiese	yo, él	durmiere
tú	durmieras / durmieses	tú	durmieres
nosotros	durmiéramos / durmiésemos	nosotros	durmiéremos
vosotros	durmierais / durmieseis	vosotros	durmiereis
ellos	durmieran / durmiesen	ellos	durmieren

Imperative

duerme tú

CLASS IX

47. To this class belong all verbs in *-uír* in which the *u* is not silent. This excludes verbs in *-guir*, like **distinguir**, *to distinguish*, but not verbs in *-güir*, like **argüír**, *to argue*. The verbs of this class have the irregularities of Class V, and, besides, they add *y* to their stem in the three singular persons and the third person plural of the present indicative, in all the present subjunctive, and in the second person singular of the imperative. Verbs in *-güir* discard the dieresis when the *u* is followed by *y*.

Construír, *to construct*

Gerund

construyendo

Indicative Present		Subjunctive Present	
yo	construyo	yo	construya
tú	construyes	tú	construyas
él	construye	él	construya
		nosotros	construyamos
		vosotros	construyáis
ellos	construyen	ellos	construyan

Indicative Preterit

él construyó ellos construyeron

Subjunctive Preterit		Hypothetic	
yo, él	construyera / construyese	yo él	construyere

tú	construyeras construyeses	tú	construyeres
nosotros	construyéramos construyésemos	nosotros	construyéremos
vosotros	construyerais construyesen	vosotros	construyereis
ellos	construyeran construyesen	ellos	construyeren

IMPERATIVE

construye tú

CLASS X

48. This class comprises the verbs **salir,** *to go out;* **valer,** *to be worth;* and a few derivatives of *salir.* The irregularities of these verbs are better illustrated than explained; they occur in the indicative present, future, and postpreterit, in the subjunctive present, and in the second person of the imperative.

Salir, *to go out*

INDICATIVE PRESENT	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT
yo salgo	yo salga
	tú salgas
	él salga
	nosotros salgamos
	vosotros salgáis
	ellos salgan

INDICATIVE FUTURE	INDICATIVE POSTPRETERIT
yo saldré	yo saldría
tú saldrás	tú saldrías
él saldrá	él saldría
nosotros saldremos	nosotros saldríamos
vosotros saldréis	vosotros saldríais
ellos saldrán	ellos saldrían

IMPERATIVE

sal tú

49. The imperative of *valer* is either *vale* or *val.* The verb **valerse,** *to avail oneself,* is conjugated like *valer* (or, *salir*). **Sobresalir,** *to surpass,* follows the same conjugation, but its imperative is regular: *sobre***sale** *tú,* and not, *sobre***sal** *tú.*

CLASS XI

50. This class includes several verbs in *-iar* and *-uar*. These verbs are treated by all grammarians as regular, because their irregularities relate to orthographic and prosodic accentuation only. In this work they will not be so treated.

The irregularity of verbs of this class consists in this—that all forms in which the prosodic accent is borne by the stem of the verb, are accented, both prosodically and orthographically, on the last vowel of the stem (the *i* or the *u*, according as the verb ends in *-iar* or *-uar*), instead of being accented on the vowel preceding. This occurs in the three singular persons and in the third person plural of the indicative and the subjunctive present, and in the second person singular of the imperative. Thus, the first person singular of the indicative present of **estudiar,** *to study*, is *estudio* (emphasis on the *u*), and that of **averiguar,** *to inquire*, is *averiguo* (emphasis on the *i*). These verbs are regular. The corresponding forms of **variar,** *to vary*, and **continuar,** *to continue*, are, respectively, *varío* (emphasis on *i*) and *continúo* (emphasis on *u*). These two verbs are irregular.

Variar, *to vary*

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo varío	yo varíe
tú varías	tú varíes
él varía	él varíe
ellos varían	ellos varíen

Imperative
varía tú

Continuar, *to continue*

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo continúo	yo continúe
tú continúas	tú continúes
él continúa	él continúe
ellos continúan	ellos continúen

Imperative
continúa tú

51. Verbs having no other vowel than *i* or *u* in the stem do not strictly belong to this class, since the accentuation of their forms is imposed by the very nature of their structure. Thus, the first person singular of the present indicative of **fiar,** *to trust*, cannot be other than *fío*, there being in this case no other vowel in the stem than *i*.

UNCLASSIFIED IRREGULAR VERBS

NOTE.—The derivatives of the following verbs follow the irregularities of their respective primitives, unless otherwise stated.

52. **Andar,** *to walk, to go:* irregular in the two preterits and in the hypothetic.

INDICATIVE PRETERIT

yo	**anduve**	nosotros	**anduvimos**
tú	**anduviste**	vosotros	**anduvisteis**
él	**anduvo**	ellos	**anduvieron**

SUBJUNCTIVE PRETERIT		HYPOTHETIC	
yo, él	**anduviera** / **anduviese**	yo, él	**anduviere**
tú	**anduvieras** / **anduvieses**	tú	**anduvieres**
nosotros	**anduviéramos** / **anduviésemos**	nosotros	**anduviéremos**
vosotros	**anduvierais** / **anduvieseis**	vosotros	**anduviereis**
ellos	**anduvieran** / **anduviesen**	ellos	**anduvieren**

53. **Asir,** *to grasp, to take hold of:* irregular in the first person singular of the indicative present and in all the subjunctive present.

INDICATIVE PRESENT	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT	
yo	asgo	yo asga
		tú asgas
		él asga
		nosotros asgamos
		vosotros asgáis
		ellos asgan

54. **Caber,** *to go into, to be containable in:* irregular in the first person singular of the indicative present, in all the indicative preterit, future, and postpreterit, in all the subjunctive, and in the hypothetic.

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo **quepo**	yo **quepa**
	tú **quepas**
	él **quepa**
	nosotros **quepamos**
	vosotros **quepáis**
	ellos **quepan**

Indicative Future	Indicative Postpreterit
yo cabr**é**	yo cabr**ía**
tú cabr**ás**	tú cabr**ías**
él cabr**á**	él cabr**ía**
nosotros cabr**emos**	nosotros cabr**íamos**
vosotros cabr**éis**	vosotros cabr**íais**
ellos cabr**án**	ellos cabr**ían**

Indicative Preterit

yo **cupe**	nosotros **cupimos**
tú **cupiste**	vosotros **cupisteis**
él **cupo**	ellos **cupieron**

Subjunctive Preterit	Hypothetic
yo, él **cupiera** / **cupiese**	yo, él **cupiere**
tú **cupieras** / **cupieses**	tú **cupieres**
nosotros **cupiéramos** / **cupiésemos**	nosotros **cupiéremos**
vosotros **cupierais** / **cupieseis**	vosotros **cupiereis**
ellos **cupieran** / **cupiesen**	ellos **cupieren**

55. **Caer,** *to fall:* irregular in the gerund, in the first person singular of the indicative present, in the third persons of the indicative preterit, in all the subjunctive, and in the hypothetic.

Gerund

ca**y**endo

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo caigo	yo caiga
	tú caigas
	él caiga
	nosotros caigamos
	vosotros caigáis
	ellos caigan

Indicative Preterit

él cayó ellos cayeron

Subjunctive Preterit		Hypothetic	
yo, él	cayera / cayese	yo, él	cayere
tú	cayeras / cayeses	tú	cayeres
nosotros	cayéramos / cayésemos	nosotros	cayéremos
vosotros	cayerais / cayeseis	vosotros	cayereis
ellos	cayeran / cayesen	ellos	cayeren

56. **Dar,** *to give:* irregular in the first person singular of the indicative present, in both preterits, and in the hypothetic. In the last three tenses, the regular endings of verbs in *-er* and *-ir* are added to the stem *d-*.

Indicative Present

yo doy

Indicative Preterit

yo dí	nosotros dimos
tú diste	vosotros disteis
él dió	ellos dieron

Subjunctive Preterit		Hypothetic	
yo, él	diera / diese	yo, él	diere
tú	dieras / dieses	tú	dieres
nosotros	diéramos / diésemos	nosotros	diéremos
vosotros	dierais / dieseis	vosotros	diereis
ellos	dieran / diesen	ellos	dieren

The first person singular of the present subjunctive is written with an accent mark over the ending: *dé*.

57. **Decir,** *to say, to tell:* irregular in all modes and tenses, except the first and the second person plural of the indicative present, and all the copreterit.

GERUND

diciendo

INDICATIVE PRESENT	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT
yo digo	yo diga
tú dices	tú digas
él dice	él diga
	nosotros digamos
	vosotros digáis
ellos dicen	ellos digan

INDICATIVE POSTPRETERIT	INDICATIVE FUTURE
yo diré	yo diría
tú dirás	tú dirías
él dirá	él diría
nosotros diremos	nosotros diríamos
vosotros diréis	vosotros diríais
ellos dirán	ellos dirían

INDICATIVE PRETERIT

yo dije	nosotros dijimos
tú dijiste	vosotros dijisteis
él dijo	ellos dijeron

SUBJUNCTIVE PRETERIT	HYPOTHETIC
yo, él { dijera / dijese	yo, él dijere
tú { dijeras / dijeses	tú dijeres
nosotros { dijéramos / dijésemos	nosotros dijéremos
vosotros { dijerais / dijeseis	vosotros dijereis
ellos { dijeran / dijesen	ellos dijeren

IMPERATIVE

dí tú

58. The form *diz* is used in the sense of *they say* or *it is said* in the familiar expression **diz que,** *they say that.*

Diz que el vapor naufragó. El vapor *diz que* naufragó.	They say (*or*, It is said that) the steamer was wrecked.

59. The derivatives of *decir* are regular in the indicative future and postpreterit; in the imperative they replace the ending *-ecir* with *-ice*, not with *í*. Thus, the imperative of **contradecir,** *to contradict*, is *contradice tú*. In all other forms they follow the primitive. As to the future and postpreterit, this rule is absolute with regard only to **bendecir,** *to bless*, and **maldecir,** *to curse;* with other derivatives of *decir*, it is not very generally observed. Thus, either *contradiré* or *contradeciré* is proper as the future of *contradecir*.

60. **Estar,** *to be:* conjugated in Part 2.

61. **Haber,** *to have:* conjugated in Part 2. When this verb is employed without a subject in the sense of *there to be*, it has the form **hay,** *there is*, *there are*, for the indicative present. In all other tenses it is conjugated like the auxiliary, but only the third persons are used. When used with reference to time elapsed, meaning *ago*, it has the form *há* for the third person singular (no plural persons are employed in this sense) of the indicative present. These uses of *haber* will be treated at length in connection with subjectless verbs.

62. The word *hé*, although seemingly an imperative form of *haber*, is really a modified form of the imperative *vé* of **ver,** *to see*, *to look*. It is employed with the adverbs **aquí,** *here;* **ahí, allí,** *there*, in the literal sense of *behold;* although, in some cases, it is rendered by some other verb or expression having the same meaning, but better adapted to the circumstances.

¡Hé ahí el hombre!	Behold the man!
Hé aquí que, cuando nos acercámos, hallámos sólo rocas y arena.	And lo! (*or*, Now, *or*, It happened that) when we approached, we found only rocks and sand.
Hé aquí tu libro.	Here is your book.
Hénos aquí, listos para partir.	Here we are (*or*, Here you have us), ready to start.

63. **Hacer,** *to do, to make:* regular only in the gerund, the second and the third person singular of the indicative present, all the plural persons of the same tense, and all the copreterit.*

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo hago	yo haga
	tú hagas
	él haga
	nosotros hagamos
	vosotros hagáis
	ellos hagan

Indicative Future	Indicative Postpreterit
yo haré	yo haría
tú harás	tú harías
él hará	él haría
nosotros haremos	nosotros haríamos
vosotros haréis	vosotros haríais
ellos harán	ellos harían

Indicative Preterit

yo hice	nosotros hicimos
tú hiciste	vosotros hicisteis
él hizo	ellos hicieron

Subjunctive Preterit	Hypothetic
yo, él { hiciera / hiciese	yo, él hiciere
tú { hicieras / hicieses	tú hicieres
nosotros { hiciéramos / hiciésemos	nosotros hiciéremos
vosotros { hicierais / hicieseis	vosotros hiciereis
ellos { hicieran / hiciesen	ellos hicieren

Imperative

haz tú

64. **Ir,** *to go:* regular only in the indicative future and postpreterit. The two preterits and the hypothetic of this verb are identical with the corresponding tenses of **ser,** *to be.*

---

*It is not necessary to mention the second person plural of the imperative, as no verb is irregular in this form (Art. **31**).

GERUND
yendo

INDICATIVE PRESENT

yo	voy
tú	vas
él	va
nosotros	vamos
vosotros	vais
ellos	van

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT

yo	vaya
tú	vayas
él	vaya
nosotros	vayamos / vamos
vosotros	vayáis / vais
ellos	vayan

INDICATIVE PRETERIT

yo	fuí	nosotros	fuimos
tú	fuiste	vosotros	fuisteis
él	fué	ellos	fueron

INDICATIVE COPRETERIT

yo	iba	nosotros	íbamos
tú	ibas	vosotros	ibais
él	iba	ellos	iban

SUBJUNCTIVE PRETERIT

yo, él	fuera / fuese
tú	fueras / fueses
nosotros	fuéramos / fuésemos
vosotros	fuerais / fueseis
ellos	fueran / fuesen

HYPOTHETIC

yo, él	fuere
tú	fueres
nosotros	fuéremos
vosotros	fuereis
ellos	fueren

IMPERATIVE
vé tú

65. **Oír,** *to hear:* irregular in the gerund, in the three singular persons and the third person plural of the indicative present, in the third persons of the indicative preterit, in all the subjunctive, in the hypothetic, and in the second person singular of the imperative.

GERUND
oyendo

INDICATIVE PRESENT

yo	oigo
tú	oyes
él	oye
ellos	oyen

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT

yo	oiga
tú	oigas
él	oiga
nosotros	oigamos
vosotros	oigáis
ellos	oigan

INDICATIVE PRETERIT

él oyó ellos oyeron

SUBJUNCTIVE PRETERIT		HYPOTHETIC	
yo, él	oyera / oyese	yo, él	oyere
tú	oyeras / oyeses	tú	oyeres
nosotros	oyéramos / oyésemos	nosotros	oyéremos
vosotros	oyerais / oyesen	vosotros	oyereis
ellos	oyeran / oyesen	ellos	oyeren

IMPERATIVE

oye tú

66. Placer, *to please.*—This verb is constructed like **gustar,** *to like* (see Part 4). It may be conjugated as belonging to Class III, but it has also the forms *plegue, pluguiera,-se, pluguiere* for the subjunctive present, the subjunctive preterit, and the hypothetic, respectively. The first two of these are used mainly in exclamations, and have an interjectional value.

Haremos lo que á usted le *plazca*.	We shall do whatever you please (whatever pleases you).
¡*Plegue* á Dios que no le condenen á muerte!	God grant he may not be sentenced to death!
¡*Pluguiese* al cielo que no hubiésemos alojado ese monstruo en nuestra casa!	Would to Heaven we had not lodged that monster in our house!

67. Poder, *to be able:* regular only in the first and the second person plural of the indicative present and of the subjunctive present, and in all the copreterit.

GERUND

pudiendo

INDICATIVE PRESENT	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT
yo puedo	yo pueda
tú puedes	tú puedas
él puede	él pueda
ellos pueden	ellos puedan

Indicative Future		Indicative Postpreterit	
yo	podré	yo	podría
tú	podrás	tú	podrías
él	podrá	él	podría
nosotros	podremos	nosotros	podríamos
vosotros	podréis	vosotros	podríais
ellos	podrán	ellos	podrían

Indicative Preterit

yo	pude	nosotros	pudimos
tú	pudiste	vosotros	pudisteis
él	pudo	ellos	pudieron

Subjunctive Preterit		Hypothetic	
yo, él	pudiera / pudiese	yo, él	pudiere
tú	pudieras / pudieses	tú	pudieres
nosotros	pudiéramos / pudiésemos	nosotros	pudiéremos
vosotros	pudierais / pudieseis	vosotros	pudiereis
ellos	pudieran / pudiesen	ellos	pudieren

Imperative

puede tú

68. **Podrir,** *to rot:* irregular in the gerund, in the three singular persons and in the third person plural of the indicative present, in the third persons of the indicative preterit, in all the subjunctive, in the hypothetic, and in the second person singular of the imperative. In all these forms, the *o* of the stem is changed to *u*.

Gerund

pudriendo

Indicative Present		Subjunctive Preterit	
yo	pudro	yo	pudra
tú	pudres	tú	pudras
él	pudre	él	pudra
		nosotros	pudramos
		vosotros	pudráis
ellos	pudren	ellos	pudran

INDICATIVE PRETERIT

él pudrió ellos pudrieron

SUBJUNCTIVE PRETERIT		HYPOTHETIC	
yo, él	pudriera / pudriese	yo, él	pudriere
tú	pudrieras / pudrieses	tú	pudrieres
nosotros	pudriéramos / pudriésemos	nosotros	pudriéremos
vosotros	pudrierais / pudrieseis	vosotros	pudriereis
ellos	pudrieran / pudriesen	ellos	pudrieren

IMPERATIVE

pudre tú

69. The verb *pudrir*, which is regular, has the same meaning as *podrir*, and may therefore be used in place of the latter.

70. **Poner,** *to put:* regular only in the gerund, in the indicative present, except the first person singular, and in the copreterit.

INDICATIVE PRESENT	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT
yo pongo	yo ponga
	tú pongas
	él ponga
	nosotros pongamos
	vosotros pongáis
	ellos pongan

INDICATIVE FUTURE	INDICATIVE POSTPRETERIT
yo pondré	yo pondría
tú pondrás	tú pondrías
él pondrá	el pondría
nosotros pondremos	nosotros pondríamos
vosotros pondréis	vosotros pondríais
ellos pondrán	ellos pondrían

INDICATIVE PRETERIT

yo puse	nosotros pusimos
tú pusiste	vosotros pusisteis
él puso	ellos pusieron

Subjunctive Preterit		Hypothetic	
yo, él	**pusiera** / **pusiese**	yo, él	**pusiere**
tú	**pusieras** / **pusieses**	tú	**pusieres**
nosotros	**pusiéramos** / **pusiésemos**	nosotros	**pusiéremos**
vosotros	**pusierais** / **pusieseis**	vosotros	**pusiereis**
ellos	**pusieran** / **pusiesen**	ellos	**pusieren**

Imperative

pon tú

71. **Querer,** *to wish;* also, *to love:* regular only in the gerund, in the first and the second person plural of the indicative and of the subjunctive present, and in the indicative copreterit.

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo quiero	yo quiera
tú quieres	tú quieras
él quiere	él quiera
ellos quieren	ellos quieran

Indicative Future	Indicative Postpreterit
yo querré	yo querría
tú querrás	tú querrías
él querrá	él querría
nosotros querremos	nosotros querríamos
vosotros querréis	vosotros querríais
ellos querrán	ellos querrían

Indicative Preterit

yo **quise**	nosotros **quisimos**
tú **quisiste**	vosotros **quisisteis**
él **quiso**	ellos **quisieron**

Subjunctive Preterit		Hypothetic	
yo, él	**quisiera** / **quisiese**	yo, él	**quisiere**
tú	**quisieras** / **quisieses**	tú	**quisieres**

nosotros	**quis**iéramos **quis**iésemos	nosotros	**quis**iéremos
vosotros	**quis**ierais **quis**ieseis	vosotros	**quis**iereis
ellos	**quis**ieran **quis**iesen	ellos	**quis**ieren

IMPERATIVE

qu**ie**re tú

72. **Saber,** *to know:* regular only in the gerund, in the indicative present (first person singular excepted) and copreterit, and in the second person singular of the imperative.

INDICATIVE PRESENT		SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT	
yo sé		yo **sep**a	nosotros **sep**amos
		tú **sep**as	vosotros **sep**áis
		él **sep**a	ellos **sep**an

INDICATIVE FUTURE		INDICATIVE POSTPRETERIT	
yo	sabr**é**	yo	sabr**ía**
tú	sabr**ás**	tú	sabr**ías**
él	sabr**á**	él	sabr**ía**
nosotros	sabr**emos**	nosotros	sabr**íamos**
vosotros	sabr**éis**	vosotros	sabr**íais**
ellos	sabr**án**	ellos	sabr**ían**

INDICATIVE PRETERIT

yo	**sup**e	nosotros	**sup**imos
tú	**sup**iste	vosotros	**sup**isteis
él	**sup**o	ellos	**sup**ieron

SUBJUNCTIVE PRETERIT		HYPOTHETIC	
yo, él	**sup**iera **sup**iese	yo, él	**sup**iere
tú	**sup**ieras **sup**ieses	tú	**sup**ieres
nosotros	**sup**iéramos **sup**iésemos	nosotros	**sup**iéremos
vosotros	**sup**ierais **sup**ieseis	vosotros	**sup**iereis
ellos	**sup**ieran **sup**iesen	ellos	**sup**ieren

73. **Satisfacer,** *to satisfy:* conjugated like *hacer*, replacing the *h-* in the latter verb with *satisf-*. (See Art. **63.**)

yo { **h**ago, **h**aga, **h**ice, etc.
{ **satisf**ago, **satisf**aga, **satisf**ice, etc.

In the imperative, however, as well as in the preterit subjunctive and in the hypothetic, the regular forms are equally proper.

satisf**az** tú, *or*, satisf**ace** tú
yo satisf**iciese**, *or*, yo satisf**aciese**
él satisf**iciere**, *or*, él satisf**aciere**, etc.

74. **Ser**, *to be*, and **tener**, *to have:* conjugated in Part 2.

75. **Traer**, *to bring:* irregular in the gerund, in the first person singular of the present indicative, in the indicative preterit, in all the subjunctive, and in the hypothetic.

GERUND

tra**y**endo

INDICATIVE PRESENT	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT
yo tra**ig**o	yo tra**ig**a
	tú tra**ig**as
	él tra**ig**a
	nosotros tra**ig**amos
	vosotros tra**ig**áis
	ellos tra**ig**an

INDICATIVE PRETERIT

yo **traj**e	nosotros **traj**imos
tú **traj**iste	vosotros **traj**isteis
él **traj**o	ellos **traj**eron

SUBJUNCTIVE PRETERIT		HYPOTHETIC	
yo, él	**traj**era, **traj**ese	yo, él	**traj**ere
tú	**traj**eras, **traj**eses	tú	**traj**eres
nosotros	**traj**éramos, **traj**ésemos	nosotros	**traj**éremos
vosotros	**traj**erais, **traj**eseis	vosotros	**traj**ereis
ellos	**traj**eran, **traj**esen	ellos	**traj**eren

76. Formerly, *tru-* was substituted for *tra-* in the two preterits and in the hypothetic.

yo tr*u*je, ellos tr*u*jeron, vosotros tr*u*jeseis, etc.

77. **Venir,** *to come:* regular only in the first and in the second person plural of the indicative present, and in the indicative copreterit.

GERUND

viniendo

INDICATIVE PRESENT	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT
yo vengo	yo venga
tú vienes	tú vengas
él viene	él venga
	nosotros vengamos
	vosotros vengáis
ellos vienen	ellos vengan

INDICATIVE FUTURE	INDICATIVE POSTPRETERIT
yo vendré	yo vendría
tú vendrás	tú vendrías
él vendrá	él vendría
nosotros vendremos	nosotros vendríamos
vosotros vendréis	vosotros vendríais
ellos vendrán	ellos vendrían

SUBJUNCTIVE PRETERIT	HYPOTHETIC
yo, él viniera / viniese	yo, él viniere
tú vinieras / vinieses	tú vinieres
nosotros viniéramos / viniésemos	nosotros viniéremos
vosotros vinierais / vinieseis	vosotros viniereis
ellos vinieran / viniesen	ellos vinieren

IMPERATIVE

ven tu

78. **Ver,** *to see:* irregular in the first person singular of the indicative present, in all the subjunctive present, and in the indicative copreterit.

INDICATIVE PRESENT	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT
yo veo	yo vea
	tú veas
	él vea
	nosotros veamos
	vosotros veáis
	ellos vean

INDICATIVE COPRETERIT

yo veía	nosotros veíamos
tú veías	vosotros veíais
él veía	ellos veían

79. Formerly, the copreterit was regular: *yo* **vía**, *tú* **vías**, etc. These forms are still occasionally used in poetry.

IRREGULAR PARTICIPLES

80. List of Verbs Having Irregular Participles. The following is a list of verbs having an irregular participle. The abbreviation *r.* placed in parenthesis after an infinitive indicates that the verb is regular in other respects. Most all these verbs have several meanings besides those given in the table: the irregular participle applies in all cases, whatever the meaning of the verb. Only the most important derivatives are given.

abrir (r.), *to open:*	**abierto**
entreabrir (r.), *to half open:*	entreabierto
cubrir (r.), *to cover:*	**cubierto**
descubrir (r.), *to discover:*	descubierto
encubrir (r.), *to conceal:*	encubierto
decir,* *to say, to tell:*	**dicho**
contradecir, *to contradict:*	contradicho
desdecir, *to unsay:*	desdicho
interdecir, *to interdict:*	interdicho
predecir, *to foretell:*	predicho
escribir (r.), *to write:*	**escrito**
circunscribir (r.), *to circumscribe:*	circunscrito
inscribir (r.), *to inscribe, to register:*	inscrito
prescribir (r.), *to prescribe:*	prescrito
proscribir (r.), *to proscribe:*	proscrito
suscribir (r.), *to subscribe:*	suscrito
hacer, *to make, to do:*	**hecho**
contrahacer, *to falsify:*	contrahecho
deshacer, *to undo:*	deshecho
rehacer, *to do over:*	rehecho

---

*__Bendecir,__ *to bless*, and **maldecir,** *to curse*, have regular participles: *bendec*__ido,__ *maldec*__ido.__ The words **bendito,** *blessed, holy*, and **maldito,** *damned, confounded*, are mere adjectives.

imprimir (r.), *to print:*	**impreso**
reimprimir (r.), *to reprint:*	reimpreso
morir, *to die:*	**muerto**
poner, *to put:*	**puesto**
componer, *to mend:*	compuesto
deponer, *to depose:*	depuesto
disponer, *to dispose:*	dispuesto
exponer, *to expound, to expose:*	expuesto
imponer, *to impose:*	impuesto
oponer, *to oppose:*	opuesto
proponer, *to propose:*	propuesto
reponer, *to replace:*	repuesto
suponer, *to suppose:*	supuesto
satisfacer, *to satisfy:*	**satisfecho**
absolver, *to absolve:*	**absuelto**
disolver, *to dissolve:*	disuelto
resolver, *to resolve:*	resuelto
ver, *to see:*	**visto**
entrever, *to half see:*	entrevisto
prever, *to foresee:*	previsto
volver, *to come back:*	**vuelto**
devolver, *to give back:*	devuelto
envolver, *to wrap:*	envuelto
revolver, *to stir, to mix:*	revuelto

81. Verbs Having Two Participles.—The following verbs have two participles, one regular and one irregular:

freír, *to fry:*	freído, frito
matar, *to kill:*	matado, muerto
prender, *to arrest:*	prendido, preso
proveer, *to purvey, to provide:*	proveído, provisto
romper, *to break:*	rompido, roto

82. *Frito* is preferable to *freído* in all cases, although *freído* is not uncommon in compound tenses and in the passive voice.

Han *frito* (or, *freído*) la carne.	They have fried the meat.
La carne fué *frita* (or, *freída*) por un mal cocinero.	The meat was fried by a bad cook.
¿Quiere usted los huevos *fritos?*	Do you wish your eggs fried?
El pescado no está *frito* aún.	The fish is not yet fried.

83. *Muerto*, which properly is the participle of **morir,** *to die*, may take the place of *matado* (although the latter

is equally proper) when used in the sense of killing with violence, provided its accusative denotes a human being, and the construction is not reflexive. In all other cases, *matado* should be employed.

Han *muerto* (or, *matado*) al presidente.	The president has been killed.
¿Cuántos terneros han *matado* hoy?	How many calves have been killed today?
La noticia lo ha *matado*.	The news has killed him.

84. Either *preso* or *prendido* may be used in compound tenses and in the passive voice; as a mere adjective, *preso* is the only permissible form.

Han *prendido* (or, *preso*) al criminal.	They have arrested the criminal.
El desertor fué *prendido* (or, *preso*) por un espía.	The deserter was caught by a spy.
Los acusados están *presos*.	The accused are arrested (*better*, are in prison).

This irregularity does not apply when *prender* does not mean *to arrest*.

La casa se ha *prendido*.	The house has taken fire.

85. *Provisto* is preferable to *proveído* in all cases, although the latter form is occasionally employed in compound tenses.

La ciudad está *provista* de municiones.	The city is provided with munitions.
El gobierno ha *provisto* municiones.	The government has provided munitions.
El gobierno ha *proveído* (or, *provisto*) lo necesario para la defensa.	The government has provided the necessary things for the defense.

86. When *romper* is used transitively, meaning *to break*, or *to tear*, its participle is *roto;* when used intransitively, meaning *to fall out*, or *to disregard*, its participle is regular.

¿Quién ha *roto* estos platos?	Who has broken these dishes?
Mis guantes están *rotos*.	My gloves are torn.
Enrique y yo no habíamos *rompido* cuando eso sucedió.	Henry and I had not fallen out when that happened.
Ha *rompido* con toda formalidad.	He has set aside every formality.

TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERBS

NOTE. — From this list are excluded all verbs that by their endings can be at once recognized as belonging to a certain class of irregulars; namely: verbs in *-acer*, *-ecer*, *-ocer*, except *cocer*, *hacer*, and *satisfacer* (see Art. **37**; *mecer* is regular); verbs in *-ducir* (see Art. **39**); verbs in *-eer* (see Art. **40**); and verbs in *-uír* or *-üír* (see Art. **47**). A Roman numeral placed after a verb indicates the class to which the verb belongs. Arabic numerals refer to the article where the verb itself or another having the same irregularities is conjugated.

abnegar, *to renounce:* I, **33**
absolver, *to absolve, to acquit:* II, **35**
absonar, *to be ill-sounding:* II, **35**
abstenerse, *to abstain:* **74**
abstraer, *to abstract:* **75**
abuñolar, *to prepare like a fritter:* II, **35**
acentuar, *to accent:* XI, **50**
acertar, *to hit (as a mark):* I, **33**
aclocar, *to brood:* II, **35**
acollar, *to hill (potatoes, etc.):* II, **35**
acordar, *to agree on, to resolve:* II, **35**
acordarse, *to recollect:* II, **35**
acornar, *to butt:* II, **35**
acostar, *to put to bed:* II, **35**
acostarse, *to go to bed:* II, **35**
acrecentar, *to increase:* I, **33**
actuar, *to perform:* XI, **50**
adecentar, *to render decent:* I, **33**
adestrar, *to train:* I, **33**
adherir, *to adhere:* VII, **44**
adormir, *to cause drowsiness:* VIII, **46**
adormirse, *to fall asleep:* VIII, **46**
adquirir, *to acquire:* I, **33**
advertir, *to notice, to inform:* VII, **44**
afollar, *to plait:* II, **35**
aforar, *to privilege:* II, **35**
agorar, *to soothsay:* II, **35**
aguerrir, *to inure to war:* VI, **41**
alebrarse, *to crouch:* I, **33**
alentar, *to breathe, to encourage:* I, **33**
aliarse, *to become allied:* XI, **50**
aliquebrar, *to clip (the wings of):* I, **33**
almorzar, *to breakfast:* II, **35**
alongar, *to elongate:* II, **35**
amoblar, *to furnish:* II, **35**
amolar, *to whet:* II, **35**
amover, *to remove:* II, **35**
ampliar, *to amplify:* XI, **50**
andar, *to go:* **52**
ansiar, *to yearn:* XI, **50**
antedecir, *to predict:* **57**
anteponer, *to give the preference to, to place before:* **70**
antever, *to foresee:* **78**
apacentar, *to tend grazing cattle:* I, **33**
apercollar, *to collar, to snatch:* II, **35**
apernar, *to seize by the leg:* I, **33**
apostar, *to bet:* II, **35**
apretar, *to tighten:* I, **33**
aprobar, *to approve:* II, **35**
arrendar, *to rent:* I, **33**
arrepentirse, *to repent:* VII, **44**
arriar, *to haul down:* XI, **50**
arriarse, *to become overflowed:* XI, **50**
ascender, *to ascend:* I, **33**
asentar, *to set:* I, **33**
asentir, *to assent:* VII, **44**
aserrar, *to saw:* I, **33**
asir, *to take hold of:* **53**

TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERBS—(Continued)

asolar, *to lay waste:* II, **35**
asoldar, *to hire (manual labor):* II, **35**
asonar, *to accord (said of sounds):* II, **35**
asonarse, *to riot:* II, **35**
asosegar, asosegarse, } *to quiet down:* I, **33**
atañer, *to concern:* **32**
ataviar, *to deck:* XI, **50**
atender, *to attend:* I, **33**
atenerse, *to abide, to rely:* **74**
atentar, *to feel of:* I, **33**
atentarse, *to be cautious:* I, **33**
atenuar, *to extenuate:* XI, **50**
aterirse, *to stiffen (with cold):* VII, **44**
aterrar, *to fell:* I, **33**
atraer, *to attract:* **75**
atravesar, *to cross, to traverse:* I, **33**
atronar, *to din:* II, **35**
avalentar, *to embolden, to abet:* I, **33**
avaluar, *to appraise:* XI, **50**
avenir, *to reconcile (parties):* **77**
avenirse, *to agree, to compromise:* **77**
aventar, *to winnow:* I, **33**
avergonzar, *to abash, to put to shame:* II, **35**
avergonzarse, *to be* or *become ashamed:* II, **35**
averiar, *to damage:* XI, **50**
averiarse, *to become damaged:* XI, **50**
aviar, *to minister:* XI, **50**
aviarse, *to get ready:* XI, **50**
azolar, *to adz (timber):* II, **35**
balbucir, *to stammer:* III, **37**
bendecir, *to bless:* **57, 59**
bienquerer, *to wish well:* **71**
bruñir, *to burnish:* **32**
bullir, *to boil, to bubble:* **32**
caber, *to go into, to be containable in:* **54**
caer; *to fall:* **55**
calentar, *to warm, to heat:* I, **33**
cegar, *to blind:* I, **33**
ceñir, *to gird:* **32**; VI, **41**
cerner, *to sift:* I, **33**
cerrar, *to close:* I, **33**
cimentar, *to ground:* I, **33**
clocar, *to cluck:* II, **35**
cocer, *to boil, to bake:* II, **35**
colar, *to strain:* II, **35**
colegir, *to infer:* VI, **41**
colgar, *to hang:* II, **35**
comedirse, *to be obliging:* VI, **41**
comenzar, *to begin, to start:* I, **33**
competir, *to vie, to compete:* VI, **41**
complañir, *to weep:* **32**
componer, *to compound, to mend:* **70**
comprobar, *to verify:* II, **35**
concebir, *to conceive:* VI, **41**
conceptuar, *to judge:* XI, **50**
concernir, *to concern:* I, **33**
concertar, *to concert:* I, **33**
concordar, *to accord, to match:* II, **35**
condescender, *to condescend:* I, **33**
condolerse, *to condole:* II, **35**
conferir, *to confer:* VII, **44**
confesar, *to confess:* I, **33**
confiar, *to trust:* XI, **50**
conmover, *to stir (the emotions), to touch:* II, **35**
conseguir, *to obtain, to attain:* VI, **41**
consentir, *to consent:* VII, **44**
consolar, *to console:* II, **35**
consonar, *to rhyme:* II, **35**
constreñir, *to constrain:* **32**; VI, **41**
contar, *to count, to tell:* II, **35**
contender, *to contend:* I, **33**

TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERBS—(Continued)

continuar, *to continue:* XI, **50**
contorcerse, *to writhe:* II, **35**
contradecir, *to contradict:* **57, 59**
contraer, *to contract:* **75**
contrahacer, *to counterfeit:* **63**
contraponer, *to oppose:* **70**
contrariar, *to vex, to counteract:* XI, **50**
contravenir, *to transgress:* **77**
controvertir, *to controvert:* VII, **44**
convenir, *to agree, to befit:* **77**
convertir, *to convert:* VII, **44**
corregir, *to correct:* VI, **41**
costar, *to cost:* II, **35**
cromolitografiar, *to chromolithograph:* XI, **50**
chirriar, *to squeak:* XI, **50**
dar, *to give:* **56**
decaer, *to decay:* **55**
decentar, *to impair:* I, **33**
decir, *to say, to tell:* **57**
defender, *to defend:* I, **33**
deferir, *to differ, to yield:* VII, **44**
degollar, *to kill by cutting the throat:* II, **35**
demoler, *to demolish:* II, **35**
demostrar, *to demonstrate:* II, **35**
denegar, *to deny, to refuse:* I, **33**
denostar, *to revile:* II, **35**
dentar, *to teeth, to indent:* I, **33**
deponer, *to depose:* **70**
derrengar, *to hip:* I, **33**
derretir, derretirse, *to melt:* VI, **41**
derrocar, *to overthrow:* II, **35**
desacertar, *to err, to miss (the mark):* I, **33**
desacordar, *to disagree:* II, **35**
desadvertir, *to act inadvertently:* VII, **44**
desafiar, *to challenge:* XI, **50**
desaforar, *to infringe privileges:* II, **35**
desaforarse, *to become offensive or outrageous:* II, **35**
desalentar, *to discourage:* I, **33**
desamoblar, *to unfurnish:* II, **35**
desandar, *to retrace one's steps:* **52**
desapretar, *to loosen:* I, **33**
desaprobar, *to disapprove:* II, **35**
desarrendar, *to unbridle:* I, **33**
desasentar, *to upset, to disturb:* VII, **44**
desasir, *to let loose:* **53**
desasosegar, *to disquiet:* I, **33**
desatender, *to disregard:* I, **33**
desatentar, *to distract:* I, **33**
desatentarse, *to act frantically:* I, **33**
desaterrar, *to unearth:* I, **33**
desatraer, *to sever:* **75**
desatravesar, *to uncross:* **33**
desavenir, *to derange:* **77**
desavenirse, *to disagree:* **77**
desaviar, *to unprovide:* XI, **50**
descabullirse, *to scamper:* **32**
descarriar, *to lead astray:* XI, **50**
descender, *to descend:* I, **33**
desceñir, *to ungird:* **32**; VI, **41**
descolgar, *to unhang:* II, **35**
descollar, *to overtop:* II, **35**
descomedirse, *to misbehave, to exceed the limits of propriety:* VI, **41**
descomponer, *to disarrange:* **70**
desconceptuar, *to decry:* XI, **50**
desconcertar, *to disconcert:* I, **33**
desconsentir, *to disconsent, to dissent:* VII, **44**
desconsolar, *to distress:* II, **35**
descontar, *to discount:* II, **35**
descontinuar, *to discontinue:* XI, **50**
desconvenir, *to disagree:* **77**
descordar, *to uncord (a string instrument):* II, **35**

TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERBS—(Continued)

descornar, *to dishorn:* II, **35**
desdecir. *to gainsay:* **57, 59**
desdecirse, *to retract:* **57, 59**
desdentar, *to knock out the teeth:* I, **33**
desempedrar, *to unpave:* I, **33**
desencerrar, *to unpen:* I, **33**
desencordar, *to uncord, to unstring:* II, **35**
desengrosar, *to make thin:* II, **35**
desentenderse, *to take no notice, to ignore:* I, **33**
desenterrar, *to unbury:* I, **33**
desenvolver, *to unfold, to unroll:* II, **35**
desflocar, *to ravel out fringes:* II, **35**
desgobernar, *to misgovern:* I, **33**
deshacer, *to undo:* **63**
deshelar, *to thaw:* I, **33**
desherbar, *to uproot herbs:* I, **33**
desherrar, *to unshoe (horses):* I, **33**
desleír, *to dilute, to dissolve:* VI, **42**
deslendrar, *to clear of nits:* I, **33**
deslucir, *to tarnish:* III, **37**
desmajolar, *to uproot vines:* II, **35**
desmedirse, *to transgress, to act rudely or otherwise improperly:* VI, **41**
desmelar, *to gather honey from a hive:* I, **33**
desmembrar, *to dismember:* I, **33**
desmentir, *to give the lie:* VII, **44**
desmullir, *to rumple:* **32**
desnevar, *to thaw:* I, **33**
desoír, *to disregard:* **65**
desolar, *to desolate:* II, **35**
desoldar, *to unsolder:* II, **35**
desollar, *to flay, to skin:* II, **35**
desosar, *to bone:* II, **36**
desovar, *to spawn:* II, **36**
despedir, *to emit, to dismiss:* VI, **41**
despedirse, *to bid good by:* VI, **41**
despedrar, *to clear of stones:* I, **33**
despernar, *to maim the legs of:* I, **33**
despertar, *to wake:* I, **33**
despezar, *to divide into adjustable pieces:* I, **33**
desplegar, *to unfold, to deploy:* I, **33**
despoblar, *to depopulate:* II, **35**
desteñir, *to discolor:* **32**; VI, **43**
desterrar, *to banish, to exile:* I, **33**
destorcer, *to untwist:* II, **35**
destrocar, *to barter back:* II, **35**
desvergonzarse, *to lose all shame:* II, **35**
desvirtuar, *to pall:* XI, **50**
desvolver, *to alter the shape of:* II, **35**
detener, *to detain, to stop:* **74**
detraer, *to withdraw, to detract:* **75**
devolver, *to return, to restore:* II, **35**
dezmar, *to decimate:* I, **33**
diferir, *to delay, to defer:* VII, **44**
digerir, *to digest:* VII, **44**
discernir, *to discern:* I, **33**
discordar, *to disagree, to discord:* II, **35**
disentir, *to dissent:* VII, **44**
disolver, *to dissolve:* II, **35**
disonar, *to disagree in sound:* II, **35**
dispertar, *to wake:* I, **33**
disponer, *to dispose, to arrange:* **70**
distender, *to distend:* I, **33**
distraer, *to amuse, to distract:* **75**
divertir, *to divert, to amuse:* VII, **44**
dolar, *to plane:* II, **35**

TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERBS—(Continued)

doler, *to pain, to ache:* II, **35**
dormir, *to sleep:* VIII, **46**
efectuar, *to effect:* XI, **50**
elegir, *to elect, to choose:* VI, **41**
embestir, *to make an onslaught:* VI, **41**
emparentar, *to become related by marriage:* I, **33**
empedrar, *to pave:* I, **33**
empellar, *to shoulder with violence, to buffet with the breast:* I, **33**
empezar, *to begin:* I, **33**
emporcar, *to soil:* II, **35**
encender, *to light:* I, **33**
encerrar, *to lock in, to confine:* I, **33**
enclocar, *to brood:* II, **35**
encomendar, *to entrust, to commit:* I, **33**
encontrar, *to meet, to encounter:* II, **35**
encorar, *to leather:* II, **35**
encordar, *to string:* II, **35**
encornar, *to gore with the horns:* II, **35**
encovar, *to encave:* II, **35**
encubertar, *to furnish with a cover:* I, **33**
endentar, *to indent:* I, **33**
enfriar, *to cool:* XI, **50**
engorar, *to addle:* II, **35**
engreír, *to make vain:* VI, **42**
engreírse, *to become vain:* VI, **42**
engrosar, *to increase in size* or *number:* II, **35**
enlucir, *to whitewash:* III, **37**
engullir, *to gobble:* **32**
enhestar, *to set upright:* I, **33**
enlenzar, *to bandage with cloth:* I, **33**
enmelar, *to besmear with honey:* I, **33**
enmendar, *to amend:* I, **33**
ensangrentar, *to imbrue, to stain with blood:* I, **33**
entender, *to understand:* I, **33**
enterrar, *to bury:* I, **33**
entortar, *to make crooked, to make one-eyed:* II, **35**
entredecir, *to interdict:* **57, 59**
entrelucir, *to glimmer:* III, **37**
entremorir, *to flicker:* VIII, **46**
entreoír, *to hear confusedly:* **65**
entretener, *to entertain, to delay:* **74**
entrever, *to have a glimpse of:* **78**
envestir, *to invest:* VI, **41**
enviar, *to send:* XI, **50**
envolver, *to wrap:* II, **35**
equivaler, *to be equivalent:* X, **48**
erguir, *to erect:* **45**
errar, *to err, to mistake:* **34**
escabullirse, *to slink:* **32**
escarmentar, *to take warning:* I, **33**
esforzar, *to exert:* II, **35**
espiar, *to espy:* XI, **50**
estar, *to be:* **60**
estregar, *to rub, to scour:* I, **33**
estreñir, *to restrain:* **32;** VI, **43**
estriar, *to flute:* XI, **50**
exceptuar, *to except:* XI, **50**
expedir, *to expedite:* VI, **41**
expiar, *to expiate:* XI, **50**
exponer, *to expose:* **70**
extasiarse, *to become enraptured:* XI, **50**
extender, *to extend:* I, **33**
extenuar, *to attenuate, to enfeeble:* XI, **50**
extraer, *to extract:* **75**
extraviar, *to mislead:* XI, **50**
ferrar, *to garnish* or *strengthen with iron points* or *bands:* I, **33**
follar, *to blow with bellows:* II, **35**
fotografiar, *to photograph:* XI, **50**
forzar, *to force:* II, **35**

TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERBS—(Continued)

fregar, *to scrub, to scour:* I, **33**
freír, *to fry:* **42**
gañir, *to yelp, to croak:* **32**
gemir, *to groan:* VI, **41**
gloriarse, *to glory, to delight, to boast:* XI, **50**
gobernar, *to govern:* I, **33**
graduar, *to graduate:* XI, **50**
gruñir, *to grunt:* **32**
guañir, *to squeal:* **32**
haber, *to have, there to be:* **61, 62**
habituar, *to accustom, to inure:* XI, **50**
hacendarse, *to acquire land estates:* I, **33**
hacer, *to make, to do:* **63**
hastiar, *to cause loathsomeness:* XI, **50**
hastiarse, *to become disgusted:* XI, **50**
heder, *to stink:* I, **33**
helar, helarse, } *to freeze:* **33**
henchir, *to stuff:* VI, **41**
hender, *to chink, to cleave:* I, **33**
heñir, *to knead:* VI, **43**
herbar, *to tan (skins):* I, **33**
herir, *to wound, to hurt:* VII, **44**
herrar, *to shoe (horses):* I, **33**
hervir, *to boil:* VII, **44**
holgar, *to be at leisure, to dally:* II, **35**
hollar, *to tread upon, to trample:* II, **35**
impedir, *to impede, to prevent:* VI, **41**
imponer, *to impose, to acquaint:* **70**
improbar, *to disapprove:* II, **35**
incensar, *to perfume with incense:* I, **33**
indisponer, *to indispose:* **70**
infatuarse, *to be* or *become infatuated:* XI, **50**
inferir, *to infer:* VII, **44**
infernar, *to damn:* I, **33**
ingerir, injerir, } *to insert:* VII, **44**
ingerirse, *to meddle:* VII, **44**
inquirir, *to inquire, to investigate:* I, **33**
inseguir, *to pursue:* VI, **41**
interdecir, *to interdict:* **57, 59**
interponer, *to interpose:* **70**
intervenir, *to intervene, to interfere:* **77**
invernar, *to winter:* I, **33**
invertir, *to invert:* VII, **44**
investir, *to invest:* VI, **41**
ir, *to go:* **64**
jugar, *to play:* II, **35**
litografiar, *to lithograph:* XI, **50**
lucir, *to shine:* III, **37**
llover, *to rain:* II, **35**
maldecir, *to curse:* **57, 59**
malherir, *to wound severely:* VII, **44**
malquerer, *to bear ill will:* **71**
mancornar, *to couple (oxen):* II, **35**
manifestar, *to manifest:* I, **33**
mantener, *to maintain, to support:* **74**
medir, *to measure:* VI, **41**
melar, *to boil cane juice:* I, **33**
mentar, *to mention:* I, **33**
mentir, *to lie:* VII, **44**
merendar, *to lunch:* I, **33**
moblar, *to furnish:* II, **35**
moler, *to grind, to mill:* II, **35**
morder, *to bite:* II, **35**
morir, *to die:* VIII, **46**
mostrar, *to show:* II, **35**
mover, *to move:* II, **35**
mullir, *to cushion:* **32**
muñir, *to summon:* **32**
negar, *to deny:* I, **33**
nevar, *to snow:* I, **33**

TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERBS—(Continued)

obtener, *to obtain:* **74**
oír, *to hear:* **65**
oler, *to smell:* II, **36**
oponer, *to oppose:* **70**
pedir, *to petition, to ask for:* VI, **41**
pensar, *to think:* I, **33**
perder, *to lose:* I, **33**
perniquebrar, *to break the legs of:* I, **33**
perpetuar, *to perpetuate:* XI, **50**
perseguir, *to persecute, to pursue:* VI, **41**
pervertir, *to pervert:* VII, **44**
placer, *to please:* **66**
plañir, *to bewail:* **32**
plegar, *to fotd, to ptait:* I, **33**
poblar, *to poputate:* II, **35**
poder, *to be able:* **67**
podrir, *to rot:* **68**
poner, *to put:* **70**
porfiar, *to strive:* XI, **50**
posponer, *to postpone:* **70**
predecir, *to foretett, to predict:* **57, 59**
predisponer, *to prearrange, to predispose:* **70**
preferir, *to prefer:* VII, **44**
prelucir, *to shine forth:* III, **37**
premorir, *to die before another:* VIII, **46**
preponer, *to ptace before:* **70**
presentir, *to forebode:* VII, **44**
presuponer, *to presuppose, to assume:* **70**
prevalerse, *to avait onesetf:* X, **48**
prevenir, *to caution:* **77**
prever, *to foresee:* **78**
probar, *to prove:* II, **35**
proferir, *to utter:* VII, **44**
promover, *to promote:* II, **35**
proponer, *to propose:* **70**
proseguir, *to pursue, to continue:* VI, **41**
provenir, *to arise, to be due:* **70**
puntuar, *to punctuate:* XI, **50**
quebrar, *to break:* I, **33**
querer, *to wish, to tove:* **71**
reapretar, *to tighten:* I, **33**
reaventar, *to winnow anew:* I, **33**
rebendecir, *to bless anew:* **57, 59**
rebullir, *to stir:* **32**
rebullirse, *to move briskly:* **32**
recaer, *to retapse, to fall to (as one's rights):* **55**
recalentar, *to reheat:* I, **33**
recentar, *to teaven:* I, **33**
receñir, *to re-gird:* **32**; VI, **43**
recocer, *to overboil:* II, **35**
recolar, *to strain anew:* II, **35**
recomendar, *to recommend:* I, **33**
recomponer, *to re-compose, to mend again:* **70**
recontar, *to re-count:* II, **35**
reconvenir, *to reprimand:* **77**
recordar, *to remind, to recottect:* II, **35**
recostar, *to tean against:* II, **35**
recriar, *to rear (cotts):* XI, **50**
redituar, *to yietd revenue:* XI, **50**
redoler, *to cause slow pain:* II, **35**
reelegir, *to re-etect:* VI, **41**
reencomendar, *to commend anew:* I, **33**
referir, *to refer, to telt:* VII, **44**
reforzar, *to strengthen:* II, **35**
refregar, *to rub:* I, **33**
refreír, *to overfry:* VI, **42**
regañir, *to yetp repeatedty:* **32**
regar, *to water, to irrigate:* I, **33**
regimentar, *to organize in regiments:* I, **33**
regir, *to govern, to manage:* VI, **41**
regoldar, *to belch:* II, **35**
regruñir, *to snart:* **32**
rehacer, *to make anew:* **63**
rehacerse, *to ratty:* **63**
rehenchir, *to stuff anew:* VI, **41**

TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERBS—(Continued)

reherir, *to rebut:* VII, **44**
reherrar, *to re-shoe (horses):* I, **33**
rehervir, *to boil again:* VII, **44**
rehollar, *to trample:* II, **35**
reír, *to laugh:* VI, **42**
relucir, *to glitter:* III, **37**
remendar, *to mend:* I, **33**
rementir, *to lie repeatedly:* VII, **44**
remoler, *to regrind:* II, **35**
remorder, *to cause remorse:* II, **35**
remover, *to remove:* II, **35**
rendir, *to surrender, to subdue, to yield:* VI, **41**
renegar, *to disown, to curse:* I, **33**
renovar, *to renew:* II, **35**
reñir, *to scold, to quarrel:* **32**; VI, **43**
repensar, *to think over:* I, **33**
repetir, *to repeat:* VI, **41**
replegar, *to fall back:* I, **33**
repoblar, *to repeople:* II, **35**
reponer, *to replace, to restore:* **70**
reponerse, *to recover from illness:* **70**
reprobar, *to reprobate, to reject:* II, **35**
requebrar, *to woo, to dally:* I, **33**
requerer, *to love extremely:* **71**
requerir, *to require:* VII, **44**
resaber, *to know very well:* **72**
resalir, *to jut out, to project:* X, **48**
resegar, *to mow anew:* I, **33**
resembrar, *to re-sow:* I, **33**
resentirse, *to resent:* VII, **44**
resfriarse, *to take cold:* XI, **50**
resolver, *to resolve, to decide:* II, **35**
resollar, *to breathe:* II, **35**
resonar, *to resound:* II, **35**
resquebrar, *to split, to crack:* I, **33**
restregar, *to rub, to scrub:* I, **33**
restreñir, *to constrain:* **32**; VI, **43**
retemblar, *to vibrate, to shake:* I, **33**
retener, *to retain:* **74**
retentar, *to relapse:* I, **33**
reteñir, *to dye again:* **32**; VI, **43**
retiñir, *to tinkle, to click:* **32**
retorcer, *to twist:* II, **35**
retostar, *to toast brown:* II, **35**
retraer, *to dissuade, to retrieve:* **75**
retrotraer, *to place things in a former condition:* **75**
revenirse, *to ooze:* **77**
reventar, *to burst:* I, **33**
rever, *to review:* **78**
reverter, *to overflow:* I, **33**
revestir, *to don, to vest:* VI, **41**
revolar, *to fly around:* II, **35**
revolcarse, *to wallow:* II, **35**
revolver, *to revolve, to stir:* II, **35**
rociar, *to sprinkle:* XI, **50**
rodar, *to roll:* II, **35**
rogar, *to entreat:* II, **35**
saber, *to know:* **72**
salir, *to go out:* X, **48**
salpimentar, *to season with pepper and salt:* I, **33**
salpullir, *to blister:* **32**
sarmentar, *to gather vine shoots:* I, **33**
sarpullir, *to become covered with a rash:* **32**
satisfacer, *to satisfy:* **73**
segar, *to mow:* I, **33**
seguir, *to follow:* VI, **41**
sembrar, *to sow:* I, **33**
sementar, *to seed:* I, **33**
sentar, *to set down, to suit, to become:* I, **33**
sentarse, *to sit down:* I, **33**
sentir, *to feel:* VII, **44**
ser, *to be:* **74**
serrar, *to saw:* I, **33**
servir, *to serve:* VI, **41**
situar, *to place, to situate:* XI, **50**
sobrentenderse, *to be understood:* I, **33**

TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERBS — (Continued)

sobreponer, *to superpose:* **70**
sobreponerse, *to overcome:* **70**
sobresalir, *to surpass, to outvie:* X, **48, 49**
sobresembrar, *to sow broadcast:* I, **33**
sobresolar, *to overpave:* II, **35**
sobrevenir, *to supervene:* **77**
sofreír, *to fry slightly:* VI, **42**
solar, *to floor, to pave, to sole:* II, **35**
soldar, *to soldier:* II, **35**
soler, *to be wont:* II, **35**
soltar, *to untie, to set free:* II, **35**
solver, *to solve:* II, **35**
sonar, *to sound:* II, **35**
sonreír, *to smile:* VI, **42**
sonrodarse, *to stick in the mud:* II, **35**
soñar, *to dream:* II, **35**
sosegar, *to appease:* I, **33**
sosegarse, *to quiet down:* I, **33**
sostener, *to sustain, to support:* **74**
soterrar, *to bury, to put under ground:* I, **33**
subarrendar, *to sublet:* I, **33**
subentenderse, *to be tacitly understood:* I, **33**
subseguir, *to follow next:* VI, **41**
subtender, *to subtend:* I, **33**
subvenir, *to aid, to supply:* **77**
subvertir, *to overthrow, to subvert:* VII, **44**
sugerir, *to suggest:* VI, **41**
superponer, *to superpose:* **70**
supervenir, *to supervene:* **77**
suponer, *to suppose:* **70**
sustraer, *to subtract:* **75**
tañer, *to play harmoniously:* **32**
telegrafiar, *to telegraph:* XI, **50**
temblar, *to tremble:* I, **33**
tender, *to stretch, to spread:* I, **33**
tener, *to have:* **74**
tentar, *to touch, to tempt:* I, **33**
teñir, *to dye:* **32**; VI, **41**
torcer, *to twist:* II, **35**
tostar, *to toast:* II, **35**
traer, *to bring:* **75**
trascender, *to transcend:* I, **33**
trascolar, *to percolate:* II, **35**
trascordarse, *to slip one's mind:* II, **35**
trasegar, *to turn topsyturvy, to decant:* I, **33**
trasferir, *to transfer:* VII, **44**
traslucirse, *to transluce, to be visible through:* III, **37**
trasoír, *to hear wrong:* **65**
trasoñar, *to fancy erroneously:* II, **35**
trasponer, *to transpose:* **70**
trastrocar, *to invert:* II, **35**
trasverter, *to overflow, to run over:* I, **33**
trasvolar, *to overfly:* II, **35**
trocar, *to exchange:* II, **35**
tronar, *to thunder:* II, **35**
tropezar, *to stumble:* I, **33**
tullir, *to maim:* **32**
usufructuar, *to enjoy usufruct:* XI, **50**
valer, *to be worth:* X, **48**
valuar, *to rate, to value:* XI, **50**
variar, *to vary:* XI, **50**
venir, *to come:* **77**
ventar, *to blow (said of the wind):* I, **33**
ver, *to see:* **78**
verter, *to pour out, to translate:* I, **33**
vestir, *to dress:* VI, **41**
volar, *to fly:* II, **35**
volcar, *to capsize, to upset:* II, **35**
volver, *to turn, to return:* II, **35**
yacer, *to be, to lie:* **38**
yuxtaponer, *to juxtapose:* **70**
zabullir, *to plunge:* **32**
zaherir, *to upbraid:* VII, **44**

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 8)

THE VERB—(Continued)

DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS

DEFECTIVE VERBS

1. Definition.—There are verbs that lack some forms or inflections, either because these forms are excluded by the very meaning of the verbs, or simply because usage does not sanction the employment of them. These verbs are called **defective verbs.** The English auxiliaries *can* and *must* may serve as examples: they lack the infinitive and all compound tenses, usage not allowing such forms as *to must*, *I have canned*, *you will can*.

2. Defective Verbs by Usage.—The following verbs are used only in the infinitive and in those forms obtained by adding to the infinitive stem (or to the altered stem, in the case of irregular verbs) an ending beginning with *i*:

abolir, *to abolish*
aguerrir, *to inure to war*
arrecirse, aterirse, } *to grow numb with cold*
desmarrirse, *to grow sad*
despavorir, *to frighten*
embaír, *to impose upon*
empedernir, *to harden*
garantir, *to guarantee*
manir, *to become tender*

The forms that these verbs lack must be supplied by forms of other verbs, such as *empedernecer*, *garantizar*, *aterrar*, which are synonymous with *empedernir*, *garantir*, and *despavorir*, respectively.

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

3. The verb **raer,** *to erase,* is seldom used except in the infinitive and in the participle. Its other forms can be obtained by conjugating it like **caer,** *to fall,* although the combination *ig* is often replaced by *y*.

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo raigo / rayo	yo raiga / raya
tú raes	tú raigas / rayas
él rae, etc.	él raiga / raya, etc.

Gerund
rayendo

4. When *reponer* means *to reply*, it is used in the indicative preterit only.

5. The verb **roer,** *to gnaw*, is seldom used in the first person singular of the indicative present. It is conjugated like verbs in *-eer*, although any of the following forms may be employed in the indicative present and in the same tense of the subjunctive:

Indicative Present	Subjunctive Present
yo roo / roigo / royo	yo, él ro- / roig- / roy- + a
(Other persons regular)	tú ro- / roig- / roy- + as
	nosotros ro- / roig- / roy- + amos
	vosotros ro- / roig- / roy- + áis
	ellos ro- / roig- / roy- + an

The derivative **corroer,** *to corrode*, is conjugated all through like verbs in *-eer*, but is not employed in the first person singular of the indicative present.

6. **Soler,** *to be wont, to be in the habit of,* is used only in the indicative present and copreterit.

La Patti *suele* venir á los Estados Unidos todos los años.	Patti usually comes to the United States every year.
Tú ya no vienes á verme, como *solías.*	You no longer come to see me, as you used to (*more literally*, as you were wont to).

7. The verb **usucapir,** *to acquire by possession,* lacks all forms but the infinitive.

8. **Verbs That Are Defective by Virtue of Their Meaning.** — Among these verbs may be mentioned **nacer,** *to be born,* and **morir,** *to die.* The forms that they lack are obviously indicated by the facts they denote, and need not be stated in detail. No person can refer to his having died, or to his going to be born, and so the preterit *yo morí* and the future *yo naceré* are not used, simply because they are meaningless. When, however, these verbs are employed figuratively, they cease to be defective.

Muchos años há que *morí* para el mundo.	It is a great many years since I died to the world.
¿Cuándo, Dios mío, dejaré esta vida miserable, y *naceré* verdaderamente?	When, O God, shall I leave this wretched life, and be truly born?

9. **Concernir** and **atañer,** both of which mean *to concern,* are employed in the third persons only.

Eso no nos *atañe* á nosotros.	That does not concern us.
Todo lo que *concierne* á la salud de los enfermos está en manos de médicos experimentados.	All that concerns the health of the patients is in the hands of experienced physicians.
Como ése era un asunto que á mí poco me *atañía*, no le presté mucha atención.	As that was an affair that concerned me little, I did not pay much attention to it.

10. Subjectless and other impersonal verbs, presently to be considered, might perhaps be classed with defectives, because they are used in the third persons only. Their great importance, however, and the peculiarities of their grammatical construction, make it advisable to class and treat them separately.

SUBJECTLESS VERBS

11. Definition.—A **subjectless verb** is, as the name implies, a verb having no subject, either expressed or understood. There are no such verbs in English, the indefinite pronoun *it* serving as the grammatical subject of all verbs having no logical subject; that is, those denoting facts or events that are not attributed to anything whose name might be the subject of the verb. Thus, *to rain* expresses a natural phenomenon that, not being conceived as the action of any thing or being, cannot be attributed to, or predicated of, any real subject; and so, in the sentence *it rains*, the word *it*, although grammatically treated as the subject of *rains*, does not really represent the thing that rains; it does not denote a thing of which something is said, but is a mere symbol required by usage and the grammatical peculiarities of the English language.

In Spanish the case is different. Every grammatical subject denotes a real subject—something thought of; and verbs that, like **llover,** *to rain*, have no logical subject, have no grammatical subject either. The indefinite English *it* has absolutely no equivalent in Spanish, and *it rains* is rendered simply by **llueve,** *rains*.

12. Conjugation of Subjectless Verbs.—These verbs occur only in the infinitive, the gerund, and the third persons singular, both in simple and in compound tenses. In these forms, they follow the rules of conjugation applying to other verbs, whether regular or irregular. Thus, **llover,** *to rain*, which belongs to the second class of irregulars, is conjugated like **mover,** *to move* (see Part 7).

GERUND	lloviendo, *raining*
INDICATIVE PRESENT	llueve, *it rains*
INDICATIVE PRETERIT	llovió, *it rained*
INDICATIVE COPRETERIT	llovía, *it was raining*
COMPOUND PRESENT	ha llovido, *it has rained*, etc.

13. Other Subjectless Verbs Denoting Natural Phenomena.—There are few verbs that in their ordinary

acceptance are constructed without a subject. They all denote natural phenomena. The most important are:

amanecer, *to dawn*
anochecer, *to become night*
escampar, *to stop raining*
granizar, *to hail*
helar, *to freeze*
llover, *to rain*
lloviznar, *to sprinkle, to drizzle*
relampaguear, *to lighten*
tronar, *to thunder*
ventear, *to blow* (said of the wind)

When the gerund or infinitive of a subjectless verb is governed by another verb, the latter is likewise constructed without a subject, even if it is not ordinarily so constructed.

The following examples will serve to illustrate the use of subjectless verbs:

¿Cree usted que mañana *lloverá?*	Do you think it will rain tomorrow?
Cuando *amaneció*, ensillámos los caballos y continuámos nuestro viaje.	When it dawned, we saddled the horses and continued our journey.
Ayer no vine á verte porque **estaba** *nevando.*	I did not come to see you yesterday because it was snowing.
El periódico dice que esta noche **va** *á hetar.*	The newspaper says that it is going to freeze tonight.
Si **continúa** *venteando*, tendremos que regresar á la costa.	If it continues to blow (*or*, If the wind continues to blow), we shall have to return to the coast.
¿Ha visto usted *nevar* alguna vez? —No, señor; aquí no *nieva* nunca.	Have you ever seen it snow? —No, sir; it never snows here.
¿Á qué hora **comenzó** *á tronar?*	At what time did it begin to thunder?
Aún no *había anochecido* cuando entrámos á la bahía.	Night had not yet set in (*more literatly*, It had not yet become night), when we went into the bay.

14. By an extension of meaning, some of these verbs may admit a subject, and often an accusative. They can then be used in all persons, tenses, and modes.

Los piratas *ttovieron* golpes sobre el pobre cautivo.	The pirates showered blows upon the poor captive.
Tú, Señor, *tlueves* sobre justos y pecadores.	Thou, Lord, rainst upon the innocent and the guilty.

De nada sirvió que el orador *tronase* contra los monopolios.	It was of no avail that the orator thundered against monopolies.
Jehová *llovió* maná para calmar el hambre de su pueblo.	Jehovah rained manna to allay the hunger of his people.

15. *Amanecer* and *anochecer* very often take a subject, and are conjugated as verbs of full inflection. They are then followed by a modifying word, with which they indicate the condition or position of the subject at daybreak or nightfall, as the case may be. Constructions of this kind have to be translated more or less freely. In making a proper translation one should be guided by the literal translation: when applied to a subject, *amanecer* literally means *to be* (said of the subject) *at daybreak*, and *anochecer* means *to be* (said of the subject) *at nightfall*.

Amanecí enfermo.	Daybreak found me ill.

This sentence may be rendered, *I awoke ill*, or *I was taken ill this morning*, or in some other similar manner, according to circumstances. It should be borne in mind that the literal rendering is, *I was ill when it dawned.*

Creo que mañana *anocheceremos* en el puerto.	I think we shall be at the port tomorrow at nightfall.
¿Qué tal *amaneciste?* (*A question often asked a sick person.*)	How are you this morning?
El camino *amaneció* impasable.	In the morning, the road had become impassable.
Recuerda que quien *anochece* rico puede *amanecer* en la miseria.	Remember that he who goes to sleep rich may awaken in destitution (*more literally*, Remember that he who is rich when night sets in, may be in destitution when day breaks).

The expressions *amaneció Dios*, *amaneció el día*, which literally mean *God dawned*, *the day dawned*, are idiomatic forms having the same meaning as **amaneció**, *it dawned*, *the day broke.*

16. There are many verbs that, although not restricted to the subjectless construction, are used without a subject

when they refer to the events or aspects of nature. Such are **temblar,** *to tremble*, and **estar,** *to be*, in the following examples:

El temblor no se sintió aquí, pero de Guatemala me escriben que allí *tembló* dos días á intervalos frecuentes.	The earthquake was not felt here, but they write me from Guatemala that there it trembled for two days at frequent intervals.
Me parece que *tiembla*.	It seems to me that it is trembling.
Creo que hoy lloverá, pues *está* muy nublado.	I think it will rain today, for it is very cloudy.
Aún *estaba* de noche cuando partímos.	It was still night when we started.
Como *estaba* tan oscuro, perdimos el camino.	As it was so dark, we lost our way.

It will be remarked, as a further anomaly of the subjectless construction, that adjectives occur in it that do not modify or refer to any determinate substantive, either expressed or understood.

17. Dar and Ser Applied to the Hour of Day.—With reference to the hour of day, *dar* means *to strike*, and is used without a grammatical subject, but in the third person plural, instead of the third person singular. The phrase denoting the hour is treated as the accusative of the verb, and is therefore represented by an accusative case. As with other subjectless verbs, the infinitive and the gerund of *dar* form subjectless verbal expressions with verbs governing them.

Aún no *han dado* las tres.	It has not yet struck three.
¿*Han dado* las cuatro ya?	Has it struck four already?
Cuando *dieron* las once, dimos la señal.	When it struck eleven, we gave the signal.
Acaban de *dar* la una.	It has just struck one.
Van á *dar* las dos.	It is about to strike two.
¿*Han dado* las cuatro?—No, pero pronto **las** *darán*.	Has it struck four?—No, but it will soon.
¿*Habían dado* la una cuando ustedes llegaron?—No, pero **iban á** *dar***la.**	Had it struck one when you arrived?—No, but it was about to strike it.

18. When *ser* is applied to the hour of day, it is not properly a subjectless verb: it agrees in number with the

phrase indicating the hour, which must be considered as its grammatical subject.

Cuando desembarcámos **eran** *las cuatro* de la mañana.	When we landed it was four o'clock in the morning.
En mi reloj **es** *la una*.	By my watch it is one o'clock.
Van á ser *las siete*.	It is very near seven o'clock (*literally*, It is going to be seven).
Va á ser *la una* y media.	It is very near half past one.

Ser has no subject, either expressed or understood, in the sentences, **Es tarde,** *It is late*, and **Es temprano,** *It is early*.

19. Rendering of the Expressions It Is I, Etc. Expressions of this kind, in which the indefinite *it* is the subject of the verb *is*, and this verb is followed or preceded by a predicate substantive, are rendered by making the Spanish equivalent of that substantive the subject of the sentence.

¿Quién es?—Yo soy.	Who is it?—It is I.
¿Quién está ahí?—Somos nosotros.	Who is there?—It is we.
¿Quién trajo la noticia?—Creo que fueron unos ingenieros que acaban de llegar de Nicaragua.	Who brought the news?—I think it was some engineers who have just arrived from Nicaragua.
Ellos fueron quienes me lo dijeron.	It was they who told it to me.

20. Remark on Elliptical Sentences.—Sentences in which the subject of the verb is understood, but not expressed, should not be confounded with subjectless constructions. Thus, in the expression **Así es,** *That is so*, the tacit subject is *ello* or *eso*, the complete form of the sentence being, *Ello es así*, or *Eso es así*. Similarly, **Es lástima,** *It is a pity*, stands for **Eso** *es lástima*, or **Ello** *es lástima;* and **Basta,** *That is sufficient*, stands for **Eso** *basta*. Sentences of this kind always refer to a previous statement, which may be represented by a neuter pronoun; and when no pronoun is expressed, it is understood.

21. Hacer Applied to the State of the Weather. The condition of the weather is often expressed by means of a subjectless sentence consisting of the verb *hacer* and a substantive or substantive phrase denoting that condition. This

substantive or phrase is treated as the accusative of *hacer*, and should therefore be referred to by an accusative case.

Hace **calor**; *Hace* **frío.**	It is warm; It is cold.
Hoy *ha hecho* **muy mal tiempo.**	The weather has been very bad today (*more literally*, It has been very bad weather today).
¿*Ha hecho* **calor** aquí hoy?—Sí, señor, **lo** *ha hecho.*	Has it been warm here today?—Yes, sir, it has been.
Ayer no *hizo* **sol.**	The sun did not shine yesterday (*more literally*, It was not sunny yesterday).
Espero que mañana *haga* **buen día,** pues, si no **lo** *hace*, no podremos ir al campo.	I hope it will be a good day tomorrow, for, if it is not, we shall not be able to go to the country.
Anoche no *hizo* **frío** aquí.—En la ciudad **lo** *hizo.*	It was not cold here last night.—In the city, it was.
¿Qué tal **tiempo** *ha hecho* en Caracas?—**Lo** *ha hecho* muy malo.	How has the weather been in Caracas?—It has been very bad.

This construction will be better understood by considering the literal meaning of *hacer*, which is *to make*. Thus, the literal rendering of the fourth example given above is, *Has it made heat here today?—Yes, sir, it has made it.* As the word or phrase following *hacer* is of the nature of a substantive, it admits no other modifiers than adjectives or adjectival phrases. In the equivalent English construction, in which *to be* is followed by an adjective, only adverbial modifiers are permissible. When the accusative of *hacer* is singular and is modified by an adjective not denoting quantity or intensity, the adjective should follow, and the indefinite article should precede, that accusative.

Hace *mucho* calor.	It is very warm.
Hoy ha hecho *poco* viento.	It has not been very windy today (*more literally*, It has been little windy today).
Ayer hizo aquí *un* frío *insoportable*.	It was unbearably cold here yesterday.

REMARK.—Another important form of construction in which the verb *to be* followed by an adjective is rendered by a Spanish transitive verb followed by an accusative, is that serving to express such sensations as hunger, thirst, sleepiness, and the like. For this purpose, **tener,** *to have*, is used, as in the following examples:

Tengo **hambre**; *Tengo* **sed.**	I am hungry; I am thirsty.
Cuando llegámos, *teníamos* **mucho** *sueño*, y nos acostámos.	When we arrived, we were very sleepy, and went to bed.

Sentir, *to feel*, is also often used in the same sense, especially with *calor* and *frío*.

Siento **mucho** *calor.*	I feel very warm.
Siento **mucho** *frío.*	I feel very cold.

It should be constantly borne in mind that in all such expressions as these, *frío*, like *calor*, *hambre*, and *sueño*, is a substantive. The sentences *I am cold*, *I am hungry*, etc. cannot be literally translated. With reference to inanimate objects, in which temperature, not sensation, is expressed, the Spanish construction is similar to the English.

El cuarto **está** *muy caliente.*	The room is very hot.
La comida **estaba** *fría.*	The dinner was cold.

22. Hacer Applied to Time Elapsed.—Used as a subjectless verb applied to the course of time, *hacer* means *to have elapsed*, although its grammatical construction is different from that of the compound form *haber trascurrido*—literal translation of the English form just mentioned. It is always either followed or preceded by an expression denoting the interval elapsed, and marks the end of that interval. The tense of *hacer* indicates whether the expiration of the interval considered is present, past, or future. (When the end of an interval of time is referred to as being *present*, the idea to be conveyed is that the interval extends to the time of speaking, and no further).

1. If the beginning of the interval is expressed by a verb (which, for convenience, will here be referred to as the *predicating verb*), and the action, fact, or event denoted by that verb does not extend through the interval, *hacer* is placed in the present or in the future, according as the end of the interval is present or future (examples 1 to 4, below); in the copreterit, if the end of the interval is presented as coexisting with a past event (examples 5 and 6); in the preterit, if the end of the interval is past, and is mentioned without reference to any other past event (example 7). The predicating verb is placed in the preterit (examples 1 to 4, and 7), or in the copreterit, if *hacer* is in the present, the future, or the preterit; the copreterit denoting a continued, a repeated or an habitual action or state (examples 8 and 9).

If *hacer* is in the copreterit, the predicating verb should be in the compound copreterit (examples 5, 6, and 9). When the predicating verb follows *hacer*, it should be preceded by *que*, which in this case may be rendered by *since;* when the predicating verb precedes *hacer*, *que* is omitted: the present *hace* may then be rendered by *ago*, and the copreterit *hacía* by *previously* or *before*. The two forms are equivalent and therefore interchangeable, although the form with *que* is more common.

The foregoing explanations may be summed up as follows: *hacer . . . que* is rendered by *to be . . . since*, with the indefinite *it* as subject of *to be*.

1

Hace dos semanas **que** *recibímos* esta carta.	It is two weeks since we received this letter.
Recibímos esta carta *hace* dos semanas.	We received this letter two weeks ago.

2

Hace media hora **que** don Juan *estuvo* aquí.	It is half an hour since Mr. John was here.
Don Juan *estuvo* aquí *hace* media hora.	Mr. John was here half an hour ago.

3

Hoy *hace* una semana **que** el vapor *naufragó*.	It is a week today since the steamer was wrecked.
El vapor naufragó hoy *hace* una semana.	The steamer was wrecked a week ago today.

4

Mañana *hará* un mes **que** *llegámos* de Chile.	It will be a month tomorrow since we arrived from Chile.
Llegámos de Chile mañana *hará* un mes.	

5

Hacía dos semanas **que** *habíamos recibido* la carta.	It was two weeks since we had received the letter.
Habíamos recibido la carta *hacía* dos semanas.	We had received the letter two weeks previously.

6

Hacía seis meses **que** *habíamos principiado* nuestros estudios.	It was six months since we had begun our studies.
Habíamos principiado nuestros estudios *hacía* seis meses.	We had begun our studies six months previously.

7

Ayer *hizo* cien años **que** *se declaró* la independencia. La independencia *se declaró* ayer *hizo* cien años.	It was a hundred years yesterday since independence was declared.

8

Hace cinco meses **que** nosotros *trabajábamos* en ese almacén.	It is five months since we were working in that store.
Nosotros *trabajábamos* en ese almacén *hace* cinco meses.	We used to work in that store five months ago.

9

Hacía cinco meses que nosotros *habíamos estado trabajando* en ese almacén.	It was five months since we had been working in that store.
Nosotros *habíamos estado trabajando* en ese almacén *hacía* cinco meses.	We had been working in that store five months previously.

The phrase denoting the time elapsed is often placed before *hacer*.

Dos semanas *hace* que recibímos esta carta.—Recibímos esta carta **dos semanas** *hace*.

2. If the action, condition, or event indicated by the predicating verb is continued through the interval considered, *hacer* may be in the same tenses as in the preceding case, according to circumstances. The predicating verb should be in the copreterit if *hacer* is in that tense, or if the interval does not include the present; otherwise, in the present. Only the construction with *que* will be given here, although the other is equally proper. For the translation of these forms, *hacer . . . que* followed by a predicating verb may be considered as equivalent to *to have* followed by the participle of the corresponding English verb.

Hace diez días **que** *vivimos* en este hotel.	We have lived in this hotel ten days.
Mañana *hará* un mes **que** *estamos* en este país.	We shall have been in this country a month tomorrow.
Ayer *hizo* tres años **que** *negociamos* en maquinaria.	We have been dealing in machinery three years yesterday.
Cuando nuestra firma quebró, *hacía* dos años **que** *perdíamos* considerablemente.	When our firm failed, we had been losing considerably for two years.
Cuando las provisiones llegaron, *hacía* más de un mes **que** los soldados no *comían* carne.	When the provisions arrived, the soldiers had not eaten meat for more than a month (*that is*, the soldiers had gone without meat for over a month).
Hace como quince días **que** no le *veo*.	I have not seen him in about a fortnight.
Hacía un año **que** no sabíamos de nuestro hijo.	We had not heard from our son in a year.

The difference between this use of *hacer* and that considered under 1 is illustrated by the following pairs of examples:

Hace dos horas que *estoy* aquí.	I have been here two hours.
Hace dos horas que *estuve* aquí.	I was here two hours ago.
Hace dos años que *trabajo* en el istmo.	I have been working in the Isthmus two years.
Hace dos años que *trabajé* en el istmo.	I worked in the Isthmus two years ago.
Hacía un día que el enemigo *bombardeaba* la ciudad.	The enemy had been bombarding the city for a day.
Hacía un día que el enemigo *había bombardeado* la ciudad.	The enemy had bombarded the city a day previously.

The following form of construction is also permissible and not uncommon, although the preposition **desde,** *since*, is really superfluous, and may be omitted:

Vivimos en este hotel **desde** *hace* diez días.	We have lived in this hotel ten days (*more literally*, since ten days ago).
Mañana *hará* un mes **desde** que *estamos* en este país.	We shall have been in this country a month tomorrow (*more literally*, since a month ago tomorrow).

3. If the beginning of the interval is expressed by a substantive phrase, this phrase is connected with *hacer* by the preposition **desde,** *since*, in the manner illustrated by the following examples:

El martes *hará* seis meses **desde** *la formación de la compañía.*	It will be six months next Tuesday since the forming of the company.
Hoy *hace* tres años **desde** *la abolición de la esclavitud.*	It is three years today since the abolition of slavery.

4. In all cases not specified above, *hace* has an adverbial value equivalent to the English *ago.*

Ese estado de cosas duró hasta *hace* un año.	That state of things lasted till a year ago.
La enemistad entre los dos países data de muchos siglos *hace.*	The enmity between the two countries dates from many centuries ago (*or*, back).
Cuba perteneció á España hasta *hace* unos dos años.	Cuba belonged to Spain until some two years ago.

23. Elliptical Expressions With Hacer. — The phrases **mucho tiempo,** *a long time;* **mucho rato,** *a long while*, are frequently used with *hacer* in expressions like the following:

Hace **mucho tiempo** que no le veo.	I have not seen him in a long time.
Hacía **mucho rato** que la aguardábamos á ella.	We had been waiting for her a long while.

Either the adjective *mucho* or the substantives *tiempo, rato* may be omitted, being understood.

Hace mucho / Hace tiempo } que no le veo

Hacía mucho / Hacía rato } que la aguardábamos

Likewise, the adjective **muchos,** *many*, may be omitted before *días, años*, etc.

Hace **muchos** *días* que no le veo. / Hace *días* que no le veo.	I have not seen him for many days. / I have not seen him in days.

Hacía **muchos** *años* que no nos escribía.	He had not written to us for many years.
Hacía *años* que no nos escribía.	He had not written to us in years.

24. Haber as a Subjectless Verb.—As a subjectless verb, *haber* is employed:

1. With reference to time elapsed, under exactly the same circumstances and with the same meanings as *hacer*. Its inflection is then the same as that of the auxiliary *haber*, except that the third person singular of the indicative present is customarily written with an accent mark over the *a*: *há*. This form is generally placed after the phrase indicating the interval elapsed.

Mañana *habrá* un año que me casé.	It will be a year tomorrow since I married.
Dos año *há* que no salgo.	I have not gone out in two years.
El vapor salió cuatro horas *há*.	The steamer left four hours ago.
Un año *había* que Colón había descubierto la isla.	It was a year since Columbus had discovered the island.

2. In the sense of *there to be*. As with other subjectless verbs, only the infinitive, the gerund, and the third persons singular are used. These forms are the same as those of the auxiliary *haber*, except the third person singular of the indicative present, which is *hay* instead of *ha*. Besides the simple forms, the subjectless *haber* has compound forms obtained by combining its participle *habido* with the third persons of the auxiliary *haber*.

The substantive or phrase that in English serves as the subject of (*there*) *to be* is treated in Spanish as the accusative of *haber*, being therefore represented by an accusative case. The accusative case of generalization (see Part 4) is much used with this subjectless verb. To every singular form of *haber* (and no plural forms are used without a subject) correspond one singular and one plural form of *to be:* which one to use depends on the grammatical number of the subject of the English verb. Thus, **hay** means either *there is* or *there are;* **hubo,** either *there was* or *there were;* **ha habido,** either *there has been* or *there have been.*

¿Cuántos teatros *hay* en Río de Janeiro?
How many theaters are there in Rio Janeiro?

En Nueva-York *hay* un parque muy grande llamado el Parque Central.
There is a very large park in New York called Central Park.

Ayer *hubo* una corrida de toros en Granada.
There was a bull fight in Granada yesterday.

El mes entrante *habrá* un eclipse de luna.
There will be an eclipse of the moon next month.

Este año *ha habido* mucha viruela en Puerto Cortez.
There has been a great deal of smallpox in Puerto Cortez this year.

No *habiendo* razones suficientes para extender el plazo, el gobierno rechazó la proposición de los peticionarios.
There being no sufficient reasons for extending the time, the government rejected the petitioners' proposition.

En aquel año *había habido* muchos desórdenes en los departamentos meridionales.
There had been many disturbances in the southern departments that year.

Es probable que mañana *haya* noticias de Buenos-Aires.
It is likely that tomorrow there will be news from Buenos Ayres.

No creí que aquí *hubiese* tantas comodidades para viajar.
I did not think there were so many traveling comforts here.

¿*Ha habido* muchos incendios aquí esta semana?—**Los** *ha habido*, y muy desastrosos.
Have there been many fires here this week?—There have been, and very disastrous ones.

En la antigüedad *hubo* sin duda muchos grandes hombres, pero **los** *hay* más grandes en nuestros días.
There were no doubt many great men in antiquity, but there are greater in our days.

¿Cuánta distancia *hay* de aquí á Barcelona?—Puede *haber* cinco ó seis leguas.
What is the distance from here to Barcelona?—It may be five or six leagues.

When referring to distance, the word *distancia* is often omitted, being understood; but then the interrogative adjective *cuánta* is changed to the neuter form *cuánto*. The phrase *cuánto hay* is then better rendered by *how far is it*.

¿*Cuánto* hay de París á Berlín?
How far is it from Paris to Berlin?

De Nueva-York á San Luis *hay menos* (that is, *menos distancia*) que de Chicago á San Francisco.
The distance from New York to St. Louis is less than from Chicago to San Francisco.

3. Followed by *que*, in the sense of *to be necessary*.

Habrá que abrir un túnel á través de la montaña.	It will be necessary to open a tunnel through the mountain.
Hay que proceder con cautela.	It is necessary to act with caution.
Hubo que arrojar todo el cargamento al mar.	It was necessary to throw all the cargo into the sea.

This construction should not be confounded with that in which a phrase consisting of *que* and an infinitive follows a substantive or substantive phrase serving as the accusative of *haber*. This verb then means *there to be*, and *que* is translated by *to*.

Hay mucho *que hacer*.	There is much to do.
Había varios otros puntos *que considerar*.	There were several other points to be considered.

In interrogative sentences, the accusative usually precedes *haber*, whether this verb means *to be necessary* or *there to be*. The meaning is always indicated by the context or the circumstances.

¿*Qué* hay que ver en esta ciudad?	What is there to see (*or*, to be seen) in this city?
¿*Qué* hay que hacer hoy?	What is there to do (*or*, to be done) today? (*or*, What must be done today?)

IMPERSONAL VERBS AND CONSTRUCTIONS

25. Definitions.—An **impersonal sentence** is a sentence having a proposition, an infinitive or an infinitive phrase for its subject. The principal verb in an impersonal sentence is said to be *used impersonally*, and the form of the sentence is often referred to as an *impersonal construction*. In English, the grammatical subject of an impersonal sentence is usually the indefinite pronoun *it*.

26. Impersonal Verbs.—Verbs that are used only in the third person are called **impersonal verbs**. Subjectless verbs belong to this class. Other impersonal verbs are often, but not always, used in personal constructions. Among

them may be mentioned **acaecer, acontocer, suceder,** all of which mean *to happen;* **convenir,** *to be advisable, well,* or *important;* **importar,** *to be important;* and **parecer,** *to seem.* In the first of each of the following pairs of examples, these verbs are used impersonally, as will be seen by applying to the subjects (printed in Italic) the definition given in the last article:

Acace á menudo *que un mal ciudadano es un buen soldado.*	It often happens that a bad citizen is a good soldier.
Eso **acaeció** en el siglo diez y ocho.	That happened in the eighteenth century.
Aconteció *que el capitán del buque era hermano del prisionero.*	It happened that the captain of the ship was a brother of the prisoner.
¿Cómo **ha acontecido** *eso?*	How has that happened?
Ahora **conviene** *que tratemos de recuperar nuestro crédito.*	It is now important that we endeavor to regain our credit.
En las actuales circunstancias, *una medida de esa clase no* **convendría.**	In the present circumstances, a measure of that kind would not be advisable.
Importa *no publicar estos datos todavía.*	It is important not to publish these data yet.
Eso no **importa.**	That does not matter.
Parece *que alguien toca á la puerta.*	It seems that some one is knocking at the door.
Su explicación **parece** ridícula.	Your explanation seems ridiculous.

27. Other Verbs Used Impersonally.—Many verbs, besides those that are essentially impersonal, are susceptible of being employed impersonally. For instance, **causar,** *to cause,* is thus employed in the following sentence:

Mucha pena me **causó** *ver el lamentable estado en que los dos huerfanitos se encontraban.*	It caused me great pain to see the lamentable state in which the two little orphans were.

There is nothing peculiar about these constructions, except that, as has been previously stated, the indefinite English *it* has no Spanish equivalent. Some impersonal uses of *ser* were adverted to in Part 6, in connection with the subjunctive mode.

PRIMARY MEANINGS OF THE TENSES

THE PROGRESSIVE FORM

28. A phrase consisting of **estar**, *to be*, followed by the gerund of another verb is called the **progressive form** of that other verb. When *estar* enters a combination of this sort, it is called an **auxiliary** (that is, *helping*) **verb**, as its function is then to aid in the construction of forms of other verbs. Any tense of *estar* may be followed by the gerund; and the tense of the combination is the same as that of the auxiliary. Thus, **estoy hablando**, *I am speaking*, is present, and **estaremos pescando**, *we shall be fishing*, is future.

The progressive form, which is of much more frequent application in English than in Spanish, exhibits the action or fact denoted by the verb as continued through a certain interval of time, whether specified or not.

THE SIMPLE INDICATIVE TENSES

29. Introduction. — Every proposition, whether it forms a complete sentence or not, contains one verbal time form, which, either by itself or with other words, constitutes the predicate of the proposition. Thus, in the complex sentence, **Él me dijo que pronto volvería**, *He told me that he would soon return*, there are two propositions; namely, *él me dijo*, and *que pronto volvería:* predicate of the first, *me dijo;* predicate of the second, *pronto volvería.* The predicate of the whole expression, considered as one complex sentence, is *me dijo que pronto volvería.*

When, in dealing with a verbal form, reference is made to the predicate, it should be understood that the predicate considered is that of the proposition to which the verbal form belongs, whether that proposition forms a complete sentence or not. This mode of referring to verbal forms is here adopted for shortness; but, if the student prefers, he may substitute the expression "that which is denoted by the

verb" for the expression "the predicate." In dealing with the meanings and uses of the tenses, it is immaterial which of these expressions is employed.

30. Primary Meanings of the Tenses of Coexistence. — The present and copreterit will here be called **tenses of coexistence,** because they are primarily employed to indicate the coexistence of the predicate with another fact or event, either expressed or understood. The present indicates that the predicate coexists with the moment of speaking; the copreterit, that the predicate coexisted with a past event. Hence the name of the latter tense — a name that means *coexisting preterit*, or *preterit of coexistence*. These fundamental meanings of the tenses of coexistence were explained in Part 2, to which the student is referred. It only remains to be added here that by *coexistence* of the predicate with an event is not meant that the two are of equal duration; but simply that the event in question takes or took place during the existence or occurrence of that which is denoted by the verb in the predicate.

Alguien *toca* á la puerta.	Some one knocks at the door.
Alguien *tocaba* á la puerta cuando yo desperté.	Some one was knocking at the door when I awoke.

In the first of these examples, the form *toca* presents the action of **tocar,** *to knock*, as taking place at the moment of speaking; but it does not imply that that action has not been taking place before, nor that it will not continue after that moment. In the second example, the form *tocaba* expresses that the action was taking place when I awoke, without any implication as to its previous or its subsequent duration.

31. When, as in the two sentences given above, the verb in the predicate denotes a transitory condition of the subject, continued during a shorter or longer time, both the present and the copreterit may be replaced by the corresponding progressive forms: *toca* by *está tocando*, and *tocaba* by *estaba tocando*. In English, the progressive form is almost exclusively used under such circumstances, especially to

render the Spanish copreterit. The following are additional examples:

¿De qué *habla* usted? ¿De qué *está* usted *hablando?*	What are you talking about?
¿De qué *hablaban* ustedes cuando nosotros entrámos? ¿De qué *estaban* ustedes *hablando* cuando nosotros entrámos?	What were you talking about when we came in?
El congreso *discute* ahora los derechos de aduana. El congreso *está* ahora *discutiendo* los derechos de aduana.	Congress is now discussing custom-house duties.
El congreso *discutiá* (or, *estaba discutiendo*) el ultimátum de los Estados Unidos cuando se declaró la guerra.	Congress was discussing the United States ultimatum when war was declared.
Yo *vivo* (or, *estoy viviendo*) ahora en Berlín.	I am now living in Berlin.
Yo *vivía* (or, *estaba viviendo*) entonces en Berlín.	I was then living in Berlin.

32. The tenses of coexistence serve to express what is permanent, and are of frequent occurrence in describing natural laws and inherent properties. In this office, only the simple forms are employed, the progressive forms not being admissible. This follows from the very meaning of the verb *estar*, in which the idea of transitoriness is generally implied (see Part 2). The Spanish present is then rendered by the English present, and the Spanish copreterit, by the English preterit (called *past indefinite* in English grammar).

La tierra *gira* al rededor del sol.	The earth revolves around the sun.
Newton probó que todos los cuerpos *caían* en el vacío con la misma velocidad.	Newton proved that all bodies fell in vacuum with the same velocity.

In the second example, the copreterit **caían,** *fell*, might be very properly replaced with the present **caen,** *fall*. The latter form would be a more emphatic statement of the permanency of the law in question; but, on the other hand, the copreterit, by presenting the predicate as coexistent with the time of Newton's demonstration, draws the attention

more vividly to the work of the investigator and refers more directly the discovery to him: the present seems to make prominent the fact that the predicate states a law known to us, regardless of its discoverer; the copreterit, the fact that the discovery was made by Newton—that he was the first to see the law and make it known: the present states the law as we see it, so to speak; the copreterit, as Newton saw it.

33. Application of the Tenses of Coexistence to Express Habitual or Repeated Actions or Conditions. When serving these purposes, the Spanish present is rendered by the English present, and the copreterit by the preterit, or more generally, by the phrase *used to* followed by the infinitive of the verb.

El médico *viene* á verme todos los días.	The physician comes to see me every day.
El médico *venía* á verme todos los días.	The physician came (*or*, used to come) to see me every day.
La Russell *canta* en el teatro Metropolitano.	Miss Russell sings at the Metropolitan theater.
La Russell *cantaba* en el teatro Metropolitano.	Miss Russell used to sing at the Metropolitan theater.
Nosotros *descontamos* letras sobre Francia é Inglaterra.	We discount drafts on France and England.
Nosotros *descontábamos* letras sobre Francia é Inglaterra.	We used to discount drafts on France and England.
Nuestra firma *importa* plátanos y naranjas.	Our firm imports bananas and oranges.
Nuestra firma *importaba* plátanos y naranjas.	Our firm used to import bananas and oranges.

34. The copreterit, when employed by itself as in the last article, usually implies that the fact or condition denoted by the verb took place in the past, and continued for a shorter or longer time, but has ceased to exist. Such is the implication in the examples just given, and in these:

Don Juan *era* muy rico, pero ya no lo es.	Mr. John used to be very rich, but he is so no longer.
El profesor Cervera y yo *éramos* muy amigos.	Professor Cervera and I used to be great friends.

Á mí me *fiaban* en el almacén de Narváez y Compañía, pero ya no me fían.	They used to trust me at Narvaez and Company's store, but they no longer do so.

35. The Tenses of Posteriority.—The future and the postpreterit will here be called **tenses of posteriority,** as their primary use is to indicate the posteriority of the predicate to some special time or event, either expressed or understood. The future exhibits the predicate as subsequent to the time of speaking; the postpreterit, as subsequent to a past time or event. Hence the name of the latter tense—a name meaning *after a preterit*, that is, after something past. These two tenses are rendered into English by means of the auxiliaries *will* and *shall* for the future, and *would* and *should* for the postpreterit—auxiliaries having no literal Spanish equivalents.

El sábado que viene *saldremos* para San Juan.	We shall leave for San Juan next Saturday.
El cónsul le *dará* á usted la factura consular esta tarde.	The consul will give you the consular invoice this afternoon.
España no creyó que los Estados Unidos *intervendrían*.	Spain did not think that the United States would interfere.
Antier le dijimos á su tenedor de libros que *enviaríamos* la cuenta detallada á principios de la semana entrante.	We told your bookkeeper yesterday that we would send the itemized bill in the early part of next week.

For other explanations relating to the postpreterit, the student is referred to Part 2.

36. The Preterit.—This tense exhibits the predicate as an absolutely past event, without any reference to its duration, to its coexistence with other past events, or to any other interval of time that is not wholly past.

Colón *descubrió* la América.	Columbus discovered America.
Milton *escribió* "El Paraíso perdido."	Milton wrote "Paradise Lost."
Ayer tarde *fuimos* al campo.	We went to the country yesterday afternoon.
Anoche *estuvimos* en el teatro.	We were at the theater last night.
Cuando el tigre *salió* del bosque, el cazador *disparó* sobre él: la fiera *rugió* y *cayó* muerta.	When the tiger came out of the woods, the hunter fired on him: the beast roared and fell dead.

37. Distinction Between the Preterit and the Copreterit. — The difference between the copreterit and the preterit is that the former presents the predicate as a continued or repeated action or condition, while the latter presents it simply as an accomplished fact: the former describes the predicate as a sort of process, the latter as something completed. This difference is further illustrated by the following examples:

Napoleón *escribía* sus campañas.	Napoleon used to write his campaigns.
Napoleón *escribió* sus campañas.	Napoleon wrote his campaigns.

In the first sentence, Napoleon's writing is referred to as an habitual action, the implication being that he had the custom of writing his military operations as they occurred. In the second sentence, reference is made to Napoleon's having completed certain writings, without any implication as to the time or the manner in which he did the work.

Yo *dormía* mientras él *escribía*.	I slept while he wrote (*or*, *better*, I was sleeping while he was writing).
Anoche *dormí* en el hotel Continental.	I slept in the Continental Hotel last night.

Here the copreterit forms *dormía* and *escribía* denote continued past actions, and it is the intention of the speaker to present them as such. The form *dormí*, on the contrary, although it naturally denotes a continued action or condition, indicates that the object of the statement is not to call attention to this aspect of the action, but simply to its having occurred and being absolutely past—to its being an accomplished fact.

Aníbal *era* un gran general. Aníbal *fué* un gran general.	Hannibal was a great general.

Here *era* exhibits the predicate as a natural or permanent quality possessed by Hannibal while he lived; *fué* directs the attention more particularly to the fact that this great general no longer exists.

38. In narrative style, the preterit expresses the past events forming the subject matter of the narration, while the copreterit, from its peculiar properties as a tense of coexistence, is employed to express the accompanying circumstances.

Era medio día cuando *entrámos* en la ciudad. Las calles *estaban* desiertas, y un ayudante á quien *enviámos* al palacio presidencial *regresó* con la extraña noticia de que el palacio ya no *existía*, por haberlo incendiado los sitiados antes de evacuar la población.	It was noon when we entered the city. The streets were deserted, and an aide-de-camp whom we sent to the presidential palace returned with the strange news that the palace no longer existed, the besieged having burned it before vacating the town.

THE COMPOUND INDICATIVE TENSES

39. The Compound Present.—This tense exhibits the meaning of the verb as an occurrence that has taken place during an interval of time not wholly expired. The occurrence in question may itself be entirely past, or may have continued to the moment of speaking; but, in either case, reference is made to its past, not to its present existence.

Hoy **hemos embarcado** cincuenta cajas de losa francesa.	We have shipped today fifty boxes of French china.

Here the action of shipping is entirely past, but the compound present is employed, because that action took place in an interval of time not yet expired; namely, today. If the shipping had taken place yesterday, or if the precise time of shipping had been specified, the preterit should have been used.

Ayer **embarcámos** cincuenta cajas de losa francesa.	Yesterday we shipped fifty boxes of French china.
Embarcámos cincuenta cajas de losa francesa hoy *á los dos*.	We shipped fifty boxes of French china at two o'clock today.

In the following examples, the phenomena denoted by the verbs in the compound present may still be occurring, or they may have ceased to occur; there is no implication as to their actual existence or non-existence; they are simply

presented as covering either part or the whole of periods of time extending to the present:

Esta semana **ha llovido** mucho.	It has rained very much this week.
Hoy **ha hecho** mucho viento.	It has been very windy today.

Sometimes the interval of time is not specified, but it is understood.

¿Cuántas veces *ha cruzado* usted el mar?	How many times have you crossed the ocean?

Here **en su vida,** *in your life*, is understood. If an entirely past interval is specified or understood, the preterit should be used.

¿Cuántas veces **cruzó** usted el mar *el año pasado?*	How many times did you cross the ocean last year?
¿Cuántas veces *cruzó* Colón el mar?	How many times did Columbus cross the ocean?

40. The compound present serves also to describe events that have just occurred, the consequences of which are just beginning to be felt or realized, or some of the accompanying circumstances of which still endure; in short, whenever the events described are more or less related to the present, provided the exact time of their occurrence is not specified.

He perdido cuanto tenía.	I have lost all I had.

This statement would be made by a person who has just lost his money, as in a transaction the results of which he has just learned, or in an enterprise he has just completed.

Don Jesús María Rodríguez *ha muerto.*	Mr. Jesus Maria Rodriguez is dead (*literally*, has died).

This is a common form giving public notice of the demise of a person who has just died.

A person who has just spoken to another might properly say:

He hablaao con él, pero no *he conseguido* que acceda á nuestra proposición.	I have spoken with him, but have not succeeded in getting him to agree to our proposition.

41. The Compound Future and Postpreterit. — The compound future indicates the anteriority of the predicate with respect to an event posterior to the time of speaking; the compound postpreterit, the anteriority of the predicate with respect to an event posterior to a past event, expressed or understood.

Mañana á las ocho *habremos terminado* los preparativos para el viaje.	By eight o'clock tomorrow, we shall have finished the preparations for the journey.

Here the act of finishing is to take place before the future time expressed by *mañana á las ocho.*

Me dijo que al otro día á las ocho *habría terminado* la traducción.	He told me that by eight o'clock the following day he should have finished the translation.

Here the act of finishing is to precede the time *el otro día á las ocho*, which is posterior to the past time in which the telling (*me* **dijo**) took place.

42. The Compound Preterit. — This tense is of comparatively rare occurrence. It exhibits the meaning of the verb as immediately preceding a past event, and generally follows a phrase expressing immediate anteriority, such as *luégo que, tan luégo como, no bien, así que, cuando,* all of which mean *when* or *after*, in the sense of *as soon as.* It can always be replaced by the simple preterit, and is often better rendered by the English indefinite past (literal equivalent of the Spanish simple preterit).

Luégo que **hubimos almorzado** (*or*, **almorzámos**), salímos á dar un paseo.	When we had breakfasted, we went out to take a walk.
No bien **hubo aparecido** (*or*, **apareció**) el artículo, cuando el redactor del periódico fué reducido á prisión.	No sooner had the article appeared, than the editor of the newspaper was put in prison.
Cuando **hubo pasado** (*or*, **pasó**) la tormenta, continuámos nuestro viaje.	When the storm was over, we continued our journey.

43. Occasionally, the compound preterit is used instead of the simple, without being preceded by an expression of immediate anteriority. The compound form is then emphatic, and serves, therefore, only to add force or vividness to the sentence.

"Encontró muchas y graves dificultades en su empresa, pero á fuerza de constancia las *hubo superado* todas."	"He encountered many and grave difficulties in his enterprise, but he surmounted them all by dint of perseverance."

44. The Compound Copreterit. — This form presents the meaning of the verb as preceding a past event or specified time, but without the condition of immediate anteriority. In the following examples, the words expressing the past event or time are printed in Italic:

Cuando la función principió, el príncipe **había ocupado** su palco.	When the performance began, the prince had occupied his box.
Ayer á las tres y media no **había llegado** el vapor.	The steamer had not arrived at half past three o'clock yesterday.

45. In many cases, the compound copreterit bears to the past the same relation that the compound present bears to the present. As in the latter tense, the action or condition denoted by the compound copreterit may not be wholly past with respect to the past event or time considered; but the compound form particularly refers to the previous duration of that action or condition, regardless of whether, at the specified time, it continued or not.

Aquel día *había llovido* mucho.	It had rained a great deal that day.
La guerra *había durado* seis años.	The war had lasted six years.
Ese mes *habíamos perdido* más de cincuenta mil pesos.	That month we had lost more than fifty thousand dollars.

NOTE. — Other primary uses of the indicative tenses of coexistence, both simple and compound, will be given in connection with the tenses of the hypothetic mode, and still others in a separate section following the treatment of the tenses of the latter mode.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

46. Introductory Remark. — The rules for the use of the subjunctive were given in Part 6. Here we shall deal only with the time relations expressed by the subjunctive forms, when these forms are employed in accordance with those rules.

47. The Simple Present. — This tense serves to express the time relations that in the indicative are expressed by the simple present and the simple future.

PRESENT TIME

Es probable que su equipaje *esté* en la estación.	It is likely that your baggage is at the station.
No creo que Inglaterra *sea* la nación más poderosa del mundo.	I do not think England to be the most powerful nation in the world.

FUTURE TIME

Es probable que su equipaje *llegue* en el próximo tren.	It is likely that your baggage will arrive on the next train.
No creo que este caballo me *lleve* hasta la población.	I do not think this horse will carry me as far as the town.

As explained in Part 6, the present tense of the subjunctive is of very frequent occurrence in referring to uncertain or contingent future events. In all these cases, it indicates future time, and is to be rendered by the English future indicative, as in the examples just given.

48. The Simple Preterit. — This form serves to express the same time relations that in the indicative are expressed by the simple preterit, the copreterit, and the postpreterit.

PRETERIT RELATION

Yo no creo que Bacón *fuese* (or, *fuera*) el autor de "Hamlet."	I do not believe that Bacon was the author of "Hamlet."
Yo dudo mucho que los árabes *inventasen* (or, *inventaran*) el sistema decimal de numeración.	I much doubt that the Arabs invented the decimal system of numeration.

COPRETERIT RELATION

No es probable que cuando nosotros llegámos ellos *estuviesen* (or, *estuvieran*) fuera de la ciudad.	It is not likely that they were out of town when we arrived.

POSTPRETERIT RELATION

El superintendente me suplicó que *hablase* (or, *hablara*) con usted sobre este asunto.	The superintendent requested me to speak with you about this matter.

49. In general, when the principal verb is in the preterit or in the copreterit, the dependent verb, if subjunctive, should be in the preterit tense of this mode.

El ladrón me *dijo* que le **diese** (or, **diera**) cuanto **tuviese** (or, **tuviera**).	The robber told me to give him all I had.
No *creíamos* que la situación **fuese** (or, **fuera**) tan seria.	We did not think that the situation was so serious.

If, however, the dependent verb expresses a future event, or something that applies to all time, the present subjunctive may be used instead of the preterit, although the latter is equally proper, and perhaps more so.

El general ordenó que *regresásemos* (or, *regresáramos*) al campamento mañana. El general ordenó que *regresemos* al campamento mañana.	The general ordered us to return to camp tomorrow.
Aquel astrónomo sostenía que, de que la Biblia *dijese* (or, *dijera*) que Josué detuvo el sol, no se seguía que la doctrina de Copérnico *fuese* (or, *fuera*) falsa. Aquel astrónomo sostenía que de que la Biblia *diga* que Josué detuvo el sol no se sigue que la doctrina de Copérnico *sea* falsa.	That astronomer held that, from the fact that the Bible said that Joshua stopped the sun, it did not follow that the doctrine of Copernicus was false.

50. When the principal verb is in the present, and the subjunctive dependent verb refers to the past, the simple

preterit subjunctive should logically be employed, as in the first three examples given in Art. **48.** Usage, however, sanctions the employment of the compound present instead of the preterit in all such cases.

Yo no creo que Bacón *haya sido* el autor de "Hamlet."

Yo dudo mucho que los árabes *hayan inventado* el sistema decimal de numeración.

No es probable que cuando nosotros llegámos ellos *hayan estado* fuera de la ciudad.

51. The Compound Tenses.—The compound present expresses the same time relations that are expressed in the indicative by the compound present and the compound future; the compound preterit, the same relations that are expressed in the indicative by the compound copreterit and the compound postpreterit. The only exception to this rule is that, as stated in Art. **50,** the compound present is sometimes used in place of the simple preterit.

Los cazadores *han matado* dos venados esta semana.	The hunters have killed two deer this week.
No creo que los cazadores *hayan matado* más de dos venados esta semana.	I do not think that the hunters have killed more than two deer this week.
Antes del fin del mes *habremos terminado* el inventario.	We shall have finished the inventory before the end of the month.
Es probable que antes del fin del mes *hayamos terminado* el inventario.	It is likely that before the end of the month we shall have finished the inventory.
Me prometió que cuando nos volviésemos á ver me *habría conseguido* una colocación.	He promised me that, when we should meet again, he would have procured me a situation.
Me dijo que quizá cuando nos volviésemos á ver me *hubiese* (or, *hubiera*) conseguido una colocación.	He told me that perhaps when we should meet again he would have procured me a situation.
Era evidente que el viajero *había presenciado* los sucesos que tan vivamente describía.	It was evident that the traveler had witnessed the events he so vividly described.
Nadie creyó que el viajero *hubiese presenciado* los sucesos que pretendía describir.	No one believed that the traveler had witnessed the events he pretended to describe.

TENSES OF THE HYPOTHETIC MODE

52. The Two Time Forms of the Hypothetic. The hypothetic mode has only one simple and one compound time form, or tense. These forms serve to express the same time relations that are expressed by the simple and the compound present subjunctive, respectively.

SIMPLE FORM DENOTING PRESENT TIME

No parece probable que los turcos sean tan depravados como este autor nos dice; mas, si lo *fueren*, ciertamente merecen el desprecio del mundo civilizado.	It does not seem likely that the Turks are as depraved as this author tells us; but, if they are, they certainly deserve the contempt of the civilized world.

SIMPLE FORM DENOTING FUTURE TIME

Si el Congreso de Colombia *aceptare* el tratado, el canal se principiará pronto.	If the Congress of Colombia should accept the treaty, the canal will be soon commenced.
Cuando usted *recibiere* el cablegrama que aguarda, avíseme.	When you receive the cablegram you expect, let me know.

COMPOUND FORM AS COMPOUND PRESENT

No parece probable que el gobierno turco haya autorizado esos asesinatos; mas, si los *hubiere autorizado*, ciertamente merece el desprecio de las otras naciones.	It is not seem likely that the Turkish government has authorized those massacres; but, if it has, it certainly deserves the contempt of other nations.

COMPOUND FORM AS COMPOUND FUTURE

Si, cuando usted llegue, los inquilinos no *hubieren desocupado* la casa, comuníquele las circunstancias á mi abogado.	If, when you arrive, the tenants have not vacated the house, communicate the circumstances to my lawyer.
Luégo que las dos partes *hubieren firmado* el instrumento de venta, una copia de dicho instrumento se depositará en la oficina de registro.	As soon as the two parties shall have signed the instrument of sale, a copy of said instrument shall be deposited in the recording office.

53. Indicative and Subjunctive Forms Substituted for the Hypothetic. — It was explained in Part 6 that a

hypothetic form introduced by *si* may be replaced by the corresponding indicative form (the simple form by the indicative simple present, and the compound form by the indicative compound present); and that, in all other cases, the hypothetic may be replaced by the subjunctive.

No me parece probable que los turcos sean tan depravados como este autor nos dice; mas, *si* lo **son**, ciertamente merecen el desprecio del mundo civilizado.

Cuando usted **reciba** el cablegrama, avíseme.

No me parece probable que el gobierno turco haya autorizado esos asesinatos; mas, *si* los **ha autorizado**, etc.

Luégo que las dos partes **hayan firmado** el instrumento de venta, etc.

54. In constructions similar in form to those in which the hypothetic is employed, but in which the time relations are different from those just described, it is necessary to employ either indicative or subjunctive forms. When the hypothetic is introduced by *si*, either the subjunctive or the indicative is permissible, although the latter is preferable; otherwise, only the subjunctive is permissible. In the first example of each of the following pairs, the hypothetic is used; in the second, the time relations are such as this mode has no forms to express:

Se ha resuelto que, *si* los turcos **fueren** (or, **son**) responsables por los asesinatos, se pida satisfacción al sultán.	It has heen resolved that, if the Turks are responsible for the massacres, satisfaction be demanded from the Sultan.
Se resolvió que, *si* los turcos **fuesen** (*or*, **fueran**; *or*, *better*, **eran**) responsables por los asesinatos, se pidiese satisfacción al sultán.	It was resolved that, if the Turks were responsible for the massacres, satisfaction should be demanded from the Sultan.
Si usted **encontrare** (*or*, **encuentra**) al doctor Sánchez en casa, entréguele esta esquela.	If you find Doctor Sanchez at home, deliver this note to him.
Me dijo que, *si* lo **encontrase** (*or*, **encontrara**; *or*, *better*, **encontraba**) á usted en casa, le entregase esta esquela.	He told me, if I found you at home, to deliver this note to you.

Cuando nuestras hermanas **llegaren** (*or*, **lleguen**), tenga la bondad de procurarles un coche.	When our sisters arrive, be kind enough to procure a carriage for them.
Le suplicámos que *cuando* nuestras hermanas **llegasen** (*or*, **llegaran**) les procurara un coche.	We requested him, when our sisters arrived, to procure a carriage for them.
El general ha dispuesto que, *cuando* el enemigo **hubiere** (*or*, **haya**) **evacuado** las fortificaciones, éstas se destruyan.	The general has ordered that, when the enemy shall have vacated the forts, the latter be destroyed.
El general dispuso que, *cuando* el enemigo **hubiese** (*or*, **hubiera**) evacuado las fortificaciones, éstas se destruyeran.	The general ordered that, when the enemy should have vacated the forts, the latter should be destroyed.
Sabemos que, *si* antes de mañana no **hubiéremos** (*or*, **hemos**) **terminado** la obra, el contrato se declarará nulo.	We know that, if before tomorrow we have not finished the work, the contract will be declared void.
Sabíamos que, *si* antes del día siguiente no **hubiésemos** (*or*, **hubiéramos**; *or*, *better*, **habíamos**) **terminado** la obra, el contrato se declararía nulo.	We knew that, if before the following day we had not finished the work, the contract would be declared void.

INDICATIVE TENSES OF COEXISTENCE DEPENDING ON TENSES OF POSTERIORITY

55. The indicative tenses of coexistence, both simple and compound, are often employed to indicate time relations of posteriority, when they occur in propositions introduced by the announcing *que* and performing the office of accusative of a verb denoting a perception, feeling, belief, or any other mental act. If this verb denotes future time, the indicative simple and the compound present of the dependent verb indicate, with respect to that time, the same relations that they usually indicate with respect to the present. If the principal verb is in the postpreterit, or, being in the preterit

subjunctive, denotes a time posterior to a past time, the simple and the compound indicative copreterit express, with respect to the time expressed by the principal verb, the same relations they ordinarily express with respect to the past. The following examples will make these principles clear:

Veo que usted **debe** demasiado.	I see that you owe too much.
Creo que el mensajero **ha llegado.**	I think the messenger has arrived.

In these sentences, *debe* and *ha llegado* express their usual time relations with respect to the present; or, with respect to the time denoted by *veo* and *creo*, respectively.

Cuando yo *vea* que usted **debe** demasiado, no le fiaré más.	When I see that you owe too much, I will not trust you any more.
En su ansiedad, usted *creerá* muchas veces que **ha llegado** la hora.	In your anxiety, you will believe many times that the hour has arrived.

In these two sentences, *debe* and *ha llegado* express the same time relations as before, but with respect to the times expressed by *vea* and *creerá*, both of which are future.

Me *pareció* entonces que usted **gastaba** demasiado.	It seemed to me then that you were spending too much.
Descubrí que mis empleados me **habían engañado.**	I discovered that my employes had deceived me.

Here *gastaba* and *habían engañado* express, with respect to the times indicated by *pareció* and *descubrí*, the time relations explained in Arts. **31** and **44**, respectively.

Le prometí que, si alguna vez me *parecía* que **gastaba** demasiado, se lo diría francamente.	I promised him, if at any time it seemed to me that he was spending too much, I would tell him so frankly.
Dí órdenes á mi tenedor de libros que, cuando *decubriese* que mis empleados me **habían engañado,** me lo avisara.	I gave orders to my bookkeeper that, when he should discover that my employes had deceived me, he would let me know (it).

Here the time relations expressed by *gastaba* and *habían engañado*, with respect to the time indicated by *parecía* and *descubriese*, are the same as before; but, in the present case, these last two verbs express not merely a past time, but a time posterior to a past event—the postpreterit relation.

TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE MODE

56. The imperative has two tenses, one simple and one compound. The former exhibits the predicate as future with respect to the moment of speaking; the latter, as preceding a future event. The compound form, however, is only used—and not often—in the second person plural.

SIMPLE FORM, FUTURE TIME

Éntre y *siéntese*, señor García.	Come in and sit down, Mr. Garcia.
Hagamos el experimento descrito en esa revista.	Let us make the experiment described in that periodical.
Que *lleven* los caballos al establo.	Let the horses be taken to the stable.

COMPOUND FORM, TIME PREVIOUS TO A FUTURE EVENT

Habed terminado vuestra tarea antes del anochecer.	Have your task finished before nightfall.

57. *Tener* serves to supply some of the forms that the compound imperative lacks, but only with verbs having an accusative. The construction differs from that with *haber* in that the participle is then treated as an adjective, which must agree with the accusative in number and gender. Furthermore, the accusative may be placed between *tener* and the participle, while between *haber* and a participle with which *haber* forms a compound tense no accusative can be placed.

Tened terminada vuestra tarea antes del anochecer. *Tened* vuestra tarea *terminada* antes del anochecer.	Have your task finished before nightfall.
Tenga hechos los recibos cuando yo regrese. *Tenga* los recibos *hechos* cuando yo regrese.	Have the receipts made out when I return.

58. This construction of *tener* with a participle is not restricted to the imperative, as appears from the following examples:

*Tenemos escrit***as** casi todas las cartas.	We have almost all the letters written.
Creo que antes de mañana *tendré* estos géneros *empacad***os.**	I think that before tomorrow I shall have these goods all packed.

In these sentences, *haber* would be equally proper, but the participle would then be invariable. The difference between the construction with *tener* and that with *haber* is plainly indicated by the translations.

Hemos **escrito** casi todas las cartas.	We have written almost all the letters.
Creo que antes de mañana *habré* **empacado** estos géneros.	I think that before tomorrow I shall have packed these goods.

SECONDARY MEANINGS OF THE TENSES

THE POSTPRETERIT AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE PRETERIT IN CONDITIONAL AND OPTATIVE SENTENCES

59. Introduction.—The uses or meanings of the tenses explained in the foregoing articles are called **fundamental** or **primary uses** or **meanings**, because they embrace all the time relations that can be expressed in discourse, and the forms by which these relations can, and ordinarily are, expressed. The uses and meanings now to be explained, in which some tenses are substituted for others, or are employed to vary the form, without altering the sense, of the sentence, are called **secondary meanings** or **uses** of the tenses.

60. Conditional Sentences.—A **conditional sentence** is a complex sentence in which the existence or realization of what is expressed in the predicate of a proposition is exhibited as conditioned by, dependent on,

or following from, the existence or realization of what is expressed in the predicate of another proposition. The latter proposition expresses a condition or assumption, and is called the **protasis** of the sentence; the other proposition is called the **apodosis.** In the following sentences, the protasis is printed in Roman type; the apodosis, in Italic:

Si el peso específico de un cuerpo sólido es mayor que el del agua, *el cuerpo no puede flotar en este líquido.*	If the specific gravity of a solid body is greater than that of water, the body cannot float in this liquid.
Si usted va á Filadelfia esta noche, *llévele estos libros á su primo.*	If you go to Philadelphia tonight, take these books to your cousin.
Le permitiré que haga esos experimentos en mi laboratorio, con la condición de que usted compre los reactivos que necesite.	I will allow you to make those experiments in my laboratory, on condition that you will buy the reagents you need.

61. Conditional Propositions With Implied Negation.—The protasis of a conditional sentence may present its predicate as a possibility, as in the preceding examples, and then the mode and tense of the verb to be used are governed by the general rules and principles already laid down; or it may present its predicate as something that does not exist, if reference is made to the present, or did not exist, if reference is made to the past. This implied negation is indicated by putting the verb in the simple or compound preterit subjunctive, according as the time considered is present or past. For the verb in the apodosis, either the indicative postpreterit or the preterit subjunctive form in *-ra* may be employed at pleasure, although the former is generally preferred. This is one of the few cases in which the preterit subjunctives in *-ra* and *-se* are not interchangeable. If the verb in the protasis forms a negative expression with a negative adverb, the negation implied in the form of the verb transforms that negation into an affirmation.

Si usted *economizara* (or, *economizase*) parte de su sueldo, *viviría* (or, *viviera*) más cómodamente.	If you saved part of your salary, you would live more comfortably.

(You do not save part of your salary, and therefore you do not live more comfortably.)

Es difícil concebir cuál *habría* (or, *hubiera*) *sido* la suerte de Europa, si Napoleón no *hubiera* (or, *hubiese*) *perdido* la batalla de Waterloo.	It is difficult to conceive what would have been the fate of Europe, if Napoleon had not lost the battle of Waterloo.

(Napoleon did lose the battle of Waterloo, and therefore the consequences of his not having lost it were not realized.)

"Si yo *fuera* (or, *fuese*) libre, *podría* (or, *pudiera*) colmar cada día de placer: á nadie *haría* (or, *hiciera*) mal, y no *causaría* (or, *causara*) resentimientos; *aliviaría* (or, *aliviara*) todo sufrimiento, y *gozaría* (or, *gozara*) de las bendiciones de la gratitud."	"Were I free, I should be able to fill every day with pleasure; I would injure no one, and should provoke no resentments; I would relieve every distress, and should enjoy the benedictions of gratitude."

(Here the implication is that I am not free, and that therefore the consequences of my being free are not realized.)

62. Occasionally, when reference is made to the past, the simple form of the verb is used instead of the compound, although the latter is equally proper. The subjunctive form in *-ra* is then used in the apodosis to the exclusion of the postpreterit.

Si los refuerzos alemanes no *llegaran* (or, *llegasen*) en aquel momento, Wellington *fuera* derrotado. Si los refuerzos alemanes no *hubieran* (or, *hubiesen*) llegado en aquel momento, Wellington *habría* (or, *hubiera*) *sido* derrotado.	If the German reinforcements had not arrived at that moment, Wellington would have been defeated.

63. The indicative copreterit occurs sometimes in the apodosis instead of the postpreterit or the subjunctive preterit; but this use of the copreterit is today comparatively rare.

Si usted me *hubiese* (or, *hubiera*) hecho la propuesta ayer, yo la **había** *aceptado* sin vacilación [*better*, yo la **habría** (or, **hubiera**) *aceptado* sin vacilación].	If you had made the proposition to me yesterday, I would have accepted it without any hesitation.

64. In all the preceding examples, the protasis is introduced by *si*, and contains a verbal time form; it is therefore a true proposition, and as such it was defined in Art **60.** There are, however, conditional expressions that, although containing neither the conjunction *si* nor a verbal time form, are equivalent, either from their usual signification or from the circumstances in which they occur, to a proposition introduced by *si* and containing a verbal form of implied negation. Such expressions are treated as would the propositions to which they are equivalent, and therefore the verb in the apodosis follows the rules laid down in the foregoing articles.

Sin tanta diplomacia, no **hubiéramos** (or, **habríamos**) **logrado** el fin que nos proponíamos.	Without so much diplomacy, we should not have attained the end we had in view (*literally*, the end we proposed to ourselves).
Por otro camino, **hubiera** (or, **habría**) **sido** imposible llegar á las fuentes del Orinoco.	By another road, it would have been impossible to arrive at the source of the Orinoco.
Con más esmero de parte de las autoridades, la Habana **fuera** (or, **sería**) menos malsana.	With more care on the part of the authorities, Havana would be less unhealthful.

These sentences are equivalent to, and may be replaced by, the following, respectively:

Si no hubiésemos empleado tanta diplomacia, no hubiéramos logrado el fin que nos proponíamos.	If we had not used so much diplomacy, we should not have attained the end we had in view.
Si se hubiese seguido otro camino, hubiera sido imposible llegar á las fuentes del Orinoco.	If another road had been followed, it would have been impossible to arrive at the source of the Orinoco.
Si hubiese más esmero de parte de las autoridades, la Habana fuera menos malsana.	If there were more care on the part of the authorities, Havana would be less unhealthful.

65. Closely akin to the cases just considered are those in which the protasis is not expressed, being understood.

Yo no *hubiera* (or, *habría*) aceptado semejante proposición.	I would not have accepted such a proposition.
Nosotros no *pagáramos* (or, *pagaríamos*) los salarios que usted paga.	We would not pay the salaries that you do.

In the first of these two sentences, the tacit protasis is, **si se me hubiese hecho,** *if it had been proposed to me;* in the second, **si estuviésemos en su lugar,** *if we were in your place.*

66. The conjunction *si* is sometimes omitted for rhetorical effect. The apodosis is then elegantly introduced by either *y* or *que*, although neither of these words is strictly necessary, and may therefore be dispensed with.

Tuviera (or, *Tuviese*) yo el poder, **y** *aboliría* (or, *aboliera*) todos los monopolios.	Had I the power, I would abolish all monopolies.
Fueras tú mi igual, **que** *tendrías* (or, *tuvieras*) que lavar este insulto con tu sangre.	Wert thou my equal, thou shouldst wash this insult with thy blood.
Hubiera sido Venezuela más prudente, **y** no *habría* (or, *hubiera*) *provocado* la guerra que amenaza arruinarla.	Had Venezuela been more prudent, she would not have provoked the war that threatens to ruin her.

67. Conditional Sentences Excluding the Postpreterit in the Apodosis.—It has been stated, and the foregoing examples illustrate the statement, that the indicative postpreterit and the preterit subjunctive are interchangeable in the apodosis of conditional sentences with implied negation. This rule, however, does not apply when the verb in the apodosis depends on a phrase or word that, according to the general principles governing the use of the subjunctive, requires the employment of the latter mode.

Dudo que, si el médico no hubiese llegado tan pronto, el paciente **hubiera** (or, **hubiese**) **sobrevivido** el ataque.	I doubt whether, if the physician had not arrived so soon, the patient would have survived the attack.

68. Use of the Indicative Postpreterit and the Preterit Subjunctive as Marks of Politeness or Modesty. — In Spanish, as in English, a request is modestly and politely made by giving the sentence a conditional form with implied negation.

Si usted *tuviera* (or, *tuviese*) la bondad de enseñarme la estación, me *haría* (or, *hiciera*) un gran favor.	If you would have the kindness to show me the station, you would do me a great favor.
Si ustedes me *escucharan* (or, *escuchàsen*) por unos pocos momentos, me *gustaría* (or, *gustara*) mostrarles algunos artículos que estoy vendiendo.	If you would listen to me for a few moments, I should like to show you some articles I am selling.

In sentences similar to the last, the verbs *desear* and *querer* have the same signification as *gustar*, and are rendered by *to like*.

Si ustedes me eschuchasen por unos pocos momentos, *desearía* (or, *querría*) mostrarles algunos artículos que estoy vendiendo.

69. In sentences like the following, the apodosis is understood; it may be, **si fuera posible,** *if it were possible;* **si usted me lo permitiera,** *if you would allow me;* **si yo pudiera dar mi opinión sobre el asunto,** *if I could give my opinion on the subject;* or some such expression, according to circumstances:

Desearíamos (or, *Deseáramos*) hablar con el administrador.	We should like to speak with the manager.
Me gustaría (or, *Me gustara*) que usted me diese su opinión sobre esta obra.	I should like you to give me your opinion of this work.
Quisiera (or, *Querría*) que usted viniese á verme á menudo.	I would like you to come to see me often.
Yo *diría* (or, *dijera*) que la causa de su quiebra ha sido la excesiva confianza que usted ha puesto en sus agentes.	I should say that the cause of your failure has been the excessive confidence you have placed in your agents.

It will be seen from the second and the third sentence that the subjunctive form *diese*, governed by *gustar*, is placed in the preterit, as if *gustaría* actually expressed past time.

70. In interrogative sentences, the indicative postpreterit or the subjunctive preterit is politely substituted for the present or future.

¿*Tuviera* (or, *Tendría*) usted la bondad de cambiarme este billete?	Would you have the kindness to change this bank note for me?
¿*Pudiera* (or, *Podría*) usted decirme qué hora es?	Could you tell me what time it is?

71. Optative Sentences With Implied Negation. An **optative sentence** is a sentence expressing an earnest desire and introduced by a verb in the subjunctive mode. That verb is the principal verb in the sentence, and others depending on it must be in the same mode. It is a general rule that an indicative form cannot be made to depend on a subjunctive form.

¡**Permita** Dios que no *halles* la muerte en tan peligrosa aventura!	May God permit that thou do not find death in so dangerous an adventure!
¡**Plegue** á Dios que *vivas* muchos años más, y que seas feliz!	God grant (*or*, May it please God) that thou mayst live many years more and be happy!

When *querer* is used in the third person in an optative sentence, it is rendered by *to grant* or *to permit*.

¡**Quiera** tu estrella que las maquinaciones de tus enemigos se *frusten!*	May thy star permit that the machinations of thy enemies be frustrated!

In all these sentences, the object of the desire is presented as a possibility. If what is desired is an impossibility, or something that does not actually exist, the form of the verb is changed from the present to the preterit subjunctive.*

¡**Pluguiera** á Dios que *pudiésemos* sacudir el yugo de nuestros tiranos!	Would to God that we could shake off the yoke of our tyrants!
¡**Hubiera muerto** mi hijo en aquella batalla, en vez de traicionar á su patria!	Would that my son had died in that battle, instead of betraying his country!

*For the conjugation of *placer*, of which *plegue* and *pluguiera* are subjunctive forms, see Part 7, Irregular Verbs.

It will be observed that both the principal verb and the dependent — when there is one — indirectly negative the existence of what is denoted by the verb. Thus, in the first example, **pluguiera** implies that **á Dios no le place,** *it does not please God;* and *pudiésemos* implies that **nosotros no podemos,** *we cannot.* In the second example, **hubiera muerto** implies that **él no murió,** *he did not die.*

72. As explained in Part 7, the interjection *ojalá* is a sort of abbreviated proposition expressing an earnest wish and requiring the subjunctive form of the dependent verb. If this verb is put in the preterit subjunctive, negation is usually implied, although sometimes, as in the third of the examples that follow, the preterit form indicates only improbability.

¡*Ojalá* que mi madre **estuviese** (or, **estuviera**) aquí!	Would that (*or*, I wish) my mother were here!
¡*Ojalá* que no **hubiésemos** (or, **hubiéramos**) **vendido** nuestra hacienda con tanta precipitación!	I wish we had not sold our ranch with so much hastiness.
¡*Ojalá* que él **viniese** (or, **viniera**) mañana!	I wish he would come tomorrow.

In the last sentence, the preterit indicates that it is not likely that the person referred to will come tomorrow. If the event, being desired, is not considered improbable, the present should be used instead of the preterit, and *ojalá* is better rendered by a form of *to hope.*

¡Ojalá que él *venga* mañana!	I hope he may come tomorrow.

73. In optative sentences implying negation or improbability, the subjunctive preterit of **querer** has practically the same meaning as *ojalá.* Only the form in *-ra* is used for this purpose.

Quisiera que mi madre estuviese aquí.

Quisiera que no hubiésemos vendido nuestra hacienda con tanta precipitación.

Quisiera que él viniese mañana.

It should be observed that *quisiera* is in these cases rendered by the indicative present of *to wish: I* **wish** *my mother*

were here, *I* **wish** *we had not sold our ranch*, etc. In sentences like the following, the preterit forms of *querer* are better rendered by forms of *to like* (see also Arts. **68** and **69**):

Quisiera haberme hallado en la batalla de Santiago.	I should like to have been at the battle of Santiago.
Hubiera querido hallarme en la batalla de Santiago.	I should have liked to be at the battle of Santiago.

In the first of these two sentences, the simple form *quisiera* indicates a present wish; in the second, the compound form *hubiera querido* indicates a past wish—that, at the time of the battle, or before that time, it was the speaker's wish to be present, although he knew that he could not be.

74. Conditional Sentences With Implied Improbability.—The character of this class of sentences will be understood by considering the two following examples:

Si mi socio *llega* (or, *llegare*) hoy, *firmaremos* el contrato esta noche.	If my partner arrives today, we will sign the contract tonight.
Si mi socio *llegase* (or, *llegara*) hoy, *firmaríamos* (or, *firmáramos*) el contrato esta noche.	If my partner should arrive today, we would sign the contract tonight.

In the first sentence, either the indicative *llega* or the hypothetic *llegare* (see Art. **53**) exhibits the coming of the person referred to as a possible, and not improbable, event; the implication is that he is expected to come either today or in the near future. In the second sentence, on the contrary, the preterit form *llegase* presents the same event as something that is not expected, something unlikely to happen, and which is stated simply as an assumption. The following are additional illustrations of this difference:

Si usted *sale* (or, *saliere*) por el vapor de mañana, *estará* en Puerto Cabello el diez del mes entrante.	If you leave by tomorrow's steamer, you will be at Puerto Cabello on the tenth of next month.
Si usted *saliese* (or, *saliera*) por el vapor de mañana, *estaría* en Puerto Cabello el diez del mes entrante.	If you should leave by tomorrow's steamer, you would be at Puerto Cabello on the tenth of next month.

Si Rengifo y Compañía *protestan* (or, *protestaren*) esa letra, *romperemos* nuestras relaciones con ellos.	If Rengifo and Company protest that draft, we will sever our relations with them.
Si Rengifo y Compañía *protestaran* (or, *protestasen*) esa letra, *romperíamos* (or, *rompiéramos*) nuestras relaciones con ellos.	If Rengifo and Company should protest that draft, we would sever our relations with them.

75. Improper Substitution of the Preterit Subjunctive for the Hypothetic.—The use of the preterit subjunctive just explained is restricted to sentences with implied improbability. Unless this implication is intended, the hypothetic should be employed. It is not uncommon, especially among Spaniards, to use the preterit subjunctive as if it were interchangeable with the hypothetic, but this practice is not warranted by the works of the best writers, and is condemned by all good grammarians.

Si el profesor no *estuviese* en casa, déjele este libro con la señora.	If the professor is not at home, leave this book for him with his wife.

This is an incorrect construction, which should be replaced by either, *Si el profesor no* **estuviere,** etc., or, *Si el profesor no* **está,** etc.

OTHER SECONDARY USES OF THE TENSES

76. Past Events Described as Present.—In narrative style, much vividness is added to the description of past events by representing them as if happening at the present time. The speaker or writer appears then as if he were witnessing the facts he narrates, and presenting them before the listener or reader as objects of direct perception, rather than of memory. In this form of composition, the present tense is substituted for the preterit, and all other tenses are correspondingly changed; that is, the future takes the place of the postpreterit, the compound present, that of the compound copreterit, etc. In the first form of the following example, all tenses are employed in their normal or primary

meanings, and indicate the actual time relations, with respect to the present, of the events described; in the second, the main events are metaphorically exhibited as present, and the tenses are changed accordingly.

Acababan de dar las seis. Don Juan, que durante la noche *había contado* las horas con impaciencia, *saltó* de la cama, y se *vistió* precipitadamente. *Llamó* luégo á su criado, á quien *ordenó* que *tuviese* el coche listo dentro de media hora; y, dejando sobre su escritorio una esquela en que *daba* á su pobre madre la noticia de que esa noche se *embarcaría* para América, *salió* del hogar que tan caro le *había sido*, y que nunca *volvería* á ver.

It had just struck six. Don Juan, who during the night had counted the hours with impatience, sprang from his bed, and hurriedly dressed himself. Then he called his servant, whom he ordered to have the carriage ready within half an hour; and leaving on his desk a note giving his poor mother the news that he would that night sail for America, left the home that had been so dear to him, and that he would never see again.

Acaban de dar las seis. Don Juan, que durante la noche *ha contado* las horas con impaciencia, *salta* de la cama y se *viste* precipitadamente. *Llama* luégo á su criado, á quien *ordena* que tenga el coche listo dentro de media hora; y, dejando sobre su escritorio una esquela en que *da* á su pobre madre la noticia de que esa noche se *embarcará* para América, *sale* de aquel hogar que tan caro le *ha sido*, y que nunca *volverá* á ver.

It has just struck six. Don Juan, who during the night has counted the hours with impatience, springs from his bed and hurriedly dresses himself. Then he calls his servant, whom he orders to have the carriage ready within half an hour; and leaving on his desk a note giving his poor mother the news that that night he will sail for America, leaves the home that has been so dear to him, and that he will never see again.

This secondary use of the tenses is much more frequent in Spanish than in English, and is considered both elegant and forcible.

77. Use of the Indicative Present in Conditional Sentences With Implied Negation. — In familiar and in lively style, the indicative present may replace the compound forms of the postpreterit and of the subjunctive preterit in

conditional sentences with implied negation. The substitution may be made in both the apodosis and the protasis, or in one of these members only.

Si yo no *llego* en aquel momento, la *matan*.	If I had not arrived at that moment, they would have killed her.
Si yo no *hubiera llegado* en aquel momento, la *matan*.	
Si yo no *llego* en aquel momento, la *hubieran matado*.	
Si yo no *hubiera llegado* en aquel momento, la *hubieran matado*.	

The last form may be considered as the normal form of the sentence. The others are more forcible, and add much vividness to the expression, but are less formal and dignified.

78. After **casi,** *almost;* **por poco,** *nearly*, and a few other words and phrases of like import, the present tense is used with reference to past events with the implication that what is denoted by the verb did not take place.

Casi me **vuelven** loco con sus preguntas.	They almost made me crazy with their questions.
Por poco **se sale** el tigre de la jaula.	The tiger came very near getting out of the cage.

79. Substitution of the Tenses of Coexistence for Those of Posteriority.—The indicative present is often substituted for the future, especially in familiar language, to indicate certainty or necessity regarding the future occurrence of that which the verb denotes, or to express a resolution or promise in an emphatic manner. Under similar circumstances, the copreterit takes the place of the postpreterit. This secondary use of the tenses of coexistence is much more common in Spanish than in English.

Mañana *hay* un eclipse de luna.	There is a lunar eclipse tomorrow.
El tren *sale* á las doce en punto.	The train leaves at twelve o'clock sharp.
El vapor *llega* el sábado.	The steamer arrives next Saturday.
Pepita *baila* esta noche en el teatro Central.	Pepita dances at the Central theater tonight.

Mañana *vengo* á verte.
I will come to see you tomorrow.

Espéreme aquí; *vuelvo* dentro de cinco minutos.
Wait for me here; I will be back within five minutes.

Sabíamos que el vapor *llegaba* esa tarde.
We knew that the steamer would arrive (*or*, was to arrive) that afternoon.

Me prometió que al día siguiente *venía* á verme.
He promised me that he would come to see me on the following day.

In all these examples, the present and the copreterit could be replaced by the future and the postpreterit, respectively; but this substitution would make the sentences both more formal and less forcible.

Mañana *habrá* un eclipse de luna.—El tren *saldrá* á las doce en punto.

Sabíamos que el vapor *llegaría* esa tarde.—Me prometió que al día siguiente *vendría* á verme.

80. Use of the Indicative Tenses of Posteriority to Express Uncertainty, Supposition, or Surprise.—In familiar style, the indicative future is employed to express supposition, conjecture, or uncertainty with respect to present events; and, with respect to past events, the postpreterit is employed with similar implications. Both the simple and the compound tenses of posteriority are used in this manner. The character of supposition or uncertainty they give to the sentence is usually directly expressed in English by the verb *to suppose*, by such adverbs as *possibly*, *likely*, or by *must*, which often has a conjectural value.

¿Dónde está don Eduardo?—*Estará* en su cuarto, pues él rara vez sale de noche.
Where is Mr. Edward?—Probably (*or*, I suppose) he is in his room, for he seldom goes out in the evening.

Sus amigos ya *sabrán* mucho español, pues hace tiempo que lo están estudiando.
Your friends must know (*or*, I suppose your friends know) a great deal of Spanish already, for they have been studying it a long time.

¿Qué hora es?—*Serán* las cinco y media.
What time is it?—I suppose (*or*, Probably) it is about half past five.

Usted *estará* cansada, señorita Carmen; aquí tiene usted una silla.	You must be tired, Miss Carmen; here is a chair for you.
¿Qué hora era cuando usted salió? —*Serían* las tres.	What time was it when you went out?—It may have been (*or*, I suppose it was) about three o'clock.
¿Dónde estaba don Pedro cuando usted estuvo en el hotel?—*Estaría* en la calle, pues no le ví.	Where was Mr. Peter when you were at the hotel?—I suppose he was out, for I did not see him.
Ya *habrá llegado* el presidente, pues oigo la banda tocando.	The president must have arrived already, for I hear the band playing.

Although the forms of **suponer,** *to suppose*, are implied in these tenses of posteriority, usage authorizes the tautological employment of those forms in combination with those tenses.

¿Donde está don Juan?—**Supongo** que *estará* en su cuarto.
Supongo que sus amigos ya *sabrán* mucho español.
¿Qué hora era cuando usted salió?—**Supongo** que *serían* las tres.

When, however, the forms of *suponer* are expressed, the tenses of posteriority may be replaced by those that ordinarily serve to express the time relations under consideration.

¿Dónde está don Juan?—*Supongo* que **está** en su cuarto.
¿Qué hora era cuando usted salió?—*Supongo* que **eran** las tres.

81. In a few expressions, as, **Así será,** *That may be*, the future expresses either doubt, condescension (granting for argument's sake), or indifference.

Este hombre ha venido muy bien recomendado.—*Así será*, pero yo no le confiaré mis negocios.	This man has come very well recommended.—That may be, but I will not entrust my business to him.
Pedro Duarte *tendrá* mucho dinero y *ocupará* una alta posición entre los comerciantes de esta ciudad, pero eso no prueba que sea un hombre de educación	Peter Duarte may have a great deal of money and may occupy a high position among the merchants of this city, but that does not prove that he is a man of education.

82. In interrogative sentences, the tenses of posteriority serve to express surprise or curiosity; the future relating to

present events, and the postpreterit to past events. In English, the normal tense of the verb is employed preceded by such expressions as *I wonder, I should like to know*, the sentence being affirmative in form; or by the infinitive of the verb preceded by *can*.

¿Dónde *estará* mi hermano?	I wonder where my brother is. Where can my brother be?
¿Qué le *habrá sucedido* á don Jorge?	I wonder what has happened to Mr. George. What can have happened to Mr. George?
¿Porqué no *llegaría* el vapor antes de ayer?	I wonder why the steamer did not arrive the day before yesterday.

83. In negative complex sentences in which the dependent proposition is an indirect question, the tenses of posteriority serve to express uncertainty, usually with the implication of wonder or bewilderment.

No sé dónde *estará* mi hermano.	I do not know where my brother can be.
No sé qué le *habrá sucedido* á don Jorge.	I do not know what can have happened to Mr. George.

84. In this secondary use of the verbal forms now under consideration, the compound future may be replaced by the simple postpreterit.

Ya *llegaría* (or, **Supongo** que ya *llegaría*) el presidente, pues oigo la banda tocando.

¿Qué le *sucedería* á don Jorge?

REMARK.—A similar application of the English potential (*should* followed by the infinitive), which is the literal translation of the Spanish postpreterit, is occasionally met with in Shakespeare.

"Where should he learn our language?" (*that is*, I wonder where he learned our language).	"¿Dónde *aprendería* él nuestro idioma?"
"Where should he find the liquor?" (*that is*, I wonder where he found the liquor).	"¿Dónde *encontraría* el licor?"

85. Use of the Indicative Future Instead of the Imperative.— In Spanish, as in English, the indicative

future form is employed instead of the imperative, in giving authoritative commands. In English, the auxiliary *will* is often substituted for *shall*, as a mark of politeness or modesty.

"No *matarás*."	"Thou shalt not kill."
"Al Señor tu Dios *adorarás*, y á él solo *servirás*."	"The Lord thy God shalt thou worship, and him alone shalt thou serve."
Los empleados *trabajarán* ocho horas todos los días, menos el domingo.	Employes shall work eight hours every day, except Sunday.
Coronel, usted *atacará* el ala izquierda del enemigo.	Colonel, you will attack the enemy's left wing.

86. The second person of the indicative future of **saber**, *to know*, is used in familiar style in the sense of *You must know*, or *I wish you to know*.

Sabrás que nuestros planes han fracasado.	You must know (*or*, I wish you to know) that our plans have failed.
Sabrá usted que yo también he sido actor.	You must know that I also have been an actor.

87. Secondary Uses of the Indicative Preterit. The indicative preterit is occasionally substituted:

1. For the indicative compound present, and even for the future, to express hopelessness, by representing the meaning of the verb as something that has already happened and is beyond all remedy.

Sabe, ingrata mujer, que nuestras relaciones *terminaron* para siempre.	Know, ungrateful woman, that our relations are forever ended.
Ya *perdí* toda esperanza.	I have already lost all hope.
Nos *mataron*, general, pues el enemigo nos tiene completamente rodeados.	We shall surely be killed (*or*, We are as good as killed), general, for the enemy has us entirely surrounded.

2. In poetry, for the indicative compound present, without any special implication, and simply for elegance.

"¿Cuándo no *fué* inconstante la fortuna?"	"When was not fortune fickle?"

88. Use of the Preterit Subjunctive Instead of the Compound Copreterit.—This substitution is mainly adapted to elevated style. As it is not very common, and its timely application requires a very good knowledge of the rhetoric of the language, the learner is advised to avoid it.

Así terminó sus días este valeroso mariscal—fusilado por los mismos soldados á quienes pocos años antes *condujera* (or, *había conducido*) á la victoria.	Thus ended his days this brave marshal — shot by the very soldiers whom a few years before he had led to victory.

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 9)

THE VERB—(Continued)

VERBAL DERIVATIVES

THE INFINITIVE

1. Substantive and Verbal Character of the Infinitive.—It has been already explained that the infinitive combines some of the distinguishing characteristics of the substantive with those of the verb. As a substantive, it can be, like other substantives, the subject or accusative of a verb, or the object of a preposition. These three offices are illustrated, in order, by the following examples:

Comprar y *vender* son ahora mi única ocupación.	To buy and to sell (*or*, Buying and selling) are now my only occupation.
La señorita Rosa desea *salir*.	Miss Rose wishes to go out.
Entró sin *saludar*, y se fué sin *despedirse*.	He came in without saluting, and left without saying good by.

The infinitive can be also a predicate substantive, often referring to another infinitive that performs in the sentence the office of subject.

"El reino de Dios no es *comer* y *beber*."	"The kingdom of God is not eating and drinking."
Vivir es **luchar** y **padecer**; *morir* es **descansar**.	To live is to struggle and to suffer; to die is to rest.

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

2. This verbal derivative may, like verbal time forms, have a subject or an accusative, or both; take oblique pronominal cases (which are usually placed after it), and be modified by adverbs.

Para *nosotros* **aceptar** *esa propuesta*, sería necesario que usted nos diese mejores garantías.	For us to accept that proposition, it would be necessary that you should give us better securities.

(*Nosotros* is the subject, and *esa propuesta* the accusative, of *aceptar*.)

Nacer *uno* pobre es una desgracia, no una falta.	For one to be born poor is a misfortune, not a fault.

(*Uno*, subject of *nacer*.)

"Para **administrar** *bien los intereses de la sociedad* es preciso **conocer***los perfectamente*."	"To administer well the interests of society, it is necessary to know them perfectly."

(*Bien* and *perfectamente*, adverbs modifying *administrar* and *conocer*, respectively; *los intereses de la sociedad*, accusative of *administrar; los*, accusative of *conocer*.)

It will be observed that the infinitive with its modifiers forms substantive phrases. Thus, in the last example, **administrar** *bien los intereses de la sociedad* is a substantive phrase serving as object to the preposition *para*, and **conocer***los perfectamente* is a substantive phrase performing the office of subject of the verb *es*.

In the following example, *el fuego* is the subject, and *nuestros almacenes* the accusative, of *destruír*, while the whole phrase *el fuego destruír nuestros almacenes* is the accusative of *vimos:*

Vimos *el fuego* **destruír** *nuestros almacenes*, mas no pudimos **impedir***lo*.	We saw the fire destroy our storehouses, but we could not prevent it.

Lo is the accusative of *impedir*, while the whole expression *impedirlo* is the accusative of *pudimos*.

3. The construction of the infinitive with the definite article was explained and illustrated in Part 5. Here it must

be added that, although the article is an adjective, it does not deprive the infinitive of its verbal character; that is, it does not exclude adverbial modifiers, pronominal cases, etc. The article is mainly used when the infinitive performs the functions of subject or is a predicate substantive.

El traducir **bien un idioma** es mucho más difícil que *el hablar***lo.**	To translate a language well is much more difficult than to speak it.
El vivir **tú tan lejos** nos impidió ir á verte.	Your living so far prevented us from going to see you.

In the first of these two examples, *traducir* is modified by the adverb *bien*, and has the accusative *un idioma;* while *hablar* has the accusative *lo.* In the second, *vivir* has the subject *tú* and is modified by the adverbial phrase *tan lejos.* Notice very particularly that in English the possessive adjective corresponding to the Spanish nominative pronoun is used with the present participle by which the Spanish infinitive is rendered.

4. Occasionally, the infinitive is employed as a pure substantive, being modified by adjectives and adjective phrases.

el **dulcísimo** *murmurar* **del arroyo**	the very sweet babbling of the stream
su *andar* **elegante; ese su** *mirar* **encantador**	his elegant gait (*literally*, walking); that charming (way of) looking of hers
Su tedioso *charlar* es **insoportable.**	His tiresome prattling is unbearable.
"Su amor con **tu** *morir* compraste."	"With thy death (*literally*, With thy dying) didst thou buy her love."

5. The indefinite pronoun **uno,** *one*, is very often employed as the subject of an infinitive, especially of **ser,** *to be*, followed by a predicate adjective; with infinitives modified by phrases containing possessive adjectives; and in giving the definitions of certain verbs, in which *uno* may also be used as the accusative or dative of the infinitive, to show the grammatical construction of the verb.

El *ser* **uno** *pobre* no es deshonra.	For one to be poor is no dishonor.
Matar **uno** *á* **su** *madre* es un crimen casi inconcebible.	For one to kill one's mother is an almost inconceivable crime.
Gustar*le* *á* **uno** algo es hallar placer en ello.	For one to like something is to find pleasure in it.
"Patriotismo": *amar* **uno** *á* **su** *patria*, ó el amor de la patria de **uno.**	"Patriotism": to love one's country, or the love of one's country.

With *ser* and a predicate adjective, *uno*, like *one* in English, may be omitted.

El **ser** *pobre* no es deshonra.

A possessive adjective should always refer to an expressed substantive. The following construction, although not uncommon, is entirely ungrammatical:

"Patriotismo": amar á *su* patria, ó el amor de *su* patria.

6. The Infinitive Preceded by Á.—The preposition *á* followed by an infinitive may form the protasis of a conditional sentence, usually, though not always, with implied negation. Whether or not negation is implied is indicated by the form of the verb in the apodosis.

Á tener yo (or, *Si* yo *tuviera*) el dinero que usted necesita, se lo prestaría con el mayor gusto.	If I had the money you need, I would loan it to you with the greatest pleasure.
Á no *llegar* mi equipaje (or, *Si* mi equipaje no *llega*) esta noche, tendré que comprar un vestido.	If my baggage does not arrive tonight, I shall have to buy a dress.

A peculiarity of this construction is that the simple infinitive may take the place of a compound verbal form.

Á saber yo (or, *Si* yo **hubiera sabido**) que ustedes estaban aquí, habría venido antes á verlos.	If I had known that you were here, I would have come to see you before.

Here, however, the **compound infinitive** (*haber* with

the participle of the verb) would be equally proper grammatically, and logically more so.

Á **haber sabido** yo que ustedes estaban aquí, habría venido antes á verlos.

7. Another use of the infinitive preceded by *á* is to indicate persistency or insistency, most always in contrasting expressions like the following:

Muy desagradable fué nuestra conversación: él *á pedir*, y yo *á negar;* él *á suplicar*, y yo *á reprender*.	Our conversation was very disagreeable: he bent on asking, and I on refusing; he eagerly beseeching, and I unyieldingly reprimanding.

As will be noticed, the translation of this Spanish sentence has been made very freely. The student may always be guided by the literal translation, which can be effected by means of the verb *to insist: he insisted on asking, and I on refusing; he insisted on beseeching, and I on reprimanding.*

8. The Infinitive Preceded by Al.—The contraction *al* followed by an infinitive denotes coexistence or immediate anteriority. The combination may sometimes be rendered by *on* or *when* followed by the present participle (literal equivalent of the Spanish gerund) of the verb, sometimes by this participle alone, sometimes by *as* or *when* in conjunction with a time form of the verb. *Estar al* followed by an infinitive may be rendered by *to be on the point of, to come very near*, followed by the present participle.

Lo primero que hicimos *al desembarcar* fué alquilar un intérprete.	The first thing we did on landing was to hire an interpreter.
Al ver á Bruto entre los conjurados, César exclamó: "¡Y tú también, Bruto, hijo mío!"	Seeing Brutus among the conspirators, Cæsar exclaimed: "And thou too, Brutus, my son!"
Dijo *al salir* que pronto volvería.	He said, when going out, that he would soon be back.
Al regresar de mi despacho, encontré su esquela en mi cuarto.	On returning from my office, I found your note in my room.

Al entrar yo á la secretaría, noté que los dos comisionados hablaban bajo, pero con grande agitación.	As I entered the secretary's office, I noticed that the two commissioners were speaking in a low tone, but with great agitation.
Estuvimos al **firmar** el contrato.	We came very near signing the contract.
La canoa *estuvo al* **voltearse.**	The canoe came very near upsetting.

9. The Infinitive Preceded by Con. — A phrase consisting of *con* and an infinitive is sometimes equivalent to a phrase formed by **aunque**, *although*, *notwithstanding*, and a time form of the verb. The tense to be used in this equivalent phrase depends on the time relations expressed by the other verbs in the sentence.

No recibió mi consejo, *con ser* yo (or, *aunque* yo *soy*) su mejor amigo.	He did not take my advice, although I am his best friend.
No pudo obtener la mano de la joven actriz, *con tener* (or, *aunque tenía*) varios millones de pesos.	He could not win the young actress's hand, notwithstanding his being worth several million dollars.

10. The Infinitive Preceded by De. — A phrase formed by the preposition *de* and an unmodified infinitive often follows a predicate adjective. The preposition is then generally rendered by the infinitive sign *to*.

El español es *difícil* **de aprender.**	Spanish is difficult to learn.
Esto no me parece *bueno* **de comer.**	This does not seem to me good to eat.
El problema no es *fácil* **de resolver.**	The problem is not easy to solve.

In all these examples, the quasi-reflexive form of the verb may be used in Spanish, and the passive voice in English, although the form just given is preferable.

El español es difícil de *aprender***se.**	Spanish is difficult to be learned.

There are cases, however, in which, while either the quasi-reflexive or the non-quasi-reflexive form may be employed in Spanish, only the passive voice is permissible in English.

El capitolio de Albany me pareció muy *digno* **de admirar** (or, *de admirar***se**).	The capitol of Albany seemed to me very worthy to be admired.

If the infinitive, instead of forming part of the predicate, forms part of the subject, the preposition *de* should be omitted.

Es *difícil* **aprender** *el español.*	It is difficult to learn Spanish.
No es *fácil* **resolver** *este problema.*	It is not easy to solve this problem.

11. When the infinitive of a verb denoting feeling, emotion, hope, belief, or other similar mental state, is preceded by *de* and a form of *ser*, it is generally rendered by *to be* followed by the participle of the verb. The Spanish infinitive may be used quasi-reflexively or not, at pleasure.

Es de sentir (or, *de sentir***se**) que países tan ricos gasten sus fuerzas y su riqueza en guerras civiles.	It is to be regretted that countries so rich should spend their strength and their wealth in civil wars.
Eso *es* muy *de temer* (or, *de temer***se**).	That is much to be feared.
No *es de creer* (or, *de creer***se**) que este tratado ponga fin á todas las dificultades.	It is not to be believed that this treaty will put an end to all the difficulties.
Es muy de desear (or, *desear***se**) que el gobierno publique un mapa completo de las nuevas colonias.	It is much to be desired that the government may publish a complete map of the new colonies.

12. *Ser de* is idiomatically used before an infinitive, sometimes in the sense of *to be surprising*, *to be remarkable*, *to be worth* (*looking at*, etc.), sometimes in that of *to be enough to*, *may well*. These idioms can be more easily illustrated than explained.

Es de ver cómo esta mujer, ciega, sorda y muda, escribe sobre los temas más complicados y difíciles.	It is surprising to see how this woman, blind, deaf, and mute, writes on the most complicated and difficult subjects.
Era de ver el buen tratamiento que los revolucionarios daban á sus prisioneros.	The good treatment that the revolutionists gave their prisoners was truly remarkable (*more literally*, worth noticing).
Los trabajos hidráulicos de los antiguos peruanos *son de sorprender* á los ingenieros de nuestros propios días.	The hydraulic works of the ancient Peruvians are enough to (*or*, may well) surprise the engineers of our own days.
Esto *es de volver* loco á cualquiera.	This is enough to make any one crazy.

In these constructions, **cosa**, *thing*, may be inserted before *de* without changing the meaning of the sentence.

Es **cosa** *de ver* cómo esta mujer, ciega, etc.	It is a surprising thing how this woman, blind, etc.
Era **cosa** *de ver* el buen tratamiento, etc.	The good treatment, etc. was worth noticing.

13. The Infinitive After Verbs of Perception. Verbs like **oír**, *to hear*, and **ver**, *to see*, denoting perceptions, may take an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as accusative. It is necessary to distinguish three cases; namely:

1. If the infinitive has neither subject nor accusative, it is usually rendered by the English present participle.

Oímos **cantar** en el cuarto siguiente.	We heard singing in the next room.
Nunca *he visto* **imprimir.**	I have never seen printing (done).

With subjectless verbs, however, the construction is the same in English as in Spanish, except that in the former language the infinitive takes the indefinite subject *it*.

¿Ha visto usted **nevar** alguna vez?	Have you ever seen it snow?
¿No *oyeron* ustedes **tronar?**	Did you not hear it thunder?

2. If the infinitive has a subject, and no accusative, it is rendered by the English infinitive. In Spanish, the infinitive

generally precedes its subject; in English, the subject of the infinitive, which is really the accusative of a verbal time form, must precede the infinitive.

Ví **caer** *la casa.*	I saw the house fall.
Oímos **pasar** *el tren.*	We heard the train pass (*or*, go by).
Esta mañana *oí* **entrar** al *cartero.*	I heard the letter carrier come in this morning.
¿Han visto ustedes **bailar** á *la Otero?*—Sí, señor, *la hemos visto* **bailar.**	Have you seen Miss Otero dance? —Yes, sir, we have.

In the last example, *la Otero* is represented by *la*, for, although that name is the subject of the infinitive, it is the accusative of *hemos visto.*

3. If the infinitive has an accusative, it is translated by the English participle, the latter being placed after the substantive rendering that accusative.

Yo *ví* **ahorcar** *al criminal.*	I saw the criminal hanged.
Oímos **cantar** *un bellísimo trozo de ópera.*	We heard a very beautiful opera selection sung.
¿Ha visto usted **imprimir** *un periódico?*	Have you seen a newspaper printed?
Nunca *había visto* **matar** *á un hombre* de una manera más cobarde.	I had never seen a man killed in a more cowardly manner.

This construction applies when the verb is preceded by an accusative case, which may be considered as the accusative either of the predicating verb or of the infinitive.

Lo *oímos* **calumniar.**	We heard him slandered.
Nunca **la** *había oído* **llamar** heroína.	I had never heard her called a heroine.
Los *vimos* **ultrajar** de mil maneras, sin poder defenderlos.	We saw them outraged in a thousand manners, without being able to defend them.

14. With transitive verbs, it may sometimes not be clear whether a substantive following an infinitive is the subject or the accusative of that infinitive. Thus, *Oí llamar al cartero* may mean either, *I heard the letter carrier call*, or,

I heard the letter carrier called. In such cases, ambiguity is removed by giving the sentence a different turn.

Oí que el cartero llamaba.	I heard the letter carrier call (*literally*, I heard that the letter carrier called).
Oí que llamaban al cartero.	I heard them call the letter carrier (*or*, I heard the letter carrier called).

15. The expression *oír decir* may be rendered by *to hear it said.*

"*He oído decir* que el sábado es un día desagradable para los que no tienen más que una camisa."	"I have heard it said that Saturday is an unpleasant day for those having but one shirt."

Usually, however, *to hear* alone is employed in English—a construction never allowed in Spanish.

Hemos oído decir que la casa de Figueroa y Compañía ha quebrado.	We have heard that the firm of Figueroa and Company has failed.
Ayer *oí decir* que el precio del carbón había bajado.	I heard yesterday that the price of coal had gone down.
¿Qué *ha oído* usted *decir* de mí?	What have you heard about me?

16. *Oír hablar de* is likewise rendered by *to hear of, to hear about;* and, conversely, *to hear of* should be rendered by *oír hablar de*, never by *oír de.*

¿No *ha oído* usted *hablar del* nuevo proceso para la manufactura del acero?	Have you not heard of the new process for the manufacture of steel?
He oído hablar mucho *de* esa cantatriz.	I have heard a great deal about that singer.
Hemos oído hablar de una compañía de seguros que acaba de establecerse en Quito.	We have heard of an insurance company that has just been started in Quito.

17. The Infinitive After Mandar and Hacer.—The construction of these verbs with infinitives is similar to that of *ver* and *oír* (Art. **13**). When so construed, *mandar* is

rendered by *to order*, and *hacer* by *to make*, except when the infinitive has an accusative (Art. **13**, 3), in which case *hacer* is always, and *mandar* often, rendered by *to have*. Sometimes, an infinitive following *mandar* and having an accusative is better rendered by *to be* followed by the participle of the verb, while sometimes the infinitive is not translated at all.

Mandé **venir** á mi secretario. (Art. **13**, 2.)	I ordered my secretary to come.
Nos *mandaron* **callar.**	We were ordered to keep silent.
El doctor *mandó* **sangrar** al paciente. (Art. **13**, 3.)	The doctor ordered the patient to be bled.
¿Dónde *mandó* usted **hacer** *ese terno?*	Where did you have that suit made?
Ayer *mandé* **hacer** un par de zapatos.	Yesterday I ordered a pair of shoes made.
Tengo que *mandar* **hacer** una casaca.	I have to have a dress coat made.
Pensamos *mandar* **construír** un ferrocarril de la ferrería á las minas.	We intend to have a railroad built from the iron works to the mines.
La semana pasada mandé **hacer** un saco, pero aún no está terminado.	Last week I ordered a coat made, but it is not yet finished.
Hemos mandado **empacar** esos géneros en cajas pequeñas, para poderlas trasportar en mulas.	We have ordered those goods to be packed in small boxes, so as to be able to transport them on mules.
El juez *hizo* **hablar** al reo.	The judge made the culprit speak.
Se nos *hizo* **salir** del cuarto.	We were made to go out of the room.
El juez *hizo* **traer** al reo.	The judge had the culprit brought.
Pensamos *hacer* **construír** un nuevo sistema de desagües.	We intend to have a new sewerage system built.
Mi socio me escribió que *hiciera* **despachar** estos artículos por el vapor de mañana.	My partner wrote to me to have these articles sent off by to-morrow's steamer.
Todavía no *hemos hecho* **autenticar** el conocimiento de embarque.	We have not yet had the bill of lading authenticated.

18. *Mandar*, meaning *to send*, is used in elliptical expressions in which **alguien**, *some one*, is understood as its accusative. The infinitive is then usually preceded by *á*.

Mande **á preguntar** á qué hora sale el tren.	Send (some one) to ask at what time the train leaves.
Anoche *mandámos* **á buscar** un ejemplar de ese libro, pero fué imposible encontrar ninguno.	Last night we sent (some one) to look for a copy of that book, but it was impossible to find any.

19. *Mandar decir* is *to send word.*

Le *mandé decir* á mi tío que estuviese aquí á las ocho.	I sent word to my uncle to be here at eight.

20. When *hacer* means *to cause*, *to make*, and is preceded by an accusative case and followed by a pronominal verb, the latter loses the pronominal case characteristic of this class of verbs; or, more properly speaking, the verb is not used pronominally. The same principle applies to **mandar,** *to order*, *to command.*

Me *hicieron* **acostar** (not, *acostar***me**).	They made me go to bed.
Nos *mandaron* **sentar** (not, *sentar***nos**).	They ordered (*or*, asked) us to sit down.

21. The Infinitive Preceded by Que.—The expressions *haber que*, and *tener que*, followed by an infinitive, mean, respectively, *to be necessary to*, and *to have to.* Here *que* may be considered as the equivalent of the English infinitive sign *to.*

Había que **impedir** la anarquía que amenazaba la república.	It was necessary to prevent the anarchy that threatened the republic.
Tuvimos que **ceder** á la fuerza.	We had to yield to force.

22. There are a few other verbs with which *que* is also used in the sense of *to*, although its employment is optional.

Aún falta *que* **probar** que los filipinos sean capaces de gobernarse á sí mismos. Aún falta *probar* que los filipinos sean capaces de gobernarse á sí mismos.	It still remains to be proved that the Filipinos are capable of governing themselves.

23. The phrases *no tener más que*, *no haber más que*, followed by an infinitive, are rendered by *the only thing to do is to*, or a similar expression.

No hay más que **entregarse.**	The only thing to do is to surrender.
No tenemos más que **entregarnos.**	We have nothing left but to surrender.

24. Elliptical Expressions.—The infinitive preceded by a relative occurs in a great many elliptical expressions in which the forms of **poder**, *to be able*, and often the antecedent of the relative, are understood. In the following sentences, there is no ellipsis, either in Spanish or in English:

No tengo **nada** *que* **pueda** ponerme.	I have nothing that I can put on.
No tengo **dinero** con *que* **pueda** pagar mis deudas.	I have no money with which I may pay my debts.
Encontrámos **un lugar** *donde* **pudimos** desembarcar.	We found a place where we could land.
No sabemos **ningún modo** *como* **podamos** refutar esa acusación.	We do not know any way in which we can refute that accusation.
No conocíamos **persona** *á quien* **pudiésemos** dirigirnos.	We did not know any person to whom we might address ourselves.
No sabemos **cosa** *que* **podamos** hacer.	We do not know anything that we can do.

While these sentences are grammatically correct, they are both inelegant and unusual, and would generally be replaced by the elliptical forms given below. As will be observed, the ellipsis cannot always be carried so far in English as in Spanish.

No tengo *que* ponerme.	I have nothing to put on.
No tengo con *que* pagar mis deudas.	I have no money to pay my debts with.
Encontrámos *donde* desembarcar.	We found where to land.
No sabemos *como* refutar esa acusación.	We do not know how to refute that accusation.

No conocíamos á *quien* dirigirnos.	We did not know any one that we might address ourselves to.
No sabemos *que* hacer.	We do not know what to do.

25. The Infinitive in Imperative and in Exclamatory Sentences.—This verbal derivative occasionally takes the place of the imperative, as in the following examples:

"*Obedecer*, y callemos."	"Let us obey, and be silent."
"Repito lo que dije á ustedes en otra [carta] mía: *estarse* quietas, y no *tentar* á la fortuna."	"I repeat what I said to you in another letter of mine: keep still, and do not tempt fortune."
Resistir hasta que perezca el último soldado.	Resist until the last soldier has perished.

26. It is also employed in exclamations, and in interrogative sentences implying surprise, indignation, or some such sudden emotion.

Ahora, *¡escaparnos!*	Now, to escape!
¿Pedir nosotros la paz?—¡Nunca, nunca!	We to ask for peace?—Never, never!

THE GERUND

27. The Gerund as an Adverb.—One of the most common functions of the gerund is to modify a verb, after the manner of an adverb, although at the same time expressing a condition or action of the subject or accusative of the verb.

Pedro *vino* **cantando.**	Peter came singing.
Lo *encontré* **escribiendo.**	I found him writing.
Allí *vienen* nuestras niñitas **corriendo.**	There come our little girls running.
Ese hombre se *enriqueció* **robando.**	That man made himself rich by robbery (*more literally*, by robbing).

As will be observed, the preposition *by*, which followed by a present participle indicates manner or means, is not translated into Spanish, the gerund alone being equivalent to the English prepositional phrase thus formed.

Hay doctrinas y teorías que se combaten más fácilmente *despreciándolas* que *refutándolas*.	There are doctrines and theories that are more easily fought by ignoring than by refuting them.

The progressive form of verbs is but a special case of the adverbial function of the gerund. In that form, the gerund modifies the verb *estar*, and indicates besides a condition or state of the subject.

Mi hermana *estaba* **cantando** y mi padre *estaba* **escribiendo.**	My sister was singing, and my father was writing.

28. Verbal Character of the Gerund.—This derivative, like the infinitive, differs from time forms in that it does not by itself indicate time with respect to the moment of speaking, and resembles them in that it can have a subject or an accusative, and be modified by abverbs.

Encontré á **don Pedro** *leyendo* **su carta muy atentamente,** y *comparándo*la con la mía.	I found Mr. Peter reading your letter very attentively, and comparing it with mine.

In this example, *don Pedro* is the subject of both *leyendo* and *comparando; leyendo* has the accusative *su carta* and is modified by the adverbial phrase *muy atentamente;* and *comparando* has the accusative *la*. It was explained in Part 2 that a pronominal case is placed after, forming one word with, the infinitive, the gerund, or the imperative, when these verbal forms require such cases.

The progressive form may be viewed in two manners: either as a compound form of the verb whose gerund occurs in it, in which case pronominal cases should follow the rules applying to compound forms with *haber*, that is, should precede the auxiliary; or as a phrase consisting of *estar* modified by the gerund of the verb, in which case the pronominal case, being treated as referring to the gerund alone, should follow the gerund. As the progressive form can in all cases be interpreted in both of these ways, the two corresponding positions of the pronominal case are equally proper.

Lo *hemos estado aguardando* desde las tres. *Hemos estado aguardándo***lo** desde las tres.	We have been waiting for you since three o'clock.

In the first of these two forms, the verb is *hemos estado aguardando*, which is the compound present of *estar aguardando*. In the second, *hemos estado*, that is, the compound present of *estar*, is considered as the verb in the sentence, and *aguardando* as an adverbial modifier which, partaking in some respects of the nature of a verb, takes the accusative *lo*.

29. The Gerund as the Equivalent of Either a Conjunction or a Relative Adverb and a Time Form. In stating a cause, reason, manner, or circumstance, the gerund of a verb is used as equivalent to, and may take the place of, either a conjunction or a relative adverb followed by a time form of the same verb.

El hombre, *creyendo* que el universo había sido hecho para él, creyó también que la tierra era el centro de la creación física. *Como* el hombre *creía* que el universo había sido hecho para él, etc.	Man, believing that the universe had been made for him, believed also that the earth was the center of physical creation. As man believed that the universe had been made for him, etc.
Siéndome imposible vender aquí esas mercancías, se las devuelvo. *Como* me *es* imposible vender aquí esas mercancías, etc.	It being impossible for me to sell those wares here, I return them to you. As it is impossible for me to sell those wares here, etc.
Es difícil no cometer errores *tratando* un asunto tan vasto. Es difícil no cometer errores *cuando* uno *trata* un asunto tan vasto.	It is difficult not to commit errors when treating so vast a subject. It is difficult not to commit errors when one is treating so vast a subject.
El almirante, *conociendo* el carácter traicionero de los indios, resolvió no desembarcar de noche. *Como* el almirante *conocía* el carácter traicionero de los indios, etc.	The admiral, knowing the treacherous disposition of the Indians, decided not to land at night. As the admiral knew the treacherous disposition of the Indians, etc.

Reemplazando los valores de *a* y *b*, y *resolviendo* la ecuación, resulta.	Replacing the values of *a* and *b*, and solving the equation, there results.
Si se reemplazan (or, *Si reemplazamos*) los valores de *a* y *b*, y *se resuelve* (*or*, y *resolvemos*) la ecuación, resulta.	If the values of *a* and *b* are replaced, and the equation is solved, there results.
Estas dos palabras se combinan *formando* una sola.	These two words combine forming a single one.
Estas dos palabras se combinan *y forman* una sola.	These two words combine and form a single one.
El ladrón, *sacando* un puñal de debajo de la capa, saltó sobre el indefenso pasajero.	The robber, drawing out a dagger from under his cloak, sprang upon the defenseless wayfarer.
El ladrón *sacó* un puñal de debajo de la capa, *y* saltó, etc.	The robber drew out a dagger from under his cloak, and sprang, etc.
Entregué su carta al gobernador, quien, *habiéndola leído* muy atentamente, me dijo que volviera al día siguiente por la contestación.	I delivered your letter to the governor, who, having read it very attentively, told me to come back the following day for the answer.
Entregué su carta al gobernador, quien, *luégo que* la *hubo leído* muy atentamente, etc.	I delivered your letter to the governor, who, when he had read it very attentively, etc.

The combination *habiendo leído* is the **compound gerund** of *leer*. In general, the compound gerund of any verb is formed by combining the gerund of *haber* with the participle of the verb.

30. The Gerund as an Adjective.—It was stated in Part 2 that the gerund cannot perform the office of a pure adjective, or, what is the same thing, take the place of a relative pronoun and a time form in a restrictive proposition. There are two exceptions to this rule:

1. The gerund *hirviendo*, of **hervir**, *to boil*, is used as an adjective in the expression *agua* **hirviendo**, *boiling water*.

2. In exclamations and in short descriptive statements, such as occur in the titles of pictures, the gerund of a verb denoting an action may be employed as an adjective.

El general Wáshington *cruzando* el Delaware.	General Washington crossing the Delaware.
Aníbal *jurando* odio eterno á los romanos.	Hannibal swearing eternal hatred to the Romans.
¡Un hombre *ahogándose!*	A man drowning!

31. The Gerund After En. — The only preposition that can take a gerund as its object is *en*, in combinations denoting immediate anteriority. This preposition is then rendered by *on*, if the present participle is used in English, or by *when*, *after*, *as soon as*, or a similar time expression, if a time form is used.

En acabando esta carta, atenderé á ese asunto.	On finishing this letter, I shall attend to that matter.
En almorzando saldremos.	We shall go out immediately after breakfast (*literally*, after breakfasting).
Dijo que, *en pasando* el verano, vendría á vernos.	He said that, as soon as the summer was over, he would come to see us.

There is a peculiar idiom that consists in adding *que* and a time form of the verb to a gerund preceded by *en*. The addition of this phrase does not alter the meaning of the gerund. Thus, *en llegando* **que lleguemos** is equivalent to **en llegando,** *on arriving*, *on our arrival*, or, *as soon as we arrive*. Of course, the mere expression *en llegando* does not show what the subject is to which the gerund refers, but the rest of the sentence always does.

En llegando al puerto, envié mis credenciales al ministro colombiano.	On arriving at the port, I sent my credentials to the Colombian minister.
En llegando del teatro, empezaron á discutir los méritos y defectos de las actrices.	When they arrived from the theater, they began to discuss the merits and defects of the actresses.

The subject of the first two of these gerunds is **yo,** *I;* that of the second, **ellos,** *they*.

32. The Gerund With Andar and Ir.—Ordinarily, *ir* means *to go*, and *andar*, either *to go*, *to move*, or *to walk*. Followed by a gerund, however, these verbs undergo a change of meaning: *ir* then either means *to begin*, or denotes a gradual or continued performance of the action, or realization of the condition, denoted by the gerund; while *andar* means *to be*, with the implication of motion or action of some kind.

Voy entendiendo el objeto de su visita.	I begin to understand the object of your visit.
Él *anda buscando* una colocación.	He is looking (*or*, *in more familiar language*, He is looking around) for a situation.
Vaya arreglando los baúles mientras yo voy al correo.	Begin to pack (*or*, You may be packing) the trunks while I go to the post office.
Ya *vamos principiando* á hacernos entender en español.	We already begin to make ourselves understood in Spanish.
Se *va haciendo* tarde.	It is growing late.
La gente *anda diciendo* que usted piensa divorciarse.	People are saying (*or*, There is a rumor going around) that you intend to obtain a divorce.

33. The English expressions *to be going*, *to be coming*, are rendered by *ir* and *venir*, respectively, and *never* literally.

Tengo mucho sueño, y *voy* á acostarme.	I am very sleepy, and am going to bed.
¿Adónde *va* usted, señor Aldana?	Where are you going, Mr. Aldana?
¿*Van* ustedes al teatro esta noche?	Are you going to the theater tonight?
¿Adónde *iba* usted tan aprisa esta mañana?	Where were you going so fast this morning?
Mi padre *viene* á comer conmigo esta noche.	My father is coming to dine with me this evening.

34. Gerunds as Pure Adverbs.—A few gerunds are used as pure adverbs. Among them may be mentioned *callando*, from **callar**, *to be* (or *keep*) *silent*, and *corriendo*, from **correr**, *to run*. The former of these two gerunds is used in the sense of **calladamente**, *quietly*, *silently*, and the

second, in that of **aprisa**, *fast, quickly*. As in the case of other adverbs, diminutive endings are, in familiar and lively style, added to these adverb gerunds to intensify their meaning. (See Part 5).

Éntre *callando***ito**, no sea que lo oigan.	Go in very quietly, lest they should hear you.
Alfredo, vaya *corriendo***ito** y llame al doctor.	Alfred, go and call the doctor as quickly as you can (*or*, Alfred! quick! run for the doctor).

THE PARTICIPLE—ABSOLUTE CLAUSES

35. The Adjective Participle and the Substantive Participle Defined.—When the participle combines with *haber* for the formation of compound tenses, it is called the **substantive participle**; when it performs other functions, the **adjective participle.** The term *participle* employed by itself without any qualification serves to denote the adjective participle, unless direct reference is made to compound tenses.

36. Compound Tenses Formed With Ser.—In poetry, and in a few common phrases, the verb *ser*, like *to be* in English, is used instead of *haber* for the formation of compound tenses. In all such cases, however, *haber* is equally proper in Spanish, as *to have* is in English. The construction with *ser* differs from that with *haber* in that, while in the compound form with the latter verb the participle is invariable and must follow the auxiliary, in the compound form with *ser* the participle agrees with its subject in gender and number, and may precede the auxiliary.

Es *llegad***a** (or, *Llegad***a es**) la hora de la prueba.	The hour of trial is come.
Cuando el oficial entró, los prisioneros **eran** *idos*.	When the officer entered, the prisoners were gone.
Mis padres **eran** *muertos* entonces.	My parents were dead (*or*, had died) then.
Era *venid***a** la ocasión de redimir el honor de la armada.	The occasion to redeem the honor of the navy was come.

In all cases of doubt, the learner should employ *haber*, which is always proper, while *ser* seldom is.

Ha llegado la hora de la prueba.
Cuando el oficial entró, los prisioneros se *habían* ido.
Mis padres *habían* muerto entonces.
Había venido la ocasión de redimir el honor de la armada.

37. The Adjective Participle. — This verbal derivative usually performs the functions of a pure adjective, agreeing with its substantive in number and gender. Unlike the infinitive and the gerund, it takes neither a subject nor an accusative, and, in short, is in no way construed like a verb. The only exception to this rule is the participle combined with *ser* in the passive voice, which was fully treated in Part 7.

38. Absolute Clauses. — In English grammar, the term *clause* is given to each of the propositions forming a complex sentence (see Part 6, The Subjunctive and the Hypothetic Mode). In Spanish, this term has a wider signification, it being applied to any group of words, whether containing a verbal time form or not, serving to explain or characterize a preceding word or group of words.

An **absolute clause** is an explanatory or descriptive substantive phrase whose principal substantive (if there are more than one) is the subject or accusative of a tacit gerund, such as **siendo**, *being;* **teniendo**, *having;* **trayendo**, *bringing;* etc., or the object of the tacit preposition **con**, *with*. The tacit gerund is always plainly indicated by the context.

Llegámos en la estación de las lluvias, *los ríos crecidos* y *los caminos impasables*.

We arrived in the rainy season, the rivers being overflooded and the roads impassable.

Empezó entonces Jesús su memorable marcha hacia el Gólgota, *á cuestas el instrumento ignominioso de su muerte*, *abandonado de sus amigos* y *escarnecido por sus verdugos*, y, al mismo

Jesus then began his memorable march toward Golgotha, (carrying) on his shoulders the ignominious instrument of his death, (being) forsaken by his friends and mocked by his

tiempo, *la resignación en el rostro* y *el perdón en el corazón.*	executioners; and, at the same time, (showing) resignation in his countenance and (feeling) forgiveness in his heart (*or*, *better*, with resignation depicted on his countenance, and his heart filled with forgiveness).

In these examples, **estando,** *being*, might be introduced before *los ríos;* **llevando,** *carrying*, or **con,** *with*, before *á cuestas;* **estando,** *being*, or **viéndose,** *seeing himself*, before *abandonado* and *escarnecido;* **mostrando,** *showing*, or **con,** *with*, before *la resignación;* and **sintiendo,** *feeling*, or **con,** *with*, before *perdón*. The elliptic form is, however, much more elegant, and better adapted to elevated style.

39. The Participle in Absolute Clauses.—The participle is of frequent occurrence in introducing an absolute clause. Although, in such constructions, it sometimes takes the place of a compound gerund, it agrees in number and gender with the substantive it modifies. If the gerund *habiendo* is expressed, the participle becomes invariable, unless it follows the compound gerund of *ser* (*habiendo sido*).

El presidente, *terminada la carta que estaba escribiendo*, se levantó de su asiento.	The president, having finished the letter he was writing, rose from his seat.
Muerta la emperatriz, su hijo adoptó una política más liberal.	The empress being dead, her son adopted a more liberal policy.
Destruídos los puentes por la creciente, era imposible cruzar el río.	The bridges having been destroyed by the freshet, it was impossible to cross the river.
Dichas estas palabras, salió con precipitación.	Having said these words, he left hurriedly.

Supplying the tacit gerunds, these sentences may be replaced by the following:

El presidente, *habiendo terminado* la carta que estaba escribiendo, se levantó de su asiento.

Habiendo muerto la emperatriz, su hijo adoptó una política más liberal.

Habiendo **sido** los puentes *destruídos* por la creciente, era imposible cruzar el río.

Habiendo dicho estas palabras, salió con precipitación.

40. The principal substantive in an absolute clause is often omitted, being understood.

El presidente del senado leyó el segundo párrafo del mensaje, y, *leído*, procedió á interpretarlo.	The speaker of the senate read the second paragraph of the message, and having read it (*more literally*, and, it having been read), proceeded to interpret it.

41. The Participle Followed by Que and a Verb. As will be observed, the participle introducing an absolute clause usually indicates immediate anteriority. The same relation may be expressed by a compound preterit preceded by *luégo que*, *cuando*, etc. (See Part 8, Primary Meanings of the Tenses.)

El presidente, *luégo que* **hubo terminado** la carta que estaba escribiendo, etc.

Luégo que **hubo dicho** estas palabras, salió con precipitación.

El presidente del senado leyó el segundo párrafo del mensaje, y *luégo que* lo **hubo leído,** etc.

A notable construction consists in omitting the adverb *luégo*, placing the participle followed by *que* before the preterit of *haber*. The first two of the three sentences just given may be replaced by these, which have the same meanings, respectively:

El presidente, *terminado* **que** *hubo* la carta que estaba escribiendo, etc.

Dicho **que** *hubo* estas palabras, salió con precipitación.

This inversion is not permissible when the compound preterit is accompanied by a pronominal case, as in the third example given at the beginning of this article.

42. A similar inversion occurs with the verb *ser*, both in the passive voice and when *ser* takes the place of *haber* in compound tenses (Art. **36**).

Llegada **que** *fué* la hora, las carabelas de Colón se dieron á la vela.	When the hour arrived, Columbus's caravels set sail.
Muerto **que** *fué* César, Bruto se puso á la cabeza del ejército republicano.	Cæsar having been killed, Brutus placed himself at the head of the republican army.

43. The constructions treated in the last two articles are but special cases of the general rule that *que*, placed between a participle and a verb, is equivalent to **cuando**, *when*, followed by the verb and the participle.

Acabado **que** *haya* (**Cuando** *haya acabado*) este inventario, le daré los cheques que usted desea.	When I have finished this inventory, I will give you the checks you wish.
Construída **que** *esté* la casa (**Cuando** la casa *esté construída*), nos mudaremos á ella.	As soon as the house is built, we shall move into it.

44. The Participle Preceded by Antes De, Después De, Etc.—The time expressions **antes de**, *before;* **después de**, *after;* **luégo de**, *immediately after;* and a few others may precede a participle in absolute clauses, but, instead of a gerund, one of the infinitives *ser*, *estar*, or *haber* is understood before the participle. In English, however, the present participle is employed, as the infinitive cannot be the object of a preposition.

Después de *salvados* (*haber salvado*) los pasajeros, se empezó á sacar el cargamento en remolcadores y botes de remos.	The passengers having been saved, the cargo began to be removed in lighters and rowboats.
Antes de *recibida* (*haber recibido*) la noticia, le habíamos enviado á usted un cablegrama.	Before receiving the news, we had sent you a cablegram.
Después de *muerto* (*haber muerto*) el jefe, sus seguidores se desbandaron.	After the chieftain was killed, his followers disbanded.

Luégo de *dada* (*ser dada*) la orden que excluía á los jesuítas de los cargos públicos, se procedió á llenar con empleados laicos los puestos que aquéllos ocupaban.	The order excluding the Jesuits from public offices having been given, measures were taken to fill with lay employes the positions that they (the Jesuits) occupied.

This use of the participle is mainly adapted, and almost exclusively restricted, to clauses referring to quasi-reflexive constructions.

USES OF SOME IMPORTANT VERBS

ACABAR

45. **Acabar,** *to finish;* also, *to end*, and *to come to an end.*

Aún no *hemos acabado* el sobretodo de usted.	We have not yet finished your overcoat.
Napoleón *acabó* sus días en Santa Elena.	Napoleon ended his days at St. Helena.
Esta novela *acaba* muy mal.	This novel ends very poorly.

46. **Acabarse**, *to be ended*, *to be over;* also, *to become exhausted.* The preterit and the compound present of this verb are often rendered by the present of the corresponding English verb.

Ya *se acabó* la guerra.	The war is already over.
Se ha acabado el oro en las minas del Perú.	The gold in the mines of Peru is exhausted.

47. With a dative case, *acabarse* is construed like *ocurrirse* and *figurarse* (see Part 7, Pronominal Verbs), and may usually be rendered by *to run out of.*

Se **nos** *acabó* el carbón.	We ran out of coal.
*Habiéndose***les** *acabado* los víveres, los exploradores tuvieron que alimentarse de sus perros.	Having run out of provisions, the explorers had to feed on their dogs.
Se **me** *ha acabado* la esperanza.	I have lost hope (*more literally*, My hope is exhausted).

48. Acabar de.—This phrase, followed by an infinitive, is sometimes equivalent to the English *to finish* followed by a present participle, sometimes to the expression *to have just* followed by a past participle (literal equivalent of the Spanish participle). The circumstances always indicate which of the two meanings is intended.

Cuando **acabe de** *traducir* esas circulares, haga sacar dos copias de la traducción.	When you have finished translating those circulars, have two copies of the translation taken.
Acabamos de *recibir* su muy atenta carta del cuatro del pasado.	We have just received your kind favor of the 4th ultimo (*literally*, your very attentive letter of the 4th past).
La función **acababa de** *principiar* cuando se descubrió el fuego.	The performance had just begun when the fire was discovered.
Creo que el doctor Peña **acaba de** *salir*.	I think Dr. Peña has just gone out.

ALCANZAR

49. Alcanzar, *to reach;* also, *to overtake:* transitive in both senses.

Hágame el favor de *alcanzar*me ese libro.	Please reach me that book.
El posta nos *alcanzó* en el puente.	The courier overtook us at the bridge.

50. Alcanzar á ver, *to espy, to descry, to see in the distance;* **alcanzarse á ver,** *to be seen in the distance, to be discernible.*

De la cumbre del cerro de San Juan *alcanzámos á ver* la ciudad.	From the top of St. John Hill we discerned the city.
De allí *alcanzábamos á ver* la boca del río.	From there we could see the mouth of the river in the distance.
Desde el vapor *se alcanzaba á ver* el puente colgante de Brooklyn.	From the steamer we could see the Brooklyn suspension bridge.
Aún no *se alcanza á ver* tierra.	We cannot see land yet (*literally*, Land cannot yet be seen).

51. In general, *alcanzar á*, followed by an infinitive denoting perception, indicates effort or difficulty; followed by an infinitive denoting an act of the understanding, it denotes capacity, possibility. In the latter case, it may be rendered by *to be able, can*.

Aunque hablaban en voz muy baja, **alcancé á** *oír* varias frases referentes á la conspiración.	Although they were speaking in a very low voice, I overheard (*or*, could make out) several phrases relating to the conspiracy.
No **alcanzo á** *comprender* la lógica de semejante argumento.	I cannot understand the logic of such an argument.

ALEGRARSE

52. This verb means *to be glad, to rejoice*. It is usually followed by *de*, but this preposition may be omitted before an infinitive or a proposition. If the cause of the feeling denoted by the verb is expressed by a proposition, this proposition should be introduced by the announcing *que*, and its verb should be subjunctive.

Me alegro **del** buen resultado de su empresa.	I am glad of the good result of your enterprise.
Nos alegramos **de que** usted esté mejor.	We are glad that you are better.
Nos alegramos **que** usted esté mejor.	
Me alegro mucho **de** verlo.	I am very glad to see you.
Me alegro mucho verlo.	

ANDAR

53. This verb means *to go*, in the general sense of *to move;* it also means *to walk*, in the sense of *to be moving about, to be on the go*. When *to go* means motion to or toward a definite place, it is rendered by *ir;* and when *to walk* is taken literally in the sense of self-locomotion, it is rendered by *caminar*. The combination *ir andando* (literally, *to go going*) means *to be going, to be moving*.

Mi reloj no *anda* bien.—El mío no *anda*, ni bien ni mal.	My watch does not go well.—Mine does not go, either well or badly.
Estoy cansadísimo, pues he estado *andando* (or, *caminando*) todo el día.	I am exceedingly tired, for I have been walking the whole day.
El caballo no quiere *andar*.	The horse will not go.
Anoche *fuimos* al teatro.	We went to the theater last night.
Mañana *iremos* á visitar el museo.	We shall go to visit the museum tomorrow.
Este niñito todavía no *camina*.	This little boy does not walk yet.
El vapor *va andando* muy aprisa.	The steamer is going very fast.
El tren *iba andando* á razón de quince leguas por hora.	The train was going at the rate of fifteen leagues per hour.

BEBER

54. This verb means *to drink*, but is an unrefined term seldom applied to people, except in the sense of *to drink liquor* (usually with the implication that the person drinks to excess). In polite language, it is replaced by **tomar**, *to take*.

El caballo está *bebiendo*.	The horse is drinking.
Juan López se ha arruinado *bebiendo* y jugando.	John Lopez has ruined himself by drinking and gambling.
La señorita Amelia está *tomando* café.	Miss Amelia is drinking coffee.

CABER

55. Primary Meaning.—This verb literally means *to be containable in* or *capable of being put into* or *through; there to be room for*. It usually precedes its subject, and may be rendered either by *to go into*, *to go through*, or *there to be room for*, or by changing the construction and employing the verb *to hold*, as in some of the following examples:

En esta caja no *caben* más botellas.	This box does not hold any more bottles.
Me parece que por este agujero no *cabe* un hombre.	It seems to me that a man cannot get through this hole (*or*, that this hole is not large enough for a man to go through).

En este teatro *caben* seis mil personas.	This theater holds six thousand persons.
Aquí no *cabe* más gente.	There is no room here for any more people.

The object of the preposition *en* in the first and in the third example may be treated as a dative, *á* being substituted for *en*, and a dative case used before the verb.

Á esta caja no *le* caben más botellas.
Á este teatro *le* caben seis mil personas.

56. Extended Meaning.—By extension, *caber* is employed to indicate capability or adaptability.

Semejantes fantasías no *caben* sino en un ánimo enfermo.	Such fancies cannot be entertained but by a diseased mind (*or*, Such fancies can occur but to a diseased mind).
Eso no *cabe* en cabeza humana.	That is inconceivable, *or*, No one would think of such a thing (*literally*, No human brain can hold that).

57. Caberle á uno, *to fall to one, to have:* said of fate, fortune, etc.

Nos *cupo* muy mala suerte.	We had very bad luck.
Á nuestros descendientes les *cabrá* mejor suerte que la que **nos** *ha cabido* **á nosotros.**	A better lot will fall to our descendants than that which has fallen to us.

58. Si cabe, *if that is possible.*

Supongamos, *si cabe*, que España venza á los Estados Unidos.	Let us suppose, if that is possible, that Spain may defeat the United States.

COBRAR

59. The following are the commonest meanings of this verb:

1. *To demand payment;* and, when the demand is repeatedly made, *to press for payment, to dun.*

Hoy voy á *cobrar*les á González Hijos lo que me deben.
Les *hemos cobrado* mucho á esos hombres, pero aún no nos han pagado.
Le pagaré cuando pueda: hágame el favor de no *cobrar*me más.
Toral y Pérez nos han escrito una larga carta *cobrándo*nos lo que les debemos.
Hace más de seis meses que Núñez y Cía. nos deben esa suma, y creo que no nos la pagarán si no les *cobramos*. Escríbales una carta *cobrándo*les, y dígales que no podemos aguardarlos más.

Today I am going to ask Gonzalez Sons for what they owe me.
We have demanded payment from those men many times, but they have not yet paid us.
I shall pay you when I can; please do not dun me any more.
Toral and Perez have written us a long letter asking us to pay them what we owe them.
Nuñez and Co. have owed us that amount for over a month, and I think they will not pay us if we do not ask them for it. Write them a letter asking them to send the money, and tell them we cannot wait for them any longer.

2. *To collect money due;* also, *to have . . . . cashed.*

Aún no hemos podido *cobrar* esta cuenta.
¿Cuánto *ha cobrado* usted hoy?—De las ocho cuentas que usted me dijo que *cobrara*, no he podido *cobrar* sino tres, que ascienden á unos $125.
Tenga la bondad de ir al banco y *cobrar* (or, *hacer efectivo*) este cheque.

We have not yet been able to collect this bill.
How much have you collected today?—Of the eight bills you told me to collect, I have been able to collect only three, which amount to some $125.
Please go to the bank and have this check cashed.

3. *To charge.*

En ese restaurante *cobran* (or, *llevan*) demasiado.

They charge too much at that restaurant.

CREER

60. This verb serves to denote:

1. Conviction or faith: it is then rendered by *to believe*.

¿*Cree* usted en Dios?
"Quien en mí *creyere*, se salvará."

Do you believe in God?
"Whosoever shall believe in me, shall be saved."

2. Conjecture: it is then rendered by *to think*.

Creo que el vapor llegará hoy ó mañana.	I think the steamer will arrive today or tomorrow.
¿Está aquí el señor Toral?—No, señor; pero *creo* que volverá pronto.	Is Mr. Toral here?—No, sir, but I think he will soon return.

CUMPLIR

61. Non-Pronominal Form.—This form is employed:

1. In the sense of *to fulfil* (as one's duty), or *to keep* (as one's word). It may be used either as a transitive verb, or as an intransitive verb followed by *con*. Its accusative (or the preposition *con* and its object) is often omitted, being understood.

Quien no *cumple* su palabra no merece el respeto de sus semejantes.	He who does not keep his word does not deserve the respect of his fellow beings.
"La Inglaterra espera que cada cual *cumplirá con* su deber."	"England expects that every one will do his duty."
Me dijo que vendría esta mañana, pero no *cumplió* (*that is*, no *cumplió* **su promesa**).	He told me he would come this morning, but he did not keep his promise.
Siento mucho no *haberte cumplido* (*that is*, no *haberte cumplido* **mi promesa**), pero realmente me fué imposible venir.	I regret very much having disappointed you (not having kept my promise), but it was really impossible for me to come.

2. With an accusative denoting a number of years, months, etc., in the sense of *to reach the age of, to be . . . . old;* and followed by **años,** *years*, alone, in the sense of *to be one's birthday*.

¿Cuántos años **cumple** usted hoy?—Hoy **cumplo** *treinta años.*	How old are you today (*more literally*, How many years are you today)?—I am thirty years old today.
Mi niñita **cumplirá** *seis meses* mañana.	My little girl will be six months old tomorrow.
¿Cuándo **cumple** usted *años?*	When is your birthday?

62. Pronominal Form. — This form generally means *to be fulfilled;* with reference to time, it means *to expire.*

Los evangelios profetizan muchas cosas que no *se han cumplido,* ni es probable que *se cumplan.*	The Gospels prophesy many things that have not been fulfilled, nor is it likely that they will be.
El plazo *se cumple* mañana.	The time expires tomorrow.

DAR

63. The primary meaning of this verb is *to give.* It has a great many others, only a few of which can be given here.

1. *To take.*

dar un paseo; *dar* un paso	to take a walk; to take a step

2. *To strike* (*the hour*). (See Part 8, Subjectless Verbs.)

3. *To cause, to give.*

Esta lección me *ha dado* mucho trabajo.	This lesson has given me a great deal of trouble (*or, better,* I have found this lesson very difficult).

4. Followed by a noun denoting an action, it expresses the performance of that action.

voz, grito, *shout, cry;* **golpe,** *blow;* **quejido,** *groan*

dar voces; *dar* un grito	to shout, to cry out aloud; to scream
dar golpes; *dar* un quejido	to strike; to groan

When it means *to strike,* it often takes the preposition *de.*

bofetada, *slap in the face*

Le *dieron* **de** bofetadas.	They slapped his face.

5. **Dar lugar,** *to give rise, to give motive, to give cause.*

Procediendo así *daremos lugar* á que se nos acuse de egoísmo.	By thus acting we shall give cause to be accused of selfishness.
Los abusos de España *dieron lugar* á la guerra hispano-americana.	The abuses of Spain gave rise to the Spanish-American war.

6. With a dative case, and the name of a disease as a subject, it is rendered by *to be taken with, to have,* the subject

of the English sentence representing the person represented in Spanish by the dative case.

Anoche *me* **dió** *fiebre*.	I was taken with fever last night.
Á mí *me* **da** *dolor de cabeza* con frecuencia.	I often have headache.

DEBER

64. Simple Tenses.—This verb is employed:

1. In the sense of *to owe*—its primary signification.

¿Cuánto *debe* usted?	How much do you owe?
Toral y Compañía me *han debido* esa suma como tres años.	Toral and Company have owed me that amount about three years.
Debemos á los esfuerzos de la compañía de seguros el que nuestros almacenes no fuesen completamente destruídos.	We owe it to the efforts of the insurance company that our warehouses were not completely destroyed.

2. Followed by an infinitive, to denote necessity, obligation or duty; it is then rendered by *to have to*, *must*, *ought to*, *should*, according to the idea to be conveyed.

Debo estar en mi despacho á las seis.	I must be in my office at six.
Habiendo llegado desmasiado tarde para tomar el tren de las cuatro, *debimos* demorar nuestra partida hasta las doce de esa noche.	Having arrived too late to take the four o'clock train, we had to delay our departure until twelve o'clock that night.
Ustedes *deberán* pagar sus gastos de viaje.	You will have to pay your traveling expenses.
En tales circunstancias, *debimos* (better, *tuvimos que*) vender nuestras minas por las dos terceras partes de su valor.	Under such circumstances, we had to sell our mines for two-thirds of their value.
Uno no *debe* revelar sus secretos á personas extrañas.	One ought not to reveal one's secrets to strange persons.
El estudiante *debe* aprender de memoria la siguiente regla general.	The student should learn the following general rule by heart.
La función *debe principiar* á las ocho y media.	The performance must begin at half past eight.

3. In the indicative postpreterit or the subjunctive preterit, as the equivalent of *ought to*. It is then followed by an infinitive, and carries with it an implied negation; for it indicates that the action denoted by the infinitive following it is not, or has not been, performed.

Usted *debería* (or, *debiera*) tratar mejor á sus empleados.	You ought to treat your employes better.

(The implication is that you do not treat your employes well enough.)

El orador *debería* (or, *debiera*) emplear un lenguaje más decoroso y respetuoso.	The orator ought to use more decorous and respectful language.

(The implication is that the orator's language is not decorous nor respectful.)

In expressions of this kind, the postpreterit may be replaced by the copreterit.

Usted *debía* tratar mejor á sus empleados.
El orador *debía* emplear un lenguaje más decoroso y respetuoso.

4. Followed by *de* and an infinitive, to express conjecture or supposition. It may then be rendered by the conjectural *must*, or by introducing the verb *to suppose*.

El servicio del cable *debe de* estar interrumpido, pues aún no hemos recibido contestación al cablegrama que pusimos ayer.*	The cable service must be interrupted, for we have not yet received an answer to the cablegram we sent yesterday.
Siéntese, señorita Rosa; usted *debe de* sentirse cansada.	Sit down, Miss Rose; you must feel tired.
La función *debe de* principiar á las ocho.	I suppose (*or*, The probabilities are that) the performance will begin at eight.

Although the present of *deber de* denotes supposition, the future is often, though perhaps not very properly, used for

Poner literally means *to put*, but in the expressions *poner un cablegrama*, *poner un telegrama*, it is rendered by *to send*.

the same purpose. (See Part 8, Secondary Meanings of the Tenses.) The first two of the following forms are preferable to the third:

Esa firma *debe de ser* muy rica. Esa firma *será* muy rica. Esa firma **deberá** *de ser* muy rica.	That firm must be (*or*, I suppose that firm is) very rich.

Very often, *deber* is employed with this conjectural value without the preposition *de*.

El servicio del cable *debe* estar interrumpido.
Siéntese, señorita Rosa; usted *debe* estar cansada.

This practice, although quite general, is not sanctioned by grammarians, and ought not to be followed, as it deprives the language of a convenient means of distinguishing between necessity and supposition. Thus, the last example under 2 means, *It is necessary that the performance should begin at half past eight*, and the last example under 4, *It is likely*, or *I suppose, that the performance will begin at eight.*

65. Compound Tenses.—The compound tenses of *deber* have the same general signification as the simple, but they have the syntactic peculiarity that, in cases 3 and 4 considered in the last article, the compound tense may be replaced by the simple, the simple infinitive following that compound tense being at the same time replaced by the compound infinitive. It will be observed that the latter form of construction corresponds literally with the English.

Hemos debido (*better*, Hemos *tenido que*) reducir los precios de nuestros artículos.	We have had to reduce the prices of our articles.
Me dijo que yo *habría debido* **exigir** el pago inmediatamente. Me dijo que yo *debería* **haber exigido** el pago inmediatamente.	He told me that I ought to have demanded payment immediately.

Usted *habría debido* **dar** satisfacción.	You ought to have offered an apology.
Usted *debería* **haber dado** satisfacción.	
El tren *ha debido de* **llegar** ya.	The train must have arrived already.
El tren *debe de* **haber llegado** ya.	
Usted *ha debido de* **sufrir** muchísimo.	You must have suffered a great deal.
Usted *debe de* **haber sufrido** muchísimo.	

The compound present of *deber*, when this verb denotes obligation, is generally preferred to the compound post-preterit in sentences with implied negation. The simple preterit may be used for the same purpose; but, while the compound present should be followed by the simple infinitive of the verb it negatives, the simple preterit should be followed by the compound infinitive.

Usted *ha debido* regresar inmediatamente.	You ought to have returned immediately.
Usted *debió* **haber regresado** inmediatamente.	

DECIR

66. **Decir,** *to say.*—This is the literal translation, but the verb is employed in sentences in which *to ask* or *to read* (intransitive) would be used in English.

Dijo que mandaría un coche.	He said he would send a carriage.
Yo soy de Madrid. ¿Porqué *dice?*	I am from Madrid. Why do you ask?
El artículo cuarto de la Constitución *dice* así: . . .	Article 4 of the Constitution reads thus: . . .

67. **¿Qué dice?** *what is it?*

¡Teresa!—*¿Qué dice*, mamá?	Teresa!—What is it, mama?

68. **Es decir,** *that is, that is to say.*

69. **Decir,** *to tell.*

Me acaban de *decir* que usted piensa casarse.	They have just told me that you intend to be married.
Don Eduardo me *dijo* que usted deseaba vender su casa.	Mr. Edward told me that you wished to sell your house.

70. Mandar decir, *to send word* (Art. 19).

71. Querer decir, *to mean.*

¿Qué *quiere* usted *decir* con eso?	What do you mean by that?
No sé qué *quiere decir* esta palabra.	I do not know what this word means.
¿Qué *querrán** *decir* estos preparativos?	I wonder what these preparations mean.

DEJAR

72. Non-Pronominal Form. — The most common meanings of this form are:

1. *To leave;* also, *to allow*, *to let.*

2. Followed by a participle or a participial phrase denoting an emotion, it is rendered by *to be filled with*, the participle being translated by a substantive denoting the same emotion.

Las pirámides nos **dejaron** *admirados.*	The pyramids filled us with admiration.
La noticia me **dejó** *lleno de sorpresa.*	The news struck me with surprise.

3. Followed by **ver,** *to see*, it forms a combination meaning *to show*, *to make it plain.*

Desde el principio de la guerra, los Boers *dejaron ver* que eran soldados de primer orden.	From the beginning of the war, the Boers showed that they were first-class soldiers.

73. Dejar de. — This phrase, followed by an infinitive, may have the following meanings:

---

*Notice the conjectural meaning of the future. (See Part 8, Secondary Meanings of the Tenses.)

1. *To cease;* also, *to stop.* The phrase formed by *de* and the infinitive is rendered by the English present participle, or by the English infinitive.

Nunca **deja de** *hablar* de sus grandes aventuras amorosas.	He never ceases to talk about his great love adventures.
Deje de *escribir*, y vamos á dar un paseo.	Stop writing, and let us go to take a walk.

2. In negative sentences, preceded by *no*, it may mean *not to fail to.*

No **deje de** *escribirnos* con frecuencia.	Do not fail to write to us often.
No **dejen de** *averiguar* el nombre del artista que pintó este paisaje.	Do not fail to find out the name of the artist who painted this landscape.

3. In sentences like the following, *no dejar de* literally means *rather*, but may often be translated by giving the English sentence a form somewhat different from the Spanish, using such expressions as *not to be without*, *not to be wanting in*, and the like:

Eso *no deja de* ser útil.	That is rather useful (*or*, That is not lacking in usefulness).
El Ferrocarril de Pensilvania, aunque uno de los mejores de los Estados Unidos, *no deja de* tener defectos serios.	The Pennsylvania Railroad, although one of the best in the United States, is not wanting in serious defects.
El viaje de la Habana á Santiago *no deja de* ser interesante.	The trip from Havana to Santiago is not wanting in interest.
La guerra de las Filipinas *no ha dejado de* dar lecciones útiles á los americanos.	The war in the Philippines has not been lacking in useful lessons to the Americans.

74. Pronominal Form.—Only the two following applications of this form will be here mentioned:

1. **Dejarse ver**—impersonal phrase meaning *to be evident, to be easily seen.*

Se deja ver que el agente ese no estuvo en Lima.	It is easy to see that that agent was not in (did not go to) Lima.
Por el modo como esa señorita habla de las americanas, *se deja ver* que las conoce muy poco.	From the way in which that young lady speaks of American women, it is easy to see that she knows them very little.

2. **Dejarse de,** *to dispense with, to leave* (or *set*) *aside;* also, *to stop* (usually said of a habitual action).

Déjese de cumplimientos, y tráteme como á un miembro de la familia.	Set aside all formalities, and treat me like a member of the family.
Es preciso que *nos dejemos de* escrúpulos.	It is necessary for us to set aside all scruples.
Déjate de jugar y beber, si no quieres perder tu reputación y tu fortuna.	Stop gambling and drinking, if you do not wish to lose your reputation and your fortune.

Dejar á un lado is also used in the sense of *to set aside.*

Deje los cumplimientos *á un lado*, y tráteme, etc.
Es preciso que *dejemos* los escrúpulos *á un lado.*

ECHAR

75. Echar, *to put in.*

Hágame el favor de *echar*me esta tarjeta postal en el buzón.	Please put this postal card in the letter box for me.
Eche este polvo en un vaso de agua, y tómese una cucharada cada dos horas.	Put this powder in a glass of water, and take a spoonful every two hours.

76. Echar, *to put out, to order out; to discharge.*

Los americanos *echaron* á los españoles de Cuba.	The Americans put the Spaniards out of Cuba.
La señorita Mercedes tuvo que *echar* á ese joven de su casa.	Miss Mercedes had to order that young man out of her house.
¿Él renunció su empleo, ó lo *echaron?*	Did he resign his position, or was he sent away?

77. Echar, *to put on, to apply.*

Échele aldaba á la puerta.	Latch the door (*literally*, Put the latch on the door).
¿Les *echó* usted la llave á los baúles?	Did you lock the trunks? (*literally*, Did you apply the key to the trunks?)
Échele su firma á este cheque.	Put your signature to this check.

78. **Echar,** *to develop, to grow* (transitive), *to put forth.*

El tronco empieza á *echar* retoños.	The trunk begins to sprout (*or*, to put forth shoots).
Cuando mi hijo empezaba á *echar* barba, yo empezaba á *echar* canas.	When my son was beginning to have a beard, I was beginning to get gray (*literally*, When my son began to develop a beard, I began to develop gray hair).
Las doctrinas revolucionarias *habían echado* hondas raíces en Francia, y era imposible erradicarlas.	Revolutionary doctrines had taken deep root in France, and it was impossible to eradicate them.

79. **Echar á.**—This expression, followed by the infinitive of a verb denoting an action and not having an accusative, means *to begin*, generally with the implication of unusual effort or intensity in the performance of the action; followed by an infinitive and its accusative, it means *to start*, in the sense of *to send, to make, to set* (followed by the present participle). In the former case, the verb may be employed either pronominally or non-pronominally.

El ladrón, que vió venir al sereno, arrojó el baúl al suelo, y **echó** (*or*, **se echó**) **á** *correr*.	The burglar, who saw the night watchman coming, threw the trunk on the ground, and took to his heels (*more literally*, started to run).
Cuando el juez leyó la sentencia de muerte, el condenado **echó** (*or*, **se echó**) **á** *llorar*.	When the judge read the death sentence, the condemned man melted into tears (*literally*, started to weep).
Eche á *rodar la bola*.	Start the ball rolling.
Echámos á *andar la máquina*.	We set the machine going.

80. **Echar á perder,** *to spoil* (transitive); **echarse á perder,** *to spoil* (intransitive), *to become ruined.*

Un mal desenlace puede *echar á perder* una novela que, sin esta falta, sería considerada como una grande obra.	A poor denouement may spoil a novel which, without this fault, would be considered as a great work.
Su impericia *echó á perder* el negocio.	His inexperience spoiled the business.
Nuestra carbonera *se ha echado á perder*.	Our coal mine has become ruined.
La bodega del vapor era muy húmeda, y los cigarrillos *se echaron á perder*.	The hold of the steamer was very damp, and the cigarettes were ruined.

81. Echar de menos, echar menos, *to miss.*

Echo de menos el tomo segundo de la Historia de Restrepo.	I miss the second volume of Restrepo's History.
Mucho la *hemos echado de menos*, señorita Josefina.	We have missed you very much, Miss Josephine.

82. Echar de ver, *to notice, to find;* **echarse de ver,** *to be noticeable, to be easily seen.*

Cuando llegué al teatro, *eché de ver* que había olvidado mi boleto.	When I arrived at the theater, I found that I had forgotten my ticket.
¿No *ha echado* usted *de ver* últimamente que las calles se riegan todos los días?	Have you not noticed lately that the streets are sprinkled every day?
Se echa de ver que esa señorita es muy leída.	It is easy to see that that young lady is very well read.

FALTAR

83. Faltarle á uno algo,* *to lack, want,* or *be in need of, something,* the accusative of the English verb being the subject of the Spanish, and the subject of the English being represented in Spanish by a dative phrase or case.

Deseo comprar esa casa, pero *me* **falta** dinero.	I wish to buy that house, but I lack the money (*or*, I have not enough money).
Á usted le **falta** experiencia.	You need experience.

*For this use of *uno*, see Art. **5**.

Aún *nos* **faltan** algunos datos, sin los cuales no podemos enviar el informe.	We still want some data, without which we cannot send the report.
Estudian mucho, pero *les* **faltan** buenos libros y un buen maestro.	They study a great deal, but they lack good books and a good teacher.

84. **Faltar . . . para** (applied to time), *to want . . . of, to be . . . to:* the phrase indicating the time interval is the subject of the Spanish verb, while that of the English verb is the indefinite *it.*

Falta *un cuarto* **para** las once.	It is a quarter to eleven.
Faltan *diez minutos* **para** la una.	It is ten minutes to one.

85. **Faltar,** *to be missing;* also, *to be wanting.*

Falta uno de los libros que dejé aquí ayer.	One of the books I left here yesterday is missing.
¿Dónde están las dos sillas que *faltan* en este cuarto?	Where are the two chairs that are missing in this room?
Aquí nada *falta.*	Nothing is needed (*that is,* wanting) here. Nothing is missing here.

86. **Faltar por** (followed by an infinitive), *to remain to be* (followed by a participle).

¿Cuántas cartas **faltan por** *escribir?*	How many letters remain to be written?
Aún **falta** más de la mitad del ferrocarril **por** *construír.*	More than one-half of the railroad is yet to be built.

The verb **quedar,** *to remain,* is used in the same sense.

¿Cuántas cartas **quedan por** *escribir?*
Aún **queda** más de la mitad del ferrocarril **por** *construír.*

HABER

87. **Haber de.** — This phrase, followed by an infinitive, indicates:

1. Necessity or duty, either literally or figuratively.

Un buen agente *ha de* conocer el idioma y las costumbres de los países en que viaja.	A good agent must know the language and the customs of the countries in which he travels.
El esclavo *ha de* someterse á la voluntad de su señor.	The slave must submit to his master's will.
En aquellos tiempos, las colonias *habían de* comprar á la metrópoli cuanto necesitaban.	In those days, the colonies had to buy from the mother country all they needed.
Ha de saber Ud. que sus amigos lo han abandonado.	You must know that your friends have forsaken you.
Hágame el favor de decirme qué *he de* hacer.	Please tell me what I am to do.

2. Futurity, with a vague implication of necessity.

El buque *ha de* llegar pronto.	The ship must arrive soon.
La función *había de* principiar á las ocho.	The performance was to begin at eight.
Las mercancías que pedímos á Nueva-York *han de* llegarnos hoy ó mañana.	The goods we ordered from New York must reach us today or tomorrow.

3. Conjecture or supposition. *Haber* is then equivalent to *deber* (Art. **64**, 4).

Los perros **han de** *haber levantado* el venado, pues están ladrando mucho.	The dogs must have started the deer, for they are barking a great deal.
El médico **hubo de** *llegar* después de muerto el herido; pues éste estaba agonizando cuando nosotros lo dejámos.	The physician must have arrived after the wounded man had died, for the latter was breathing his last when we left him.

4. In interrogative sentences like the following, bewilderment, hopelessness, impotency; it is then better rendered by *can:*

¿Qué *hemos de hacer?*	{What can we do? What are we to do?

88. The indicative preterit of *haber* followed by *de* and an infinitive is especially used:

1. To indicate necessity.

El senador Jones se expressó de una manera tan ofensiva y tan vulgar, que el presidente **hubo de** *ordenarle* que callase.	Senator Jones expressed himself in so offensive and vulgar a manner, that the speaker had to order him to be silent.

2. In place of the preterit of the verb following *de*.

El orador, tras una pausa de dos ó tres minutos, **hubo de** *continuar* (that is, *continuó*) así: . . .	The orator, after a pause of two or three minutes, continued thus: . . .

89. Haber menester, *to need, to be in need of.*

Hemos menester la ayuda de usted.	We need your help.
Le devuelvo su máquina de escribir, pues ya no la *he menester*.	I am returning your typewriter, for I no longer need it.

The word *menester* is used only with *haber* and in impersonal sentences with *ser*: **ser menester,** *to be necessary*.

Es menester que su apoderado firme la escritura.	It is necessary that your attorney sign the deed.

90. *Haber de*, used without a subject and followed by an adjective, means *to be*, or *there to be*, followed by a substantive expressing in the abstract the same idea as is expressed by the Spanish adjective.

¿Qué **hay de** *nuevo?*	What is the news?
Creo que **hay** mucho **de** *cierto* en lo que ese hombre dice.	I think there is a great deal of truth in what that man says.

91. ¿Qué hay?—a common familiar greeting equivalent to the English *hallo!*

92. Tener que habérselas con, *to have to deal with*, usually with the implication of difficulty or opposition to be overcome.

España *tiene* ahora *que habérselas con* una nación rica y poderosa.	Spain has now to deal with a rich and powerful nation.
Tuve que *habérmelas con* un hombre ignorante, insolente y obstinado.	I had to deal with an ignorant, insolent, and obstinate man.

93. Mal Haya, Bien Haya.—These are optative or interjectional phrases meaning, respectively, *cursed be*, *blessed be*. The former is familiarly employed in the sense of *confound*.

¡*Mal haya* quien profanare mi sepulcro!	Woe to him (*more literally*, Cursed be him) who shall desecrate my grave!
¡*Bien hayan* los padres de tales hijos!	Blessed be the parents of such children!
¡*Mal haya* ese cocinero estúpido!	Confound that stupid cook!

94. Haber for Tener.—Formerly, *haber* was a synonym of *tener*. This use of the verb is now limited to a few phrases, as illustrated by the following examples:

Los hijos *habidos* del primer matrimonio no figuran en el testamento.	The children had by the first marriage do not figure in the will.
Ésta es la firma del rey Alfonso, á quien Dios *haya*.	This is the signature of King Alphonso—may he rest in peace (*literally*, may God have him).

NOTE.—For *haber* as a subjectless verb, see Part 8.

HACER

95. Use of Hacerlo to Represent a Previous Statement.—*Hacer*, in combination with the neuter *lo*, serves to represent another verb or a proposition previously mentioned in the sentence, provided the verb represented, or that in the represented proposition, denotes an action. The neuter *lo* accompanying *hacer* is sometimes translated by *so*, sometimes by *it*, and sometimes not at all. Under no other circumstances can either *hacer* or any other verb be employed to render the auxiliary *to do*. Such expressions as *I do*, *He does not*, in which a verb previously mentioned is understood after *do* or *do not*, must be translated by repeating the verb, or, in answering a question, simply by **sí**, *yes;* or **no**, *no*.

Yo le he aconsejado, como usted *lo* **ha hecho,** que asegure su casa y sus muebles. Siempre contesta que *lo* **hará** al día siguiente, y luégo dice que olvidó **hacer***lo*.

I have advised him, as you have done, to insure his house and furniture. He always answers that he will do so the following day, and then he says he forgot to do it.

Mande esos periódicos á mi oficina.—Sí, señor, *lo* **haré** ahora mismo.

Send those newspapers to my office.—Yes, sir, I will do so at once.

Si usted pudiera entregarle esta carta á su tío, le agradecería mucho que tuviese la bondad de **hacer***lo*.

If you could deliver this letter to your uncle, you would greatly oblige me by doing so.

96. Other Uses of Hacer.—Besides its primary meaning of *to make* or *to do*, this verb has many others, and serves to form a great many idiomatic phrases, of which a few are here given. For others, the student should consult a dictionary. The uses of *hacer* as a subjectless verb were explained in Part 8.

1. **Hacerle caso á una persona,** *to mind*, or *to notice, a person;* **hacer caso de,** *to pay attention to, to care for.*

Hágame caso, amigo Torres; yo soy más viejo y tengo más experiencia que usted.

Mind me, friend Torres; I am older and have more experience than you.

La esposa del alcalde entró á la sala de baile con un aire insultante de superioridad; y ¡cuál fué su sorpresa cuando vió que nadie le *hacía caso!*

The mayor's wife entered the ball room with an insulting air of superiority; and, what was her surprise when she saw that nobody noticed her!

No *haga caso de* lo que esa mujer dice.

Do not pay any attention to what that woman says.

2. **Hacer daño** (literally, *to do harm*), *to be injurious to health; not to agree with one;* **hacer provecho,** *to be beneficial, to do good.*

El café *hace* mucho *daño*.

Coffee is very unhealthful.

El pastel que me comí anoche me *hizo daño*.

The pie I ate last night made me ill.

Ese tónico me *ha hecho* mucho *provecho*.

That tonic has done me much good.

Es de esperarse que esta lección le *haga provecho* á Venezuela.	It is to be hoped that this lesson will do Venezuela some good.
Buen *provecho* le *haga*.	Much good may it do you.

3. **Hacer** (*or*, **dar**) **un descuento,** *to give a discount;* **hacer un pedido,** *to give an order* (for goods, in business).

4. **Hacer falta,** *to be lacking, to be needed;* **hacerle falta algo á uno,** *to miss something, to need something.*

En Colombia *hacen falta* buenos ferrocarriles.	Colombia needs good railroads.
El intérprete *nos ha hecho* mucha *falta*.	We have missed the interpreter very much.
Á usted le **hacen falta** paciencia y experiencia.	You need patience and experience.

5. **Hacer por,** *to try to.*

Haga por ver á su primo mañana.	Try to see your cousin tomorrow.

6. **Hacer lo posible,** *to do*, or *try, one's best.*

Haré lo posible por venir esta noche.	I will do my best to come tonight.
No pudimos vender el café que usted envió con nosotros, aunque *hicimos lo posible.*	We could not sell the coffee you sent by us, although we tried our best.

7. **Hacer una pregunta,** *to ask a question.*

8. **Hacer que,** *to cause, to have, to give rise to, to be the cause of.* This phrase is always followed by a proposition with a subjunctive verb.

Haga que compongan estas máquinas inmediatamente.	Have these machines repaired immediately.
Nuestras contiendas intestinas *han hecho que* los extranjeros nos miren como países incivilizados.	Our internecine strifes have caused foreigners to regard us as uncivilized countries.

9. **Hacerse,** *to become, to make oneself.*

Ese hombre *se ha hecho* odioso.	That man has made himself hateful.
El amor de los yankees al dinero *se ha hecho* proverbial.	The Yankees' love of money has become proverbial.
¿Usted qué *se ha hecho* últimamente?	What has become of you lately?

10. **Hacérsele á uno** (followed by an adjective), *to appear* or *seem to one*, *to impress* or *strike one.*

Lo que él dijo *se me hizo* difícil de creer.	What he said struck me as being difficult to believe.

IR

97. Ir á.—This phrase is used:

1. In the sense of *to be going to.*

Mañana *vamos á* la Habana.	We are going to Havana tomorrow.
¿Á dónde *va* usted?	Where are you going (to)?
¿Qué *va* usted *á* hacer esta tarde? —*Voy á* visitar al ministro argentino.	What are you going to do this afternoon?—I am going to call on the Argentine minister.
Van á poner una estatua de Páez en el Parque Central.	They are going to put a statue of Paez in Central Park.
Juancho *va á* decirle á tu madre lo que tú has hecho.	Johnnie is going to tell your mother what you have done.

2. In the sense of *to be on the point of*, *to be about to.*

Íbamos á mandar por ustedes cuando los vimos venir.	We were just going to send for you when we saw you coming.
Van á dar las doce.	It is about to strike twelve.
Va á ser la una y media.	It is almost (*literally*, It is about to be) half past one.

For the meaning of *ir á que*, see Part 6, The Subjunctive after certain Conjunctive and Adverbial Words and Phrases.

98. Ir para, *to be on the way to.* When a person is on his way to a place, he may say, either *voy* **á**—, or *voy* **para**—, both of which expressions mean *I am going to*, in the sense of *I am on my way to.* Although the form with *para* does

not seem to be approved by grammarians, it is much commoner than the form with *á*. In questions, the two prepositions are equally common.

¿**Á** dónde *va* usted? ¿**Para** dónde *va* usted?	Where are you going?

99. Irle á uno, *to fare, to get along.*

¿Cómo *le va* en sus negocios?	How are you getting along in your business?
¡Adiós! que *le vaya* muy bien.	Good by! may you fare well (I wish you good luck).

The expression *¿Cómo le va?* is frequently used as a familiar greeting meaning *How are you?*

100. Difference Between Ir and Venir.—The first of these two verbs means *to move to a place where the speaker is not;* the second, *to move to a place where the speaker is.* It follows from this fundamental difference that when *to come* is employed to denote motion to a place where the speaker is not, it should be rendered by *ir*, not by *venir*. As stated in Art. **33,** the progressive idiomatic forms *to be going, to be coming* should not be translated literally.

¡Pachita!—Ya *voy*.	Fanny!—I am coming at once.
Recibí un telegrama de mi padre diciéndome que *vaya* á verlo inmediatamente.	I received a telegram from my father asking me to come to see him immediately.
Venga acá, don Patricio.	Come here, Mr. Patrick.
¿De dónde *viene* usted?	Where do you come from?

LLEGAR

101. Llegar, *to arrive;* with a dative case, *to reach.*

¿Á qué hora *llegó* usted á Nueva-York?	At what time did you arrive at New York?
Las mercancías que pedímos el mes pasado no *nos* **han llegado** todavía.	The wares we ordered last month have not yet reached us.
La noticia *nos* **llegó** hace como ocho días.	The news reached us about eight days ago.

102. Llegar á, followed by an infinitive or infinitive phrase, indicates the realization or attainment of the action or condition denoted by that infinitive or phrase. Thus, *llegar á comprender una cosa* is *to attain*, *reach*, or *arrive at the understanding of a thing;* and *llegar á ser feliz* is *to reach a happy condition*, that is, *to become happy*. The literal meaning of *llegar á* being understood, it is easy to find, in every particular case, an appropriate or idiomatic translation.

La huelga de los carboneros **ha llegado á** *ser* el único tema de conversación.	The strike of the coal miners has become the only topic of conversation.
Al fin **llegué á** *creer* que nuestro padre Adán no era más que un mito.	At last I came to believe that our father Adam was but a myth.
Si sus pronósticos **llegan á** *realizarse*, el mundo **llegará á** *ser* un verdadero paraíso.	If your prognostications should be fulfilled, the world will become a true paradise.

LLEVAR

103. Primary Meanings.—The primary meanings of *llevar* are:

1. *To carry.*

Lleve esta silla al cuarto siguiente.	Carry this chair to the next room.

2. *To take.*

*Llév*ele este recado al señor Peralta.	Take this message to Mr. Peralta.
Anoche *llevé* á mis muchachitas á la ópera.	I took my little girls to the opera last night.
El guía nos *llevó* á todos los lugares interesantes.	The guide took us to all the interesting places.

104. Llevar Followed by a Participle.—In this construction, *llevar* has the same value as **haber,** *to have*, but implies completion, or the reaching of a certain stage, quantity, or number (indicated by an accusative) in a continued process. The participle should agree in gender and number with the accusative of the compound form thus obtained.

*Llevo escrit***as** cuarenta cartas.	I have already written forty letters.
Llevamos *compradas* veinte mil acciones.	We have already (*or*, so far) bought twenty thousand shares.
¿Cuántos billetes *lleva* usted *vendid***os** hasta ahora?	How many tickets have you sold so far?

In the last example, the phrase *hasta ahora* might be omitted, it being implied in the verb *llevar*.

105. Llevar With an Accusative Denoting a Period of Time. — In this construction, *llevar* literally means *to have completed*, but may be rendered by *to have been*.

Llevo *diez y ocho años* en los Estados Unidos.	I have been eighteen years in the United States.
¿Cuántos años **lleva** usted en este país?	How many years have you been in this country?

If that whose duration is referred to is represented by an infinitive, *llevar* should be followed by *de*, and the infinitive rendered by the English present participle.

Llevo diez años **de negociar** en telas.	I have been dealing in cloths (textile fabrics) ten years.

106. Llevar correspondencia, *to conduct correspondence;* **llevar libros,** *to keep books.*

¿Quién *lleva los libros* en esta fábrica?	Who keeps the books in this factory?
Yo *llevo la correspondencia* en la imprenta de Gómez y Núñez.	I conduct the correspondence in Gomez and Nuñez's printery.

107. Llevar, *to charge.*

¿Cuánto *llevan* en ese hotel?	How much do they charge at that hotel?
El arriero me *llevó* diez pesos por los dos días.	The muleteer charged me ten dollars for the two days.

108. Llevarse, *to take away, to carry away, to take with one.*

Carmen, *llévese* estos platos.	Carmen, take away these dishes.
El enemigo *se llevó* cuanto encontró en la ciudad.	The enemy carried away everything they found in the city.

Llévese estos libros; yo ya no los necesito.	Take these books with you; I no longer need them.
Lo que *nos llevámos* no alcanzaba ni á la mitad de lo que dejámos.	What we carried away (*or*, took with us) did not amount even to one-half of what we left.

MIRAR

109. The primary meaning of this verb is *to look at*, but it is also very frequently used, especially in passive and quasi-reflexive constructions, and modified by an adverb, in the sense of *to regard*, *to consider*, *to feel toward*. The translation must usually be effected rather freely. The adverb is often rendered by an adjective modifying the accusative of the corresponding English verb.

Eso no **se mira** *bien* en España.	In Spain that is not considered proper.
Eso **se mira** *muy mal* en este país.	That is considered very improper in this country.
Aquí no **se mira** *bien* que una señorita vaya al teatro con un joven.	Here it is not considered proper for a young lady to go to the theater with a young man.
El que hace tales cosas no **es** *bien* **mirado.**	He who does such things is not well thought of.
Los americanos **son** por lo general *mal* **mirados** en Cuba.	Americans are generally little liked (*or*, are generally looked upon with disfavor) in Cuba.

PAGAR

110. This verb means *to pay*, but its construction is somewhat different from that of its English equivalent. The substantive denoting the person paid is always the dative of *pagar*.

1. If the amount or thing paid is specified or referred to, the construction is similar to the English.

Pagué *diez pesos* al sastre por estos pantalones.	I paid the tailor ten dollars for these trousers.
¿Cuánto **pagó** usted por ese reloj?	How much did you pay for that watch?
El azúcar **paga** *altos derechos*.	Sugar pays high duties.

2. If the amount is not referred to, the name of the thing paid for may be made either the accusative of *pagar*, or, as before, the object of *por*.

Todavía no **he pagado** *estos pantalones* al sastre. Todavía no **he pagado** al sastre **por** *estos pantalones*.	I have not yet paid the tailor for these trousers.

PASAR

111. Pasar, *to pass, to spend; to be over, to be past.*

¿Cómo *pasó* el enfermo la noche?	How did the patient pass the night?
Anoche *pasámos* un rato muy agradable con el señor Cuartas.	We spent a very pleasant time with Mr. Cuartas last night.
No me *ha pasado* la fiebre todavía.—Espero que pronto le *pase*.	My fever is not over yet.—I hope it will soon be.
Aún no *ha pasado* la época del fanatismo religioso.	The age of religious fanaticism is not over yet.

112. Pasar, *to happen, to be going on.*

¿Qué le *ha pasado* á usted, que ya no viene á vernos?	What has happened to you, that you no longer come to see us?
¿Qué *pasa* aquí?	What is going on here?
Usted no parece bien; ¿qué le *pasa?*	You do not look well; what is the matter with you?

113. Pasar algo por alto; pasársele á uno algo por alto, *to overlook something.*

Teníamos que considerar tantas cosas, que muchas *se nos pasaron por alto* (*or*, que *pasámos* muchas *por alto*).	We had to consider so many things, that we overlooked many of them.
Á usted todo *se le pasa por alto*.	You overlook everything.
Eso *se nos pasó por alto*.	We overlooked that.

114. Pasar la cuenta, *to send the bill.*

Castro y Andrade nos acaban de *pasar la cuenta*.	Castro and Andrade have just sent us the bill.
Puede usted *pasarle la cuenta* á mi esposo por estas joyas.	You may send my husband the bill for these jewels.

115. **Pasarlo,** *to fare;* also, *to be*, when used as a mere form of greeting.

Como no conocíamos el país, *lo pasámos* muy mal.	As we were not acquainted with the country, we fared very badly (*or*, we had a hard time).
¿Cómo *lo pasa* usted?	How are you?
Que *lo pase* usted bien. [*An expression used when taking leave of a person.*]	May you fare well.

116. **Pasarse sin,** *to do without*, *to go* or *get along without.*

Me es imposible *pasarme sin* un secretario.	It is impossible for me to get along without a secretary.

PENSAR

117. **Pensar,** *to think*, *to cogitate.*

"*Pienso*, luego existo."	"I think, therefore I exist."
Es mejor *pensar* mucho y hablar poco, que hablar mucho y *pensar* poco.	It is better to think much and speak little, than to speak much and think little.

118. **Pensar,** *to intend.*

Pensábamos redactar un periódico semanal.	We intended to edit a weekly newspaper.
El general *piensa* pedir la entrega de la plaza.	The general intends to demand the surrender of the town.

119. **Pensar de,** *to think of*, *to have an opinion about.* In this sense, *creer* is preferable to *pensar.*

¿Qué *piensa* (or, *cree*) usted *de* este proyecto?	What do you think of this project?

120. **Pensar en,** *to think of*, in the sense of *to think about* or *on.*

¿En qué *está* usted *pensando?*	What are you thinking about?
En aquel momento *pensé en* la Virgen, y desistí de mi resolución pecaminosa.	At that moment I thought on the Virgin, and gave up my sinful resolution.

121. Pensar and Creer.—When *to think* denotes supposition or conjecture, it should generally be rendered by *creer*, not by *pensar* (Art. **60**, 2). The latter verb is only occasionally used in this sense. *Creer* is also preferable to express an opinion.

Creo que va á llover.	I think it is going to rain.
No *creí* que usted me negara ese favor.	I did not think you would refuse me that favor.
¿No *cree* usted que sería mejor mandar á nuestro hijo á París?	Do you not think it would be better to send our son to Paris?

PESAR

122. This verb always takes a dative case. When followed by an accusative, it may take the preposition *de*. It literally means *to grieve*, with the implication of repentance, the grief being caused by an action of the subject himself. In familiar language, however, it is used in the literal sense of *to make sorry*, but is rendered by changing the construction of the English sentence and using the verb *to regret*, or the expression *to be sorry for*. In elevated style, it may be rendered by *to repent*.

"**Pésa***me*, Dios mío, *de* haberos ofendido."	"I repent me, O God, having offended thee."
Me **pesa** haber firmado esa protesta.	I am sorry I signed that protest.
Mucho *me* **pesa** lo que he hecho, pero ya no hay remedio.	I am very sorry for what I have done, but there is no help for it now.

PODER

123. Poder, *to be able, can, may*, serves to express capacity, like the English *can*, as well as uncertainty, permissibility, or concession, like the English *may* (or *can*, in

questions). As both *can* and *may* are defective, the forms they lack must be supplied by forms of *to be able*, *to be possible*, *to be allowed*, etc., according to circumstances. *Poder* is usually followed by an infinitive. In negative sentences, *no* is placed before *poder*, if capability or absolute possibility is to be expressed; otherwise, before the infinitive.

El enfermo ya *puede* levantarse.
El puente *podía* sostener una carga de quinientas mil toneladas.
Querer no es lo mismo que *poder*.

Creí que esto se *podía* hacer fácilmente.
Puede usted decirle que vuelva mañana.
Haré cuanto *pueda* por verla.
Me dijo que, si iba á su oficina á las dos, *podría* tal vez hallarle allí.
No olvide su paraguas, que esta noche *puede* llover.

Don Pedro **no** *puede salir*, pues está muy enfermo.
Don Antonio *puede* **no** *salir*, pues es probable que su hermano venga á pasar la noche con él.

El vapor **no** *puede llegar* antes de las doce.
El vapor *puede* **no** *llegar* antes de las doce.

El doctor Sánchez *puede* **no** *saber* mucho, pero **no** *puede ser* tan ignorante como usted cree.
¿*Puede* creerse semejante cosa?
Siento no *haber podido* ir.
Si los buques españoles hubieran sido mejor manejados, *habrían* **podido** *resistir* más tiempo y *causar* más daño (or, *podrían* **haber resistido** más tiempo y **causado** más daño). (Compare Art. **65.**)

The patient can rise already.
The bridge could support a load of five hundred thousand tons.
To will is not the same as to be able.
I thought this could be easily done.
You may tell him to come again tomorrow.
I shall do all I can to see her.
He told me, if I went to his office at two, I might perhaps find him there.
Do not forget your umbrella, for it may rain tonight.

Mr. Peter cannot go out, for he is very ill.
Mr. Anthony may not go out, for it is likely that his brother will come to spend the evening with him.

The steamer cannot arrive before twelve.
The steamer may not arrive before twelve.

Dr. Sanchez may not know much, but he cannot be so ignorant as you think.
Can one believe such a thing?
I regret not having been able to go.
If the Spanish vessels had been better handled, they could have resisted longer and caused more damage.

124. No Poder Menos de.—This phrase, followed by an infinitive, is equivalent to *cannot but, cannot help* (followed by present participle).

No pudimos menos de admirar su temeridad.	We could not but admire his rashness.
No puedo menos de sospechar que ese hombre es un farsante.	I cannot help suspecting that that man is an impostor.
No podrá menos de aceptar nuestra propuesta.	He cannot fail to accept our proposition.

QUERER

125. Querer, *to wish;* also, *will*, and, in questions, when offering something, *will have.* It must be observed, however, that *querer* is the equivalent of *will* only when the latter verb denotes a wish, not when it is a mere sign of futurity.

Quiero salir, pero no puedo.	I wish to go out, but cannot.
Mi hijo *quiere* que yo le compre una escopeta.	My son wants me to buy him a shotgun.
El caballo no *quiere* seguir.	The horse won't go on.
¿Porqué no *quiere* usted responderme?—Porque no *quiero.*	Why won't you answer me?—Because I won't.
¿Quiere usted tomar un poco de vino?	Will you take some wine?
¿Quiere usted una tajada de jamón?	Will you have a slice of ham?
¿Quiere usted hacerme un favor?	Will you do me a favor?

126. Querer, *to love.* This use of *querer* is restricted to familiar language and light literature. In serious style, *to love* is rendered by *amar.*

¿Quién no *quiere* á su madre?	Who does not love his mother?
Mucho te *quiero*, mi vida; pero las circunstancias me impiden aceptar tu propuesta.	I love you very much, darling; but the circumstances prevent me from accepting your proposal.
"*Ama* á tu prójimo como á ti mismo."	"Love thy neighbor as thyself."

NOTE.—For *querer decir*, see Art. **71**; for the use of *querer* in optative sentences, Part 8, Secondary Meanings of the Tenses.

SABER

127. **Saber,** *to know, to have knowledge of;* also, *to know how, to be able, can,* in the sense of to know something that has to be learned. When *to know* means *to be acquainted with,* it is rendered by *conocer.* In some cases, *saber* and *conocer* are interchangeable, it being immaterial, for instance, whether we say that a person *knows* a subject, or that he *is acquainted with* it.

Sabíamos que ese matrimonio tendría un fin desgraciado.	We knew that that marriage would have an unfortunate end.
El discípulo no *supo* su lección.	The pupil did not know his lesson.
¿*Sabe* usted sumar y restar?	Do you know how to add and subtract?
¿*Sabe* usted dónde está mi hermano?—No *sé.*	Do you know where my brother is?—I do not.
Ese hombre no *sabe* firmar.	That man does not know how to sign (his name).
Nosotros no *sabemos* tocar piano.	We cannot (do not know how to) play the piano.
¿*Conoce* usted al señor Peña?	Are you acquainted with Mr. Peña?
No *conozco* las obras de Quevedo.	I am not acquainted with Quevedo's works.
Me alegro mucho *conocer* á usted.	I am very glad to make your acquaintance.
El señor Jones *conoce* muy bien el español. / El señor Jones *sabe* mucho español.	Mr. Jones is very well acquainted with Spanish. / Mr. Jones knows a great deal of Spanish.
¿*Sabe* usted el camino? / ¿*Conoce* usted el camino?	Do you know the road? / Are you acquainted with the road?

128. **Saber,** *to hear, to know from hearsay, to be informed.*

He sabido que usted piensa casarse.	I have heard that you intend to be married.
Acabamos de *saber* que mataron á Martí.	We have just heard that Marti was killed.

129. **Saber de,** *to hear of, to hear from.*

Desde que Rodríguez salió de San Juan, no *hemos sabido de* él.	Since Rodriguez left San Juan, we have not heard of (*or*, from) him.
¿Ha sabido usted de su familia?	Have you heard from your family?
Ayer *supe* del doctor Zorilla.	I heard from Doctor Zorrilla yesterday.

130. **Qué sé yo,** literally, *What do I know*, but used in the sense of *I don't know*, with the implication, *and it doesn't matter*. This expression is only used in familiar style.

Dice que habla español, inglés, alemán, y *qué sé yo* cuántos otros idiomas.	He says he speaks Spanish, English, German, and I don't know how many other languages.
El abogado entró con un atado de testamentos, escrituras, cuentas, recibos, y *qué sé yo* qué más.	The lawyer came in with a bundle of wills, deeds, bills, receipts, and what not.

SENTIR

131. **Sentir,** *to feel;* **sentirse,** *to feel*, *to be* (referring to the state of a person's health).

Los filósofos sensualistas sostenían que pensar es *sentir*.	The sensualist philosophers held that to think is to feel.
¿Sintió usted mucho dolor cuando le sacaron esa muela?	Did you feel much pain when they pulled that tooth?
Semejantes hombres son incapaces de *sentir* vergüenza.	Such men are incapable of feeling shame.
¿Cómo *se siente* usted hoy?—*Me siento* muy bien, gracias.	How do you feel today?—I feel very well, thank you.

132. **Sentir, sentirse con (calor, hambre, etc.),** *to be* (*warm*, *hungry*, etc.). The literal meanings of these expressions are *to feel with heat*, *to feel with hunger*, etc. As explained elsewhere, *tener* is used in the same sense.

Siento *Me siento con* *Tengo* } mucho calor.	I am very warm.
Aquí *se siente* mucho frío.	It is very cold here (*literally*, One feels very cold here).

133. **Sentir,** *to hear;* and, more generally, *to perceive* by the senses, except that of sight.

Acabo de *sentir* un ruido.	I have just heard a noise.
¿No me *sintió* usted entrar anoche?	Did you not hear me come in last night?
Sentí un olor muy desagradable.	I noticed a very disagreeable odor.

134. **Sentir,** *to regret, to be sorry.*

Siento que usted esté tan enferma.	I am sorry that you are so ill.
¿Puedes prestarme diez pesos?—Lo *siento* mucho, pero no tengo sino dos pesos en el bolsillo.	Can you loan me ten dollars?—I am very sorry, but I have only two dollars in my pocket.

SERVIR

135. **Servir,** *to serve;* also, *to wait*, and *to help to.*

No es posible *servir* bien á dos señores.	It is not possible to serve two masters well.
¿Quién *sirve* en esta mesa?	Who waits on this table?
*Sirva*nos la comida. *Sirva*nos de comer.	Serve dinner to us.
En este restaurante *sirven* muy mal.	They serve very poorly in this restaurant.
*Sirva*me un poco de sopa, si me hace el favor.	Help me to some soup, if you please.
*Sirva*se mantequilla.	Help yourself to some butter.

136. **Servir de,** *to serve as, to work as; to be of use, to avail.*

¿Quiere usted *servirme de* secretario?	Will you serve me (*or*, work for me) as secretary?
De nada le *sirvió* su reputación como hombre de negocios.	His reputation as a business man availed him nothing.
¿*De* qué *sirven* estas lamentaciones?	What is the use of these lamentations?

137. **Servir para,** *to be used for, to be useful for, to be good for.* The literal translation is *to serve the purpose of*, or *to serve a purpose.*

El aceite *sirve*, entre otras cosas, *para* lubricar máquinas.
¿*Para* qué *sirve* este instrumento?
El ácido sulfúrico *sirve para* muchas cosas.
Las escuelas públicas de aquel país no *sirven para* nada.

Oil is used, among other things, to lubricate machines with.
What is this instrument used for?
Sulphuric acid is useful for a great many things.
The public schools of that country are good for nothing.

138. Servirse, *to be kind enough, to please;* usually in the imperative, when making a request.

Sírvase decirme qué hora es.
Si ustedes *se sirviesen* guardarme esta caja, me harían un gran favor.

Please tell me what time it is.
If you would kindly keep this box for me, you would do me a great favor.

139. Servirse de, *to make use of.*

Tuvimos que *servirnos de* un intérprete.
En la preparación de esta gramática, *nos hemos servido de* las mejores obras que se han escrito sobre el asunto.

We had to make use of an interpreter.
In the preparation of this grammar, we have made use of the best works that have been written on the subject.

140. Para servir á usted (literally, *to serve you*), *at your service* — a polite phrase used as a respectful greeting, and also on taking leave of a person and in acknowledging an introduction.

TENER

141. Use of Tener for Expressing Sensations and Feelings. — The experiencing of a sensation or feeling is often expressed by *tener* followed by a substantive denoting the sensation or feeling in question. In English, *to be* followed by an adjective is used for the same purpose. While in the latter language a high intensity of the sensation is expressed by the adverb *very*, the Spanish construction requires the adjective *mucho*, as the word to be modified is a substantive, not an adjective.

hambre, *hunger;* **calor,** *heat;* **miedo,** *fear*

Tengo *mucha* **hambre; calor;** *mucho* **miedo.**	I am very hungry; very warm; very (much) afraid.

142. Tener Followed by a Substantive or a Substantive Phrase Modified by a Cardinal Numeral. *Tener* is employed in this manner to indicate age, dimensions, equivalence of units, etc. It is then rendered either by *to be* or by *there to be.* Its accusative is, in the former case, rendered by a predicate substantive or substantive phrase; in the latter, it is the subject of the English sentence. (See also Part 5, The Substantive Adjective.)

El Magdalena **tiene** allí *doscientos metros de ancho* (or, *de anchura*).	The Magdalena is there two hundred meters wide.
Una legua **tiene** *cinco kilómetros.*	There are five kilometers in a league.
¿Cuántos años **tiene** usted?—Yo **tengo** *veintiocho años.*	How old are you?—I am twenty-eight years old.

In stating a person's age, the phrase **de edad,** *of age,* may be added to *años,* but it is not necessary; while, in asking a person's age, **qué edad,** *what age,* may be used instead of *cuántos años.*

¿Qué edad *tiene* usted?—Yo *tengo* veintiocho años **de edad.**

143. Tener, *to have,* in the sense of *to be worth.*

¿Cuánto *tiene* esa firma?	How much is that firm worth?
Don Miguel Escobar *tiene* más de dos millones.	Mr. Michael Escobar is worth more than two millions.

144. Tener que, *to have to, must;* **tener . . . que,** *to have . . . to.*

Tuvimos que arrojar la carga al mar.	We had to throw the cargo into the sea.
Hoy *he tenido* mucho *que* hacer.	I have had a great deal to do today.

145. Tener en cuenta, *to take into account, to consider;* **tener lugar,** *to take place, to happen.*

Usted debe *tener en cuenta* la condición precaria de esa compañía.	You must take into account the precarious condition of that company.
Tenga en cuenta que el tranvía no ha estado funcionando sino dos meses.	Consider that the tramway has been in operation only two months.
¿Cuándo *tuvo lugar* eso?	When did that happen?

146. **Tener razón** (literally, *to have reason*), *to be right;* **no tener razón,** *to be wrong.*

Sé que *tengo razón* en esto.	I know I am right in this.
Me parece que usted *no tiene razón*.	It seems to me that you are wrong.
Él *tiene* mucha *razón*, y usted no *la* tiene.	He is perfectly right, and you are not.

147. **Tener,** *to be the matter with, to ail*—referring to a person's health.

Mi hermano está muy enfermo.—¿Sí? *¿Qué tiene?*	My brother is very ill.—Is that so? What is the matter with him?
No sé *qué tengo*, pero no me siento bien.	I do not know what is the matter with me, but I do not feel well.

TRATAR

148. **Tratar,** *to treat; to make a treaty; to deal.*

Me *trataron* muy bien.	They treated me very well.
España *trató* con los Estados Unidos.	Spain treated with the United States.
Es difícil *tratar* con esa gente.	It is difficult to deal with those people.

149. **Tratar de,** *to try.*

Trate de venir temprano.	Try to come early.
El toro *trató de* escaparse.	The bull tried to escape.

150. **Tratarse de,** *to be under consideration; to be a matter* or *a question of.*

¿De qué *se trata?* [*A question often asked by a person on joining others who are talking.*]	What is the subject of conversation? *or*, What are you discussing? *or*, What are you talking about?
La cosa era seria, pues no *se trataba* de unos pocos pesos, sino de varios millones.	The thing was serious, for it was not a question of a few dollars, but of several millions.
¿De qué *se trató* en la reunión que tuvieron ayer los oficiales?	What was the subject considered at the meeting held yesterday by the officers?
Ahora no *se trata* de si podemos comprar más géneros ó no: de lo que *se trata* es de salir de los que tenemos.	The question now is not whether we can buy more goods or not; the question is how to get rid of those we have.

VALER

151. **Valer,** *to be worth*—said of prices; **valer la pena,** *to be worth while.*

¿Cuánto *vale* este libro?	How much is this book worth?
Eso no *vale la pena.*	That is not worth while.
La propuesta de esos señores no *vale la pena* de discutirse.	Those gentlemen's proposition is not worth discussing (*more literally*, It is not worth while to discuss those gentlemen's proposition).
Creo que este viaje *vale la pena* de hacerse.	I think this journey is worth making.

Valer is never used in the sense of *to be worth*, with reference to a person's wealth. For this purpose, *tener* should be employed (Art. **142**).

152. **Más vale,** *it is better, it is preferable.*

Más vale morir de hambre que vivir mendigando.	It is better to die of hunger than to live by begging.
Más vale tarde que nunca.	Better late than never.
Más vale que no hayan aceptado nuestra oferta.	It is better that they have not accepted our offer.

153. **Valer, valer de,** *to avail.*

De nada nos *valdrá* la mediación de los americanos.	The mediation of the Americans will avail us nothing.
¿Qué *han valido* nuestras protestas?	What have our protests availed?

154. **Valerse de,** *to make use of, to resort to; to avail oneself of, to take advantage of.*

Tuve que *valerme de* un guía.	I had to make use of a guide.
Nos valimos del armisticio para reorganizar nuestro ejército.	We availed ourselves of the armistice to reorganize our army.
Su esposa *se valió* de la credulidad de él para engañarlo.	His wife took advantage of his credulity to deceive him.

155. **Hacer valer,** *to turn to account, to assert.*

Haga usted *valer* su experiencia.	Turn your experience to account.
Es necesario que *hagamos valer* nuestros derechos.	It is necessary that we assert our rights.

VENIR

156. **Venir,** *to come* (Art. **100**).

157. **Venir, venir bien,** *to fit, to become.*

Este sobretodo no me *viene* (*or*, no me *viene bien*).	This overcoat does not fit me.
¡Qué *bien* le *viene* ese sombrero á la señorita Laura!	How becoming that hat is to Miss Laura!

158. **Venir á que,** *to come in order that.* (See Part 6, The Subjunctive after certain Conjunctive and Adverbial Words and Phrases.)

159. **Venir de, Followed by an Infinitive.**—The meaning of this expression is very similar to that of *acabar de* (Art. **48**). The difference between the two is that *acabar de* simply means that the action denoted by the infinitive following has just been performed; while *venir de* indicates that the action has just been performed, and the agent is just coming from the place where the action was performed.

Venimos de *comer.*	We are coming from dinner.
Vengo de *pagar* unas cuentas.	I have just been to pay some bills.
Cuando los ví, **venían de** *cazar.*	When I saw them, they were returning from hunting.

In rendering expressions like these, the literal translation (which is good English, although not common), should be taken as a guide: *I am coming from dining, I am coming from paying some bills.*

160. **Que viene,** *coming, next*—with reference to periods of time, such as weeks, years, etc.

el mes *que viene;* la semana *que viene;* el año *que viene*	next month; next week; next year

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 10)

THE ADVERB

CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS

CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO MEANING

1. With regard to their meaning, adverbs are divided into various classes, the names of which are self-explaining, and do not, therefore, need to be formally defined. The most important of these classes are:

1. Adverbs of **manner.**

bien, *well*	mal, *badly*	velozmente, *swiftly*
mejor, *better*	peor, *worse*	así, *thus, so*

2. Adverbs of **time.**

hoy, *today*	tarde, *late*	siempre, *always*	jamás, *never*
ayer, *yesterday*	temprano, *early*	ahora, *now*	entonces, *then*

3. Adverbs of **place.**

aquí, *here*	atrás, *behind*	adelante, *forward*
allí, *there*	abajo, *below*	arriba, *above*

4. Adverbs of **quantity.**

mucho, *much*	más, *more*	algo, *somewhat*	cerca, *near*
muy, *very*	menos, *less*	demasiado, *too, too much*	lejos, *far*

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

5. Adverbs **of affirmation.**

sí, *yes* | ciertamente, *certainly* | indudablemente, *undoubtedly*

6. Adverbs **of negation.**

no, *no, not* | nada, *not at all* | tampoco, *nor . . either*

7. Adverbs **of doubt.**

quizá, *perhaps* | acaso, *perchance* | probablemente, *likely*

Some adverbs may belong to more than one class. Thus, **nunca,** *never*, is an adverb both of time and of negation.

Adverbs that are equivalent to a substantive or substantive phrase modified by a demonstrative adjective are called **demonstrative adverbs.** Such are **aquí,** *here*, and **hoy,** *today*, which are equivalent, respectively, to **en este lugar,** *in this place*, and **este día,** *this day*.

2. It should be borne in mind that the part of speech to which a word belongs depends on the function it performs. The same word may be a substantive, an adjective, or an adverb, according to its office in the sentence. Thus, in the first of the following examples, *mucho*, being the accusative of *tengo*, is a substantive; in the second, the same word modifies the substantive *café*, and is therefore an adjective; in the third, it is an adverb modifying the verbs *habla* and *yerra:*

No *tengo* **mucho,** pero estoy contento con lo que tengo.	I have not much, but am content with what I have.
El Brasil exporta **mucho** *café*.	Brazil exports much coffee.
El que **mucho** *habla* **mucho** *yerra*.	He who talks much errs much.

CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO FORM

3. Primitive Adverbs.—With regard to their form, adverbs, like substantives, adjectives, and verbs, may be either **primitive** or **derivative.** (See Part 3, Classes of

Nouns). The following may serve as examples of primitive adverbs:

aquí, *here*	quizá, *perhaps*	bien, *well*
hoy, *today*	nunca, *never*	más, *more*

4. Derivative Adverbs.—Most all adverbs belonging to this class are formed from adjectives by means of the ending *-mente*, which indicates manner or mode, being the equivalent of the English *-ly*. If the adjective has a masculine and a feminine form, *-mente* is added to the feminine form; otherwise, the ending is added to the adjective, without altering the form of the latter.

sabio: sabia*mente*	wise: wisely
necio: necia*mente*	foolish: foolishly
encantador: encantadora*mente*	charming: charmingly
feliz: feliz*mente*	happy: happily
cortés: cortés*mente*	courteous: courteously
dulce: dulce*mente*	sweet: sweetly

5. Two or more adverbs in *-mente* cannot be connected by a conjunction, either expressed or tacit; the ending is given only to the last, being understood after the other adjectives.

virtuosa y *sabia***mente**	virtuously and wisely
valerosa pero *cauta***mente**	bravely but cautiously
dulce, *encantadora***mente**	sweetly, charmingly
ni *justa*, *honrada*, ni *decente-***mente.**	neither justly, honestly, nor decently.

As will be observed, when the ending *-mente* is understood, the feminine form of the adjective is employed, as when the ending is actually added.

6. The adverb **recientemente**, *recently*, is apocopated to *recién* when it modifies and precedes a participle. It may then be generally rendered by *newly* or *new*. The expression *estar recién* followed by a participle is better translated by *to have just*.

Recientemente se han construído seis buques de guerra.
La firma de Toro y Guzmán quebró *recientemente*.
En el incendio pereció un niño **recién** *nacido*.
El acueducto estaba **recién** *terminado* cuando yo estuve allí.
Estamos **recién** *llegados*, y aún no conocemos bien la ciudad.

Six warships have been built recently.
The firm of Toro and Guzman failed recently.
A new-born child perished in the conflagration.
The aqueduct had just been finished when I was there.
We have just arrived (*or*, are newcomers), and are not yet well acquainted with the city.

FORMS OF COMPARISON

THE COMPARATIVES MÁS AND MENOS

7. The Formulas of Comparison Más . . . Que, Menos . . . Que.—These two expressions mean, respectively, *more than* and *less than*. In them, *más* and *menos* may be either adverbs or adjectives, according to the word they modify, or to the character of the comparison they serve to express. As an adverb, *más* may modify an adjective or another adverb, with either of which it forms a comparative phrase usually called the **comparative degree** of the adjective or of the adverb, as the case may be. This term, however, is more properly applied to a special derived word by which the phrase in question can be replaced, such as **mejor,** *better*, which is the equivalent of **más bueno,** *more good*. Using the term in this restricted sense, the following adjectives and adverbs are the only ones that have a comparative degree:

bueno, *good:* / bien, *well:*	**mejor,** *better*
malo, *bad:* / mal, *badly, ill:*	**peor,** *worse*
grande, *great, large:*	**mayor,** *greater, larger*
pequeño, *small, little:*	**menor,** *smaller, less*
poco, *little:* / pocos, *few:*	**menos,** *less; fewer*

These forms can always be replaced by the phrases *más bueno*, *más bien*, *más malo*, *más mal*, *más grande*, *más pequeño*, *más poco*, *más pocos*, respectively. In all other cases, comparison of superiority is expressed by means of **más**, *more*. Comparison of inferiority is always expressed by **menos**, *less*.

Tenemos *más* generales *que* soldados, y *menos* juicio *que* entusiasmo.	We have more generals than soldiers, and less judgment than enthusiasm.
Los Estados Unidos exportan *más* trigo *que* la Argentina.	The United States exports more wheat than Argentina.
¿No cree usted que aquí se piensa *más* en el dinero *que* en el honor?	Do you not think that people here think more about money than about honor?
En la América del Norte hay *menos* ríos *que* en la del Sur, pero en ésta hay *menos* lagos *que* en aquélla.	There are fewer rivers in North America than in South America, but in the latter there are fewer lakes than in the former.
Este cuarto es *mejor que* el mío.	This room is better than mine.
Ella habla inglés *peor que* yo.	She speaks English worse than I.
Usted habla francés *mejor que* alemán.	You speak French better than German.
La señorita Rosa es **más bonita** *que* la hermana.	Miss Rose is prettier than her sister.
El aire es **más denso** en los valles *que* en las montañas.	Air is denser in the valleys than in the mountains.
Los trabajadores son **más escasos** en los estados del norte *que* en los del sur.	Working men are scarcer in the northern states than in the southern.
Europa es **más pequeña** *que* Norte-América.	Europe is smaller than North America.
Lincoln fué sin duda mucho **más grande** *que* Wáshington.	Lincoln was without doubt much greater than Washington.
Mi corresponsal llegó **más temprano** *que* yo.	My correspondent arrived earlier than I.
Nuestra fábrica queda **más lejos** de la estación del ferrocarril *que* del muelle.	Our factory is farther from the railroad station than from the wharf.
Yo vivo **más cerca** del correo *que* de la oficina del cable.	I live nearer to the post office than to the cable office.

8. Mayor and Menor.—Although, as said in the last article, *mayor* and *menor* are the comparative degrees of *grande* and *pequeño*, respectively, they are seldom employed

as such with reference to size, except in mathematical language and in a few common phrases, as in the third and fourth sentences given below.

Ocho es **mayor** *que* seis y **menor** *que* doce.	Eight is greater than six and less than twelve.
El área de un círculo es poco **mayor** *que* el área de un polígono regular de quinientos doce lados inscrito en el círculo.	The area of a circle is little larger than the area of a regular polygon of five hundred twelve sides inscribed in the circle.
El todo es **mayor** *que* cada una de sus partes.	The whole is greater than each of its parts.
Cada una de las partes de un todo es **menor** *que* el todo.	Each of the parts of a whole is less than the whole.
El descuento que ustedes nos ofrecen es **menor** *que* el que otros fabricantes nos dan.	The discount that you offer us is less than that which other manufacturers give us.
Las dificultades en el aprendizaje de un idioma extranjero son **mayores** para un adulto *que* para un niño.	The difficulties in the learning of a foreign language are greater for an adult than for a child.
Hay muchas mujeres que le tienen **mayor** cariño á su perro *que* á sus hijos.	There are many women that have greater affection for their dog than for their children.

but

Nueva-York es **más grande** *que* Wáshington.	New York is larger than Washington.
Mi tienda es **más pequeña** *que* la suya.	My store is smaller than yours.
Este caballo es **más grande** *que* aquél.	This horse is larger than that one.
La cocina es **más pequeña** *que* el comedor, y los dos juntos son **más pequeños** *que* este cuarto.	The kitchen is smaller than the dining room, and the two together are smaller than this room.

9. With reference to age, *mayor* and *menor* mean *older* and *younger*, respectively.

¿Es usted **mayor** *que* su hermano?—No, señor; no soy ni *mayor* ni *menor*, pues él y yo somos mellizos.	Are you older than your brother?—No, sir; I am neither older nor younger, for he and I are twins.

10. The Forms Más . . . de lo que, Menos . . . de lo que.—When the second member of a comparison contains a verb, *que* is usually replaced by *de lo que*.

Yo traduzco el inglés *mejor* **de lo que** lo *hablo*.	I translate English better than I speak it.
El sol es mucho *más grande* **de lo que** *parece*.	The sun is much larger than it looks.
La medicina está mucho *menos adelantada* **de lo que** generalmente se *cree*.	Medicine is much less advanced than is generally believed.
Él sabe *más* **de lo que** *ha dicho*.	He knows more than he has told.

11. If, in the first member of a comparison, *más* or *menos* modifies an accusative noun, which is implied as the accusative also of the verb in the second member, *lo* is replaced by the appropriate substantivized article representing that noun. The literal translation of the article and the *que* to which it serves as antecedent is indicated in the following sentences by the words in brackets:

Hallámos más oposición *de* **la** *que* esperábamos.	We found more opposition than [that which] we expected.
El edificio tiene más defectos *de* **los** *que* á primera vista se notan.	The building has more defects than [those that] are noticed at first sight.
Nos han enviado menos café **del** *que* pedímos.	They have sent us less coffee than [that which] we ordered.

12. In the cases considered in the last two examples, *que* may replace the phrases *de lo que*, *del que*, *de los que*, etc.; but this form of construction is rather unusual.

Yo traduzco el inglés mejor *que* lo hablo.
El sol es mucho más grande *que* parece.
Hallámos más oposición *que* esperábamos.

13. Más de, Menos de.—Before a cardinal or a partitive numeral, or a phrase expressing quantity or number, *más de* and *menos de* are used instead of *más que* and *menos que*, respectively.

Esa casa vale **más de** *cuarenta mil* pesos.	That house is worth more than forty thousand dollars.
Hemos perdido **más de** *diez* por ciento del dinero que invertímos en esa empresa.	We have lost more than ten per cent. of the money we invested in that enterprise.
No puedo vender este azúcar por **menos de** *tres* centavos la libra.	I cannot sell this sugar for less than three cents a pound.
Más de *la mitad* de la ciudad fué destruída por el terremoto.	More than one-half of the city was destroyed by the earthquake.

14. *Más que*, followed by a word or phrase denoting number, may also be employed in negative sentences, but then the combination *no . . . más que* means *only* or *but* rather than *not more than*. The same combination, with the same meaning, may be followed by words or phrases not denoting number.

España **no** ha producido **más que** *un* escritor verdaderamente grande—Cervantes.	Spain has produced but a truly great writer—Cervantes.
Colombia **no** tiene **más que** *tres* puertos importantes sobre el mar de las Antillas.	Colombia has only three important ports on the Caribbean sea.
En este barrio de la ciudad *no* viven *más que* chinos.	Only Chinese live in this quarter of the city.
Ustedes *no* necesitan *más que* presentarle esta tarjeta al administrador del banco.	You need but to present this card to the manager of the bank.

In all these examples, *no . . . más que* may be replaced by *no . . . sino*, which also means *only*, *but*.

España *no* ha producido *sino* un escritor verdaderamente grande—Cervantes.

Colombia *no* tiene *sino* tres puertos importantes sobre el mar de las Antillas.

En este barrio de la ciudad *no* viven *sino* chinos.

SUPERLATIVE FORMS

15. Superlative Degree of Adjectives.—*Más* and *menos* may be joined to an adjective or an adverb, to form phrases indicating that, among three or more objects of

thought possessing the attribute denoted by the adjective or adverb, the one to which the phrase is applied possesses it in the highest degree, if *más* is the modifier; in the lowest degree, if *menos* is the modifier. These phrases are called **superlative phrases.** A superlative phrase consisting of an adjective or adverb modified by *más* is called the **superlative degree** of the adjective or of the adverb, as the case may be.

The adverbs *más* and *menos* used in superlative phrases are literally equivalent to *most* and *least*, respectively, although in some cases the superlative degree is in English expressed by means of the ending *-est*. This ending has no Spanish equivalent, and the only adjectives and adverbs in which the superlative degree may be expressed by one word are those in which the comparative degree may be likewise expressed; that is, *bueno*, *bien*, etc. (Art. **7**), the superlative degrees of which are the same as the comparative; that is, either *mejor* or *más bueno*, either *peor* or *más malo*, etc.

16. A substantive modified by a superlative phrase or its equivalent should take the definite article, when comparison is made among several things possessing the attribute denoted by the adjective. If, however, the substantive is modified by a possessive adjective, the article is dispensed with. In this respect, the Spanish construction is the same as the English, except that, if the superlative phrase is followed by a prepositional adverbial phrase denoting place or locality, **de**, *of*, is the proper Spanish preposition to use, instead of *en*, which is the literal equivalent of *in*.

As a rule, a superlative phrase modifying a substantive preceded by the article, follows the substantive. The single-word superlatives *mejor*, *peor*, *mayor*, and *menor* may either precede or follow the substantive.

El Amazonas es *el* río *más grande* **del** mundo.	The Amazon is the largest river in the world.
El hombre *menos sospechoso* hubiera dudado de la sinceridad del testigo.	The least suspicious man would have doubted the sincerity of the witness.

Anoche ví á *la* bailarina *más famosa* **de** España.	Last night I saw the most famous female dancer in Spain.
La quinina es *el* remedio *más usado* para las fiebres intermitentes.	Quinine is the most used remedy for intermittent fevers.
Tú eres *mi más querido* amigo.	Thou art my dearest friend.
Sus días *más tristes* fueron los que pasó en el destierro.	His saddest days were those he spent in exile.
El doctor Rojas es *el mejor* médico **de** la ciudad.	Doctor Rojas is the best physician in the city.
Parece que usted nos ha dado *el peor* vino que tenía.	It seems that you have given us the worst wine you had.
Lo haré con *el mayor* placer.	I will do it with the greatest pleasure.
Ésa es *la menor* dificultad.	That is the least (*or*, smallest) difficulty.
José es *el mayor* de mis cuatro hermanos.	Joseph is the eldest of my four brothers.
Don Federico vino con *su* hijo *menor*.	Mr. Frederic came with his youngest son.

17. Neither the definite article nor a possessive adjective indicates by itself superlative degree, there being no difference in form between this degree and the comparative. Which one is intended must be determined by the context or the circumstances.

Éste es **el** *mejor* restaurante *de los dos*.	This is the better restaurant of the two.
Éste es **el** *mejor* restaurante *de la ciudad*.	This is the best restaurant in the city.
¿Cuál de ustedes *dos* es mayor?—Yo soy *mayor*, aunque mi hermano es *más alto*.	Which of you two is older?—I am older, although my brother is taller.
¿Cuál de sus *tres* niñitos es *mayor?*—Juan es *mayor*, aunque Antonio es *más alto*.	Which of your three little children is oldest?—John is oldest, although Anthony is tallest.

18. In the last example, and in all other expressions of like form, the employment of the article is preferable to its omission.

¿Cuál de sus tres niñitos es *el* mayor?—Juan es *el* mayor, aunque Antonio es *el* más alto.

Here the article is substantivized, the substantive *niñitos* being implied in it. So in English, *Which of your three little children is the oldest (one)?*

19. *Mayor* is often employed as a superlative to indicate prominence or importance, without any necessary implication as to size or any other specified property.

el altar *mayor;* la iglesia *mayor;* la plaza *mayor;* el palo *mayor.*	the high altar; the cathedral (*literally*, the main church); the principal square; the mainmast.

20. A predicate superlative phrase does not take the definite article.

Me siento *más feliz* cuando estoy en el mar.	I feel happiest when I am at sea.
Los empleados se muestran *menos satisfechos* cuando son *mejor tratados.*	The employes show themselves least satisfied when they are best treated.

21. When a substantive following another with which it is in apposition is modified by a superlative phrase, the article is occasionally placed after the first-mentioned substantive; but it is equally proper, and more common, to place the article before the substantive.

El azúcar y el tabaco, productos los más importantes de Cuba (*or*, los productos más importantes de Cuba), pagan enormes derechos de aduana.	Sugar and tobacco, the most important products of Cuba, pay enormous custom-house duties.
En Alemania se bebe mucho la cerveza, bebida la más popular del país (*or*, la bebida más popular del país).	In Germany people drink much beer—the most popular drink in the country.

22. The neuter *lo* naturally excludes the definite article, as this article is implied in that neuter.

Ahora **lo** *más importante* es terminar esa lista.	The most important thing now is to finish that list.
Lo *más caro* no es siempre **lo** *mejor*, ni **lo** *más barato* **lo** *peor*.	The most expensive things are not always the best, nor the cheapest the worst.

23. The superlative expressions *de los más*, *de las más*, following a substantive, are often used rather to intensify the degree of the quality denoted by the adjective they modify than to establish a comparison among several objects possessing the same quality. They are then better rendered by *very*, *most*, *exceedingly*. If the substantive is singular, it should be preceded by the indefinite article.

Tiene una casa *de las más hermosas*.	He has a most handsome house.
Aquí se hacen pianos *de los mejores* (or, *de los más buenos*).	Very good pianos (*or*, Pianos of the best quality) are made here.
El doctor me dió unas píldoras *de las más amargas*.	The doctor gave me some exceedingly bitter pills.

When it is intended to convey the idea of comparison, the phrase *de los* is usually placed before the substantive. The position of a superlative phrase is then after the substantive; that of a single-word superlative, either before or after.

Tiene una *de las* casas *más hermosas* de la ciudad.	He has one of the handsomest houses in the city.
Aquí se hacen algunos *de los* pianos *mejores* (or, *de los mejores* pianos) que se venden en este país.	Some of the best pianos that are sold in this country are made here.
El doctor me dió unas *de las* píldoras *más amargas* que encontró en la botica.	The doctor gave me some of the bitterest pills he found in the drug store.

24. Other Superlative Phrases and Words.—The superlative degree of adverbs, like that of adjectives, is formed by means of **más**, *most*, except in the case of **bien**, *well*, and **mal** (or, **malamente**), *badly*, which have the special superlatives **mejor**, *best*, and **peor**, *worst*, respectively. Superlative adverb phrases should never be preceded by the article. In general, a superlative word or

phrase can take the article only when the latter is substantivized, as in the cases treated in the foregoing articles. It should be noticed that *más* and *menos*, like *most* and *least* in English, may by themselves modify a verb, forming with it superlative verbal phrases; or, as neuter substantives, be the accusatives of transitive verbs, indicating the greatest (or fewest) number or the largest (or least) quantity of that to which they refer (things, money, services, etc.). Again, as adjectives, they may form superlative substantive phrases, *más* meaning then *most* or *the greatest number*, and *menos* meaning either *least* or *fewest*. In the second example given below, *más* and *menos* form with *habla* and *sabe*, respectively, superlative verbal phrases; a similar phrase is formed by *come* and *peor* in the third. In the sixth, *más* is the accusative of *esperaba;* and in the last, *más* and *menos* form superlative substantive phrases with the substantives *dinero* and *acciones*, respectively.

¿Cuál de los tres caballos corre *más velozmente?*	Which of the three horses runs fastest?
Quien *más* habla es á menudo quien *menos* sabe.	He who talks most is often the one who knows least.
Éste es el restaurante en que se come *peor* y se paga *más*.	This is the restaurant where one eats worst and pays most.
Naturalmente, los que llegaron *más temprano* se posesionaron de los pocos asientos que había.	Naturally, those who arrived earliest took possession of the few seats there were.
Los Estados Unidos son sin duda el país en que se viaja *más cómodamente*.	The United States is without doubt the country where one travels most comfortably.
De los que hablaron aquel día, Castelar, de quien *más* se esperaba, fué el que habló *menos* elocuentemente.	Of those who spoke that day, Castelar, from whom most was expected, was the one who spoke least eloquently.
Don Antonio, que tenía *más* dinero, compró *menos* acciones.	Mr. Anthony, who had the most money, bought the fewest shares.

25. *Lo* followed by a superlative word or phrase modifying an expression denoting possibility, is literally equivalent to *the;* but such combinations are usually better rendered by

means of *as* and the verb *can*, in the manner illustrated by the following examples:

Venga *lo más temprano posible*.	Come as early as you can (*literally*, the earliest possible).
Despachen estos bultos *lo más aprisa que puedan*.	Send off these bales as fast as you can (*literally*, the fastest you can).
Sírvanos de comer *lo más pronto posible*, pues estamos de prisa.	Serve dinner to us as soon as possible, for we are in haste.
Gastámos *lo menos que pudimos*.	We spent as little as we could.
Hemos tratado de hacer este texto *lo más completo, lo más práctico*, y en todo respecto *lo mejor posible*.	We have tried to make this textbook as complete, practical, and in every respect as good as possible.

26. Either *los más de* or *la mayor parte* renders the English *most all, the most of*, in the sense of *the greater number of*, or *the majority of*. When reference is made to quantity, not to numbers, *lo más de* renders the English *most of, the greater part of, most all*.

Los más de los barberos de este pueblo son italianos.	The most of the barbers in this town are Italians.
Nosotros importamos de Colombia *la mayor parte de* las esmeraldas que vendemos.	We import from Colombia the greater part of the emeralds we sell.
La mayor parte de la gente cree que toda la América del Sur es cálida y malsana.	Most people think that the whole of South America is hot and unhealthful.
Lo más del trapiche está ya montado.	Most all the sugar mill is already installed.
En *lo más de* aquella región ardiente no se ven sino bosques y fieras.	In the greater part of that burning region, one sees nothing but woods and wild beasts.

TANTO, COMO, CUANTO, CUAL

27. Comparison of Equality.—Comparison of equality, whether with regard to quality, quantity, number, or anything else that is susceptible of being compared, is effected by means of the formula *tanto . . . como*, in which

tanto may be either an adjective or an adverb. As an adjective, the singular form *tanto,-a* refers to quantity, and means either *as much* or *so much;* the plural form *tantos,-as* refers to number, and means either *as many* or *so many*. As an adverb, *tanto* means either *as* or *so*, *as much* or *so much:* when it precedes an adjective or another adverb (or their equivalents) it is apocopated to *tan*. The correlative of *tanto* is *como*, which introduces the second member of the comparison, and means *as*.

Juan tiene *tanta* ambición *como* Pedro, pero no tiene *tantos* recursos.	John has as much ambition as Peter, but he has not so many resources.
Su cabello es *tan* blanco *como* la nieve.	His hair is as white as snow.
Nosotros no fuimos *tan* afortunados *como* usted.	We were not so lucky as you.
María no cose *tan* aprisa *como* Josefina, pero cose mejor.	Mary does not sew so fast as Josephine, but she sews better.
Si ustedes trabajaran *tanto como* hablan, serían millonarios.	If you worked as much as you talk, you would be millionaires.
El señor López no viene á vernos *tan* á menudo *como* solía.	Mr. Lopez does not come to see us so often as he used to.
Yo he sido *tan* desgraciado *como* usted ha sido afortunado.	I have been as unfortunate as you have been fortunate.

28. The adverb *tan*, like its English equivalent *as*, is often omitted, being understood.

Su cabello es ahora blanco *como* la nieve.	His hair is now white as snow.
Estoy pobre *como* un mendigo.	I am poor as a beggar.

When similarity, rather than identity, of attributes is to be expressed, *como* may be replaced by *cual*. In this case, if *como* or *cual* is followed by a substantive or a substantive phrase, it should be rendered by *like;* otherwise, by *as*.

Su cabello es ahora blanco *cual* la nieve.	His hair is now white like snow.
Aquel conquistador era valeroso *cual* (or, *como*) el león, pero alevoso *cual* (or, *como*) el tigre.	That conqueror was brave like the lion, but treacherous like the tiger.

El anarquista llevaba la mano envuelta en un pañuelo, *cual* (or, *como*) si le fuese imposible usarla.

The anarchist carried his hand wrapped in a handkerchief, as if it were impossible for him to use it.

29. It should be borne in mind that when *tanto* is an adjective, a neuter (in which case it means *as much*, *as many things*, or *so much*, *so many things*), or an adverb modifying a verb or a comparative word or phrase; or when the adjective or adverb it modifies is not expressed, it is not apocopated. The same rule applies when *tanto*, either by itself or with *que* as its correlative, is used as a term of intensification.

Aunque he viajado por todo el mundo, no he visto *tanto* como usted dice haber visto en California.

Although I have traveled all over the world, I have not seen so much as you say to have seen in California.

Tanto rogaron, *que* al fin obtuvieron lo que deseaban.

They begged so much, that they finally got what they wanted.

Si usted ha hecho eso, **tanto** *peor* para usted.

If you have done that, so much the worse for you.

¿Es usted tan paciente como su hermano?—No, señor, no *tanto*.

Are you as patient as your brother?—No, sir; not so much.

He estado *tan* **enfermo** *que* no he podido salir.

I have been so ill that I have not been able to go out.

30. When *como*, as the correlative of *tanto*, is followed by a verb, an adjective, or a prepositional phrase, it may be replaced by *cuanto*. The apocopated form *cuan* may be employed before an adjective, but the preference is given to the full form.

Si usted trabajara *tanto* **cuanto** *habla*, sería millonario.

If you worked as much as you talk, you would be a millionaire.

Lo hice *tanto* por placer **cuanto** *por necesidad*.

I did it as much from pleasure as from necessity.

Los soldados estaban *tan* mal armados **cuanto** (or, **cuan**) *descontentos*.

The soldiers were as badly armed as discontented.

Deseo ir á Sur-América, *tanto* por conocer esa parte del mundo, **cuanto** por ver si puedo emprender allí algún negocio.

I wish to go to South America, as much to become acquainted with that part of the world, as to see if I can undertake some business there.

Tanto is often omitted, being understood, and then *cuanto* may be rendered by *as well as.*

"La victoria fué fácil, *cuanto* decisiva."	"The victory was easy, as well as decisive."

If the tacit *tan* and its correlative *cuanto* modify the same adjective or adverb, the apocopated form *cuan* occupies, in the elliptic sentence, the same place that *tan* occupies in the full sentence. In the latter form, however, *como* is preferable to *cuanto.*

Entraremos **tan** *calladamente* **cuanto** (*better*, **como**) podamos. Entraremos **cuan** *calladamente* podamos.	We will go in as quietly as we can.
"En toda la casa, **tan** *grande* **como** era, no había una sola pieza habitable." "En toda la casa, **cuan** *grande* era, no había una sola pieza habitable."	"In the whole house, large as it was, there was not one single habitable room."

31. When *tanto* is a neuter, it may take *cuanto* as its correlative, the two being accusatives of two different verbs. In this case, *tanto* means the same as **todo,** *all;* and the expression *tanto cuanto* may be replaced by *todo cuanto* or *todo lo que*, both of which mean *all which.*

Tengo *tanto cuanto* necesito. Tengo *todo cuanto* necesito. Tengo *todo lo que* necesito.	I have as much as (*or*, all) I need.

In general, both *todo cuanto* and *cuanto*, used as neuters, are synonymous with **todo lo que,** *all which;* while *todos cuantos*, or simply *cuantos*, means the same as **todos los que,** *all those that.* As an adjective, *cuantos* means the same as **todos los . . . que,** *all the . . . that, all . . . that.*

Cuanto (or, *Todo cuanto*) hay en estos cuartos es de nosotros.	Everything there is in these rooms is ours.
No puedo creer nada de *cuanto* (or, *todo cuanto*) esos hombres han dicho.	I cannot believe anything of all that those men have said.

Tal es la opinión de *cuantos* han estudiado el asunto.	Such is the opinion of all those who have studied the subject.
Yo puedo darle *cuantos* datos necesite (or, *todos los* datos *que* necesite).	I can give you all the data you may need.

32. The expression *tanto . . . como*, in which both *tanto* and *como* are followed by a substantive, is often employed in the sense of *both . . . and, as well as.* Although *cuanto* may then take the place of *como*, the latter is generally preferred.

Todo lo he perdido, *tanto* mi dinero *como* el de usted.	I have lost all—my money as well as yours.
Tanto los géneros de lino *como* los de algodón cuestan ahora muchísimo.	Both linen and cotton goods cost a great deal now.
Todas las máquinas que había aquí las mandé al vapor, *tanto* las que ustedes me mandaron ayer *como* las que yo tenía antes.	I sent to the steamer all the machines that were here, both those you sent me yesterday and those I had before.

33. The Formulas Cuanto más . . . tanto más, Etc.—The English *the more . . . the more*—as in *the more one reads the more one learns*—is rendered by any of the following expressions, all of which are equivalent: *mientras más . . . más, mientras más . . . tanto más, cuanto más . . . más, cuanto más . . . tanto más.* The expressions *the more . . . the less, the less . . . the more*, etc. are similarly translated, *less* being rendered by *menos.*

Mientras uno *más* tiene, *más* desea tener.	The more one has, the more one wishes to have.
Cuanto el hombre *más* estudia, *tanto más* ignorante se siente.	The more man studies, the more ignorant he feels.
Parecía que los dos senadores se entendían *tanto menos cuanto más* discutían.	It seemed that the two senators understood each other the less, the more they disputed.
Cuanto menos le cobre á ese señor, *tanto más* pronto le pagará.	The less you dun that gentleman, the sooner he will pay you.
Estas explicaciones son tan oscuras, que *cuanto* uno *más* las lee *tanto menos* las entiende.	These explanations are so obscure, that the more one reads them, the less one understands them.

Similarly,

Mientras mejor me porto yo con él, *tanto peor* se porta él conmigo.	The better I treat him, the worse he treats me.
Cuanto más dinero ponga usted en esa empresa, *tanto peor* para usted.	The more money you put into that undertaking, the worse it will be for you.

34. The Formulas Tanto más . . . cuanto, Etc. The expressions *tanto más . . . cuanto, tanto menos . . . cuanto* are equivalent, respectively, to the English forms *all the more . . . because, all the less . . . because.*

El comercio con esos países es *tanto más* difícil *cuanto* las vías de comunicación son pocas y malas.	Trade with those countries is all the more difficult because the means of communication are few and bad.
La noticia fué *tanto más* agradable *cuanto* nos llegó inesperadamente.	The news was all the more pleasing because it reached us unexpectedly.
Una máquina como ésa sería *tanto menos* eficiente *cuanto* aquí el carbón es sumamente costoso.	An engine like that would be all the less efficient because coal is exceedingly expensive here.
Las dificultades que tuvimos que superar fueron *tanto mayores*, *cuanto* carecíamos de bueyes y mulas para trasportar el material.	The difficulties we had to surmount were all the greater because we lacked oxen and mules to transport the material.
La conducta del doctor Díaz al ausentarse no me parece justificable en ningún sentido; *tanto menos cuanto* él sabe que aquí es imposible conseguir otro médico.	Dr. Diaz's behavior in absenting himself does not seem to me justifiable in any respect; so much the less as he knows that it is impossible to get another physician here.
Los caminos estaban en una condición *tanto peor cuanto* aquella noche había llovido á torrentes y había habido un huracán de los más fuertes. (See Art. **23.**)	The roads were in a condition all the worse (*or*, The condition of the roads was all the worse) because that night it had rained in torrents and there had been an exceedingly strong hurricane.

In all expressions like these, *cuanto que* may be substituted

for *cuanto*. The *que*, although very commonly used, is unnecessary, as it does not alter the meaning of the sentence in the least.

El comercio con esos países es tanto más difícil *cuanto que* las vías de comunicación son pocas y malas.

Una máquina como ésa sería tanto menos eficiente *cuanto que* aquí el carbón es sumamente costoso.

USES OF SOME IMPORTANT ADVERBS*

ACÁ, AQUÍ—ALLÁ, ALLÍ, AHÍ

35. Acá and Aquí.—These words are both demonstrative adverbs of place, meaning *here*. They differ in that *acá* is generally employed with verbs denoting motion, and *aquí* with verbs denoting location. When so employed, *acá* properly means *hither, to this place*, while *aquí* means *here, in this place*.

Venga *acá*, Juanito.	Come here, Johnny.
Tráigame ese libro *acá*.	Bring that book here to me.
¿Está don José *aquí?*	Is Mr. Joseph here?
Espéreme *aquí*, mientras voy á poner este telegrama.	Wait for me here, while I go to send this telegram.
¿Quién vive *aquí?*	Who lives here?

With a prepositional phrase specifying the place referred to, either *aquí* or *acá* may follow a verb of motion.

Venga { *aquí* / *acá* } á mi oficina mañana.	Come here to my office tomorrow.

36. Ahí, Allá, Allí.—These also are demonstrative adverbs of place. *Ahí* means the same as **en ese lugar,** *in that place*, referring to a place where the listener is, or which is nearer to him than to the speaker, but not remote from the latter; *allí* and *allá* are equivalent (1) to **en ese lugar,**

*Several of the words here treated may perform other offices besides that of adverbs. For the sake of completeness, the most important non-adverbial uses of them will be given in connection with their adverbial uses.

in that place, referring to the place where the listener or reader is, when that place is remote from the speaker or writer; (2) to **aquel lugar**, *yonder place*, **en aquel lugar**, *in yonder place*, referring to a place which is remote from both the speaker or writer and the listener or reader. The difference between *allí* and *allá* is that, in general, the former applies to verbs denoting location; the latter, to verbs denoting either location or motion. *Allá* is, therefore, of a wider application than *allí*, and can always replace the latter. Although this rule covers the most common uses of *allí* and *allá*, it is by no means absolute, these two adverbs being by many treated as interchangeable in all cases.

¿Qué libro tiene usted *ahí?*	What book have you there?
Cuando usted me escriba, avíseme cuántos trapiches se han montado *allí* (or, *allá*).	When you write to me, let me know how many sugar mills have been installed there.
¿Ha estado usted en Cartagena últimamente?—No, señor; pero mañana pienso ir *allá*.	Have you been in Carthagena lately?—No, sir; but I intend to go there tomorrow.
¿Es usted del Brasil?—No, señor; voy *allá* con frecuencia, pero no soy de *allí* (*or*, de *allá*).	Are you from Brazil?—No, sir; I go there often, but I am not from there.

37. *Allá* may refer to a remote time, either past or future. It is then a sort of expletive or emphatic word, serving simply to call attention to the remoteness of the time, and need not be translated, although, in some cases, it may be rendered by *then*, *in those old times*, or some such expression, according to circumstances.

Esto sucedió *allá* en los tiempos mitológicos.	This happened in the olden mythological times.
Allá cuando el papa era amo de la Europa, pocos se atrevían á expresar libremente sus ideas.	In times of old, when the pope was the master of Europe, few dared to express their ideas freely.

It is also used in familiar style with reference to future events, in the literal sense of *when the time comes*. In translating it, however, it is not necessary to employ this English

phrase, which is implied in the future form of the verb, as well as understood from the circumstances.

Allá verá usted que lo que le digo es verdad.	You shall see (when the time comes) that what I tell you is the truth.
En fin, *allá* veremos.	Well, we shall see.

When so used, *allá* may be replaced by *ya*.

Ya verá usted que lo que le digo es verdad.—En fin, *ya* veremos.

38. De aquí, De allí.—Each of these expressions has different meanings, according to the circumstances in which it is used:

1. **de aquí,** *hence;* **de allí,** *thence.*

La armada de España era muy inferior á la americana, y estaba muy mal dirigida; *de aquí* la facilidad con que fué vencida.	The Spanish navy was far inferior to the American, and was very poorly managed; hence the ease with which it was vanquished.
Había varios pretendientes al trono, todos ambiciosos y desalmados; *de allí* la anarquía que reinó en el país por más de cuatro años.	There were several aspirants to the throne, all ambitious and unscrupulous; thence the anarchy that reigned in the country for over four years.

2. **de aquí,** *of (in) this place;* **de allí,** *of (in) that place.* When so used, *allí* may be replaced by *allá*.

Éste es el hotel mejor *dè aquí*.	This is the best hotel in this place (*or*, the best hotel here).
La gente *de aquí* no ama el dinero tanto como la de su país.	The people of this place (*or*, People here) do not love money so much as those of your country.
Las costumbres de *allí* (*or*, de *allá*) son muy diferentes de las *de aquí*.	The customs there are very different from those here.

3. **de aquí á,** *from now;* **de allí á,** *since then, after that time.*

de aquí á ocho días; *de aquí á* dos años	eight days from now; two years from now
de allí á tres meses; *de allí á* cuarenta y ocho horas	three months after that time; forty-eight hours after that time

4. **de aquí que,** *hence it is that* (with the appropriate changes for tense), *hence the fact that;* **de allí que,** *thence it is that, thence the fact that.*

Los católicos de entonces interpretaban la Biblia en su sentido literal; *de aquí que* la teoría copernicana encontrase tanta oposición.	The Catholics of those times interpreted the Bible in its literal sense; hence the fact that the Copernican theory met with so much opposition.

39. Por allá, Por acá. — These phrases are restricted to familiar style. The literal meaning of *por allá* is *thereabout*, and that of *por acá* is *hereabout*. They are used in an indefinite and vague sense, and may usually be rendered by such colloquial expressions as *around here, up there, down there.*

¿Qué hay de nuevo *por allá?*	What is new around there?
Hace mucho tiempo que no viene nadie de *por allá.*	Nobody has come from down there in a long time.
Nosotros iremos *por allá* á verlos la semana entrante.	We shall come (*literally*, go over there) to see you next week.
Venga *por acá* mañana, para que hablemos de ese asunto.	Come around tomorrow, that we may talk about that affair.
Por acá no ha ocurrido nada digno de mencionarse.	Nothing worth mentioning has occurred here (*or*, *the colloquial*, down here).
Hace tiempo que no veo á su amigo *por acá.*	I have not seen your friend hereabout (*or*, around here) in a long time.

In expressions like these, *acá* and *aquí* are interchangeable.

Venga *por aquí* mañana. — *Por aquí* no ha occurrido nada. — Hace tiempo que no veo a su amigo *por aquí.*

40. The phrases just referred to should not be confounded with others of the same form in which *por* means *through.*

El reo se escapó *por aquí*.	The culprit escaped through here.
Encontrámos una ventana abierta, y entrámos *por allí*.	We found a window open, and went in through it (*literally*, through there).
Vengan ustedes *por aquí* (or, *por acá*).	Come this way (*literally*, through here).

41. Por ahí.—This is a familiar indefinite phrase meaning *somewhere, somewhere around;* and, with some verbs of motion, *about.*

¿Dónde está su primo?—Está *por ahí* afuera.	Where is your cousin?—He is out somewhere.
Ponga ese libro *por ahí*.	Put this book there somewhere.
¿Sabe usted dónde está mi libro de cheques?—Yo lo dejé *por ahí* en mi cuarto, pero no recuerdo dónde.	Do you know where my check-book is?—I left it somewhere in my room, but I do not remember where.
Francisco Márquez anda *por ahí* diciendo que usted no le quiere pagar lo que le debe.	Francis Marquez is going about saying that you won't pay what you owe him.

42. Acá and Allá Modified by Adverbs of Quantity. When modified by adverbs of quantity, *acá* and *allá* denote distance from the speaker, and may be rendered by *near* and *far*, respectively.

más acá; más allá	nearer, nearer this way; farther, farther away
muy acá; muy allá	very near toward this place; very far away
no tan acá; no tan allá	not so near this way; not so far away

43. *Más acá de* and *más allá de* mean, respectively, *this side of* and *the other side of, beyond.*

Nos encontrámos *más acá de* Veracruz y nos separámos *más allá de* Méjico.	We met this side of Vera Cruz, and separated beyond Mexico (*or*, after passing Mexico).
"*Más allá de* las islas Filipinas."	"Beyond the Philippine Isles."

44. De . . . acá.—This expression, applied to time, with an adverb or adverbial phrase of time between *de* and

acá, is equivalent to *since*. The preposition *desde* may be substituted for *de*.

de *cuándo* **acá; de** *ayer* **acá; desde** *entonces* **acá**	since when; since yesterday; since then

---

ACASO

45. Acaso, *forsooth*.—This adverb properly means *perhaps*, but is almost exclusively restricted to interrogative sentences with implied negation; that is, it serves to negative what is presented in the form of a question. It may sometimes be rendered by such ironic words and phrases as *pray*, *forsooth*, *I should like to know;* but in the majority of cases it is to be treated as an expletive or emphatic word, which need not be translated.

¿*Acaso* soy yo responsable de la negligencia de mis empleados?	Am I, forsooth, responsible for the negligence of my employes?
¿*Acaso* el dinero vale más que la educación?	Is money worth more than education, I should like to know?
¿Y puede usted *acaso* impedir nuestro matrimonio?	And can you prevent our marriage, pray?

46. Si acaso, *in case*.

Si acaso alguien preguntare por mí, diga que pronto volveré.	Should (*or*, In case) any one ask for me, say I shall soon return.
Si acaso yo no estuviere aquí á las cuatro, mándeme llamar.	Should I not be (*or*, In case I am not) here at four, send for me.

47. The phrase *por si acaso* followed by a verb and preceded by another indicates that the action denoted by the latter verb is done to provide for the possible performance or occurrence of what is denoted by the former verb.

Aquí hay unas cartas para su tío Carlos. Échesèlas al bolsillo, *por si acaso* lo ve.	Here are some letters for your uncle Charles. Put them in your pocket, in case you should see him.

The same phrase is used elliptically, such phrases as **es necesario,** *it be necessary;* **se necesita,** *it be needed*, and the like being understood after it.

No creo que llueva esta noche, pero llévese este paraguas, *por si acaso* (*that is*, por si acaso *llueve*, *or*, por si acaso *lo necesita*).	I do not think it will rain tonight, but take this umbrella with you, in case you may need it.
El sacerdote llegó cuando el enfermo parecía muerto; sin embargo, le echó la bendición, *por si acaso*.	The priest arrived when the patient seemed to be dead; however, he gave him his benediction, in case he might be alive.

ALGO

48. **Algo,** *a little, rather, somewhat:* adverb.

Estoy *algo* cansado.	I am somewhat tired.
El precio me parece *algo* subido.	The price seems to me a little high.
El tren llegó *algo* tarde, aunque no tan tarde como esperábamos.	The train arrived rather late, although not so late as we expected.
¿Habla usted español?—Lo hablo *algo*, pero no muy bien.	Do you speak Spanish?—I speak it a little, but not very well.

49. **Algo de,** *a little, some:* adjectival phrase.

Tengo *algo de* dinero, pero no lo suficiente.	I have a little money, but not enough.
Hablo *algo de* español.	I speak a little Spanish.

If the substantive is not expressed, *de* is not used.

¿Tiene usted dinero?—Tengo *algo*.	Have you any money?—I have some.

50. **Algo,** *something* (*anything*, in questions): neuter substantive. When modified by an adjective, it often takes the preposition *de*.

Aquí debe de haber sucedido *algo* serio.	Something serious must have happened here.
Dijo *algo* que á mí no me gustó.	He said something that I did not like.
¿Ha occurrido *algo de* nuevo?	Has anything new occurred?

APENAS

51. **Apenas,** *only.*

Tenemos *apenas* dos sirvientes.	We have only two servants.
Apenas un palco estaba ocupado.	Only one box was occupied.

52. **Apenas,** *as soon as.*

Apenas descubrímos el fuego, tocámos la campana de alarma.	As soon as we discovered the fire, we rang the alarm bell.
Vayan á visitar al señor Llorente *apenas* lleguen á Barcelona.	Go and call on Mr. Llorente as soon as you arrive at Barcelona.

53. **Apenas si,** *scarcely, hardly.*

Apenas si puedo creer semejante cosa.	I can scarcely believe such a thing.
Apenas si se puede confiar en un hombre tan voluble.	One can scarcely trust so fickle a man.

The *si* may be omitted, without altering the sense of the sentence; but, as this might give rise to ambiguity, it is preferable to preserve it.

Apenas puedo creer semejante cosa.
Apenas se puede confiar en un hombre tan voluble.

ASÍ

54. **Así,** *so, thus, the same:* modifies a verb, or is used conjunctively, but never modifies an adjective. The accusative *lo*, which often accompanies a verb modified by *así*, literally means *it*, but need not always be translated. In such expressions as **Así es,** *That is so*, one of the neuters *ello*, *esto*, *eso* is understood as the subject of *es*.

El primer artículo del tratado dice *así*.	The first article of the treaty reads thus.
Así terminó aquella guerra sangrienta.	Thus ended that bloody war.
Así lo ordenó el presidente.	The president ordered it (so).
Así lo haré.	I will do so.

Así me lo dijeron ayer.	They told me so yesterday.
¿Cómo está usted?—*Así así.*	How are you?—So so.
Así será, pero yo no lo creo.	That may be (so), but I do not believe it.
¿No recuerda usted que ayer me prometió venir á almorzar conmigo hoy? ¡Oh! *así* es.	Do you not remember that you promised me yesterday to come to breakfast with me today?—Oh! that is so.
No pude conseguir un coche, y *así* tuve que ir á pie.	I could not get a carriage, and so I had to go on foot.
En este barril hay como cien naranjas podridas, y *así* en los demás.	In this barrel there are about one hundred rotten oranges, and so in the others.
Así va mi salud que he perdido toda esperanza de reponerme.	My health is going so that I have lost all hope of recovering.
Por decirlo *así*.	So to speak.
Si es *así* (*or*, Si ello es *así*), aceptemos la propuesta de ellos.	If that is so, let us accept their proposition.

55. When *así* means *thus*, it is in many cases better rendered by *that way*, *in that manner*, or by some other adverbial phrase, which the character of the sentence will readily suggest.

Esa palabra no se pronuncia *así*.	That word is not pronounced that way.
Estudie usted despacio y con paciencia; *así* aprenderá bien sus lecciones.	Study slowly and patiently; in that way you will learn your lessons well.
¿No se llama usted Lucas?—No, señor, no me llamo *así*.	Is not your name Luke?—No, sir; it is not (*more literally*, I am not called thus).

56. Así, *of that kind*, *like it*.

Él es carpintero, ó algo *así*.	He is a carpenter, or something of that sort.
Me llamó ignorante, estúpido y otras cosas *así*.	He called me ignorant, stupid, and other names (*literally*, things) of that kind.

The phrases *por ese estilo*, *por el estilo* are employed in the same sense.

Me llamó ignorante, estúpido y otras cosas *por ese estilo*.

57. **Así como,** *so as*, or simply *as*. Here *así* is emphatic, and may be omitted.

Así como son tus pensamientos, así son tus obras.	As are thy thoughts, so are thy works.

58. **Así como,** *as well as;* **así . . . como,** *both . . . and*, or simply *both*.

Hemos perdido nuestros equipajes, *así como* nuestros boletos.	We have lost our baggage, as well as our tickets.
Así Francia *como* Rusia parecen condenar la acción de Alemania.	Both France and Russia seem to condemn Germany's action.
Los arados son demasiado pesados, *así como* complicados.	The plows are too heavy, as well as complicated.

59. **Así que, así es que** (with the appropriate change of tense), *so that*, *and so*.

No recibímos su carta hasta ayer por la mañana; *así que* (or, *así fué que*) no pudimos enviarle la maquinaria por el vapor de hoy.	We did not receive your letter until yesterday morning, and so we could not send you the machinery by today's steamer.
La compañía no tiene dinero ni crédito suficiente; *así que* (or, *así es que*), aun cuando obtenga la prórroga de plazo que pide, no podrá construír el canal.	The company has neither money nor credit enough; so that, even if it obtains the extension of time which it asks for, it will not be able to build the canal.

60. **Así que,** *as soon as*, *after*, *when*.

Así que desembarcámos, le pusimos un cablegrama al doctor Cánovas.	As soon as we landed we sent a cablegram to Doctor Canovas.
Lleve estas cartas al correo *así que* coma.	Take these letters to the post office after you dine.

BIEN

61. **Bien,** *well;* often preceded by *y* or *pues*, with reference to a preceding statement. These two conjunctions are emphatic, and need not be translated, although in some cases *y* may be rendered by *and*, and *pues* by *then*, both being placed after *well*.

Usted toca el piano muy *bien*, señorita.
Bien, ¿qué piensa usted hacer?
Y bien, ¿ella qué dijo?
Él prometió que nos daría cartas de recomendación, que nos presentaría personalmente á los hombres más influyentes de la ciudad, y que nos ayudaría en cuanto pudiese. *Pues bien*, de todas esas promesas no cumplió ninguna; por el contrario, hizo lo posible por desacreditar nuestra empresa.

You play the piano very well, miss.
Well, what do you intend to do?
Well, and what did she say?
He promised that he would give us letters of recommendation, that he would present us personally to the most influential men in the city, and would help us in everything he could. Well, of all those promises he did not keep any; on the contrary, he did his best to discredit our enterprise.

62. Bien, *very, quite.*

Bien rico está á pesar de su indolencia.
Hágalo *bien* cuidadosamente.

He is quite rich, notwithstanding his indolence.
Do it very carefully.

63. Bien . . . bien, *either . . . or, whether . . . or.*

The second *bien* may be preceded or replaced by *ó*.

Saldremos, *bien* por el vapor de mañana, *bien* (or, *ó bien*) por el del sábado.
Bien fuese ignorancia, *bien* fuese descuido, el hecho es que todo lo echaron á perder.

We shall leave either by tomorrow's steamer or by Saturday's.

Whether it was ignorance, or whether it was carelessness, the fact is that they spoiled everything.

64. Antes bien, *on the contrary.*

No nos ayudaron en nada; *antes bien*, nos trataron con la mayor frialdad é indiferencia.

They did not help us in anything; on the contrary, they treated us with the utmost coolness and indifference.

65. Bien que, si bien, *although.*

Todos respondieron al llamamiento del gobernador; *bien que* (or, *si bien*) pocos vinieron resueltos á tomar las armas.

All answered the governor's call, although few came determined to take up arms.

66. Más bien, *rather, somewhat.*

El puerto está *más bien* lejos de aquí.	The port is rather far from here.
La función estuvo *más bien* mala.	The performance was rather poor.

Outside of this idiomatic use, *más bien* is employed in its primary signification as a comparative phrase equivalent to the adverbial comparative **mejor,** *better.*

Usted escribe mucho *más bien* (or, *mejor*) que yo.	You write much better than I do.

67. No bien, *no sooner; as soon as.*

No bien hubimos llegado, cuando el alcalde de la población vino á vernos.	No sooner had we arrived, than the mayor of the town came to see us.

CASI

68. Casi, *almost.*

Estoy *casi* dormido.	I am almost asleep.
Hemos visto *casi* todos los edificios notables de la ciudad.	We have seen almost all the noted buildings in the city.

69. Casi no, *scarcely, hardly.*

Yo *casi no* lo conozco.	I am hardly acquainted with him.
Nosotros *casi no* exportamos bicicletas.	We export hardly any bicycles.

70. Casi (followed by a negative word other than *no*), *scarcely.*

Casi *nunca* voy al teatro.	I scarcely ever go to the theater.
Casi *nadie* ha estado aquí hoy.	Hardly anybody has been here today.
Casi *nada* hemos sabido de Guatemala.	We have heard hardly anything from Guatemala.

In these, as in other similar negative sentences, the negative word may be placed after the verb, in which case the latter should be preceded by *no.*

No voy al teatro *casi nunca.*
Hoy **no** ha estado aquí *casi nadie.*
No hemos sabido *casi nada* de Guatemala.

COMO

71. This relative adverb generally means either *as* (*so*, in negative comparative sentences) or *like*. It should be observed that although *like* is a preposition, its equivalent *como* is treated as an adverb, and should therefore be followed by the nominative instead of the prepositional case of pronouns. (See also Art. **28.**) The use of this adverb in comparisons has already been explained.

Yo he venido aquí *como* ciudadano, no *como* presidente.	I have come here as a citizen, not as president.
Como no teníamos víveres, tuvimos que entregarnos.	As we had no provisions, we had to surrender.
El vencedor no hizo *como* Augusto lo que había prometido *como* Octavio.	The victor did not do as Augustus what he had promised as Octavius.
Pobre *como* soy, no quiero enriquecerme por medios tan vergonzosos.	Poor as I am, I do not wish to enrich myself by means so disgraceful.
Él, *como* **yo** (*not*, **mí**), es abogado.	He, like me, is a lawyer.
Los bárbaros cayeron sobre Roma *como* bestias feroces.	The barbarians fell upon Rome like wild beasts.

The reason why *como* is treated as an adverb in sentences like the last two, is that such sentences are considered as elliptical.

Él es, como yo *soy*, abogado.	He is, as I am, a lawyer.
Los bárbaros cayeron sobre Roma, como *caen* (sobre algo) las bestias feroces.	The barbarians fell upon Rome, as wild beasts fall (upon something).

72. When *como* has for its antecedent a phrase indicating manner, it is equivalent to *in which*.

Me sorprendió **el modo** *como* nos trataron los indios.	The manner in which the Indians treated us surprised me.
El éxito depende de **la manera** *como* usted conduzca las negociaciones.	The success depends on the manner in which you conduct the negotiations.

73. **Como,** *about, more or less.*

Son *como* las cuatro.	It is about four o'clock.
Había *como* quinientas personas en la iglesia.	There were about five hundred persons in church.

74. **Como,** *as if, looking.*

Mi padre entró *como* disgustado.	My father came in as if annoyed.

75. **Como,** *as soon as, as* (comparatively rare).

Como terminámos la cena, nos acostámos.	As soon as we finished supper, we went to bed.

76. **Como,** *if.*

Como sigas botando tu dinero, tu padre te retirará tu mensualidad.	If you go on squandering your money, your father will withdraw your monthly allowance.

77. **Como,** *how*, in the sense of *that.*

Nos dijo *como* lo habían sacado de su casa y arrastrado á la prisión, y *como* el mismo prefecto del departamento había presenciado el tormento á que se le sometió.	He told us how they had taken him out of his house and dragged him to the prison, and how the prefect of the department himself had witnessed the torture to which he was subjected.

78. **Como que,** *seemingly, apparently.* This phrase serves to express conjecture, supposition, or inference, usually founded on appearances or hearsay. It is always followed by a verb, and is better rendered by a form of *to seem* or *to look* used impersonally.

Usted *como que* está cansado.	It seems that you are tired.
Don Pascual *como que* salió.	It seems that Mr. Pascual went out.
Aquí *como* que no hay buenos paseos.	It seems that there are no good promenades here.
El tratado *como que* se firmó ayer.	It seems (*or*, I think) that the treaty was signed yesterday.

79. Como que, *as, since.*

Estoy seguro de ello, *como que* lo ví con mis propios ojos.	I am sure of it, since I saw it (*or*, having seen it) with my own eyes.

80. Cómo (with an accent mark over the *o*), *how:* both interrogative and exclamatory. It can modify only a verb, never an adjective or another adverb. It is used in both direct and indirect questions and exclamations.

¿Cómo está usted hoy?	How are you today?
No sabíamos *cómo* principiar.	We did not know how to begin.
¡Cómo han cambiado los tiempos!	How times have changed!

81. Cómo no, *how can one help* (literally, *how not*); and, used by itself as an answer, *of course, certainly.*

¿Cómo no aplaudir una conducta tan desinteresada?	How can one help applauding so disinterested a conduct?
¿Puedes prestarme veinte pesos hasta mañana? — Cómo no, Juancho.	Can you lend me twenty dollars until tomorrow? — Certainly, Johnnie.

CUANDO

82. Cuando as a Relative. — As a relative, *cuando* is the equivalent of *when*. It may have an adverb of time as its antecedent, but is generally employed without any expressed antecedent, such phrases as **el día,** *the day*, **el tiempo,** *the time*, and the like being understood before it. If, however, these phrases are expressed, and the proposition that follows is restrictive, **en que,** *in which*, should be employed instead of *cuando;* it is not customary, although it would not be incorrect, to use this adverb in restrictive propositions with an expressed substantive phrase as its antecedent. After prepositions (except **para,** *for*), *que* is preferred to *cuando.*

Entonces, *cuando* hayáis sentido los efectos de la tiranía, empezaréis á comprender las bendiciones de la libertad.	Then, when you have felt the effects of tyranny, you will begin to understand the blessings of liberty.

Sampson no estaba en Santiago *cuando* el combate principió.	Sampson was not at Santiago when the battle began.
En aquellos días, **cuando** la esclavitud era reconocida como una institución legítima, tanto moral como legalmente, el comercio de negros era muy lucrativo. (*Coordinating proposition.*)	In those days, when slavery was recognized as a legitimate institution, both morally and legally, dealing in negroes was very lucrative.
El día **en que** se firmó el decreto de emancipación fué uno de los más gloriosos de esta gran república. (*Restrictive proposition.*)	The day when the act of emancipation was signed was one of the most glorious of this great republic.
Es preciso que nos preparemos *para* **cuando** nos llamen á declarar.	It is necessary that we prepare ourselves for the time when we are called to testify.
La ciudad había decaído mucho *desde* **que** la capital se había trasladado á Constantinopla.	The city had declined a great deal since the capital had been transferred to Constantinople.

83. Cuando, *since.*

Ello debe de ser así, *cuando* usted lo dice.	That must be so, since you say it.

84. Cuando, *at the time of, during.*

Eso sucedió *cuando* la guerra de secesión.	That happened during the secession war.
Yo estuve allí *cuando* el hambre.	I was there at the time of the famine.

85. Cuando, *even if,* or simply *if.*

Lo haría por placer, *cuando* no tuviese que hacerlo por obligación.	I would do it for pleasure, even if I did not have to do it from duty.

86. Cuando más, cuando mucho, *at most, at the most;* cuando menos, *at least.*

Tendrá cien mil pesos *cuando más* (or, *cuando mucho*).	He may have one hundred thousand dollars at the most.
De aquí al río Chagres hay dos kilómetros *cuando menos.*	From here to the Chagres river it is two kilometers at least.

87. **Cuándo,** *when:* interrogative and exclamatory; distinguished from the relative by the accent mark; it cannot be replaced by *que* after prepositions.

¿*Cuándo* estará listo mi terno?	When will my suit (of clothes) be ready?
¿*Desde* **cuándo** están ustedes aquí?	Since when are you here?
¡Pobre hijo mío! *¡cuándo* le volveré á ver!	My poor son! when shall I see him again!

88. The exclamatory *cuándo* is often used emphatically in the sense of **jamás,** *never.*

¿Aceptar nosotros un tratado tan humillante? *¡Cuándo!*	We to accept so humiliating a treaty? Never!
¡Cuándo hubiéramos creído que tú nos engañabas!	We should never have believed that thou wert deceiving us!

CUANTO

89. **Cuanto más,** *much more;* **cuanto menos,** *much less.*

Todo hombre debe tratar á los demás con cortesía; *cuanto más* á aquéllos á quienes grandes virtudes y conocimientos hacen dignos de especial respeto.	Every man must treat others with courtesy; much more those whom great virtues and knowledge make worthy of special respect.
Este problema no pudo resolverlo ni Newton; *cuanto menos* un joven que apenas sabe los rudimentos de álgebra y geometría.	Not even Newton could solve this problem; much less a young man who knows only the rudiments of algebra and geometry.

Sometimes, *cuanto más* is used as a synonym of *cuanto menos.*

Este problema no pudo resolverlo Newton; *cuanto más* un joven que apenas sabe los rudimentos de álgebra y geometría.

90. **En cuanto,** *as soon as.*

Envíeme el sobretodo *en cuanto* lo termine.	Send me the overcoat as soon as you finish it.

91. En cuanto á, *as to, as for, with regard to.*

En cuanto á sueldo, ése es un asunto que usted debe arreglar con el administrador personalmente.	As for salary, that is a matter that you must settle with the manager personally.

92. Por cuanto, por cuanto que, *inasmuch as.*

Por cuanto sólo una de las partes contratantes ha firmado la escritura, ésta no es legalmente válida.	Inasmuch as only one of the contracting parties has signed the deed, the latter is not legally valid.

93. Cuánto, Interrogative and Exclamatory.—The interrogative adjectives *cuánto,-a, cuántos,-as* (which may likewise be employed exclamatorily) were treated in Part 6. With reference to time, **cuánto tiempo,** *how long* (literally, *how much time*) may be replaced by *cuánto;* and, with reference to distance, **cuánta distancia,** *how far* (literally, *how much distance*) may be similarly replaced.

¿*Cuánto* hace que usted está negociando en cueros?	How long have you been dealing in hides?
¿*Cuánto* hay de aquí á San Juan?	How far is it from here to San Juan?

94. As a neuter, *cuánto* means *how much, how many things.*

¿*Cuánto* vale este sombrero?	How much is this hat worth?
No tiene usted idea *cuánto* hemos visto en estos últimos días.	You have no idea how much we have seen these last days.

95. As an exclamatory adverb, *cuánto* is apocopated to *cuán* when it immediately precedes an adjective or another adverb. It is then rendered by *how.*

¡*Cuán* corta es la existencia del hombre!	How short is man's existence!
¡*Cuán* pocos son los hombres que merecen ser llamados grandes!	How few are the men that deserve to be called great!

No tiene usted idea *cuán* difícil nos ha sido viajar en este país.	You have no idea how difficult it has been for us to travel in this country.
Ya verá usted *cuán* fácilmente aprenderá nuestra lengua.	You shall see how easily you will learn our language.

In elevated style, especially in poetry, *cuánto* may be separated from the adjective or adverb it modifies, and then it is not apocopated.

¡*Cuánto* es corta la existencia del hombre!

96. When *cuánto* modifies a verb, it is rendered by *how much*, and is never apocopated.

¡*Cuánto* habla, y cuán poco dice!	How much he talks, and how little he says!
No puede usted imaginarse *cuánto* sufrió nuestro buen padre.	You cannot imagine how much our good father suffered.

NOTE.—For other important uses of *cuanto*, see Arts. **30** and following.

DONDE

97. Donde, Relative Adverb.—This adverb means *where*. When it modifies a verb not denoting motion, it may be used by itself or preceded by the preposition **en**, *in*. With a verb of motion, it is usually preceded by **á**, *to*, or **de**, *from*. As the object of a preposition, it may sometimes be rendered by *that* or *which*. The phrase *á donde* may be replaced by the single word *adonde*. Like other relatives, *donde* often includes its antecedent, meaning then *where*, in the sense of *the place where*.

Éste es el lugar *donde* lo ví la última vez.	This is the place where I saw him the last time.
La barbería de Castro, *á donde* (or, *adonde*) lo llevé anoche, es la mejor de la población.	Castro's barber shop, where I took you last night, is the best in town.
Aquél es el hotel *en donde* vivímos el año pasado.	That is the hotel where we lived last year.
Donde falta la libertad, el progreso, si lo hay, marcha á pasos lentos.	Where liberty is wanting, progress, if there is any, is slow (*literally*, goes by slow steps).

La casa *de donde* usted viene fué la primera casa de ladrillo que se construyó en esta aldea.	The house that you come from was the first brick house built in this village.
La puerta *por donde* entrámos era baja y estrecha.	The door through which we entered was low and narrow.
Al fin llegámos á la cumbre del cerro, *desde donde* alcanzámos á ver el lago Titicaca.	At last we arrived at the summit of the hill, from which we could descry Lake Titicaca.

98. Dónde, Interrogative.—This adverb is the equivalent of the interrogative English *where*. What was said of prepositions, with regard to the relative *donde*, applies to the interrogative as well.

¿Dónde vive usted?	Where do you live?
¿Á dónde (or, *¿Adónde*) va usted?	Where are you going (to)?
¿De dónde venía usted esta mañana?	Where were you coming from this morning?
¿En dónde (or, *¿Dónde*) está el mozo que sirve en esta mesa?	Where is the waiter that serves at this table?
¿Por dónde entraron los ladrones?	Which way (*literally*, Through where) did the burglars go in?

99. Important Remark on Relative Adverbs.—An adverbial antecedent should be followed by one of the relative adverbs *como*, *cuando*, *donde* as its correlative, and never by *que*, unless the latter is the object of a preposition. This rule should be very carefully borne in mind in translating sentences, mainly impersonal, in which *that* has an adverb or adverbial phrase as its antecedent.

Aquí fué **donde** la ví por primera vez.	It was here that I saw her for the first time.
Es *en este lugar* **donde** él desea edificar.	It is in this place that he wishes to build.
Entonces fué **cuando** Lincoln resolvió organizar un ejército de cien mil hombres.	It was then that Lincoln resolved to organize an army of one hundred thousand men.
Así fué **como** perdimos la clientela de esas dos casas.	That was how (*literally*, Thus it was that) we lost the custom of those two firms.

JAMÁS, NUNCA

NOTE. — These two adverbs are synonymous in all cases, and therefore what is here said of *jamás* applies to *nunca* as well.

100. Jamás in Direct Negative Sentences. — As a direct negative, **jamás** means *never*, or *not ever*. It may be placed either before or after the verb: if placed after, the verb should be preceded by *no;* if placed before, *no* should not be employed.

Jamás he estado en Guayaquil. *No* he estado *jamás* en Guayaquil.	I have never been in Guayaquil.
Á mí *jamás* me habían engañado tan descaradamente. Á mí *no* me habían engañado *jamás* tan descaradamente.	I had never been cheated in so barefaced a way.

101. Jamás, *ever.* — In sentences which, although having an affirmative or an interrogative form, are intended as indirect negations, *jamás* is equivalent to *ever*.

Me parece improbable que Irlanda llegue *jamás* á ser un país independiente.	I think it unlikely that Ireland will ever become an independent country.
Es imposible que, sin estudiar, pueda usted aprender *jamás* el español.	It is impossible that, without studying, you can ever learn Spanish.
¿Quién ha visto *jamás* semejante cosa?	Who has ever seen such a thing?

102. When *ever* is used in a question in the sense of *at any time*, or *on any occasion*, and there is no indirect negation in the question, it is rendered by *alguna vez*.

¿Ha estado usted *alguna vez* en Valparaíso?	Have you ever been in Valparaiso?
¿Habéis oído *alguna vez* hablar de ese hombre?	Have you ever heard of that man?

103. In comparative and superlative expressions, *ever* may be rendered by *jamás* or *nunca;* but the latter is much more common.

Los negocios están ahora peor que *nunca*.	Business is now worse than ever.

104. The combination *nunca jamás* is an emphatic expression of negation, equivalent to, although stronger than, either of these adverbs used alone. The phrase *por siempre jamás* means *for ever and ever.*

NOTE.—For the use of *jamás* with *casi*, see Art. **70.**

MÁS, MENOS

NOTE.—The main uses of these adverbs in comparative phrases have already been explained.

105. **Más,** *longer* (*time*); **menos,** *shorter* (*time*). In superlative phrases, these two adverbs, when applied to time, mean *longest* and *shortest*, respectively.

No se demore *más*.	Do not tarry any longer.
Mi hermano permaneció en Nueva-York *más* que en Chicago, y en Wáshington *menos* que en Nueva-York.	My brother remained in New York longer than in Chicago, and in Washington a shorter time than in New York.
Don Juan fué el que *más* vivió aquí.	Mr. John was the one who lived here the longest.

The phrases **más tiempo,** *longer time;* **menos tiempo,** *shorter time*, are equivalent to *más* and *menos*, respectively.

No se demore *más tiempo*.

Mi hermano permaneció en Wáshington *menos tiempo* que en Nueva-York.

Don Juan fué el que *más tiempo* vivió aquí.

106. **Más,** *better, best:* before some participles.

Yo soy **más** *conocido* en Chile que en el Perú.	I am better known in Chile than in Peru.

107. **Á lo más,** *at the most;* **á lo menos,** *at least.* These expressions have the same meanings, respectively, as *cuando más* and *cuando menos* (Art. **86**). *Al menos* and *por lo menos* may be substituted for *á lo menos.*

108. De más, *too many;* **de menos,** *too few.*

Me ha dado usted tres pesos *de más*.	You have given me three dollars too many (*or*, too much).
Aquí hay cuatro sillas *de menos*.	There are four chairs too few here (*or*, Four more chairs are wanted here).

109. Á cuál más, *vyingly;* an emphatic expression indicating that, among several things compared, it is difficult to tell which excels in the attribute denoted by the word modified by the expression in question. In most cases it has to be translated very freely.

Los indios echaron á correr, *á cuál más* precipitadamente.	The Indians started to run, each seeming to vie with the others in precipitance.
Acabo de comprar dos caballos, *á cuál más* hermoso.	I have just bought two horses, both as handsome as could be (*more literally*, each rivaling the other in handsomeness).

110. Por más que, *however much, however many*, or, *no matter how much, no matter how many.*

Nunca obtendrá usted ese empleo, *por más que* trate.	You will never obtain that employment, however much you may try.
No creo que lo admitan en la buena sociedad, *por más* rico *que* sea.	I do not think they will admit him in good society, no matter how rich he may be.
Por más amigos *que* usted tenga en el congreso, no creo que consiga lo que espera.	However (*or*, No matter how) many friends you may have in Congress, I do not think you will obtain what you expect.

111. Á menos que, *unless.*

Iremos á comer al hotel Inglaterra, *á menos que* usted prefiera otro.	We shall go to dine at the Hotel England, unless you prefer another.

112. Poco más ó menos, *more or less, about* (literally, *little more or less*). The expression *más ó menos* is used in the same sense.

Perdimos veinte mil pesos, *poco más ó menos*.	We lost twenty thousand dollars, more or less.
Cuando recibí su telegrama eran las diez y media, *poco más ó menos*.	When I received your telegram, it was about half past ten.

MISMO

113. Mismo With Demonstrative Adverbs.—This word is added to some demonstrative adverbs, and may be rendered by *just* or *right;* or the demonstrative adverb modified by it may be translated by a demonstrative adjective and a substantive, in which case *mismo* is equivalent to *very*.

aquí *mismo;* allí *mismo*	right here (in this very place); right there (at that very place)
hoy *mismo;* ahora *mismo*	just today (this very day); just now (this very moment)

114. Por eso mismo, por lo mismo, *for that very reason, that is just why.*

General, las fuerzas del enemigo son muy superiores á las nuestras.—*Por eso mismo* (or, *Por lo mismo*) debemos hacer lo posible por vencerlas, pues semejante victoria nos daría gran prestigio.	General, the enemy's forces are far superior to ours.—For that very reason we should do our best to defeat them, for such a victory would give us great prestige.

MUCHO, MUY

115. Muy.—This word is always an adverb; it can modify adjectives or other adverbs, but never a verbal time form. It should always precede the word it modifies. When it modifies a participle, it is rendered by *much;* in all other cases, by *very*. It should be particularly noticed that *mucho*, literal equivalent of *much*, cannot be the modifier of an expressed participle.

La botica está *muy* lejos de aquí.	The drug store is very far from here.
Este caballero es *muy* bondadoso.	This gentleman is very kind.

El superintendente es **muy** *querido* de sus empleados.	The superintendent is much loved by his employes.
El Japón es una nación **muy** *civilizada*.	Japan is a much civilized nation.
La señorita Virginia está **muy** *ofendida*.	Miss Virginia is much offended.

116. The phrase *very much*, before a participle, is rendered either simply by *muy*, or by the superlative ending *-ísimo*, added to the participle.

La señorita Virginia está *ofendidísima*.	Miss Virginia is very much offended.

117. With *para* as its correlative, *muy* is often equivalent to *too*.

Tengo *muy* poco dinero *para* emprender ese negocio.	I have too little money to undertake that business.
Estoy *muy* cansado *para* terminar estas cartas.	I am too tired to finish these letters.

118. Mucho, Adverb.—As an adverb, *mucho* is used:

1. Instead of *muy*, when the modified adjective or adverb is not expressed: it is then rendered by *very*.

¿Está usted cansada, señorita?—No *mucho*.	Are you tired, miss?—Not very.
¿Vive usted muy lejos de aquí?—Sí, señor, *mucho*.	Do you live very far from here?—Yes, sir; very.

2. As a modifier of a verb: it is then rendered by *much*.

Ese hombre habla *mucho*.	That man talks much.
Hoy hemos caminado *mucho*.	We have walked much today.

The expressions of intensification *very much*, *a good deal*, are properly rendered by *muchísimo*, the combination *muy mucho* not being now in use. It should be observed, however, that, in conversation at least, English-speaking people seem to have a dislike for the use of *much* by itself as an adverb, and that, in the majority of cases, they employ *very much*, *a good deal*, *a great deal* in its place. These phrases, when used in this loose manner, should be rendered by *mucho*.

Deseo *mucho* ver el museo de antigüedades americanas.	I much wish to see the museum of American antiquities.
Deseo *muchísimo* ver á mi madre, á quien hace dos años que no veo.	I wish very much to see my mother, whom I have not seen in two years.

In the first of these two examples, most people would say *very much* instead of *much*, even if they did not really wish to express a more earnest desire than is expressed by *much* alone.

3. To modify a comparative word or phrase, for which purpose *muy* should never be used.

Mi tienda es **mucho** *más grande* que la de usted, pero **mucho** *menos convenientemente* situada.	My store is much larger than yours, but much less conveniently located.
Él es **mucho** *mayor* que yo.	He is much older than I.
La losa hecha aquí es **mucho** *mejor* que la importada.	The china made here is much better than imported china.

119. **Mucho,-a,** *much;* **muchos,-as,** *many:* adjectives. The first of these two adjectives refers to unmeasured quantity; the second, to number. They are intensified by the endings *-ísimo,-a*, *ísimos,-as; muchísimo,-a*, being equivalent to *a great deal of*, and *muchísimos,-as*, to *a great many*. As in the case of the adverb *much*, however, these two English phrases are often employed as synonyms of *much* and *many*, respectively, and then they should be rendered simply by *mucho,-a*, *muchos,-as*.

Esto me ha costado *mucho* dinero.	This has cost me much money.
Últimamente ha habido *mucha* fiebre amarilla en Puerto-Limón.	There has been much yellow fever in Puerto Limon lately.
El cultivo del café tiene *muchas* y muy grandes ventajas, aunque requiere *muchos* gastos.	The raising of coffee has many and very great advantages, although it requires many expenses.
En Londres hay *muchos* más mendigos que en Madrid.	There are many more beggars in London than in Madrid.
Le he escrito *muchísimas* veces, pero no me ha contestado.	I have written to him a great many times, but he has not answered me.

Nosotros tenemos *muchísimos* más estudiantes que cualquiera de los otros colegios.	We have a great many more students than any of the other colleges.

120. **Mucho,** *much, a great deal, many things:* neuter substantive.

Este mes hemos vendido *mucho*.	We have sold a great deal this month.
En la Florida ví *mucho* que me llamó la atención.	I saw much in Florida that attracted my attention.

NADA

121. **General Rule for the Order of Negatives.** When a negative word other than *no* is placed after a verb, the latter should be preceded by *no;* otherwise, *no* is dispensed with. (See Art. **100,** and also Part 4, Indefinite Pronouns.)

122. **Nada,** *not at all:* adverb.

¿Habla usted español?—No, señor, no lo hablo *nada*.	Do you speak Spanish?—No, sir; I do not speak it at all.
Estas flores no me parecen *nada* bonitas.	These flowers do not seem to me at all pretty.
Yo no vivo *nada* lejos de aquí.	I do not live far from here at all.

123. **Nada de,** *no . . . at all,* or simply *no:* adjectival phrase modifying a singular substantive.

En esta lámpara no hay *nada de* aceite.	There is no oil at all in this lamp.
La casa de Camacho y Piérola no tiene *nada* de crédito.	The firm of Camacho and Pierola has no credit at all.

124. **Nada,** *nothing, anything:* neuter substantive.

El doctor Ramírez me dijo que *no* sabía *nada* sobre el particular. El doctor Ramírez me dijo que *nada* sabía sobre el particular.	Doctor Ramirez told me he did not know anything about the matter.

Nada nuevo ha ocurrido por acá. Por acá *no* ha ocurrido *nada* nuevo.	Nothing new has occurred about here.
No es probable que recibamos *nada* por este vapor.	It is not likely that we shall receive anything by this steamer.

125. **Nada,** *anything:* neuter substantive used in sentences with implied negation, after other negative words, after an infinitive preceded by **antes de,** *before*, and in comparisons. (See Arts. **101-103.**)

¿Quién ha visto nunca *nada* tan ridículo?	Who has ever seen anything so ridiculous?
Es *inútil* ofrecerles **nada,** pues no lo aceptarán.	It is useless to offer them anything, for they will not accept it.
Vivo feliz, *sin* **nada** que me quite el sosiego.	I live happy, without anything to deprive me of repose.
Antes de decidir **nada,** vea al ingeniero en jefe.	Before deciding anything, see the chief engineer.
Es difícil concebir **nada** *más injusto.*	It is difficult to conceive anything more unjust.

POCO

126. **Poco,** *little, not very;* with reference to time, *seldom:* adverb. When it modifies an adjective, it is better rendered by *not very, not much;* it may be translated by *little*, but this adverb is not much used in this manner, except before a participle.

Anoche dormí *poco.*	I slept little last night.
Epaminondas hablaba *poco*, pero escuchaba mucho.	Epaminodas spoke little, but listened much.
Éste es un fenómeno que se observa sólo entre naciones *poco* civilizadas.	This is a phenomenon observed only among little-civilized nations.
Ésta es una invención curiosa, pero *poco* útil.	This is a curious invention, but not very useful.
Los chinos son *poco* progresistas.	The Chinese are not very progressive.
Estoy un *poco* cansado.	I am a little tired.

Estamos *poco* acostumbrados á viajar en burro.	We are not much accustomed to traveling on donkeyback.
Yo voy *poco* al teatro.	I seldom go to the theater.

The difference between *un poco* and *poco* is the same as that between *a little* and *little;* the former being the equivalent of **más bien**, *rather, somewhat.*

127. **Poco,-a,** *little;* **pocos,-as,** *few:* both adjectives. These adjectives are the opposites, respectively, of *mucho,-a;* and *muchos,-as* (Art. **19**).

Este joven tiene *poco* talento, *poca* aplicación, y *pocos* recursos.	This young man has little talent, little application, and few resources.

128. **Un poco de,** *a little, some;* **unos pocos,-as,** *a few, some:* adjectival phrases.

Hágame el favor de darme *un poco de* vino.	Please give me a little (*or*, some) wine.
Tenemos *unos pocos* amigos en Maracaibo.	We have a few friends in Maracaibo.

The difference between *unos pocos* and *pocos* is similar to that between *un poco* and *poco: pocos* emphasizes the smallness of the number of the objects referred to; *unos pocos*, on the contrary, emphasizes the fact that those objects are not wanting—that there *are* some of them.

129. **Poco,** *little:* neuter substantive.

Quien tiene *poco*, poco teme perderlo.	He who has little does not fear much to lose it.

Here the first *poco* is a neuter; the second, an adverb.

130. **Á poco,** *shortly afterwards;* **á poco de,** *shortly after;* **poco antes, poco antes de,** *shortly before.*

El sol había desaparecido tras una nube espesa. *Á poco* empezó á llover.	The sun had disappeared behind a heavy cloud. Shortly afterwards, it began to rain.

Á poco de haber recibido su recado, fuí á ver al secretario de guerra.	Shortly after having received your message, I went to see the secretary of war.
Yo lo había visto *poco antes.*	I had seen him shortly before.
El tren salió *poco antes de* las dos.	The train left shortly before two o'clock.

131. **Poco más,** *hardly anything, nothing worth mentioning.*

Poco más ganámos en ese negocio.	We made hardly anything in that business.
Poco más hemos sabido del estado de cosas en Venezuela.	We have heard hardly anything about the state of things in Venezuela.

---

sí

132. This adverb, when employed by itself, is rendered by *yes.* It is also often used, like *no*, either preceding a verb or following a substantive, with the same emphatic value that the auxiliaries *to do*, *to be*, etc. have in English.

¿Usted no habla inglés?—Oh, *sí*, señor; *sí* lo hablo.	Do you not speak English?—Oh, yes, sir; I do speak it.
Mi hermano no fué al teatro, pero yo *sí* fuí. Á él no le gusta la opera; á mí *sí.*	My brother did not go to the theater, but I did. He does not like opera; I do.
Le pregunté si lo conocía á usted, y me dijo que *sí.*	I asked him if he knew you, and he said yes (*or*, he said he did).
Usted no tendrá que presentar examen; pero su primo *sí.*	You will not have to pass an examination; but your cousin will.

133. The phrase *sí que* is an emphatic expression literally equivalent to *indeed:* it generally implies a comparison, and indicates that to the word it modifies *does indeed* apply what is stated in the proposition following.

Éste *sí que* es un hombre de energía.	This is indeed a man of energy.
Ahora *sí que* ha encontrado España quién la haga abandonar sus colonias en América.	Now indeed is the time when Spain has found some one to make her give up her colonies in America.

VEZ

134. This substantive, which primarily means *time*, in the sense of *occasion*, serves to form a great many adverbial phrases, of which the most common are:

á veces, } *sometimes*
á las veces, }
á la vez, *at once* (*at the same time*)
de una vez, *now*, *at once*
de vez en cuando, }
tal cual vez, }
una que otra vez, } *now and then*, *once in a while*
una vez que otra, }
en vez de, *instead of*
ninguna vez, *not once*, *never*
rara vez, } *seldom*, *rarely*
raras veces, }
tal vez, *perhaps*
una vez, *once*

YA

135. **Ya,** *already*, *now*.

Aquí *ya* hay cuarenta botellas de vino, y en la caja no caben más.	There are forty bottles of wine here already, and the box does not hold any more.
Ya ve usted cuánto hemos hecho por usted.	You see now how much we have done for you.

136. **Ya no,** *no longer*.

Nosotros *ya no* negociamos en granos.	We no longer deal in grains.
Á mí *ya no* me gusta fumar.	I no longer like to smoke.

137. **Ya,** *immediately*, *at once*, *presently*.

¡Ester! — *Ya* voy, mamá.	Esther! — I am coming at once, mama.
Aguárdeme aquí; *ya* vuelvo.	Wait for me here; I shall return presently.

138. **Ya que,** *since*.

Ya que usted insiste, venderemos la mina por ese precio.	Since you insist, we shall sell the mine for that price.

NOTE. — For the use of *ya* with a verb in the future, see Art. **37**.

ADVERBIAL PHRASES

139. The following are important adverbial phrases:

á caballo, *on horseback* (or *on any other animal's back*)
á ciegas, *blindly*
á crédito, *on credit*
á cuestas, *on one's shoulders*
á escape, *in haste, quickly*
á escondidas, *secretly*
á gatas, *on all fours*
á hurtadillas, *slealthily*
á la larga, *in the long run*
á la ligera, *superficially, hurriedly*
á la moda, *in fashion*
á las claras, *manifestly*
á la verdad, *truly*
á la vez, *at the same time, at a time, at once*
al contado, *in cash, cash*
al fiado, *on credit*
al fin, *finally; in the end*
al momento, *at once*
al por mayor, / por mayor, } *at wholesale*
al por menor, / por menor, } *at retail*
al punto, *immediately*
al revés, *inside out; top side down; the reverse, the opposite*
al vivo, *to the life*
á manos llenas, *liberally, without stint*
á más no poder, *not being able to help it*
á más tardar, *at the latest*
á medias, *by halves, incompletely*
á menudo, *often*
antes de anoche, *the night before last*
antes de ayer, *the day before yesterday*
á ojos cerrados, *blindly*
á ojos vistas, *openly*
á oscuras, *in the dark*
á pie, *on foot*
á pie juntillas, *firmly, up and down, insistently*
á porfía, *persistently*
á sabiendas, *wittingly, knowingly*
á secas, *plainly, plain and simple*
á solas, *alone, in private*
á tientas, *feeling one's way, gropingly*
á trechos, *at intervals*
á una, *together*
á voces, *aloud*
con ligereza, *superficially, carelessly*
con todo, *notwithstanding, however*
de antemano, *beforehand*
de balde, *for nothing, gratis*
de buena gana, *willingly*
de continuo, *continually*
de día, *by day, in the daylime*
de golpe, *suddenly, unexpectedly*
de hecho, *de facto, truly*
de improviso, *off one's guard*
de mala gana, *unwillingly*
de molde, *perfectly*
de ningún modo, / de ninguna manera, } *by no means*
de noche, *by night, night*
de nuevo, *anew*
de oídas, *by hearsay*
de par en par, *wide open*
de paso, *on one's way, in passing*
de prisa, *in haste*
de propósito, *purposely*
de rodillas, *on one's knees*
de seguro, *surely*
de suyo, *of one's own accord*
de todos modos, *by all means; at all events; in any* (or, *either*) *case*

ADVERBIAL PHRASES—(Continued)

de todo punto, *wholly*
de veras, *truly, indeed*
de vista, *by sight*
en ayunas, *agog, uninformed*
en cierto modo, *to a certain extent*
en cueros, *stark naked*
en el acto, *at once*
en fin, *finally; well*
en gran manera, *in great measure*
en lo sucesivo, *hereafter, in future*
en otro tiempo, *formerly, once*
en punto, *exactly, sharp* (said of the hour)
en resumen, *in short*
en seguida, *at once*
hoy día, } *nowadays*
hoy en día, }
pasado mañana, *the day after tomorrow*
por consiguiente, *consequently*
por lo más, *at most*
por lo menos, *at least*
por lo pronto, *for the present*
por lo regular, *usually*
por lo tanto, } *consequently*
por tanto, }
por momentos, *every moment*
por supuesto, *of course*
por último, *lastly*
por ventura, *peradventure*
sin duda, *no doubt, doubtless*
sobre todo, *above all, specially*

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 11)

THE PREPOSITION

USES OF Á

Á AS A SIGN OF THE ACCUSATIVE

1. Accusative Denoting Human Beings.—One of the most important uses of this preposition is to serve as a sign of the accusative, by being placed before substantives (the prepositional cases of pronouns included) that perform that office. When so employed, it has no meaning by itself; it serves no other purpose than that of introducing the accusative, and is not to be translated.

Á should, as a rule, precede any accusative denoting one or more determinate human beings, and also the interrogative *quién*, the relative *quien*, and the indefinite pronouns **alguien,** *some one, any one;* **nadie,** *no one*, etc. whenever these words are accusatives.

Acabo de ver **á** *nuestros amigos.*	I have just seen our friends.
Enviaré **á** *mi hijo* por los papeles que usted desea.	I will send my son for the papers you want.
El doctor Uribe curó **á** *la niñita* del capitán Jones.	Dr. Uribe cured Captain Jones's little girl.
Un hombre llamado Booth mató **á** *Lincoln.*	A man by the name of Booth killed Lincoln.
¿Cree usted probable que elijan **á** *Roosevelt?*	Do you think it likely they will elect Roosevelt?

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

Parece que este señor lo conoce **á** *usted*. ¿Lo conoce usted **á** *él?*	It seems that this gentleman knows you. Do you know him?
¿Conoce usted **á** *alguien* aquí?	Do you know any one here?
Los detectivos no encontraron **á** *nadie* en la casa de juego.	The detectives did not find anybody in the gambling house.
El almirante recibió muy bondadosamente **á** *los comisionados*.	The admiral received the commissioners very kindly.
¿**Á** *quién* desean ustedes ver?	Whom do you wish to see?

2. In the following examples, *á* is not used, because the accusative is indeterminate:

No he encontrado *amigos* en mi necesidad.	I have found no friends in my need.
Hoy hemos visto mucha *gente*.	We have seen many people today.
Hemos enviado varios *agentes* á Chile y al Perú.	We have sent several agents to Chile and Peru.
Estamos buscando un *agente de policía*.	We are looking for a policeman.
Necesitamos *un médico*.	We need a physician.

In the two examples that follow, *á* is required, because the persons denoted by the accusatives are made determinate by qualifying phrases:

Estoy buscando **á** un agente de policía *para quien tengo una orden del alcalde*.	I am looking for a policeman for whom I have an order from the mayor.
Necesitamos **á** un médico *que vive aquí*.	We need a physician that lives here.

3. When *que* serves as accusative, it is not preceded by *á*, whatever the character of its antecedent. The accusative *quien*, on the contrary, always takes that preposition (Art. **1**).

El caballero *que* le presenté á usted anoche, y **á** *quien* usted tanto admira, es uno de nuestros mejores actores.	The gentleman that I introduced to you last night, and that you so much admire, is one of our best actors.

4. When a common noun denoting an office or employment follows a verb expressing election or appointment, *á* is not required.

El pueblo **elige** el *presidente*, y éste **nombra** *los prefectos* de los departamentos.	The people elect the president, and the latter appoints the prefects of the departments.
"El papa **ha creado** *dos cardenales*."	"The pope has created two cardinals."

5. The impersonal **haber**, *there to be*, never takes *á* before its accusative.

Aquí **hay** *muchos comerciantes*.	There are many merchants here.
En esta ciudad no **hay** *quien* pueda dirigir la construcción del puente.	There is no one in this city that can direct the construction of the bridge.
¿**Hay** *alguien* que quiera llevar esta orden al jefe de la caballería?	Is there any one who will carry this order to the commander of the cavalry?

6. *Tener* requires *á* before its accusative when it means *to hold*, but not when it means *to have*, *to possess*.

Tenemos *un secretario* muy incompetente.	We have a very incompetent secretary.
Tengan **á** *ese hombre*, no sea que se escape.	Hold that man, lest he should escape.

7. When *querer* means *to love*, it requires *á* before its accusative; when it means *to wish*, it does not.

Quiero *mi abogado* inmediatamente.	I want my lawyer immediately.
Quiero mucho **á** *mis amigos*, pero **quiero** más **á** *mis hijos*.	I love my friends very much, but I love my children more.

8. *Perder* takes *á* when it means *to ruin*, not when it means *to lose*.

Perdió á *sus hijos* con su mal ejemplo.	He ruined his sons with his bad example.
Perdió *sus hijos* en la batalla de Getisburgo.	He lost his sons in the battle of Gettysburg.

9. When a transitive verb having an accusative denoting a human being is followed by a prepositional phrase with *á*, the *á* before the accusative is omitted, if there is danger of

ambiguity. This rule, however, does not apply where the accusative is a proper name not preceded by the definite article. In the latter case, it is often necessary to vary the construction, so as to avoid the obscurity arising from the concurrence of the two prepositional phrases with *á*.

Prefiero *el doctor Pardo* **al** *doctor Cabezas*.	I prefer Doctor Pardo to Doctor Cabezas.
Envié *mi hijo* **á** *mi hermana*.	I sent my son to my sister.
Rojas fué presentado á Espinosa por el coronel Estrada.	Colonel Estrada presented Rojas to Espinosa.

In the last example, it would not be proper to say, rendering the English sentence literally, *El coronel Estrada presentó* **á** *Rojas* **á** *Espinosa;* for, although the accusative generally precedes prepositional phrases, which would indicate that here *Rojas* was the accusative, this rule is not absolute, and so it might not be clear whether it was intended to state that Rojas was presented to Espinosa, or Espinosa to Rojas. Besides, the concurrence of the two prepositions forms a harsh-sounding combination that should be avoided. In the following example, the order of the prepositional phrases indicates that *Jesús* is the accusative:

"Judas vendió *á Jesús* **á** *los sacerdotes y fariseos*."	"Judas sold Jesus to the priests and Pharisees."

As just stated, however, constructions like this, although not strictly ungrammatical, are always inelegant, and often ambiguous. The last example might be transformed in the following or a similar manner:

Jesús fué vendido por Judas á los sacerdotes y fariseos.	Jesus was sold by Judas to the priests and Pharisees.

10. In some cases, *á* is omitted before the accusative when the verb is modified by another prepositional phrase with *á*, even if there is no danger of ambiguity, and simply to avoid the unpleasant repetition of the preposition.

"Convidó *todos sus amigos* **á** *la boda*."	"He invited all his friends to the wedding."

This practice, however, is not to be commended: the employment of the preposition is here preferable to its omission, if only for the sake of uniformity, and to avoid a useless multiplication of exceptions and special rules.

11. The names of personified things are treated in all respects like those of human beings, and should, therefore, when serving as accusatives, take *á*. This preposition is also used with verbs that ordinarily take the names of human beings as their accusatives, even when the accusative denotes neither a human being nor a personified thing.

Manfredo, en su desesperación, *llamó* **á** *la muerte*.	Manfred, in his despair, called death.
Obedezcamos **á** *la Fortuna*, que es la reina de la humanidad.	Let us obey Fortune, who is mankind's queen.
"*Temía* á los extraños, á los propios, **á** *su misma sombra:* condición de tirano."	"He feared strangers, his own people, even his own shadow: the condition of a tyrant."
La niñita *acariciaba* **al** *gato*, **al** *cual quería* muchísimo.	The little girl was petting the cat, which she loved very much.
¿Quién no *ama* **á** *su patria?*	Who does not love his country?
El rey, en su locura, *azotó* **al** *océano* y *maldijo* **al** *viento*.	The king, in his madness, whipped the ocean and cursed the wind.

12. For euphony, *á* may be omitted before a word beginning with *a*, provided that word is not a proper name nor an indefinite pronoun. The employment of the preposition, however, is as proper as its omission.

¿Conoce usted *aquella* señora?	Do you know yonder lady?
Hoy he visto *algunos* oficiales del ejército invasor.	I have today seen some officers of the invading army.
¿Ha visto usted **á** *alguno* hoy?	Have you seen any one today?
¿Conoce usted **á** *alguien* en este pueblo?	Do you know any one in this town?
Cleopatra perdió **á** *Antonio*.	Cleopatra ruined Antony.
Llame **á** *Ana* inmediatamente.	Call Anna immediately.

13. Accusative Denoting a Geographical Division.—The *proper* name of a city or country, or of any other geographical territorial division, if not preceded by the definite article, takes *á* when serving as accusative.

Alejandro invadió **á** *Asia* y conquistó **á** *Persia*.	Alexander invaded Asia and conquered Persia.
El terremoto destruyó **á** *Guatemala*.	The earthquake destroyed Guatemala.
En aquel año, los holandeses fundaron **á** *Nueva-York*.	In that year, the Dutch founded New York.
Pizarro conquistó **el** *Perú*.	Pizarro conquered Peru.
El año antepasado visitámos **los** *Estados Unidos*.	We visited the United States the year before last.

14. It is quite common, especially in describing military operations, to omit *á* before a geographical name that, according to the general rule just given, should be preceded by that preposition.

Los franceses ocuparon *Madrid*.	The French occupied Madrid.
Aníbal evacuó *Capua*.	Hannibal evacuated Capua.

This practice is not sanctioned by the best authorities, nor followed by the best writers. The two sentences just given should be replaced by these:

Los franceses ocuparon *á* Madrid.—Aníbal evacuó *á* Capua.

15. Proper geographical nouns preceded by the definite article take *á* when they follow verbs that ordinarily take the names of human beings as their accusatives (Art. **11**), or when they are taken to denote the people of the places they name rather than the places themselves.

Los españoles no pudieron *vencer* **á** *los* Estados Unidos.	The Spaniards could not vanquish the United States.
La China no *quiere* **al** Japón, ni el Japón **á** *la* China.	China does not love Japan, nor Japan China.

16. **Other Accusatives.**—As a rule, when the accusative of a verb does not belong to any of the classes, or is not used in any of the manners, specified in the foregoing articles, it does not take *á*.

Juan me escribió *una carta*.	John wrote me a letter.
Aún no hemos vendido *los sombreros* que nos llegaron el mes pasado.	We have not yet sold the hats that we received (*literally*, that reached us) last month.

No podemos pagar *esa cuenta*.	We cannot pay that bill.
Haga *el inventario* hoy, y envíe *una copia* al abogado.	Take the inventory today, and send a copy to the lawyer.
El cirujano dice que no hay necesidad de amputarle á usted *la pierna*.	The surgeon says that it is not necessary to amputate your leg.
El toro mató *el caballo*, y el toreador mató *el toro*.	The bull killed the horse, and the bull fighter killed the bull.

The names of animals, however, when preceded by the definite article, may take *á*, if the animals are in any way represented as rational beings, or as prompted in their actions by intellectual, emotional, or other motives that may in any manner be assimilated to man's mental acts and states. Thus, in the last example, where the horse and the bull are referred to as engaged in a struggle with each other, and the bull as fighting both the horse and the horseman, it would be proper to say,

El toro mató *al* caballo, y el toreador mató *al* toro.

In the following examples, in which no reference is made, either directly or indirectly, to the animals' mental acts or states, *á* would be inadmissible:

El carnicero acababa de matar *el toro*.	The butcher had just killed the bull.
El cazador cogió *el tigre* en una trampa.	The hunter caught the tiger in a snare.

17. *Á* often serves the purpose of avoiding ambiguity, especially after verbs having two accusatives, one of which serves as a name of, or is employed to characterize, the other.

Llamaban libertad **á** *la tiranía*, y consideraban justicia **al** *asesinato*.	Tyranny they called liberty, and murder they considered justice.

Were the *á* omitted in the first of these two propositions, it would not be plain whether the idea to be conveyed was that tyranny went by, or usurped, the name of liberty, or that liberty went by the name of tyranny. Similarly with the second proposition.

18. In grammatical language, *á* precedes the accusative of the verbs **regir,** *to govern;* **modificar,** *to modify*, and a few others.

La preposición *rige* **al** caso terminal.	The preposition governs the prepositional case.
El adverbio *modifica* **al** verbo, **al** adjetivo ó **á** otro adverbio.	The adverb modifies the verb, the adjective, or another adverb.

OTHER USES OF Á

19. This preposition, besides being a sign of the accusative in the cases specified in the foregoing articles, is used:

1. To indicate destination, and also the place, moment, or state reached by anything in its motion, or to which the thing tends. It is then rendered by *to*, sometimes by *at*.

Mañana iré *á* la ciudad.	I shall go to the city tomorrow.
Venga *á* mi despacho esta noche.	Come to my office this evening.
El sábado que viene llegaremos *á* Buenos-Aires.	We shall arrive at Buenos Ayres next Saturday.

2. To express the dative relation. (See Part 4.)

3. To relate certain infinitives to the verbs that govern them. It is then rendered by *to*.

Vamos **á** *comer.*	Let us go to dine.
Aprendamos **á** *nadar.*	Let us learn to swim.
Aspira **á** *ser* rey.	He aspires to be king.
La mula *comenzó* **á** *cocear.*	The mule commenced to kick.
El sol *empezaba* **á** *salir.*	The sun was beginning to rise.
¿Quién le *enseñó* á usted **á** *usar* tablas de logaritmos?	Who taught you (how) to use logarithmic tables?
Envié **á** *comprar* el periódico.	I sent to buy the newspaper.
Nos *obligaron* **á** *rendirnos.*	They compelled us to surrender.
¿No quiere *salir* **á** *pasear?*	Do you not wish to go out to walk?
Venga **á** *ver*me mañana.	Come to see me tomorrow.
No *me atreví* **á** *decir* nada.	I did not dare say anything.
¿Aún no *se han decidido* ustedes **á** *partir?*	Have you not yet decided to depart?
Su amigo *se negó* **á** *ayudar*nos.	Your friend refused to help us.

4. To denote time: translated by *at*, sometimes by *on*.

á media noche, *at midnight*
á medio día, *at noon*
á las seis, *at six o'clock*
á mi regreso, *on my return*
al día siguiente, *on the following day*

5. To denote rate of prices, motion, etc.: rendered by *at*. (See also Part 5, The Definite Article.)

El carbón se vende ahora *á* cinco pesos la tonelada.
Coal sells now at five dollars a ton.

El vapor va andando *á* trece millas por hora.
The steamer is going at thirteen miles per hour.

Instead of *á*, the phrase **á razón de**, *at the rate of*, may be used.

El carbón se vende ahora *á razón de* cinco pesos la tonelada.
El vapor va andando *á razón de* trece millas por hora.

The interrogative expressions *á cómo*, *á cómo está*, when applied to prices, mean, respectively, *at how much* (or, *at what price*), *what is the price of*. In general, *estar á*, when it refers to prices, is rendered by *to be, to sell at*.

¿Á cómo vendió usted sus pañuelos de lino?
At what price did you sell your linen handkerchiefs?

¿Á cómo está ahora la carne?
What is now the price of meat?

Las letras sobre Nueva-York *están al* doscientos por ciento.
Drafts on New York are now at two hundred per cent.

El azúcar *estaba* entonces *á* nueve centavos la libra.
Sugar sold then at nine cents a pound.

In familiar language, *estamos á* (literally, *we are at*) is applied to dates in the sense of *it is*, and *¿á cómo estamos?* (literally, *at how much are we?*) in the sense of *what is the date?*

Hoy *estamos á* diez.
Today is the tenth.

¿Á cómo estuvimos ayer?
What day of the month was yesterday?

6. To denote location: rendered by *at*, sometimes by *to*.

El coche nos espera *á* la puerta.
The carriage is waiting for us at the door.

Acabábamos de sentarnos *á* la mesa.
We had just sat down to the table.

This use of *á* is not very common, location being generally indicated by **en**, *in*, *at*, as will be explained in a subsequent article.

7. To denote distance: rendered by *at*, or not rendered at all.

El buque estaba como *á* dos leguas de la costa.	The ship was about two leagues off the coast.
¿Á qué distancia de la isla tuvo lugar la batalla?	At what distance from the island did the battle take place?

As will be observed, *como* is placed before *á* in the first example. It is a general rule that no word should intervene between a preposition and its object.

8. Preceded by a substantive, and followed by the same substantive, to denote distribution, gradualness, or consecutiveness: rendered by *by*.

uno **á** uno, *one by one*	paso **á** paso, *step by step, slowly*
gota **á** gota, *drop by drop*	poco **á** poco, *little by little*

9. To indicate manner or fashion: rendered by *after* or *in*. The words **manera**, *manner;* **moda**, *fashion;* **estilo**, *style*, are not expressed, being understood. In these idiomatic expressions, the feminine form of the article and of the adjective following it should be used.

á la francesa, *after the French fashion*	**á** la italiana, *after the Italian style*
á la antigua, *in ancient style, after the style of the ancients*	**á** la moderna, *in new style*

If the words *estilo*, *moda*, etc. are expressed, the construction is:

á *la moda* francesca; **al** *estilo* italiano; **al** *estilo* antiguo, etc.

The phrase *á lo*, followed by a substantive, indicates resemblance in the manner of acting, and may be rendered by *like* or *fashion*, or *in the style of*.

Trató de escribir **á lo** *Cervantes*, y se puso en ridículo.	He tried to write like a Cervantes, and made himself ridiculous.
Napoleón quería pasearse por el mundo **á lo** *Alejandro*.	Napoleon wished to walk over the world, like an Alexander.
Habla **á lo** *orador*, ó más bien, **á lo** *actor*.	He speaks in an orator-like, or rather actor-like, fashion.

10. To indicate the end of an interval of time: rendered by *to* or *until;* also, to denote limit: rendered by *to*.

Permaneceré en mi taller de las seis *á* las ocho.	I shall remain in my shop from six to eight.
Trabaja de la mañana *á* la noche.	He works from morning till night.
Tenemos de cuatrocientos mil *á* quinientos mil árboles de café en nuestro cafetal.	We have from four hundred thousand to five hundred thousand coffee bushes in our coffee plantation.

If, however, the beginning of the interval is not specified, **hasta**, *until*, should be used.

Permaneceré en mi oficina *hasta* las ocho.	I shall remain in my office until eight.

11. Elliptically, in the familiar phrase *á que*, a form of the verb **apostar**, *to bet*, being understood before it.

Á que no adivina por cuánto vendí los dos relojes.	I'll bet you can't guess for how much I sold the two watches.
Á que usted no ha hecho todavía la factura de esos artículos.	I'd bet you haven't yet made the invoice for those articles.

The full forms of these sentences would be:

Apuesto *á que* no adivina por cuánto vendí los dos relojes.
Apuesto (or, **Apostaría**) *á que* usted no ha hecho todavía la factura de esos artículos.

20. This preposition is used in a great many adverbial and idiomatic phrases which it is impossible to either classify or enumerate. The following may serve as examples:

jugar **á** los naipes, *to play at cards*	**al** otro lado, *on the other side*
perecer **á** manos de, *to die at* (or, *by*) *the hands of*	**al** otro día, **al** día siguiente, *on the following day*

ponerse **á** las órdenes de, *to place oneself at the service or command of*
á vista de tierra, *in sight of land*
á tiempo, *in time*
á bordo de un buque, *on board a ship*
á la vista, *at sight*
á la vista de, *on sight of, on seeing*
á diez días vista, *at ten days' sight, ten days after sight*
á consecuencia de, *in consequence of*

NOTE.—For a list of adverbial phrases with *á*, see Part 10.

OTHER PREPOSITIONS*

DE

21. Besides its employment for the formation of adjectival prepositional phrases, which was fully explained in Part 5 (The Adjective Substantive), this preposition is used:

1. To denote possession or appertainance.

la casa *de* Juan	John's house
el corresponsal *de* usted	your correspondent
las patas traseras *del* caballo	the horse's hind feet
las ruedas *del* coche	the wheels of the carriage
el reloj *de* la catedral	the cathedral clock

2. To denote origination, source, starting point, native place, place moved from, and the like: usually rendered by *from*.

Yo soy *de* Puerto-Rico.	I am from Porto Rico.
La quinina se extrae *de* la cinchona.	Quinine is extracted from cinchona.
¿*De* dónde viene usted?	Where do you come from?
Ayer trabajámos *de* seis á seis.	Yesterday we worked from six to six.
El vapor va *de* Nueva-York á Cartagena en siete días.	The steamer goes from New York to Carthagena in seven days.
Se acaba de construír un ferrocarril *de* Valparaíso á la frontera argentina.	A railroad has just been built from Valparaiso to the Argentine frontier.

*It is not intended here to give a list of all the Spanish prepositions with their various meanings. Only the most important ones will be treated in the following articles; nor will those meanings of them be dwelt on that can be readily learned from a Spanish-English dictionary.

La reina bajó *del* trono á recibir á su distinguido visitante.	The queen descended from the throne to receive her distinguished visitor.

3. To denote cause: generally rendered by *with* or *for*, and sometimes by *of*.

La pobre anciana lloró *de* placer.	The poor old lady wept for pleasure.
El condenado temblaba *de* temor.	The sentenced man was trembling with fear.
Me estoy muriendo *de* hambre.	I am dying with hunger.
Mi tío Samuel murió *de* hidropesía.	My uncle Samuel died of dropsy.

4. To express a distinguishing feature or characteristic: rendered by *with*.

la señora *de* traje negro.	the lady with the black dress
el caballero *de* mostacho rubio	the gentleman with the blond mustache
el *de* la espada	the one with the sword

5. To denote occupation or office: rendered by *as*. When preceded by *estar*, and followed by the name of an office or occupation, it is not translated. (See Part 2, Ser and Estar.)

Trabaja *de* ingeniero.	He works as an engineer.
¿Quiere usted servirme *de* intérprete?	Will you serve me as interpreter?
El general Castro *está de* presidente.	General Castro is now president.

6. After some participles, to relate them to the names of the agents performing the actions or causing the states denoted by the participles: equivalent to *by*, sometimes to *with*.

El jefe entró *seguido* **de** sus tres oficiales.	The chief entered followed by his three officers.
Vino *acompañado* **de** un sacerdote.	He came accompanied by a priest.
Estoy *agobiado* **de** desgracias.	I am overwhelmed with misfortunes.

NOTE.—For the use of *de* in the passive voice, see Part 7, The Passive Construction.

7. After some participles, to specify the material serving to place the object whose name is modified by the participle in the condition that the participle expresses: rendered by *with* or *in*.

cubierto **de** nieve perpetua	covered with perpetual snow
vestido **de** luto	dressed in mourning
vestido **de** blanco	dressed in white

8. In a great many adverbial phrases, to denote manner, state, or position.

La santa estaba *de rodillas* ante una imagen de la Virgen.	The saint was on her knees before an image of the Virgin.
Lo miré *de frente*.	I looked him in the face.
Acuéstese *de lado*.	Lie on your side.
Caí *de espaldas;* cayó *de cara*.	I fell on my back; he fell on his face.

9. After some verbs and substantives, in the sense of *about* or *on*.

¿De qué *hablaban* ustedes?	What were you talking about?
¿Qué *opina* usted **de** este negocio?	What do you think about this business?
Rankine escribió un *tratado* **de** mecánica.	Rankine wrote a treatise on mechanics.

10. In lively style, before a substantive denoting a human being, in the sense of *that*, *that . . . of a*. Sometimes, however, it is better not to translate it at all: it is simply an emphatic or expletive word, whose sole purpose is to give the phrase a familiar tone.

el astuto *de* Juancho	that wily Johnny
el pobre *de* mi hermano	that poor brother of mine
el farsante *de* Sánchez	that humbug of a Sanchez

11. After certain adverbs of time and place, which cannot be used by themselves as prepositions. The most important of these adverbs are:

abajo, *below*
antes, *before*
arriba, *above*
cerca, *near*
debajo, *under*
delante, *before*, *in front*
después, *after*, *afterwards*
detrás, *behind*
encima, *on*, *over*, *on top*
fuera, *out*
lejos, *far*

In the first of the following two sets of examples, some of these adverbs are used by themselves, and their English equivalents are also adverbs; in the second, they are followed by *de*, forming combinations whose English equivalents are prepositions:

1

Como dije *antes*, el mineral contiene más plata que oro.	As I said before, the ore contains more silver than gold.
El enemigo estaba muy *cerca*, y nuestras municiones muy *lejos*.	The enemy were very near, and our munitions very far.
Ponga este libro *encima*, y ése *debajo*.	Put this book on top, and that under.
La Melba cantó primero, y la Nórdica *después*.	Melba sang first, and Nordica afterwards.
Teníamos el Mediterráneo *delante* y el Vesuvio *detrás*.	We had the Mediterranean in front, and Vesuvius behind.

2

Voltaire murió *antes* **del** principio de la Revolución Francesa.	Voltaire died before the beginning of the French Revolution.
Venga á verme *antes* **de** partir.	Come to see me before leaving.
Estábamos muy *cerca* **del** enemigo, y muy *lejos* **de** nuestra base de operaciones.	We were very near the enemy, and very far from our base of operations.
Ponga este libro *encima* **de** la mesa, y ése *debajo* **del** pupitre.	Put this book on the table, and that one under the desk.
La Nórdica cantó *después* **de** la Melba.	Nordica sang after Melba.
El Mediterráneo estaba *delante* **de** nosotros.	The Mediterranean was before us.
El fugitivo se escondió *detrás* **de** la puerta.	The fugitive hid behind the door.

When *de* follows *antes* or *después*, and its object is a proposition, that proposition should be introduced by the announcing *que*. In such cases, however, *de* is generally omitted.

Debemos estar en el muelle *antes* **que** (or, *antes* **de que**) el vapor salga.	We must be on the wharf before the steamer leaves.
Después **que** (or, *Después* **de que**) acabe de copiar esas cartas, lleve este dinero al banco.	After you finish copying those letters, take this money to the bank.

12. With *á*, to denote denomination or rate.

una moneda *de á* diez pesos	a ten-dollar coin
un cigarro *de á* tres por veinticinco centavos	a three-for-twenty-five-cents cigar
un billete *de á* cien pesos	a one-hundred-dollar bank note

DESDE

22. When this preposition means *since*, and its object is a proposition, that proposition should be introduced by the announcing *que*.

Yo he trabajado con Rodríguez y Compañía *desde* **que** abrieron su tabaquería.	I have worked with Rodriguez and Company since they opened their cigar store.
Desde **que** don Alonso se volvió á casar, sus hijas no le hablan.	Since (the time when) Mr. Alonso married again, his daughters do not speak to him.

EN

23. This preposition is equivalent:

1. To *in* or *at*, indicating location or place, and other relations that it would be difficult to state in detail.

Mi esposa está ahora *en* la Habana.	My wife is now in Havana.
Yo vivo *en* Veracruz.	I live in Vera Cruz.
Nos demorámos dos días *en* un pueblo llamado San Antonio.	We stopped two days at a town called San Antonio.
Mi padre no está *en* casa.	My father is not at home.
Jorge Robles está *en* la miseria absoluta.	George Robles is in absolute destitution.
Usted puede ir de aquí á Río Janeiro *en* dos días.	You may go from here to Rio Janeiro in two days.

2. To *in* or *into*, with verbs of motion, and to *into* in a great many other cases.

Hágame el favor de echar esta carta *en* el buzón.	Please put this letter in the letter box.
Métase *en* la casa tan pronto como pueda.	Get into the house as soon as you can.
Los historiadores han dividido la historia universal *en* cuatro partes principales.	Historians have divided universal history into four main parts.
Se acaba de inventar un proceso muy sencillo para trasformar el hierro colado *en* acero.	A very simple process has just been invented for transforming cast iron into steel.

3. To *on*, in a great many cases, of which the following may serve as examples:

Le pusieron una corona de espinas *en* la cabeza.	They placed a crown of thorns on his head.
Apóyese *en* mi brazo.	Lean on my arm.
Hace mucho calor *en* las costas, pero *en* las montañas la temperatura es muy agradable.	It is very warm on the coasts, but on the mountains the temperature is very pleasant.
La criada dice que el almuerzo está *en* la mesa.	The servant says breakfast is on the table.
La propiedad en disputa está situada *en* la orilla izquierda del Orinoco.	The property in dispute is situated on the left bank of the Orinoco.
No gaste su dinero *en* tales bagatelas.	Do not spend your money on such trifles.

HASTA

24. This preposition is the equivalent of:

1. *Till, until.*

Permaneceremos aquí *hasta* el jueves de la semana entrante.	We shall remain here until Thursday of next week.
Hasta ahora no hemos recibido contestación á nuestra carta.	Thus far (*literally*, Until now) we have not received an answer to our letter.

If its object is a whole proposition, this proposition should be introduced by the announcing *que*. (Compare Art. **22.**)

Aguarde aquí *hasta* **que** nosotros vólvamos.	Wait here until we return.
No empiece á empacar esas camisas *hasta* **que** el fabricante envíe las otras.	Do not begin to pack those shirts until the manufacturer sends the others.

In negative sentences like the last, **antes de,** *before*, may be substituted for *hasta*.

No empiece á empacar esas camisas *antes de* **que** el fabricante envíe las otras.

2. *As far as, up to, to.*

Vino conmigo *hasta* la calle Diez.	He came with me as far as Tenth street.
Tuve que ir *hasta* Quito en busca de un agrimensor.	I had to go as far as Quito in search of a surveyor.
Hasta esta fecha, no hemos tenido noticias de la expedición.	Up to this date, we have had no news of the expedition.
Llegó *hasta* decir que nosotros no somos hombres honrados.	He went as far as to say that we are not honest men.
Aquí vendemos de todo, desde alfileres *hasta* locomotoras.	We sell everything here, from pins up to locomotives.
Permanecí con él *hasta* el último momento.	I remained with him up to the last moment.

3. *Even.*

Los invasores mataron *hasta* los animales domésticos de los naturales.	The invaders killed even the domestic animals of the natives.
Hasta me dijo que el negocio que ustedes tanto anuncian en los periódicos es una farsa.	He even told me that the business you advertise so much in the newspapers is a humbug.
La pobre viuda ha tenido que vender *hasta* sus muebles.	The poor widow has had to sell even her furniture.

PARA

25. This preposition is employed:

1. To express purpose, use, end, or destination: rendered by *for* or *to*. (See also Part 5, The Adjective Substantive.)

El hierro se emplea *para* muchas cosas.	Iron is used for many things.
Este telegrama es *para* usted.	This telegram is for you.
Hay varios procesos *para* extraer el oro del mineral.	There are several processes for extracting gold from the ore.
¿Cuándo sale usted *para* Cádiz?	When do you set out for Cadiz?
Vamos *para* el Callao.	We are on our way to Callao.
Mi hijo menor estudió *para* abogado.	My youngest son studied for a lawyer.
¿*Para* qué me necesita usted?	What do you need me for?

2. With an infinitive, or with a proposition introduced by the announcing *que*, as its object, to denote the purpose for which something is done: rendered by *to*, *in order that*, *so that*, or simply by *so* or *that*. The verb in the object proposition should be subjunctive.

Para *traducir* bien una lengua extranjera, no basta hablarla bien.	In order to translate well a foreign language, it is not sufficient to speak it well.
Come **para** *vivir;* no vivas **para** *comer*.	Eat to live; do not live to eat.
Envíele estas esmeraldas al joyero, *para que* él las examine.	Send these emeralds to the jeweler, that he may examine them.
Ponga un poco de agua en ese florero, *para que* las flores no se marchiten.	Put a little water in that flower vase, so that the flowers will not wither.
Nos invitó á concurrir á la reunión en que iba á discutirse el proyecto, *para que* pudiésemos formarnos una idea de las dificultades que hay que superar.	He invited us to attend the meeting in which the project was to be discussed, that we might form an idea of the difficulties that it is necessary to surmount.
Tenga todo listo, *para que* podamos salir inmediatamente que el coche llegue.	Have everything ready, so that we may leave immediately after the carriage arrives.

3. Preceded by a form of *estar* and followed by an infinitive, to indicate immediate or near futurity, with respect to the time denoted by the form of *estar*, of that which is denoted by the infinitive: rendered by *about to*, *on the point of*. Sometimes, the phrase *estar para* expresses simple futurity, and may be rendered by *to be going to*, *to be to*.

Estábamos para *firmar* el contrato, cuando se nos informó que el título del vendedor no era legal.	We were about to sign the contract, when we were informed that the seller's title was not legal.
La señorita Adelaida **está para** *casarse*.	Miss Adelaide is to be married.

4. To denote the time fixed for the performance of an action or the occurrence of an event: rendered by *for*.

No dejes *para* mañana lo que puedas hacer hoy.	Do not leave for tomorrow what you can do today.
El ingeniero nos prometió los planos *para* el martes de la semana entrante.	The engineer promised us the drawings for Tuesday of next week.

5. To denote the limit of an interval of time within which something is to be done or accomplished: equivalent to *by*.

Su terno estará terminado *para* mañana.	Your suit will be finished by tomorrow.
Para el último del mes habremos despachado todos estos pedidos.	By the last of the month we shall have sent off all these orders.

6. In contrasting complex sentences like the following, to indicate that the predicate in the principal proposition is not what would ordinarily be anticipated: rendered by *for*.

Habla muy mal el inglés, *para* un hombre que ha vivido diez años en Inglaterra.	He speaks English very poorly for a man who has lived ten years in England.
Para un graduado de la universidad, sabe muy poco.	For a graduate of the University, he knows very little.

7. In the sense of *compared with*, or of *to*, in expressions like the following:

Estos caminos son excelentes, *para* los que hemos visto en Bolivia.	These roads are excellent, compared with those we have seen in Bolivia.
¿Qué es la vida del hombre *para* la duración casi infinita de nuestro sistema solar?	What is man's life compared with the almost infinite duration of our solar system?

Lo que hemos sufrido no es nada *para* lo que aún tenemos que sufrir.	What we have suffered is nothing to what we still have to suffer.

8. To restrict the application of a predicate adjective, by specifying that it applies to the subject only as the latter affects or is viewed by the person denoted by the object of *para:* rendered by *to* or *for.*

Para mí, eso es absolutamente inconcebible.	To me, that is absolutely inconceivable.
Los métodos de la diplomacia son casi imposibles de comprender *para* gente que se ha criado en los campamentos militares.	The methods of diplomacy are almost impossible to understand for people who have grown in military camps.

9. In the expression *para con*, which is equivalent to **con,** *with*, and denotes feeling, attitude, or behavior with regard to a person: rendered by *to.* As just stated, *para* may be omitted, and *con* used alone.

Ella ha sido muy buena *para con* nosotros.	She has been very kind to us.
Se manejó muy mal *para conmigo.*	He behaved very badly toward me.

POR

26. This preposition is used:

1. To indicate agency or authorship. (See also Part 7, The Passive Construction.)

Tengo un tratado de economía política *por* Juan Bautista Say.	I have a treatise on political economy by John Baptist Say.
Acabo de ver el primer número de una revista mensual redactada *por* don Emilio Castelar.	I have just seen the first number of a monthly review edited by Mr. Emilio Castelar.
Véase "El principio de la población," *por* Malthus.	See "The Principle of Population," by Malthus.

In referring to a book or writing and its author, *de* is used as the equivalent of the English possessive sign (*'s*).

"Los primeros principios" *de* Herbert Spencer.	Herbert Spencer's "First Principles."
"La decadencia y ruina del Imperio Romano" *de* Gibbon.	Gibbon's "Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire."
Este pasaje ocurre en el "Otelo" *de* Shakespeare.	This passage occurs in Shakespeare's "Othello."

2. To denote motive, reason, or cause: rendered by *for*, *owing* to, or *on account of*, *because*.

No vine ayer, *por* haber estado muy ocupado.	I did not come yesterday, because I was very busy.
Todo lo perdimos *por* querer ganarlo todo.	We lost all through our wishing to gain all.
Tomé esa resolución *por* motivos que por ahora* no puedo hacer públicos.	I took that resolution for motives that I cannot make public just at present.
Lo haré *por* usted, aunque no lo haría *por* nadie más.	I will do it for you, although I would not do it for anybody else.
Tal fué la razón *por* la cual protestámos la letra de usted.	Such was the reason why (*literally*, the reason for which) we protested your draft.
Por ustedes se echó á perder ese negocio.	It was through your fault that that business fell through (*literally*, That business was ruined on your account).

3. To denote an interval of time: rendered by *for*.

Permaneceremos aquí *por* cuatro ó cinco días.	We shall remain here for four or five days.
Él y yo nos hemos conocido *por* más de un año.	He and I have known each other for more than a year.

4. To indicate instrumentality, means, or mode of action: equivalent to *by*.

Nosotros enseñamos idiomas *por* medio del fonógrafo.	We teach languages by means of the phonograph.
Hubo que traer al desertor *por* la fuerza.	It was necessary to bring the deserter by force.

**Por ahora:* idiomatic expression meaning *just at present*, *for the time being*.

Allí no se viaja *por* ferrocarril.	People there do not travel by railroad.
Es más fácil ir á la Habana *por* agua que *por* tierra.	It is easier to go to Havana by water than by land.

5. To denote place passed through or by: rendered by *through*, *by*, or *the way of*.

El prisionero se escapó *por* la ventana.	The prisoner escaped through the window.
Éntre *por* aquí, doctor.	Come in this way (*literally*, through here), doctor.
Nosotros entrámos *por* la puerta del sur, y el enemigo salió *por* la del norte.	We went in through the southern gate, and the enemy went out through the northern.
Don José pasó *por* aquí esta mañana.	Mr. Joseph went by here this morning.
¿Piensa usted ir á Santiago de Chile *por* Colón ó *por* San Francisco?	Do you intend to go to Santiago de Chile by the way of Colon or by that of San Francisco?

Ser is often omitted after *por*, in expressions like the following:

Lo despidieron *por* negligente.	They discharged him on account of his negligence (*literally*, for being negligent).
Lo fusilaron *por* traidor.	They shot him for being a traitor.

6. To denote place passed over or moved along: rendered by *over*, *about*, or *along;* sometimes by *in*.

Viajámos *por* toda la Europa.	We traveled all over Europe.
El bote bajó *por* el lado izquierdo del río.	The boat descended along the left bank of the river.
Don Juan y Haidea vagaban, ya *por* el interior de la isla, ya *por* la costa.	Don Juan and Haidée roamed, sometimes about the interior of the island, sometimes along the coast.

7. To indicate prompting motive: rendered by *for the sake of*, *out of*.

Lo hice *por* cortesía.	I did it out of courtesy.
Socórrame, *por* el amor de Dios.	Help me, for God's sake.
Por piedad, señor, no se lleve á mi hijo.	For mercy's sake, sir, do not take away my son.

8. To denote price or anything else received in exchange: rendered by *for*.

Compré un caballo *por* cien pesos.	I bought a horse for one hundred dollars.
Cambié mi capa *por* un sobretodo.	I exchanged my cloak for an overcoat.
¿Cuánto le dieron *por* su guitarra?	How much did they give you for your guitar?
Trabajo *por* cien pesos al mes.	I work for one hundred dollars a month.

9. To denote rate: rendered by *per* or *a*.

El oro se vendía entonces á diez y seis pesos *por* onza.	Gold sold then at sixteen dollars an ounce.
Le compré los cigarros á dos pesos *por* ciento.	I bought the cigars from him at two dollars a hundred.
Este cañón da al proyectil una velocidad inicial de seiscientos metros *por* segundo.	This gun gives the projectile an initial velocity of six hundred meters per second.
En esta empresa, el capital invertido devenga un interés anual de quince *por* ciento.	In this enterprise, the capital invested draws a yearly interest of fifteen per cent.

In stating prices, however, *por* may be replaced by the definite article. (See Part 5, The Definite Article.)

El oro se vendía entonces á diez y seis pesos *la* onza.

10. With verbs of reckoning, and in expressions where the idea of reckoning is implied, to indicate that a collective numeral is taken as a unit: equivalent to *by*.

Cuente esos pañuelos *por* docenas.	Count those handkerchiefs by dozens.
Si usted compra las camisas *por* docena, le daremos un descuento de veinte por ciento.	If you buy the shirts by the dozen, we will give you a discount of twenty per cent.
Hoy hemos recibido contestaciones *por* miles.	We have today received answers by the thousand.

When, as in the second of these two examples, the collective numeral is a basis for reckoning prices, it should be in the singular; otherwise, in the plural. It will be observed that in neither case is the collective numeral preceded by the definite article.

11. In the sense of *for* or *as*, to indicate that a predicate substantive or adjective is from appearances believed or supposed to be applicable to the subject or accusative of the verb.

Me tomaron *por* maestro de piano.	They took me for a piano teacher.
Pasa *por* perito en la materia.	He passes as an expert on the subject.
Lo dejaron *por* muerto.	They left him for dead.

12. In the sense of **en busca de**, *in search of:* rendered by *for* or *after*.

Fué *por* lana, y volvió trasquilado. (*Proverbio.*)	He went after wool, and came back shorn. (*Proverb.*)
Vengo *por* la carta de recomendación que usted me prometió.	I come for the letter of recommendation that you promised me.
Es preciso mandar *por* un médico inmediatamente.	It is necessary to send for a physician at once.

13. In the sense of **en favor de**, *in behalf of, for the sake of, for*. (See also 2, above.)

Hobson resolvió sacrificarse *por* su patria.	Hobson resolved to sacrifice himself for his country.
Catón abogó *por* la muerte de los conjurados.	Cato pleaded for the death of the conspirators.
La mayoría votó *por* la enmienda que el senador McKinley introdujo.	The majority voted for the amendment that Senator McKinley introduced.

14. To denote distribution: equivalent to *by*.

uno *por* uno; palabra *por* palabra.	one by one; word by word.

15. In connection with *que*, in the sense of *however, no matter how*, to intensify the meaning of an adjective or adverb placed between *por* and *que*. (Compare Part 6, The Subjunctive After Certain Conjunctive and Adverbial Words and Phrases.)

Por *buena* **que** sea la casa que usted ha comprado, no vale lo que usted ha pagado por ella.	However good the house you have bought may be, it is not worth what you have paid for it.
Por *aprisa* **que** el orador hable, mi estenografista puede seguirlo y escribir su discurso.	No matter how fast the orator may speak, my stenographer can follow him and write down his speech. .

16. To denote location, locality, or time, in a vague and indefinite, sometimes uncertain, manner: rendered by *around, about, in.*

Por esas tierras no se conoce la luz eléctrica.	Electric light is not known in those countries.
Creo que él ahora está *por* Filadelfia.	I think he is now in Philadelphia.
Tal vez regresemos *por* mayo ó junio del año que viene.	We may, perhaps, return by (*or*, about) May or June of next year.

17. In exclamations, oaths, and pledging affirmations like the following, in which it is equivalent to *by:*

¡por Dios! *¡por* la Virgen!	by God! by the Virgin!
por mi palabra de honor	by my word of honor
Juro *por* la Biblia que beso y *por* su divino autor.	I swear by the Bible I am kissing and by its divine author.

18. With an infinitive, to indicate that the action denoted by the infinitive remains to be done: rendered by the infinitive sign *to*, or by *to be* followed by the participle of the verb.

Aún hay cuatro cartas **por** *escribir.*	There are still four letters to be written.
El ferrocarril está aún **por** *construírse.*	The railroad is yet to be built.
Dejámos cinco manuscritos **por** *corregir.*	We left five manuscripts to be corrected (*or*, without correcting).

19. In the expression *estar por*, which means *to be inclined to, to have a mind to.*

Estoy por ir á ver porqué no ha venido don Pedro.	I have a mind to go and see why Mr. Peter has not come.
Estoy por devolver esta cuenta sin abrirla.	I am inclined to return this bill without opening it.

THE CONJUNCTION

ONE-WORD CONJUNCTIONS*

MAS, PERO, AND SINO

27. Difference Between Pero and Sino. — Although *pero* and *sino* are both rendered by *but*, they are by no means interchangeable: *pero* means *but* in the sense of *however*, while *sino* is employed after the predicate of a negative sentence, to introduce another sentence the predicate of which excludes the predicate that is denied in the former sentence.

Aquí hay muchos bancos, *pero* ninguno de ellos tiene un capital de más de cien mil pesos.	There are many banks here, but none of them has a capital of more than one hundred thousand dollars.
El edificio á que usted se refiere *no es un banco*, **sino** *una sinagoga*.	The building to which you refer is not a bank, but a synagogue.

Although the verb *es* is not expressed after *sino*, it is understood, the complete sentence following the conjunction being **es una sinagoga,** *is a synagogue*, which excludes the predicate *es un banco*, denied in the sentence preceding *sino*. It must be borne in mind, however, that, if the verb in the sentence following *sino* is expressed, it should be introduced by the announcing *que*. This rule applies not only in cases like the one just considered, in which the verb may be, and usually is, omitted, but also in those in which the verb, being part of the excluding predicate, must be expressed.

*It is not intended here to give a list of all conjunctions, but only of those the exact meaning and proper employment of which cannot be learned from a dictionary.

El edificio á que usted se refiere no es un banco, *sino* **que** *es* una sinagoga.

{Él *no vive aquí*, **sino** *en la casa siguiente*.
Él no vive aquí, *sino* **que** *vive* en la casa siguiente.

El secretario *no escribió la carta*, **sino que** la *dictó*.

No sólo nos negaron la entrada, **sino que** nos *despidieron* con palabras descorteses.

The building to which you refer is not a bank, but it is a synagogue.

{He does not live here, but in the next house.
He does not live here, but he lives in the next house.

The secretary did not write, but dictated, the letter.

They not only refused us the entrance, but dismissed us with uncivil words.

28. *Mas* and *pero* are absolutely synonymous, although the latter is more common in familiar style. The conjunction *mas* is distinguished from *más*, adjective, adverb, and neuter, in that it has no accent mark over the *a*.

Aquí hay muchos bancos, **mas** ninguno de ellos tiene un capital de *más* de cien mil pesos.

29. No . . . sino.—In the examples considered in Art. **27**, this combination was rendered by *not . . . but*. In cases like the following, it is translated by *but* or *only:*

No tengo *sino* cuarenta pesos en el banco.

I have only forty dollars in the bank.

De las obras de Cervantes, *no* he leído *sino* el "Don Quijote."

Of the works of Cervantes, I have read only "Don Quixote."

El hombre ese *no* es *sino* un farsante.

That man is but a humbug.

Yo *no* he viajado *sino* por las Antillas.

I have traveled only in the West Indies.

Either *sólo* or *solamente*, both of which mean *only*, may replace the combination *no . . . sino.*

Tengo *sólo* (or, *solamente*) cuarenta pesos en el banco.
Yo he viajado *sólo* (or, *solamente*) por las Antillas.

30. *Sino* is similarly combined with other negative words, such as **nadie, ninguno,** *nobody*. The whole combination may be rendered by *only*, or the negative may be rendered independently, and *sino* translated by *but* or *except.*

Nadie nos vió *sino* el sereno.	No one saw us except the night watchman.
	Only the night watchman saw us.
Ninguno ha esatdo aquí *sino* el doctor.	No one has been here but the doctor.
	Only the doctor has been here.

31. Care should be taken not to confound the conjunction *sino* with the phrase **si no**, *if not*.

"¿Á quién he de acudir, *si no* á mi propio hermano?"	"To whom am I to apply, if not to my own brother?"

It is only through either carelessness or ignorance that writers occasionally use *sino* in cases like this.

THE CONJUNCTION NI AND THE ADVERB TAMPOCO

32. **Ni.**—This conjunction renders both *nor* and *neither*, and also *or* and *either*, when the latter are used as correlatives of *no* or *not*, or after other negative words or expressions. The Spanish *ó*, which is the literal equivalent of *or*, cannot be the correlative of *no* or of any other negative.

La telegrafía sin alambres no puede aún competir con los telégrafos ordinarios, *ni* es probable que los suplante antes de varios años.	Wireless telegraphy cannot yet compete with ordinary telegraphs; nor is it likely that it will supplant them before several years.
Estoy *sin* dinero **ni** esperanza.	I am without money or hope.
Es imposible (*No* es posible) llevar maquinaria á esa región, *ni* beneficiar las minas de ninguna otra manera.	It is impossible to carry machinery to that region, or to work the mines in any other way.
¿Quién tiene (*Nadie* tiene) la paciencia *ni* los conocimientos necesarios para escribir una obra de esta naturaleza?	Who has the necessary patience or knowledge to write a work of this nature?
No quiero **ni** hablarle **ni** verlo.	I do not wish either to speak to him or to see him.
No teníamos **ni** armas **ni** provisiones.	We had neither arms nor provisions.

In the last two examples, the first *ni* is emphatic, and may be omitted.

No quiero hablarle **ni** verlo.
No teníamos armas **ni** provisiones.

It is further to be observed that *ni*, like other negatives, requires *no* when it follows, but not when it precedes, the verb.

Ni hablarle ni verlo *quiero*.
Ni armas ni provisiones *teníamos*.

The form with *no* is, however, generally preferred, except in cases in which the first *ni* is really a substitute for *no*, as in the following example:

Ni soy de California, *ni* he vivido allí.	I neither am from California, nor have lived there.
No soy de California, *ni* he vivido allí.	I am not from California, nor have lived there.

33. *Ni* should never be followed by **algo,** *something, anything;* **alguien,** *some one, any one;* **alguno,** *some, any;* but, instead, by the negatives **nada,** *nothing;* **nadie,** *no one;* **ninguno,** *not any, none.*

No le concederán ese privilegio á usted *ni* á **nadie.**	They will not grant that privilege to you nor to any one.
No me dieron el pasaporte, la orden para el alcalde, *ni* **nada.**	They did not give me the passport, the order for the mayor, nor anything.
No he recibido la carta á que usted se refiere, *ni* **ninguna** otra.	I have not received the letter to which you refer, nor any other.

34. Either *ni* or the phrase *ni aun*, preceding a substantive or a substantive phrase, is often equivalent to *not even*, and sometimes to *not*.

Aquel monstruo no amaba *ni* (or, *ni aun*) á su madre.	That monster did not love even his mother.
No tengo *ni* un centavo.	I have not a cent.
La población de las Islas Británicas no es *ni* la octava parte de la de China.	The population of the British Isles is not even one-eighth of that of China.

The phrase *ni siquiera* is employed in the same sense.

¿No puedes prestarme *ni siquiera* diez pesos?	Can you not lend me even (*or*, at least) ten dollars?
Don Jaime *ni siquiera* me habló.	Mr. James did not even speak to me.

35. **Tampoco.** — This adverb renders the English *neither* or *not . . . either*. After *ni*, it is equivalent to *either*. Like other negatives, it requires *no* or *ni* when it follows, but not when it precedes, the verb.

Yo no he oído á Paderewski, *ni* á Rosenthal *tampoco*.	I have not heard Paderewski, nor Rosenthal either.
¿*No* toca usted la guitarra *tampoco*? ¿*Tampoco* toca usted la guitarra?	Do you not play the guitar either?
Mi señora no es americana, *ni* yo *tampoco*.	My wife is not an American, nor I either.

36. *Ni* is often omitted before *tampoco*, being understood.

Nosotros no hemos recibido noticias de Bogotá. — Nosotros *tampoco* (or, *Ni* nosotros *tampoco*).	We have not received news from Bogota. — Nor we either.

37. At the beginning of a sentence, *tampoco* is sometimes better rendered by *nor*.

Tampoco es de esperarse que Inglaterra reconozca la independencia del Transvaal.	Nor is it to be expected that England will recognize the independence of the Transvaal.
Tampoco puede considerarse el comercio de una nación como índice de su desarrollo intelectual ni moral.	Nor can the commerce of a nation be considered as an index of its intellectual or moral development.

38. In answers, *tampoco* is used by itself in the sense of *not either*, but is better rendered by *nor . . . either*, with the appropriate word between *nor* and *either;* or simply by *no*.

¿Ha estado usted en Santiago? — No, señor. — ¿Ni en la Habana? — *Tampoco*.	Have you been in Santiago? — No, sir. — Nor in Havana? — Nor there either.

El muchacho me acaba de decir que don Eduardo no ha regresado. ¿La señora de él tampoco ha vuelto?—*Tampoco*, señor.

The boy has just told me that Mr. Edward has not returned. Has not his wife come back either?—No, sir.

ó

39. This conjunction renders both the English *conjunctions or* and *either*, but never the *adverb* or the *adjective either*. When it precedes a word beginning with *o-* or *ho-*, it should be changed to *ú*. The English *or*, employed as the correlative of *not* or *nor*, should be rendered by *ni*, as explained in Art. **32**, and not by *ó*.

Saldremos hoy *ó* mañana.

Ó yo estoy muy equivocado, *ó* ésta es la misma prensa de copiar que devolvimos ayer.

La primera edición se publicó hace diez **ú** *o*nce años.

¿Cuál le parece á usted mejor poeta, Virgilio **ú** *Ho*mero?

We shall leave today or tomorrow.

Either I am much mistaken, or this is the same copying press that we returned yesterday.

The first edition was published ten or eleven years ago.

Which do you think is the better poet, Virgil or Homer?

QUE

40. Besides the numerous offices of *que* with which the student is already familiar, the following conjunctional uses are worthy of notice:

1. It may take the place of **pues**, *for*, as a causal or consequential conjunction. This use of *que* is almost exclusively restricted to elevated style.

Leonidas y sus espartanos, aunque sin esperanza de obtener la victoria en una lucha tan desigual, prefirieron morir á ceder el campo al enemigo; *que* aquellos héroes temían más la derrota que la muerte.

Puede un escritor hacer muchos versos sin ser poeta; *que* la versificación y la poesía no son de ninguna manera idénticas.

Leonidas and his Spartans, although without hope of obtaining the victory in so unequal a struggle, preferred to die rather than to yield the field to the enemy; for those heroes feared defeat more than death.

A writer may make many verses without being a poet; for versification and poetry are by no means identical.

2. It is also equivalent to *pues* in parenthetical expressions like the following:

El coronel Wáshington (*que* esto sucedió antes de que se le hiciese general), era opuesto á aquella campaña.	Colonel Washington (for this happened before he was made a general) was opposed to that campaign.
El zancudo (*que* así se llama el mosquito en el Magdalena) es una plaga insoportable.	The "zancudo" (for that is the name of the mosquito in the Magdalena) is an unbearable plague.

3. It is very commonly used to indicate that what is stated after it is the reason for making the statement or asking the question preceding it. In English, the connection is usually understood, and *que* is generally not translated.

¿Dónde ha estado usted hoy, *que* no lo he visto?	Where have you been today? I have not seen you.

This sentence may be considered as an elliptical form of the following:

¿Dónde ha estado usted hoy? *Le pregunto*, **porque** no lo he visto.	Where have you been today? I ask you, because I have not seen you.

Similarly,

Dése prisa, *que* van á dar las seis.	Make haste; it is about to strike six.
Vamos, *que* el vapor está para salir.	Come on; the steamer is about to leave.
¿Usted qué tiene, *que* está tan callado?	What is the matter with you, that you are so quiet?

4. As an expletive or emphatic word, it precedes some demonstratives in sentences like the following, in which it is not translated, and may be omitted:

Después de atormentar al pobre anciano de mil maneras, le hicieron presenciar el tormento y la muerte de sus dos hijas: ¡**que** *tanta* era la crueldad de aquellos fanáticos!	After torturing the poor old man in a thousand ways, they made him witness the torture and death of his two daughters: such (*literally*, so much) was the cruelty of those fanatics!

5. It may take the place of **y**, *and*, in negative expressions like the following, in which it may be rendered by *and*, but is better left untranslated:

Gloria quiero, *que* no riquezas.	I want glory, not wealth.
Fué él quien lo hizo, *que* no yo.	It was he who did it, not I.

6. It may be equivalent to **ya sea que**, *whether*, in the combination **que . . . que**, *whether . . . or*.

Iré á verlo esta noche, *que* llueva *que* truene.	I will go to see you this evening, whether it rains or thunders.
El niño debe tomar su remedio, *que* quiera *que* no.	The child must take his medicine, whether he will or not.

7. It is often employed at the beginning of a question relating to a previous statement, some form of **decir**, *to say*, or of another verb being understood before it. In such cases, it may sometimes be rendered by *and so*, *is it so that*.

¿*Que* no tiene usted dinero?	(You say) that you have no money?
¿*Que* trae usted noticias de mi hijo?	Is it so that you bring news of my son?
¿*Que* eres tú aquel muchachito á quien hace pocos años enseñé á leer?	And so you are that little boy whom a few years ago I taught how to read?

8. It occurs in a great many exclamatory expressions, and as a connective between some adverbial and interjectional words or phrases and propositions following them. In this class of expressions it serves simply as a sort of announcing word, and is not translated.

¡*Que* me matan!	They are killing me!
¡*Por Dios* **que** te haré pagar por tu cobardía!	By Heaven! I will make thee pay for thy cowardice!
¡*Á fe mía* **que** otra vez no me engañarán!	By my faith! another time they will not deceive me.
Por supuesto, señora, **que** tendremos mucho gusto en enseñar á usted nuestra fábrica.	Of course, madam, we will be very glad to show you our factory.

SI

41. Primary Meanings. — This conjunction, which partakes of the nature of an adverb, is primarily used:

1. In conditional sentences, meaning *if*.

Si alguien preguntare por mí, diga que he salido.	If any one asks for me, say I have gone out.
Si usted hubiera seguido mi consejo, no hubiera perdido su dinero.	If you had followed my advice, you would not have lost your money.

2. In alternative statements, meaning *whether*.

No sé *si* el baile tendrá lugar hoy ó mañana.	I do not know whether the ball will take place today or tomorrow.
Es difícil determinar *si* Europa fué poblada por asiáticos, ó Asia por europeos.	It is difficult to determine whether Europe was peopled by Asiatics, or Asia by Europeans.
Aún no puedo decir *si* iré ó no.	I cannot yet tell whether I shall go or not.

42. When *whether*, with *or* as its correlative, serves to introduce two alternatives, of both of which a certain action or fact is represented as independent, *whether* is rendered by **sea que**, *be it*, and *or* (or, *or whether*) either by *sea que* or by *ó que*. Sometimes, both *whether* and *or* are rendered by *que* (see Art. **40**, 6).

Sea que Napoleón haya sido vencido por circunstancias inesperadas, *sea que* su derrota se haya debido al genio de Wéllington, es indudable que aquél, como militar, era infinitamente superior á éste.	Whether Napoleon was defeated through unexpected circumstances, or whether his defeat was due to the genius of Wellington, there is no doubt that the former, as a military man, was infinitely superior to the latter.

Sea que may be omitted before a subjunctive verb, it being understood.

Quieras ó no, tendrás que obedecer nuestras órdenes.	Whether you will or not, you will have to obey our orders.

No creo que el señor Cisneros esté en su despacho ahora.—*Esté* ó no esté, traiga el libro mayor que está sobre su escritorio.	I do not think that Mr. Cisneros is in his office now.—Whether he is or not, bring the ledger that is on his desk.

43. Idiomatic Meanings.—The following are common idiomatic meanings of *si:*

1. With a verb in the future, it denotes curiosity and uncertainty. It may then be rendered by *I wonder if*, followed by the appropriate tense of the verb.

Si *lloverá* esta noche.	I wonder if it will rain tonight.
Si doña Laura *sabrá* que el hijo ha muerto.	I wonder if Mrs. Laura knows that her son is dead.
Si Juanito *habrá olvidado* ir por la modista.	I wonder if Johnnie has forgotten to go after the dressmaker.

2. At the beginning of a sentence, to introduce the protasis of a conditional sentence whose apodosis is understood, it being indicated by the context or the circumstances. *Si* may then be rendered by *but* or *why*, or by such expressions as *I tell you*, *the fact is*, etc.; sometimes it is better not to render it at all.

Tráigame mis guantes, María.—*Si* no están aquí, mamá.	Bring my gloves, Maria.—But they are not here, mama (*or*, Why, mama, they are not here).
Si don José es un viejo chocho que no sabe lo que dice.	Why, Mr. Joseph is a doting old man that knows not what he says.
¿Porqué no llamaste á la criada?—*Si* no la encontré, mamá.	Why did you not call the servant girl?—I did not find her, mama.
¿Sabe usted su lección ya?—No, señor, *si* no la he estudiado más que un cuarto de hora.	Do you know your lesson already?—No, sir; I have studied it only a quarter of an hour.

The implied apodoses of these sentences are, respectively:

¿cómo puedo llevárselos?	how can I bring them to you?
¿cómo se puede depender de lo que él diga? (*or something similar, according to circumstances*).	how can one depend on what he says?
¿cómo podía llamarla?	how could I call her?
¿cómo puedo saberla?	how can I know it?

3. In the phrase **por si**, *in case that*.

Es bueno que se arme, *por si* lo atacaren los ladrones en el camino.	It is well for you to arm yourself, in case the highwaymen attack you on the road.
Guarde aquí esta carta para el señor Álvarez, *por si* él viene esta tarde.	Keep here this letter for Mr. Alvarez, in case he should come this afternoon.

Y

44. This conjunction is the equivalent of the English *and*, but should be changed to *é* before a word beginning with *i* or *hi* (except words beginning with *hie*).

egoísta **é** *i*ngrato	selfish and ungrateful
aguja **é** *hi*lo	needle and thread
acero **y** *hie*rro	steel and iron

CONJUNCTIONAL PHRASES

45. The following are important phrases having a conjunctional value:

á fin de que, *in order that*
á medida que, *according as*
á menos que, á no ser que, *unless*
bien que, *although*
caso que, *in case that*
como quiera que, *however; since*
con que, *so, so then*
con tal que, *provided that*
dado que, dado caso que, *in case that*
de manera que, de modo que, de suerte que, *so that*
en caso que, en caso de que, *in case that*
en tanto que, entre tanto que, mientras que, *while.*
no obstante que, *notwithstanding*
pues que, puesto que, *since*
sea que, *whether*
siempre que, *whenever*
sin que, *without*
supuesto que, *since*
tanto que, *so much that*
ya que, *since*

THE INTERJECTION

PURE INTERJECTIONS

46. The principal **pure interjections,** that is, words that are not employed in any other office, are:

¡ah! *ah!* **¡oh!** *oh!* both of which serve the same purposes and are used under the same conditions as their respective English equivalents.

¡ay! *oh! ay! alas!*—denotes pain, either physical or moral. The combination *ay de* is equivalent to *woe to* or *woe is.*

¡ay de mí! *¡ay de* ti!	woe is me! woe is thee!
¡Ay de los que desobedecieren mis mandamientos!	Woe to them who shall disobey my commandments!

¡bah! *pshaw!*—indicates contempt or indifference.

¡ca! ¡quia! *no! never!*—express indignant denial or strong incredulity.

¡canasto! ¡canario! ¡caracoles! ¡caray! ¡caramba! ¡cáspita! ¡diantre!—mild or euphemistic forms of swearing serving to denote a variety of emotions, such as anger, surprise, determination, etc.: they may be rendered by such interjections as *gracious! dear me! the dickens! by jingo!* according to circumstances.

¡chitón! *hist! hush! silence!*

¡ea! *come! now!*—a word of encouragement.

¡ea! *come! hurry!*—expresses impatience.

¡eh! *eh!*—has the same meanings as its English equivalent, and is further used in the sense of *pshaw!* to express incredulity, contempt, or indifference.

¡hola! ¡ola! *oh! hallo!*—expresses surprise, discovery, or recognition.

¡huy! *ouch! oh!*—expresses physical pain caused by a sudden shock, or fear occasioned by momentary danger.

¡ojalá! *would that!* etc. For the uses of this interjection see Part 6, The Subjunctive in Propositions Introduced by the Announcing Que; and Part 8, Secondary Meanings of the Tenses.

¡puf! *ugh!*—expresses disgust.

¡tate! *stop! don't!* also, *I see! I have it!* expressing that something has just dawned upon the speaker's mind.

OTHER WORDS USED INTERJECTIONALLY

47. Among other words used with an interjectional value, the most important are:

1. The imperatives of certain verbs.

¡anda! *go away! you don't mean it!* (incredulity).	¡vaya! *of course! indeed! I must say! what an idea!*
¡calla! / ¡calle! *nonsense!* (incredulity, discouragement).	¡vaya que sí! *most assuredly!*
	¡vaya que no! *no indeed!*
	¡toma! *indeed! I see!*

2. Adjectives followed by *de*, in expressions like the following:

¡desgraciados de nosotros!	unfortunate that we are!
¡miserable de ti!	wretched that thou art!

3. The names of Jesus, God, the Virgin, and the saints. As has been remarked in another place, the interjectional use of these names, although seldom found in elevated style, is not considered either profane or vulgar among Spanish-speaking people. They are generally employed to denote surprise, pain, despair, and a great many other emotions. Their meaning can always be understood from the circumstances. They may be rendered by *ah me! dear me! gracious!* etc. With *por*, they form phrases equivalent to *for mercy's sake! for pity's sake!* and the like, and also emphatic asseverative expressions having the form of oaths and equivalent to *by Jove! by heavens!* etc.

¡Dios mío! ¿hasta cuándo durará esto?	Dear me! (*literally*, My God!) till when will this thing last?

¡Jesús, María y José! ¡qué escándalo!	Goodness me! what a scandal!
¡Por la Virgen, qué animal tan horrible!	Gracious! what a horrible animal!
¡Jesús, señor! no diga más, ¡por la Virgen santísima!	Heavens, sir! say no more, for mercy's sake! (*literally*, for the most blessed Virgin's sake).
¡Por San Pedro, que no ha de salir vivo de aquí!	By Jove! he shan't get out of here alive!

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 12)

SYNTAX

ORDER OF WORDS

INTRODUCTION

1. Besides the rudimentary principles of syntax contained in Part 2, a great many other syntactic rules have been given all through this Course in connection with the different parts of speech. The rest of the Grammar will be devoted to a more systematic treatment of the order of words in the sentence and the interdependence of their forms.

The rules here given apply to the most common cases and cover all those forms of construction that are likely to occur either in every-day conversation or in ordinary literature. When considered in its minutest details, the syntax of the Spanish, like that of every other tongue, contains a great many niceties that cannot be formulated in general, comprehensive statements, but which must be learned by constant intercourse with those who speak the language and by careful study of the works of the best writers. The student must have already observed that there is no fixed rule for the arrangement of words, especially as regards the relative position of the verb and its subject. In case of doubt, he may follow the English order; that is, place the subject before the verb in affirmative and in negative sentences, and

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

after the verb in interrogative sentences. The placing of the verb before its subject in sentences belonging to the first and second of the three classes just mentioned is considered more elegant than the reverse order, and adds force and vividness to the phrase: it is, however, rather formal, and, for this reason, almost exclusively restricted to high literature, especially to narrative and descriptive style.

POSITION OF THE ADJECTIVE

2. Restrictive Adjectives. — The articles and cardinal numerals, as well as other adjectives of quantity, such as **mucho,** *much*, **pocos,** *few*, are placed before the substantives they modify. As a rule, **bueno,** *good*, and **malo,** *bad*, when in the singular, are also placed before their substantives, although the reverse order is not uncommon, and is grammatically equally proper.

el hombre; *la* mujer	the man; the woman
un recibo; *una* carta	a receipt; a letter
cuatro pesos; *setenta* años	four dollars; seventy years
mucha riqueza; *muchos* gastos	much wealth; many expenses
poco crédito; *pocas* palabras	little credit; few words
demasiados competidores	too many competitors
una *buena* casa; un *buen* ciudadano	a good house; a good citizen

3. The ordinal numerals may either precede or follow their respective substantives. When, however, they are used as parts of proper names or employed without the definite article in quoting the divisions of a work, such as chapters or books, their place is after the modified substantives. A cardinal taking the place of an ordinal should follow the substantive it modifies. (See Part 6, Ordinal Numerals.)

el *segundo* siglo de nuestra era el siglo *segundo* de nuestra era	the second century of our era
el capítulo *tercero* del Apocalipsis el *tercer* capítulo del Apocalipsis	the third chapter of Revelation
Véase Apocalipsis, capítulo *trece*, versículo *quinto*.	See Revelation, chapter thirteen, verse five.

Carlos *Quinto;* Pío *Nono*	Charles the Fifth; Pius the Ninth
el siglo *veinte*	the twentieth century
el día *catorce* de este mes	the fourteenth day of this month

For the position of demonstrative adjectives, see Part 5; for that of possessive adjectives, Part 6.

4. Restrictive adjectives not included in the two preceding articles generally follow their respective substantives.

un hombre *rico*	a rich man
una mujer *bonita*	a pretty woman
comerciantes *comisionistas*	commission merchants
las guerras *civiles* de los países *hispano-americanos*	the civil wars of the Spanish-American countries

5. Coordinating Adjectives.—A coordinating adjective, that is, one which, not being restrictive, serves to describe a state or condition, or to call attention to a characteristic or well-known property of the thing denoted by a substantive, is ordinarily placed before that substantive, as in English.

la *blanca* nieve	the white snow
el *repugnante* caimán	the repulsive alligator
las *anchas* bocas del Nilo	the wide mouth of the Nile
el *inimitable* Shakespeare	the inimitable Shakespeare
el *odioso* y *despreciable* Arnold	the hateful and despicable Arnold
las *encantadoras* ilusiones de la *inexperta* juventud	the charming illusions of inexperienced youth
mi *desgraciado* padre	my unfortunate father
mi *querido* amigo	my dear friend
muy *estimado* señor	most esteemed sir
su *obediente* servidor	your obedient servant

6. Exceptions to the Foregoing Rules.—A restrictive adjective is often, especially in poetry and in elevated style, placed before its substantive, in order either to emphasize or lay stress on the quality it denotes, or simply to make the sentence more euphonious.

los *grandes* hombres de nuestros días	the great men of our days
cubierto de *cultivados* campos	covered with cultivated fields
una *hermosa* mujer	a handsome woman

7. An adjective phrase consisting of an adjective and the exclamatory adverb **qué,** *what*, or **cuán,** *how*, should precede the substantive it modifies.

¡Qué bello edificio!	How beautiful a building! (*or*, What a beautiful building!)
¡Cuán infame conducta!	How infamous a conduct!
¡Qué valerosos soldados!	What brave soldiers!

The adjective modifying a substantive preceded by the exclamatory *qué* may be placed after the substantive by introducing the adverb *tan* before it. Thus, the following two phrases have, respectively, the same meanings as the first and the third phrase given above.

¡Qué edificio *tan bello!*
¡Qué soldados *tan valerosos!*

Cuán is better adapted to elevated style than *qué*, and is preferable when the verb is understood.

¡Ay! *¡cuán* voluble es la Fortuna! **¡cuán** engañadora!	Alas! how fickle is Fortune! how deceitful!

8. An adjective modified by an adverb usually follows its substantive. This rule applies also to the comparative degree of adjectives, in which the adverb *más* is implied.

Tengo una *buena* casa.	I have a good house.
Tengo una casa **muy** *buena*.	I have a very good house.
Tengo una casa **más** *buena* (or, *mejor*) que la suya.	I have a better house than yours.

9. Some adjectives have different meanings according to whether they precede or follow their respective substantives. Thus, *un hombre* **pobre** means *a poor man*, while *un* **pobre** *hombre* means *an insignificant man, a poor devil.* Likewise, *un hombre* **bueno** means *a good man*, while *un* **buen** *hombre* is a somewhat contemptuous expression meaning *a harmless man, a harmless fellow.*

POSITION OF THE ADVERB

10. **No.**—This adverb immediately precedes the verb it modifies, unless the latter is accompanied by a pronominal case, which should be placed between *no* and the verb.

No tenemos dinero.	We have not any money.
Yo *no* escribí esa carta.	I did not write that letter.
El doctor Álvarez *no* **nos** recibió.	Doctor Alvarez did not receive us.

11. The same order is followed with compound tenses.

No *he estado* en Bolivia.	I have not been in Bolivia.
No lo *hemos visto* hoy.	We have not seen him today.

It should be borne in mind that, with a few comparatively rare exceptions, no word can be placed between a time form of the auxiliary *haber* and the participle in compound tenses. This rule forms a very important difference between Spanish and English syntax, and should be carefully observed.

¿*Ha terminado* **usted** sus estudios ya?	Have you finished your studies already?
El vapor no *ha llegado* **todavía.**	The steamer has not yet arrived.

12. In the compound gerund and infinitive, their subject, or a modifying adverb or adverbial phrase may be placed between the auxiliary and the participle. This, however, never applies to *no*, which in no case should follow either a tense or a verbal derivative, either in simple or in compound forms.

Habiendo **los empleados** *rehusado* trabajar, se les despidió.	The employes having refused to work, they were dismissed.
Habiendo **así** *cumplido* nuestra misión, regresámos á la ciudad.	Having thus accomplished our mission, we returned to the city.
No lo aguardámos por *haber*nos **usted** *escrito* que quizá no vendría.	We did not wait for you, on account of your having written to us that perhaps you would not come.

13. Another important difference between the two languages is that Spanish has no words corresponding to the partitives *any* and *some*. Thus, the sentence *Have you* **any** *money?* is rendered by *¿Tiene usted dinero?* which literally means *Have you money?* Likewise, *I have not* **any** *money*, is rendered by *Yo no tengo dinero*, which literally means *I have not money*. Furthermore, the negative adjective *no*, which in English is used as the equivalent of the adjective phrase *not any*, has no Spanish equivalent.

14. As stated elsewhere, a negative adverb other than *no*, and in general, any negative word, may be placed either before or after the verb: if placed after the verb, the latter should be preceded by *no;* if placed before the verb, *no* should be omitted.

Nunca lo he visto. *No* lo he visto *nunca*.	I have never seen him.
Tampoco debemos fiarle á ese hombre. *No* debemos *tampoco* fiarle á ese hombre.	We must not trust that man either.
Á *nadie* encontrámos en el camino. *No* encontrámos á *nadie* en el camino.	We did not meet any one on the road.

15. **Other Adverbs.**—An adverb modifying an adjective or another adverb should precede the modified word, and the phrase thus formed should follow the verb.

La navegación del Cauca es **muy** *peligrosa*.	The navigation of the Cauca is very dangerous.
Hable **más** *despacio*, pues yo he practicado **muy** *poco* el español, y aún me es **algo** *difícil* entenderlo.	Speak more slowly, for I have practiced Spanish very little, and it is still rather difficult for me to understand it.

16. An adverb (*no* excepted) modifying a verb usually follows the verb, if the latter follows its subject or if the subject is not expressed. When the subject follows, the

adverb generally precedes the verb. As a rule, adverbs of time and demonstrative adverbs precede the verb, which in its turn precedes the subject. The reverse order, however, is equally proper.

Nosotros vivimos **aquí.**	We live here.
Aquí viven *unas señoras chilenas.*	Here live some Chilian ladies.
El congreso no se ha reunido **todavía.**	Congress has not yet met.
Todavía no se ha reunido *el congreso.*	
Yo iré **mañana** á verlo.	I will go to see you tomorrow.
Mañana iré á verlo.	

17. No in Elliptical Expressions.—The position of *no* in expressions in which the verb is understood is the same as its position in the full sentences for which such elliptical expressions are substitutes. This is plainly illustrated by the following sets of examples, the first example in each set giving the full form, with the verb expressed; and the second, the elliptical form, with the verb understood:

Mi cuarto **no** *es* **muy** cómodo.	My room is not very comfortable.
¿Es cómodo su cuarto?—**No** *muy* cómodo.	Is your room comfortable?—Not very comfortable.
Mi hermano fué al teatro, pero **yo no** *fuí.*	My brother went to the theater, but I did not go.
¿Fueron ustedes al teatro?—Mi hermano fué, pero *yo* **no.**	Did you go to the theater?—My brother went, but I did not.
No *comamos* **aquí.**	Let us not dine here.
Comamos ahora.—Sí, pero **no** *aquí.*	Let us dine now.—Yes, but not here.
En Nueva-Orleáns vendí algunos sombreros de Panamá, pero **aquí no** *he vendido* ningunos.	In New Orleans I sold some Panama hats, but here I have not sold any.
¿Ha vendido usted muchos sombreros aquí?—*Aquí* **no,** pero en Nueva-Orleáns vendí muchos.	Have you sold many hats here?—Not here, but in New Orleans I sold many.
Todavía no *salgamos*, que está lloviendo.	Let us not go out yet, for it is raining.
Salgamos, pues.—*Todavía* **no.**	Let us go out, then.—Not yet.

POSITION OF PRONOMINAL CASES

NOTE.—In what follows, reference is made only to the accusative and the dative case.

18. With the Imperative and With Verbal Derivatives.—As stated in Part 2, a pronominal case should follow and form a word with the imperative, the infinitive, and the gerund. This rule, however, does not apply when the imperative is introduced by *que* or is used negatively; that is, when it has the same form as the subjunctive.

Que **lo** traigan.	Let them bring it.
Que **os** sea propicia la fortuna.	May fortune be propitious to you.
No **les** mande la cuenta á esos señores antes de mañana.	Do not send the bill to those gentlemen before tomorrow.
No **me** hable más de ese negocio.	Do not talk to me any more about that business.
Nunca **nos** envíe dinero sino en carta certificada.	Never send money to us except in a registered letter.

19. In the compound imperative, infinitive, and gerund, the pronominal case should be joined to the auxiliary.

Téngame ensillada la mula antes de las ocho.*	Have my mule saddled before eight o'clock.
Estoy seguro de *haberla visto* en el teatro anoche.	I am sure of having seen her at the theater last night.
No *habiéndome hallado* presente, no sé los pormenores del combate.	Not having been present, I do not know the details of the battle.

20. It is a general rule that in no compound forms, whether of tenses or verbal derivatives, should the pronominal case be placed after the participle. For the purposes of syntax, the auxiliary in a compound form is treated as *the* verb, and what is said concerning the order of words with regard to the verb refers to the auxiliary, not to the whole compound form taken as one word. The only exception to this principle occurs when the auxiliary is understood before

*See Part 8, Tenses of the Imperative Mode.

the participle, as is often the case when it is desired to avoid repetition.

Estoy seguro de haberla visto en el teatro anoche, y *habládo***le** en su palco.	I am sure of having seen her at the theater last evening, and spoken to her in her box.
Habiéndole explicado nuestro negocio, y *enseñádo***le** algunas de nuestras muestras, me despedí de él hasta el día siguiente.	Having explained our business to him and shown him some of our samples, I took leave of him until the following day.

21. The foregoing rules are never deviated from in prose, but in poetry they sometimes are, such expressions as *me da*, *le habla*, being employed instead of **dame**, *give me*, **háblale**, *speak to him*, respectively. Another poetical license that is frequently made use of is to replace the *r* of an infinitive by *l* before a pronominal case beginning with *l*: *vella* for **verla**, *to see her; hablalle* for **hablarle**, *to speak to him*. In former times, this substitution was common in prose as well as in poetry.

22. With the Subjunctive.—A pronominal case referring to a verb in the subjunctive mode should always precede the verb. There is no exception to this rule.

Es necesario que **les** *escribamos* hoy mismo.	It is necessary that we write to them this very day.
No hallámos allí á nadie que **la** *conociese*.	We did not find there anybody who knew her.
Lo que le digo es un hecho, por extraño que **le** *parezca*.	What I tell you is a fact, however strange it may seem to you.

23. With the Indicative.—Generally, a pronominal case accompanying a verb in the indicative precedes the verb. This order is always correct, even in the cases to be presently specified, in which the reverse order is permissible.

Me *prometió* que **nos** *enviaría* su retrato y el de su esposa.	He promised me that he would send us his picture and that of his wife.

Su carta de usted **la** *recibí** hace una semana, pero no **la** *había contestado* por haber estado enfermo.	I received your letter a week ago, but had not answered it because I have been ill.

24. In the forms of construction enumerated below, the pronominal case may be placed after the verb. Although, as pointed out in the preceding article, the placing of it before the verb is equally proper, the reverse order is much more elegant and forcible, and therefore better adapted to elevated style.

1. When the verb is the first word in the sentence.

*Rogámos***le** que aguardase hasta el día siguiente.	We requested him to wait until the following day.
*Díjo***me** que tendría mucho gusto en recibir á usted.	He told me that he would be very glad to receive you.
*Odiábans***e** entre sí las sectas cristianas con un furor que asombraba á los paganos.	The Christian sects hated one another with a frenzy that astonished the Pagans.
*Véndens***e** allí artículos de todas clases, desde alfileres y pañuelos hasta locomotoras y arneses.	Articles of all kinds are sold there, from pins and handkerchiefs up to locomotives and harnesses.
*Había***lo** *enviado* Castro como representante de Venezuela.	Castro had sent him as Venezuela's representative.
*Ha***se** *dicho* á menudo que, con los progresos de la electricidad, el vapor será pronto cosa del pasado.	It has often been said that, with the progress of electricity, steam will soon be a thing of the past.
*Quíso***lo** así mi desgraciada estrella.	My unlucky star willed it so.

2. After the conjunctions **ó**, *or;* **pero, mas,** *but;* and **y,** *and.* This rule is really but a special case of the preceding, since these conjunctions are independent of the sentences they connect, and so whatever word follows them may be regarded as the first word in the sentence they introduce.

Los conquistadores rodearon á los indios indefensos, **y** *matáron***los** sin piedad.	The conquerors surrounded the defenseless Indians, and killed them without pity.

*See Part 4, The Accusative and the Accusative Case.

Esperábamos que el señor Peña accedería á nuestra propuesta; **mas** *fué***nos** imposible persuadirle.

We expected that Mr. Peña would agree to our proposition; but it was impossible for us to persuade him.

Los historiadores protestantes, ó han negado estos hechos, **ó** *han***los** *desfigurado* considerablemente al narrarlos.

Protestant historians have either denied these facts, or have distorted them considerably when narrating them.

Los liberales debían abstenerse de expresar públicamente sus opiniones, **ú** *obligába***los** el gobierno á salir del país.

The Liberals had to abstain from publicly expressing their opinions, or else the government compelled them to leave the country.

3. When the verb is preceded by a word or phrase of an explanatory or parenthetical character, such as an absolute clause or a coordinating proposition.

*No habiendo hallado al administrador de la compañía, dejé***le** una esquela suplicándole que me concediese una entrevista.

Not having found the manager of the company, I left a note requesting him to grant me an interview.

*Dicho lo cual, retiró***se** sin esperar nuestra respuesta.

Having said which, he withdrew without waiting for our answer.

*Aunque Clemencín tenía una alta idea del "Don Quijote," criticó***lo** con imparcialidad, y aun con severidad.

Although Clemencin had a high opinion of "Don Quixote," he criticized it with impartiality, and even with severity.

El famoso orador, *á quien el auditorio aguardaba con impaciencia, presentó***se** al fin en la tribuna.

The famous orator, for whom the audience was impatiently waiting, appeared at last on the tribune.

25. Verbs Governing an Infinitive or a Gerund. When an infinitive or a gerund serves as accusative to another verb, or is the object of a preposition governed by the verb, a pronominal case referring to the infinitive or the gerund may be treated either as belonging with the verbal derivative to which it really refers, or with the governing verb. The arrangement of words in such combinations is similar to that in the progressive form referred to in Part 9 in connection with the use of the gerund. It should be observed, however, that in the majority of cases it is preferable to attach

the pronominal case to the verbal derivative to which it directly refers.

Deseamos hablar*le*. *Le* deseamos hablar.	We wish to speak to him.
Quisiera hacer*le* una pregunta. *Le* quisiera hacer una pregunta.	I would like to ask you a question.
Siento no poder agradar*le*, caballero. Siento no poder*le* agradar, caballero.	I am sorry I cannot please you, sir.
¿Ha comprado usted los billetes ya?—No, pero ahora mismo voy á comprar*los* (*or*, ahora mismo *los* voy á comprar).	Have you bought the tickets already?—No, but I am just now going to buy them.
No podremos mandarle el volante antes de un mes, por haber tenido que mandar hacer*lo* á propósito. No podremos mandarle el volante antes de un mes, por haber tenido que mandar*lo* hacer á propósito. No podremos mandarle el volante antes de un mes, por haber*lo* tenido que mandar hacer á propósito.	We shall not be able to send you the flywheel before a month, because we had to have it made to order.

26. The preceding alternative construction is not permissible:—

1. When the pronominal case has direct reference to the governing verb.

Los oí *hablando*.	I heard them speaking.
Ellos no **nos** vieron *entrar*.	They did not see us go in.

In the first of these two examples, *los* is the accusative of *oí* and the subject of *hablando*. In the second, *nos* is the accusative of *vieron* and the subject of *entrar*.

2. When the verbal derivative neither is the accusative of the verb, nor is governed by the latter through a preposition.

Es necesario *impedir***lo.**	It is necessary to prevent it.
No me fué posible *averiguar***lo.**	It was not possible for me to find it out.

In the last example the dative *me* directly refers to *fué*. (See Part 4, The Dative and the Dative Case.)

3. When the infinitive of a pronominal verb serves as accusative to another verb. (See Part 9, The Infinitive.)

Nos mandaron *sentar*.	They asked us to sit down.

27. Combination of a Pronominal Case of the First Person With One of the Second.—The rules laid down in Part 2 regarding the position of case combinations need some qualifications and further explanations, which will be given in this and the following articles. In the first place, a combination of two pronominal cases should, so far as its position relative to the verb is concerned, be treated as one case, and to it the same principles apply that have been laid down for simple cases. Under no circumstances should a combination of this kind be separated into its elements, placing some of the cases before and some after the verb.

When one pronominal case of the first person occurs in combination with one of the second, the latter should in all cases precede the former; that is, the combinations should take the forms *te me*, *te nos*, *os me*, *os nos*. Which of the two cases is accusative and which dative, is determined by the context or the circumstances, except in reflexive constructions, in which the accusative represents the same thing (persons included) as the subject.

¿Porqué no *te nos* presentaste?	Why didst thou not present thyself to us?

(Reflexive construction: *te*, accusative; *nos*, dative.)

Te me entregué, oh Señor, en cuerpo y alma.	I gave myself up to thee, O Lord, in body and soul.

(Reflexive construction: *te*, dative; *me*, accusative.)

Puesto que *te me* recomendaron, haré por ti cuanto pueda.	Since they recommended you to me, I will do for you all I can.

(Non-reflexive construction: *te*, accusative; *me*, dative.)

Te me han recomendado, y así aguardo que hagas por mí cuanto puedas.	They have recommended me to you, and so I hope you will do for me all you can.

(Non-reflexive construction: *me*, accusative; *te*, dative.)

No *te me* acerques tanto.	Do not come so near me (*literally*, Do not approach yourself so near to me).

(Reflexive construction: *te*, accusative, or simply the sign of pronominality; *me*, dative.)

No *te me* pude acercar (*or*, No pude acercár*teme*).	I could not go near you.

(Reflexive construction: *me*, accusative or sign of pronominality; *te*, dative.)

Os me enviaron para que os enseñase el arte de la guerra.	They sent you to me that I might teach you the art of war.

(Non-reflexive construction: *os*, accusative; *me*, dative.)

28. The preceding combinations, although perfectly proper, often sound harsh, and, what is worse, may in some cases give rise to ambiguity. It is, as a rule, preferable to replace the dative case by an equivalent prepositional phrase placed after the verb.

¿Porqué no *te* presentaste *á nosotros?*
Me entregué *á ti*, oh Señor, en cuerpo y alma.
Puesto que *te* recomendaron *á mí*, haré por ti cuanto pueda.
Me han recomendado *á ti*, y así aguardo que hagas por mí cuanto puedas.
No *te* acerques tanto *á mí*.
No *me* pude acercar *á ti* (*or*, No pude acercar*me á ti*).
Os enviaron *á mí*, para que os enseñase el arte de la guerra.

29. Combination of a Pronominal Case of the Third Person With One of Either the First or the Second. — As an introductory rule, the case *se* should always precede any other case with which it forms a combination. This rule has absolutely no exception and applies whatever the functions of *se* may be; that is, whether *se* is used as a true pronominal case, or as a part of a pronominal verb, or indefinitely in quasi-reflexive constructions.

El muchacho trajo un periódico y **se** *lo* dió al señor Ulloa.	The boy brought a newspaper, and gave it to Mr. Ulloa.
Se *me* ha dicho que la cosecha de tabaco será muy escasa este año.	I have been told that the tobacco crop will be very scarce this year.
El dueño de las minas vino á ofrecér**se***nos* muy bondadosamente.	The owner of the mines came to offer himself to us very kindly.
Se *les* ha ordenado que no admitan á nadie que no lleve un permiso firmado por el coronel.	They have been ordered not to admit any one who does not carry a permit signed by the colonel.

30. When an accusative case of the third person combines with a dative of the first or of the second, the dative should precede the accusative.

El mes pasado escribí una carta á Hernández y Tamayo, quienes no *me la* contestaron.	Last month I wrote a letter to Hernandez and Tamayo, who did not answer it (to me).
Tan pronto como reciba el informe de los agrimensores, *te lo* mandaré.	As soon as I receive the report of the surveyors, I will send it to you.
En cuanto á las sierras circulares, no pudimos conseguir que los fabricantes *nos las* vendieran por el precio que esperábamos.	As for the circular saws, we could not get the makers to sell them to us for the price we expected.
El saco era tan pequeño, que no pude ponér*melo*.	The coat was so small, that I could not put it on.
Espérame, mientras voy por mis guantes. — No *te los* pongas, que afuera hace mucho calor.	Wait for me while I go after my gloves. — Do not put them on, for it is very warm outside.

31. When a reflexive accusative case of the first or of the second person combines with a dative of the third, the accusative should precede the dative.

Me le ofrecí.	I offered myself to him.
Nos les presentámos.	We presented ourselves to them.
Os les entregasteis.	Ye surrendered (yourselves) to them.

In all these cases the dative may be replaced by an equivalent prepositional phrase following the verb.

Me ofrecí *á él* (or, *á ella*).—Nos presentámos *á ellos* (or, *á ellas*).—Os entregasteis *á ellos* (or, *á ellas*).

32. Except when the accusative of the first or of the second person is reflexive, as in the last article, a dative case of the third person is seldom combined with it, the dative relation being then preferably expressed by means of a prepositional phrase.

Me llevaron *á él*.	They took me to him.
El doctor Ospina *nos* envió *á ellas*.	Doctor Ospina sent us to them.
Mi hermano *te* presentará *á ella*.	My brother will present you to her.

CONCORD OR AGREEMENT

CONCORD OF THE ADJECTIVE

33. Adjective Referring to One Substantive. When an adjective modifies one substantive, either predicatively or otherwise, it should agree with it in number, and if the adjective has both a masculine and a feminine form, it should agree with the substantive in gender also. This rule is, in fact, nothing but a different statement of the very definitions of number and gender as applied to adjectives. (See Part 2.)

34. Adjective Modifying and Preceding Several Substantives.—When several substantives are modified by one adjective preceding them, the adjective should generally agree with the first substantive in both gender and number.

la *ignorancia y engreimiento* de los maestros de escuela	the ignorance and conceit of the school teachers

su gran *virtud y conocimientos*	his great virtue and knowledge
estos profundos *escritos y teoría*	these profound writings and theory

If the only modifier is the definite article, it is preferable to repeat it before each of the modified substantives.

la ignorancia y *el* engreimiento de los maestros de escuela.

35. When an adjective following either the definite article or a possessive is intended as a modifier of only the first of several substantives following it, the article or the possessive should be repeated before the other substantives, in order to avoid ambiguity.

su **gran** virtud y *sus* conocimientos	his great virtue and his knowledge

By repeating the possessive *su* in this phrase, it is made clear that the adjective *gran* is intended as a modifier of *virtud* only, not of *conocimientos*.

36. The adjectives **mismo,** *same;* **dicho,** *said;* **susodicho,** *aforesaid;* **referido,** *referred to above;* **mencionado,** *above-mentioned*, and others of like import, form an exception to the general rule stated in Art. **34.** When preceded by the definite article and modifying several substantives that follow, both the article and the adjectives should be placed in the plural, even if the first of the modified substantives is singular.

Notifíquese nuestra decisión á **los mencionados** *esposo y esposa.*	Let our decision be communicated to the above-mentioned husband and wife.
Los dichos *impresor y escritora* comparecerán ante el juez el día veinte del presente mes.	Said printer and authoress shall appear before the judge on the twentieth day of the present month.
Otórgase el privilegio á **los susodichos** *Pedro Carvajal y Cipriano Parra.*	The privilege is (hereby) granted to the aforesaid Peter Carvajal and Cipriano Parra.

With *dichos*, the article may be either employed or not, at pleasure.

Dichos *impresor y escritora* comparecerán ante el juez el día veinte del presente mes.

37. A special rule similar to that given in the last article applies to adjectives modifying and preceding proper nouns, or common nouns denoting human beings.

las desgraciadas *Carmen y María*	the unfortunate Carmen and Mary
"sus venerables *padre y abuelo"*	"his venerable father and grandfather"
"los magnánimos *Isabel y Fernando"*	"the magnanimous Isabel and Ferdinand"
"los oprimidos *Egipto y Palestina"*	"the oppressed Egypt and Palestine"
los jóvenes *rey y reina*	the young king and queen

This rule does not apply when the substantives following the modifying adjective denote the same person.

mi amado *padre y amigo*	my beloved father and friend
mis *amados padre y amigo*	my beloved father and my beloved friend

The singular form of the adjectives in the first of these two phrases indicates that the two substantives following are but different names applied to the same person; while the plural form in the second phrase shows that the two substantives are names applied to two different persons.

38. In Spanish, as in English, great care should be exercised so to employ the article as to avoid ambiguity.

Las lenguas de Europa y la India están íntimamente relacionadas entre sí.	The languages of Europe and India are intimately related to one another.

From the form of this sentence, it would be difficult to tell whether the writer wishes to state that the languages of Europe are intimately related to those of India, or that the languages of Europe, like those of India, are closely related

to one another; or, finally, that the language of Europe is closely related to that of India. The following sentence, although not so obscure as the one just considered, is yet ambiguous:

Las lenguas de Europa y *las de* la India están íntimamente relacionadas entre sí.	The languages of Europe and those of India are intimately related to one another.

It is not clear whether the idea to be conveyed by this sentence is that the languages of Europe are related to those of India, or that the languages of Europe as well as those of India are related to one another.

The following sentences, on the contrary, are free from all ambiguity:

Las lenguas de Europa están íntimamente relacionadas con las de la India.	The languages of Europe are intimately related to those of India.
Las lenguas de Europa, como las de la India, están íntimamente relacionadas entre sí.	The languages of Europe, like those of India, are intimately related to one another.

39. Two Adjectives Modifying and Following a Plural Substantive. — When two adjectives modify and follow a plural substantive, they should be placed in the singular number if the substantives denote two objects, and one of the adjectives refers to one of the objects, and the other adjective to the other object. Instead of this construction, the substantive may be made singular, and the substantivized article introduced before the second adjective.

los idiomas **español y francés** *el* idioma **español** y *el* **francés**	the Spanish and the French language
los siglos **segundo y tercero** *el* siglo **segundo** y *el* **tercero**	the second and the third century
los poderes **temporal y espiritual** *el* poder **temporal** y *el* **espiritual**	the temporal and the spiritual power

Should the adjectives in the first of each of these sets of phrases be made plural, the implication would be that each adjective referred to several of the objects named by the substantive.

los dialectos *españoles* y *franceses*	the Spanish and the French dialects (*that is*, the Spanish dialects and the French dialects)

40. Adjective Modifying and Following Several Substantives.—When several singular substantives are modified by an adjective following them, the adjective is placed in the plural number; as to gender, that of the adjective should be the same as that of the substantives, if the latter are all of the same gender; otherwise, either the masculine form of the adjective may be used, or the adjective may be made to agree in gender with the substantive immediately preceding it. If, however, the substantives denote human beings or other animals, or the adjective is used predicatively, the masculine plural form should be used, unless all the substantives are feminine.

Es hombre de *prestigio* é *influencia conocid***as** (or, *conocid***os**).	He is a man of known prestige and influence.
Tengo *un hijo y una hija solter***os** (not, *solter***as**).	I have an unmarried son and an unmarried daughter.
El domador estaba en la jaula con un *tigre y una hiena hambrient***os** (not, *hambrient***as**).	The tamer was in the cage with a hungry tiger and hyena.
Su *prestigio é influencia* son bien *conocid***os** (not, *conocid***as**).	His prestige and influence are well known.

41. When an adjective modifies and follows several plural substantives, or substantives of different numbers, it should be plural. As to gender, the masculine form of the adjective may always be used (except, of course, when all the substantives are feminine), although some writers prefer to make the adjective agree in gender with the last substantive, if the latter is plural. This distinction, however, only serves to multiply rules and exceptions, and, although it is of importance to acquaint the student with it, he is not

advised to adopt it, but follow in all cases the rule of using the masculine form of the adjective whenever the modified substantives are of different genders.

Es hombre de *juicio y virtudes* bien *conocid***os** (or, *conocid***as**).	He is a man of well-known judgment and virtues.
Tuvimos que hacer uso de *botes y canoas malísim***os** (or, *malísim***as**).	We had to make use of exceedingly bad boats and canoes.

42. Adjectives Relating to Substantives Denoting Titles.—A predicate adjective used with reference to a substantive denoting a title should be masculine or feminine according as the person bearing the title is a man or a woman, whatever the gender of the title itself may be. Adjectives forming part of, or immediately joined to, the title should agree in gender with the latter, irrespectively of the sex of the person referred to.

Su *Majestad* **el rey** está *ocupad***o**.	His Majesty the king is busy.
Su *Majestad* **la reina** está *ocupad***a**.	Her Majesty the queen is busy.
Su *Alteza* se siente *indispuest***o**.	His Highness feels indisposed.
Su *Alteza* se siente *indispuest***a**.	Her Highness feels indisposed.
"Su *Alteza Ilustrísim***a** ha sido *presentad***o** á su *Majestad Católic***a**, que estaba muy *deseos***o** de ver**le**."	"His Most Illustrious Highness has been presented to his Catholic Majesty, who was very desirous to see him."

43. Abnormal Use of Un, Medio, and Mismo.—The masculine form of these adjectives is sometimes used before the proper names of cities, although such names are properly feminine; and also before feminine names of countries. In this anomalous construction, the noun modified by one of these adjectives loses its ordinary gender and becomes masculine, requiring therefore the masculine form of other adjectives referring to it.

"¿Quién creería que en **un** *Segovia* no se encuentra una buena posada?"	"Who would believe that in a city like Segovia not one good inn can be found?"
Medio *París* estaba *llen***o** de barricadas.	Half Paris was filled with barricades.

El mismo *Cartago* fué *destruído* por los romanos.	Carthage itself was destroyed by the Romans.'

When, however, *mismo* is preceded by the definite article, the feminine form is preferable to the masculine.

La *misma* Cartago fué *destruída* por los romanos.

44. It was explained in Part 10, in connection with the use of *mismo*, that this word is adverbially employed as a modifier of demonstrative adverbs, such as **aquí**, *here;* **hoy**, *today*. In the same manner it can modify an adverbial phrase consisting of the preposition *en* and a noun denoting place or locality. In such a case, however, *mismo* may be used adjectively in combination with the definite article, the phrase thus formed being placed between *en* and its object, and *mismo* being either made to agree with the gender of that object or used in the masculine form, as in Art. **43.**

En España **mismo** se habla mal español. En **la** *misma* España se habla mal español. En **el** *mismo* España se habla mal español.	In Spain itself (*or*, Even in Spain), people speak poor Spanish.

CONCORD OF THE VERB

45. Introductory Remark.—In so far as grammatical number is concerned, the rules given for the verb in the articles that follow apply to adjectives and pronominal cases as well; that is, all substantives or combinations of substantives that require the plural form of the verb, require likewise the plural form of adjectives modifying them and of pronominal cases representing them in discourse.

46. Verb Following Several Subjects Connected by Y.—When a verb is preceded by two or more subjects of whatever number connected by the conjunction **y**, *and*, expressed or understood, it should be placed in the plural form, unless the last of the subjects is a singular or neuter

substantive recapitulating or collectively representing all the others, in which case the verb should be singular.

El desaseo de la gente **y** *la insalubridad natural del clima* **hacen** que las epidemias sean allí desastrosísimas.	The uncleanliness of the people and the natural unhealthfulness of the climate cause epidemics there to be most disastrous.
El desaseo de la gente, la humedad de la atmósfera, la falta de ventilación en las casas—*todo* **contribuye** á la insalubridad de aquella población.	The uncleanliness of the people, the dampness of the atmosphere, the lack of ventilation in the houses—everything contributes to the unhealthfulness of that town.

47. When a substantive is a synonym or a slight variant of another that immediately precedes it, the conjunction *y* neither is nor can be understood between the two, and the verb, which really refers to only one thing, should be singular.

El *progreso*, el *desarrollo* **es** imposible en condiciones tan impropicias.	Progress, development is impossible in conditions so unpropitious.

48. Collective Substantives.—It was stated in Part 2 that, in general, a collective substantive is for the purposes of syntax treated as a singular substantive. The following are exceptions to this rule:

1. If the collective substantive is indeterminate; that is, if it does not refer to any special kind of things, and if, besides, it does not occur in the same proposition as the verb, the latter may be, and usually is, put in the plural number.

El *pueblo* **escuchó** atentamente, y cuando el orador acabó de hablar, le **aplaudieron** *entusiasmado***s.**	The people listened attentively, and when the orator finished speaking, they applauded him with enthusiasm.

Here *escuchó* is placed in the singular, in accordance with the rule stated in Part 2, while *aplaudieron* and *entusiasmados* are placed in the plural in accordance with the above-mentioned exception.

In the following example, the plural form of the verb would be inadmissible, as the subject denotes a special kind of men, and is, therefore, not indeterminate.

La *división* del general Miranda había combatido ocho horas, y viéndose **escasa** de pertrecho, **tuvo** que retirarse.	General Miranda's division had fought for eight hours, and, being short of ammunition, had to retreat.

2. A collective substantive followed by a prepositional phrase consisting of *de* and a plural object requires the plural form of the verb.

Multitud **de personas** nos **han** escrito felicitándonos por el buen resultado de las negociaciones.	A great many persons have written congratulating us on the good result of the negotiations.
Un gran *número* **de agentes contestaron** el anuncio.	A great number of agents answered the advertisement.
La *mitad* **de los soldados quedaron** en el campo de batalla, *muert***os** ó *herid***os.**	Half of the soldiers remained on the battle field, either dead or wounded.

3. Collective numerals, even if not followed by a prepositional phrase with *de*, usually take the plural form of the verb. This rule applies also to the substantives **parte,** *part*, and **resto,** *rest*, *remainder*, when they are used to represent several things collectively.

Los plátanos que usted nos envió el mes pasado no pudimos venderlos por el precio que usted aguardaba. La *mitad* **llegaron** *podrid***os;** el *resto* **estaban** demasiado *madur***os,** y tuvimos que vender**los** inmediatamente, perdiendo como veinticinco por ciento.	We could not sell the bananas that you sent us last month for the price that you expected. Half of them arrived rotten; the rest were too ripe, and we had to sell them immediately, losing about twenty-five per cent.

49. Substantives Connected by Ni.—If a verb follows and refers to several substantives, each of which is preceded by *ni*, it may be either put in the plural number or made to agree in number with the last substantive. The

placing of the verb in the plural seems to be the more common practice.

Ni su abnegación, ni su heroísmo *ni* su modestia **pudieron** (or, **pudo**) protegerle contra la envidia de sus numerosos rivales.	Neither his disinterestedness, nor his heroism, nor his unobtrusiveness could protect him against the envy of his numerous rivals.
Creo que *ni* el señor Umaña *ni* su hijo **están** *satisfecho***s** (or, **está** *satisfecho*) con el avalúo de los peritos.	I think that neither Mr. Umaña nor his son is satisfied with the appraisement of the experts.

50. The same rule applies when the verb preceded by *no* is placed before the subject substantives.

No **pudieron** (*or*, **pudo**) protegerle contra la envidia de sus numerosos rivales *ni* su abnegación, *ni* su heroísmo, etc.

But, if the verb preceded by *no* is placed first, and *ni* is omitted before the first substantive, the verb should agree with that substantive.

No **pudo** su abnegación, *ni* su heroísmo *ni* su modestia protegerle contra la envidia de sus numerosos rivales.	His disinterestedness could not, nor could his heroism, nor his unobtrusiveness protect him against the envy of his numerous rivals.
No **está** *satisfecho* el señor Umaña *ni* su hijo.	Mr. Umaña is not satisfied, nor his son (either).

51. With subjects of different persons, the first should always take precedence of the other two, and the second of the third; that is, a plural verb referring to the first and other person or persons should be placed in the first person; and a plural verb referring to the second and the third person, should be placed in the second person. This is a general rule applying to all cases requiring the plural form of the verb. When, however, the verb refers to subjects of different persons connected by *ni*, it is preferable to change the construction so as to avoid the awkward expression resulting from having a verb in one person refer to a substantive of a different.

Carlos no estaba allí cuando la molestia tuvo lugar, ni yo tampoco.	Charles was not there when the quarrel took place, nor I either.

better than

Ni Carlos ni yo *estábamos* allí cuando la molestia tuvo lugar.	Neither Charles nor I was there when the quarrel took place.
Ni tú serás nombrado, ni él tampoco.	Neither you will be appointed, nor he either.

better than

Ni tú ni él *seréis nombrados*.	Neither you nor he will be appointed.

52. Substantives Connected by Ó.—When two or more substantives are connected by the conjunction *ó*, the verb may be either put in the plural number or made to agree with the nearest substantive. The placing of the verb in the plural is, however, generally preferred in all cases, especially if some of the substantives are plural or if the verb follows the substantives.

Pedro *ó* Juan **irá** (*or*, **irán**) á verlo mañana.	Either Peter or John will go to see you tomorrow.
"**Movió**le (or, **Movieron**le) la ambición *ó* la ira."	"Either ambition or anger prompted him."
Ó los ayudantes ó el comandante en jefe **deben** de haber dado la orden.	Either the aides or the commander in chief must have given the order.

53. Two Substantives Connected by Con.—When a verb follows and refers to two substantives connected by *con*, the verb is usually put in the plural, even if the substantives are both singular. This construction, however, is rather awkward, and in all such cases it is far preferable to replace the preposition by the conjunction *y*, to which it is really equivalent.

El hombre *con* la mujer **fueron** *sentenciados* á muerte.	The man, with the woman, was sentenced to death.

but, better,

El hombre *y* la mujer fueron sentenciados á muerte.	The man and woman were sentenced to death.

Another way of avoiding this clumsy form of expression is to place the verb immediately after the first substantive, and the prepositional phrase formed with *con* and the second substantive at the end of the sentence. The verb should then agree in number with the first substantive.

El hombre **fué** *sentenciado* á muerte *con* la mujer.	The man was sentenced to death with the woman.

There is, however, a slight difference in meaning between the construction with *con* and that with *y:* the conjunction does not necessarily imply that the two persons referred to were sentenced together, while the preposition plainly expresses this circumstance.

54. Substantives Connected by Así Como, Tanto Como.—If the first of two substantives serving as subjects to the same verb is placed between *así* or *tanto* and *como*, and the second substantive follows the latter words, the verb should be plural; both the expression *así . . . como* and *tanto . . . como* being then rendered by *both . . . and.*

Así el hombre *como* la mujer **fueron** *sentenciados* á muerte. *Tanto* el hombre *como* la mujer **fueron** *sentenciados* á muerte.	Both the man and the woman were sentenced to death.

55. If the expression *así como* or *tanto como* follows the first substantive, it is equivalent to *as well as*, and the verb should then agree in number with the first substantive.

El hombre, *así como* la mujer, **fué** *sentenciado* á muerte.	The man, as well as the woman, was sentenced to death.

56. Two Substantives Connected by Como.—The rule given in the preceding article applies when the combination *así como* is replaced by **como**, *as, like.*

Don Pedro, *como* Don Miguel, **es comerciante.**	Mr. Peter, like Mr. Michael, is a merchant.

57. The agreement of the verb with the first of two substantives connected by *como* or *así como* applies even in cases where the two substantives are of different persons.

Ellos, como *yo*, **son** *médicos*.	They, like me, are physicians.
Yo, como *ellos*, **soy francés**.	I, like them, am a Frenchman.
Aquellas señoritas, como *nosotros*, **están** muy *deseosas* de visitar la casa de moneda.	Yonder young ladies, like us, are very desirous to visit the mint.
Ellos, así como *nosotros*, **viven** en el hotel Santander.	They, as well as we, live in the hotel Santander.

58. Verb Preceding Several Substantives Connected by Y.—When a verb precedes several plural subjects connected by the conjunction *y*, either expressed or understood, it is placed in the plural number. If the subjects are singular or of different numbers, the verb may be either placed in the plural number or made to agree with the nearest substantive. The plural form of the verb is preferable, especially when the substantives denote human beings.

Me *sorprendieron* (or, *sorprendió*) su hermosura, su modestia y su aire distinguido.	Her beauty, her modesty, and her distinguished air surprised me.
Entraron el papa y uno de los cardenales.	The pope and one of the cardinals came in.
Descubrieron esta ley natural Darwin y Wallace.	Darwin and Wallace discovered this natural law.
Acababan Newton y Leibnitz de inventar el cálculo infinitesimal.	Newton and Leibnitz had just invented the infinitesimal calculus.

59. This rule does not apply when an adverbial modifier of the tacit verb before the last substantive precedes that substantive. In such case, the verb should agree with the first substantive.

Llegó entonces el capitán del buque, y *á poco* (*that is*, y á pocó *llegó*) el contador.	The captain of the ship arrived then, and shortly afterwards, the purser.

60. Several Substantives Expressing One Idea. When two or more substantives connected by the conjunction *y*, either expressed or understood, are so related in

thought that they really express one idea, or different elements combined into one single fact, the verb should be placed in the singular.

La *pasión y muerte* de Cristo **ha** sido **cantada** por varios poetas piadosos.	The passion and death of Christ has been sung by several pious poets.

Here the passion and death of Christ are referred to as one fact. Had the intention been to refer to his passion and his death separately, the verb should have been placed in the plural, and the article repeated before the second substantive.

La pasión y *la* muerte de Cristo **han** sido *cantad***as** por varios poetas piadosos.	The passion and the death of Christ have been sung by several pious poets.

Likewise,

El *entusiasmo y aplauso* **fué grande.**	The enthusiasm and applause was great.
El entusiasmo y *el* aplauso **fueron** *grande***s.**	The enthusiasm and the applause were great.

The difference between these two sentences is similar to that between the two sentences considered before, and is plainly indicated by the translations.

61. Más de Uno.—This expression requires the singular form of the verb following or preceding it.

Más de un explorador incauto **ha** perecido á manos de aquellos salvajes.	More than one incautious explorer have perished at the hands of those savages.

62. Qué De.—This exclamatory expression, when followed by a plural substantive, is equivalent to the exclamatory adjective **cuántos,-as,** *how many*, and requires the plural form of the verb.

"¡Libertad! *¡qué de crímenes* se **cometen** en tu nombre!"	"Liberty, how many crimes are committed in thy name!"
¡Qué de rábulas **han** tratado de probar que el testamento es legalmente nulo!	How many pettifoggers have tried to prove that the will is legally void!

63. Ser Followed by a Predicate Substantive. When the subject of a sentence and a predicate substantive are connected by the verb *ser*, and the two substantives are of different numbers, the verb may agree with either. In most cases, however, it is preferable to make the verb agree with the subject, especially if the latter is plural and is preceded by the definite article.

"*Los trabajos* **son** (*or*, **es**) *la herencia* del hombre."	"Hardships are the inheritance of man."
La vida del hombre **es** (*or*, **son**) *esperanzas y desengaños.*	Man's life is hopes and disappointments.
Lo que más lo afligió **fué** (*or*, **fueron**) *las calumnias* de los que antes habían sido sus amigos.	What most grieved him was the slanders of those who had previously been his friends.

64. The verb should agree with the subject when the latter is modified by the adjective **todo,** *all*, used predicatively.

La vida del hombre **es** *toda* esperanzas y desengaños.	Man's life is all hopes and disappointments.

65. Infinitives Connected by Y.—A verb referring to several preceding infinitives connected by the conjunction *y*, expressed or understood, should be singular if the actions or facts denoted by the infinitives are taken conjointly; that is, if the simultaneous existence of all those facts or conditions is indispensable for the existence or realization of what is expressed in the predicate.

"*Levantarse* temprano, *hacer* ejercicio y *comer* moderadamente **es** *provechosísimo* para la salud."	"To rise early, take exercise, and eat moderately is very beneficial to health."

Here the three infinitives are taken conjointly, the idea to be conveyed being that health will be preserved or improved by combining the three actions they denote. If it is desired to state that each of these actions or habits is by itself conducive to health, the article should be repeated before

each infinitive, and the verb, which then refers to each infinitive separately, should be plural.

"**El** *levantarse* temprano, **el** *hacer* ejercicio y **el** *comer* moderadamente **son** *provechosísimos* para la salud."	"To rise early, to take exercise, and to eat moderately are very beneficial to health."

66. **Neuters.**—Two or more neuters, other than infinitives, connected by the conjunction *y*, expressed or understood, generally require the verb to be in the singular.

Esto y *lo* que ya sabíamos **despertó** nuestras sospechas.	This and what we already knew aroused our suspicions.
Lo que usted ha hecho y *cuanto* haga por obtener ese empleo **será inútil.**	What you have done and all you may do to obtain that situation will be useless.

67. When the subjects of a verb include both neuter and non-neuter substantives connected by *y*, the verb may be indifferently placed in either the singular or the plural.

Esto, y *otras cosas* que supe luégo, me **indujeron** (*or*, me **indujo**) á presentar mi renuncia.	This, and other things that I learned afterwards, induced me to send in my resignation.
Lo que le envío hoy, y *el piano* que le mandé la semana pasada, **costó** (*or*, **costaron**) tres mil doscientos pesos.	What I am sending you today, and the piano I sent you last week, cost three thousand two hundred dollars.

68. For the purposes of syntax, a proposition introduced by the announcing *que*, the phrase *el que* or an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, is treated as a neuter substantive; and, therefore, when such propositions are connected with one another or with other substantives by the conjunction *y*, the rules stated in the two preceding articles should be applied.

Que él estuvo allí, y *que tomó parte en el ataque*, **ha** sido *demostrado*.	That he was there, and that he took part in the attack, has been proved.
El que él lo afirme y *el que usted lo crea* no **prueba** que ello sea cierto.	The fact that he affirms it and that you believe it does not prove that it is true.

Dónde murió San Pedro y *en qué año* **está** todavía por averiguar.	Where Saint Peter died and in what year still remains to be ascertained.

69. When two neuters are connected by *y* and the predicate denotes or implies agreement between the two, or, on the contrary, that they oppose or exclude each other, the verb should be plural.

Esto y *lo* que usted dice no **están** de acuerdo.	This and what you say do not agree.
Aquello y *esto* **parecen** confirmarse.	That and this seem to confirm each other.
Que el hombre deba sus virtudes á la gracia de Dios, y *que Dios lo premie por ellas*, se **excluyen.**	That man should owe his virtues to the grace of God, and that God should reward him for them, exclude each other.

70. When a plural predicate substantive refers to two or more neuters as subjects, the verb should be plural.

"*Sentir* y *moverse* **son** *cualidades* características del animal."	"To feel and to move are characteristic properties of the animal."
Esto y *todo* cuanto está por venir **serán** *lecciones* que nuestro pueblo no olvidará nunca.	This and all that is to come will be lessons that our people will never forget.
Quién lo mató y *dónde está su cuerpo* **son** *cosas* que la policía está investigando.	Who killed him and where his body is are things that the police are investigating.

71. Relative as Predicate.—The antecedent of a relative pronoun or phrase performing the office of a predicate substantive is not the subject of the sentence: its antecedent is an implied substantive of the third person, such as **hombre,** *man;* **personas,** *persons*, and the like. When a predicate relative is followed by a verb to which it serves as subject, the verb should logically agree with the implied antecedent, and be, therefore, in the third person. Some of the best writers, however, make the verb agree with the subject of the sentence, instead of the antecedent of the

relative; and so the two constructions may be considered as equally proper grammatically.

Yo fuí *quien* lo **dijo** (*or*, **dije**).	It was I who said it.
Tú eres *el que* **ha** (*or*, **has**) tratado de deshacer el contrato.	You are the one who have tried to undo the contract.
Nosotros fuimos *quienes* más **se opusieron** (*or*, **nos opusimos**) á que la hacienda se hipotecase.	We were the ones who most opposed the mortgaging of the ranch.

72. Care should be taken not to confound the construction just explained with others in which the subject of the sentence is really the antecedent of the relative. The verb should then agree with that antecedent.

Al fin llegas *tú*, *que* **puedes** darnos los datos que necesitamos.	You arrive at last, who can give us the data we need.
Lo afirmo *yo*, *que* **ví** los sucesos con mis propios ojos.	I, who saw the events with my own eyes, affirm it.

SYLLEPSIS

73. The term **syllepsis** is applied to a rhetorical figure by means of which a word of reference, such as a pronoun or an adjective, is applied to a whole class of which one or several individuals have been previously mentioned in the sentence; the form of the reference word being the same as would be employed if the whole class to which it refers had been mentioned, instead of one or several particular individuals. The employment of the accusative case of generalization, treated in Part 4, is but an application of this figure.

Sírvase enseñarme una *corbata de seda*.—Nosotros no **las** vendemos, señor.	Please show me a silk necktie.—We do not sell any, sir.

In the second of these two sentences, *las* refers to the whole class **corbatas de seda**, *silk neckties*, of which one alone has been mentioned in the first.

Shakespeare acababa de escribir una *tragedia*, para escribir **las cuales** tenía grande habilidad.	Shakespeare had just written a tragedy, a kind of work for which he had great skill [*literally*, Shakespeare had just written a tragedy, for writing which (*that is*, tragedies) he had great skill].

Here the phrase relative *las cuales* refers to the whole class **tragedias,** *tragedies*, of which a particular one has been previously mentioned in the sentence.

Si usted desea un *corresponsal*, vea "El Heraldo," donde **ellos** publican avisos ofreciendo sus servicios.	If you wish a correspondent, see The Herald, where they (*that is*, correspondents) publish advertisements offering their services.
El hombre ese parece *agente viajero*, y **los tales** siempre me inspiran desconfianza.	That man looks like a traveling agent, a class of men that (*literally*, and such men) always inspire me with distrust.
No le envíe *la cuenta* á ese petimetre, que **ellos** nunca **las** pagan.	Do not send the bill to that fop, for they (*that is*, fops) never pay them (*that is*, bills).

The student should pay particular attention to the examples just given, as syllepsis is of very frequent occurrence in Spanish writings, and often puzzles foreigners who are not familiar with this peculiarity of the language.

A SERIES OF QUESTIONS

Relating to the Subjects Treated of in This Volume.

It will be noticed that the questions contained in the following pages are divided into sections corresponding to the sections of the text of the preceding pages, so that each section has a headline that is the same as the headline of the section to which the questions refer. No attempt should be made to answer any of the questions until the corresponding part of the text has been carefully studied.

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 1)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

(1) What is the difference between Castilian and the language spoken in Spanish America?

(2) How many letters are there (*a*) in **chicharra,** *harvest fly;* (*b*) in **cuchillo,** *knife.*

(3) Arrange the following words in alphabetical order, as they would occur in a Spanish dictionary:

calle, *street*	pectoral, *pectoral*
pecho, *chest*	llover, *to rain*
lujo, *luxury*	calma, *calm*

(4) Point out the diphthongs and the non-diphthongal vowel combinations in the following words:

quienes, *who*	cualidad, *quality*
coexistencia, *coexistence*	reunión, *meeting*
navío, *ship*	yo confiaría, *I should trust*
peor, *worse*	caucasiano, *Caucasian*
baúl, *trunk*	yo continúo, *I continue*

(5) Divide the following words into orthographic syllables:

contrario, *contrary*	cacaotal, *chocolate-tree plantation*
billete, *ticket*	Paraguay, *Paraguay*
Chihuahua, *Chihuahua*	estío, *summer*
lingüista, *linguist*	continúo, *I continue*
corcho, *cork*	continuo, *continuous*
hallaríamos, *we should find*	extraordinariamente, *extraordinarily*
conflagración, *conflagration*	

(6) What vowels are emphasized in pronouncing the following words?

1. situar, *to situate*
2. reumatismo, *rheumatism*
3. examen, *examination*
4. averiguabais, *ye were inquiring*
5. lámparas, *lamps*
6. pausa, *pause*
7. piel, *skin*
8. vergüenza, *shame*
9. infielmente, *unfaithfully*

In answering this question, refer to the words by their numbers, and also state what rule you have applied; thus: "In 1 the accent is given to the —, according to Art. —."

(7) (*a*) What is the subject in each of the following sentences? (*b*) Point out the substantives, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions in each sentence. (*c*) Point out the modifiers, both phrases and words, and state which of them are restrictive words.

1. La vida es corta.
2. Yo vengo de la iglesia.
3. *Don Quijote* es la obra española más bien escrita.
4. Mi hermano es feliz, aunque tiene poco dinero.

1. Life is short.
2. I am coming from church.
3. *Don Quixote* is the best-written Spanish work.
4. My brother is happy, although he has little money.

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 2)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

VOCABULARY

NOTE.—The Spanish words necessary for answering the following examination questions are here given with their English translations. All verbs given are regular, unless the abbreviation *irr.* is printed after them. The student should not attempt to use forms of irregular verbs, except of those whose conjugation he knows. Adjectives having only one form for both genders are marked with a (*): the others have two forms, of which only the masculine is given. The abbreviations *m.* and *f.* stand for *masculine* and *feminine*, respectively.

agua, f., *water*
amigo, m., *friend*
año, m., *year*
aquí, *here*
asunto, m., *affair*
ayer, *yesterday*
azul,* *blue*
beber, *to drink*
bonito, *pretty*
bueno, *good*
cansado, *tired*
cara, f., *face*
carta, f., *letter*
casa, f., *house*
ciudad, f., *city*
comer, *to eat*
comprender, *to understand*
con, *with*
condición, f., *condition*
cortina, f., *curtain*
cuando, *when*
dañar, *to spoil*
democrático, *democratic*
desear, *to wish*
dónde, *where*
entrar, *to come*, or *go*, *in*
escribir, *to write*
escrito, *written*
escuadra, f., *squadron*
espejo, m., *mirror*
esperar, *to wait for*
estudiar, *to study*
feliz,* *happy*
firma, f., *firm*
francés, *French*
general, *general*
hierro, m., *iron*
hombre, m., *man*
hoy, *today*
inteligencia, f., *intelligence*
libro, m., *book*
llamar, *to call*
llenar, *to fill*
manchar, *to soil*

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

mandar, *to send*
manzana, f., *apple*
mañana, *tomorrow*
máquina, f., *machine*
mejor, *better, best*
mi,* *my*
morir, irr., *to die*
muy, *very*
nuestro, *our*
nuevo, *new*
partido, m., *party*
partir, *to depart*
pero, *but*
pesado, *heavy*
plata, f., *silver*
poco, *little*
poder, m., *power*
que, *that, which*
quebrar, *to break*
quién, *who*
quizá, *perhaps*
recibir, *to receive*
reloj, m., *watch*
republicano, *republican*
rico, *rich*
señor, m., *sir, gentleman*
señora, f., *madam, lady*
socio, m., *partner*
su,* *your*
telegrama, m., *telegram*
teoría, f., *theory*
trabajar, *to work*
vencer, *to vanquish*
vender, *to sell*
vida, f., *life*
vivir, *to live*
ya, *already*

(1) Translate the following sentences into English:

(*a*) Tenemos unos libros muy buenos. (*b*) ¿Dónde vive su amigo?—Vive en Nueva-York. (*c*) Aquí viven unas señoras francesas.

(2) Translate the following sentences into Spanish:

(*a*) Do you understand Spanish?—No, sir, I do not understand it. (*b*) Does your son work with a rich firm?—Yes, sir, he works with a very rich Spanish firm. (*c*) The mirrors that you sent were broken when I received them, and the curtains were soiled.

(3) Translate the following phrases into Spanish:

(*a*) the rich ladies of the city; (*b*) the best years of my life; (*c*) the Republican party; (*d*) the theories of the Democratic party; (*e*) very pretty faces, but very little intelligence; (*f*) the Spanish squadrons; (*g*) the blue waters.

(4) Translate the following sentences into English:

(*a*) Has vencido. (*b*) ¿Quién te ha hablado de ese asunto? (*c*) Mañana partiremos. (*d*) ¿Recibisteis nuestro telegrama? (*e*) ¿Con quién hablaban sus socios cuando yo entré?

(5) Translate the following sentences into Spanish:

(*a*) I spoke with him yesterday, and with her today. (*b*) When I called him, he was writing a letter.

(6) Translate this sentence into Spanish:

This gentleman and this lady are Spanish; I have spoken with them.

Explain the rules you have applied in making this translation, and why you use certain forms instead of others.

(7) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) I am tired of waiting. (*b*) This book is not good for studying. (*c*) Here is a machine filling all the conditions.

Explain the points of difference between the English and the Spanish form of construction.

(8) Translate the following sentences into Spanish:

(*a*) Eat (ye) and drink. (*b*) Let us eat and drink; tomorrow, we shall die. (*c*) Do (ye) not drink. (*d*) Do (thou) not drink.

(9) Translate into English:

(*a*) El partido republicano está en el poder. (*b*) Mi amigo está de general.

Refer to the articles stating the rules you have applied in these translations.

(10) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) I am very tired. (*b*) Iron is heavy. (*Use the article before* hierro.) (*c*) These apples are spoiled. (*d*) My watch is of silver. (*e*) We are not happy.

Explain the rules you have applied, and refer to the articles where they are stated.

(11) Translate the following sentences into Spanish, both with and without redundant forms:

(*a*) I spoke to him. (*b*) I spoke to her. (*c*) I shall speak to you. (*d*) He has not spoken to me. (*e*) Have you sent the letters to your partner?

Explain in what cases the redundant form is necessary, and why.

(12) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) My friend's houses. (*b*) Have you your partner's book? (*c*) This machine belongs to that man.

(13) Translate into English:

(*a*) Hoy no le he hablado á ella. (*b*) ¿De quién es esta casa?—De mi socio.—¿No desea él venderla?—Desea vendérsela á un señor español; quizá ya se la ha vendido.

(14) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) I wish to sell it (a house). (*b*) I do not wish to sell them (the mirrors). (*c*) I have sold them (the apples). (*d*) I shall sell them (the watches) to her.

[The words in marks of parenthesis indicate the objects to which the pronouns refer: they are not to be translated.]

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 3)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

VOCABULARY

ambicioso,-a, *ambitious*
amenazar, *to threaten*
anillo, *ring*
apagar, *to extinguish*
aquí, *here*
arma, *weapon*
atacar, *to attack*
aún, *still*
aunque, *although*
bueno,-a, *good*
caimán, *alligator*
cansado,-a, *tired*
capaz de, *able to*
caridad, *charity*
casado,-a, *married*
cierto,-a, *true*
con, *with*
contento,-a, *satisfied*
cosecha, *harvest*
costoso,-a, *expensive*
criado, *servant*
cubano,-a, *Cuban*
cuando, *when*
deber, *must*
desear, *to wish*
diamante, *diamond*
dicho, *said, told*
disponer, irr., *to dispose*
distancia, *distance*
doctrina, *doctrine*
dónde, *where*
dos, *two*
enérgico,-a, *energetic*
entre, *between*
escrúpulo, *scruple*
ese,-a, *that*
Estados Unidos, *United States*
exportar, *to export*
extranjero,-a, *foreign*
extrañamente, *strangely*
falso,-a, *false*
francés, *French, Frenchman*
general, *general*
gran, *great, large*
hacer, irr., *to do*
hallar, *to find*
hay, *there is, there are*
hermano, *brother*
hermoso,-a, *handsome*
intérprete, *interpreter*
italiano,-a, *Italian*
joven, *young*
Jorge, *George*
ley, *law*
lleno,-a, *full*
llegar, *to arrive*
machete, *machete*
mármol, *marble*
mezclar, *to mix*
mío,-a, *mine*
muchacho, *boy*
muchos,-as, *many*

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

negro, *negro*
obedecer, irr., *to obey*
obligar, *to oblige*
padre, *father*
país, *country*
palacio, *palace*
pariente, *relative*
placer, *pleasure*
populacho, *populace*
por, *by*, *for*
prestar, *to lend*
primer, primero, *first*
principiar, *to begin*
prisa (de), *hurry* (*in*)
producto, *product*
puede, (*he*) *can*
quién, *who*
raro,-a, *rare*
ridículo,-a, *ridiculous*
río, *river*
robar, *to steal*
rubí, *ruby*
salir, irr., *to leave*
salvaje, *savage*
soldado, *soldier*
solo,-a, *alone*
sombrero, *hat*
su, *your*, *his*
sublime, *sublime*
teatro, *theater*
vapor, *steamer*
verdadero,-a, *true*
virtud, *virtue*

(1) Translate the following sentences into English, and point out the proper and the common nouns, and the surnames in each:

(*a*) Jorge Wáshington fué el primer presidente de los Estados Unidos. (*b*) El canal de Panamá fué principiado por el señor Lesseps. (*c*) En el Magdalena, río de los Estados Unidos de Colombia, hay muchos caimanes.

(2) Translate into Spanish, and explain the difference between the English and the Spanish form of construction:

The populace were threatening the palace when the soldiers attacked them.

(3) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) Who is that little boy? (*b*) Where is your little sister?

(4) Translate into English:

¿De quién es ese sombrerón?

(5) Translate the following sentences into Spanish; state what rules you have applied for the formation of the plural, and refer to the articles containing them; also, give the gender of each substantive, and state your reasons for giving it that gender:

(*a*) That ring has two diamonds and two rubies. (*b*) Put

out the lights. (*c*) We must obey the laws. (*d*) The Italian marbles are very beautiful. (*e*) There are many generals in the South American countries.

(6) Translate into English:

(*a*) La criada no ha llegado aún. (*b*) El teatro estaba lleno de españolas y francesas. (*c*) ¿Tiene usted muchas parientas? (*d*) ¿Quién es la intérprete de ese hotel?

(7) Translate the following sentences into Spanish, (1) assuming the speaker to be a man; (2) assuming the speaker to be a woman:

(*a*) I am very tired. (*b*) I am not married. (*c*) I arrived alone.

(8) Translate the following sentences into Spanish, and state how you can ascertain the gender of the nouns you use:

(*a*) The harvest was (*estuvo*) good. (*b*) Charity is a very rare virtue. [*Use article before* caridad.] (*c*) The machete is the weapon of the Cuban negroes.

(9) Translate into English:

(*a*) Cuanto hay aquí es mío, y usted puede disponer de ello. (*b*) Todo lo que le he dicho es cierto. (*c*) Aunque él tiene mucho, no está contento con ello. (*d*) Lo verdadero y lo falso están extrañamente mezclados en esa doctrina. (*e*) Aquí todo lo extranjero es costoso.

(10) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) I lent him all I had (*tenía*). (*b*) There is not much distance between the sublime and the ridiculous. (*c*) What Cuba wishes is to be able to export her products.

(11) Translate into English:

(*a*) Mi padre es español, pero yo no lo soy. (*b*) Esa señora parece joven, aunque no lo es. (*c*) Robar es la profesión de esos salvajes, que lo hacen sin escrúpulo, hallando gran placer en ello.

(12) Translate into English:

(*a*) Lo de prisa que estábamos nos obligó á salir por el vapor francés. (*b*) Los americanos son notables por lo enérgicos y lo ambiciosos.

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 4)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

VOCABULARY

abogado, *lawyer*
acabar, *to finish*
acostumbrar, *to accustom*
además, *besides*
afeitar, *to shave*
almirante, *admiral*
amar, *to love*
aprender, *to learn*
armada, *navy*
ateniense,* *Athenian*
ayer, *yesterday*
bueno, *good*
buque, *ship*
buque de vela, *sailing vessel*
cabeza, *head*
caja, *box*
capitán, *captain*
carta, *letter*
ciudad, *town*
clima, *climate*
comprar, *to buy*
contestar, *to answer*
coronel, *colonel*
cuando, *when*
cuándo? *when?*
cuarto, *room*
chocar, *to dislike*
dar, irr., *to give*
yo dí, *I gave*
dado, *given*
deber, *must*
decir, irr., *to say, to tell*
diga (imperative of *decir*)
dejar, *to leave*
desear, *to desire*
difícil,* *difficult*
digno, *worthy*
dinero, *money*
documento, *document*
doler, irr., *to ache*
duele (third person singular, indicative present, of *doler*)
dónde? *where?*
empresa, *undertaking*
enemigo, *enemy*
entre, *between, among*
enviar, *to send*
escribir, *to write*
escritura, *deed*
extranjero, *foreign*
faltar, *to lack*
firma, *firm*
firmar, *to sign*
flor, *flower*
géneros, *goods*
gente, *people*
gustar, *to like*
hecho, *made*
hermano, *brother*
idioma, *language*
joven, *young man*
leer, irr., *to read*

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

libertad, *liberty*
libro, *book*
llamar, *to call*
llegar, *to arrive*
llevar, *to take, to carry*
maestro, *teacher*
mañana, *tomorrow*
matar, *to kill*
mencionar, *to mention*
mil, *one thousand*
mucho, *much, a great deal, very much*
muy, *very*
necesario, *necessary*
necesitar, *to need*
ni, *nor, neither*
noticia, *news*
nuestro, *our*
oficial, *officer*
otro, *other, another*
padre, *father*
país, *country*
pedir, irr., *to ask*
pedido (participle of *pedir*)
penoso, *painful*
perseverancia, *perseverance*
poder, irr., *can*
puede, pueden (third persons, indicative present, of *poder*)
poner, *to put*
ponga (subjunctive of *poner*, third person singular)
puesto (participle of *poner*)
prefecto, *prefect*
preguntar, *to ask*
recibo, *receipt*
refuerzo, *reenforcement*
respuesta, *answer*
saco, *coat*
salir, irr., *to go out*
secretario, *secretary*
separar, *to separate*
sobrar, *to have in excess*, or *plenty*
socio, *partner*
sombrero, *hat*
su, *your, his, her, their*
terno, *suit of clothes*
tienda, *store*
trabajo, *work*
varios,-as, *several*
vender, *to sell*
vino, *wine*

(1) Translate into English:

Vos, señor presidente, os habéis hecho digno de nuestra admiración y de nuestro respeto.

(2) Translate the following sentences into Spanish; point out the peculiarities of the forms of expression you use, and refer to the articles containing the rules you apply:

(*a*) I sold your partner one thousand cases of French wine, which I shall send to him tomorrow. (*b*) We buy all our goods from Martinez Brothers, who send them to us in sailing vessels.

(3) Translate into English:

(*a*) Ayer le escribí á mi maestro de español. (*b*) ¿Le ha contestado él á usted?

Which other forms could you give to these two sentences?

(4) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) I wish to read to you the letter she wrote me. (*b*) It is not possible for me to go out now, for I have to finish this work for my father. Besides, my head aches (*duele*) very much. (See Arts. **6** and **17.**) (*c*) Did you ask the servant who left that case? (*d*) Put it in the other room for me.

Give whatever explanations you wish regarding the translations of these sentences.

(5) Translate into English:

(*a*) ¿Me llamaba usted á mí, ó á mi hermano? (*b*) ¿Á quién envió usted el recibo, á mí, ó á él?

What other forms can be given to these sentences?

(6) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) When Miss Rose and her father came in, I gave her the flowers and him the books you left for them. [*Dejar* takes the dative case.] (*b*) Take this deed to the lawyer for me, and tell him to sign it [that he *should sign* (subjunctive) it].

(7) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) We like the people of your country, but dislike the climate. (*b*) You have plenty of money [use *sobrar*], but lack the perseverance that is necessary for the undertaking.

(8) Translate into English:

(*a*) Á nadie le es posible aprender por sí mismo á hablar un idioma extranjero. (*b*) Á mí me fué muy penoso separarme de la firma de su padre.

Make whatever remarks you think pertinent with regard to these sentences, and refer to the articles where the rules governing their construction are given.

(9) Translate into Spanish:

Who sells good hats in this town?—I sell very good ones at my store. (See Art. **22.**)

(10) Translate into English:

(*a*) Póngase el saco. (*b*) ¿Cuándo se afeitó usted? (*c*) ¿Dónde se compró usted ese terno?

(11) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) Did Socrates kill himself, or did the Athenians kill him? (See Arts. **27** and **35.**) (*b*) Do they not speak to each other? (*c*) Can men love one another, and at the same time (*al mismo tiempo*) love themselves? (*d*) I myself have asked for the document many times, but neither the prefect himself nor his secretary has [*han*, in Spanish] given me any (*ninguna*) answer. (See Arts. **7, 33,** and **34.**)

(12) Translate into English:

El joven que llevó la noticia era uno de los oficiales de la armada, á quien el almirante, que necesitaba refuerzos, había enviado á pedirlos á la Habana. Llegaron con él varios otros oficiales, entre los cuales debemos mencionar al coronel Sánchez y al capitán Andrade, á quienes el enemigo había puesto en libertad [*set free*].

(13) Translate into Spanish:

It is difficult for one to accustom oneself to speaking a foreign language. (See Art. **19.**)

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 5)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

VOCABULARY

acabar de (followed by infinitive), *to have just* (followed by participle)
aceite, *oil*
acero, *steel*
ahora, *now*
alcanzar, *to attain*
alemán, *German*
alto, *high*
altura, *height*
allí, *there*
antiguo, *ancient*
árbol, *tree*
atrasado, *backward*, *undeveloped*
aún, *still*, *yet*
azúcar, *sugar*
bahía, *bay*
bello, *beautiful*
bien, *well*
bueno, *good*
caballero, *gentleman*
caja, *box*
calcular, *to calculate*
calidad, *quality*
camisa, *shirt*
capitán, *captain*
carbón, *coal*
carne, *beef*, *meat*
carta, *letter*
centavo, *cent*
ciento, *hundred*, *centum*
cinco, *five*
cinchona, *cinchona*
ciudad, *city*
civilización, *civilization*
civilizar, *to civilize*
comercial, *commercial*
comercio, *commerce*
comprar, *to buy*
con, *with*
conservador, *conservative*
correspondencia, *correspondence*
costoso, *expensive*
crecer, irr., *to grow*
creer, irr., *to believe*, *to think*
curso, *course*
chino, *Chinese*
decidir, *to decide*
dejar, *to quit*, *to leave*
dentro de, *within*
desarrollo, *development*
desconocido, *unknown*
decir, irr., *to say*, *to tell*
dijo (preterit of *decir*, third person singular)
descuento, *discount*
dibujar, *to draw*
diez, *ten*
docena, *dozen*
dos, *two*
egoísta, *selfish*
elemento, *element*

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

enfermo, *sick*
entre, *between, among*
escopeta, *shotgun*
escribir, *to write*
espacio, *space*
establecer, irr., *to establish*
estudiante, *student*
examinar, *to examine*
experiencia, *experience*
extraer, irr., *to extract*
fabricar, *to manufacture*
figurar, *to figure*
fuerza, *force*
géneros, *goods*
geometría, *geometry*
grado, *degree*
habitar, *to inhabit*
hecho, *fact*
hierro, *iron*
hondo, *deep*
hondura, *depth*
idea, *idea*
implicar, *to impty*
imposible, *impossible*
invierno, *winter*
joven, *young*
lámpara, *tamp*
lana, *woot*
lección, *tesson*
libertad, *tiberty*
libra, *pound*
libro, *book*
límite, *limit*
lino, *tinen*
malo, *bad*
mandar, *to send*
máquina, *machine, cngine*
más, *more, most*
mecánica, *mechanics*
mecha, *wick*
mejor, *better, best*
mes, *month*
metal, *metal*
metro, *meter*
mil, *thousand*
milla, *mite*
moderno, *modern*
monte, *mount*
motivo, *motive*
movimiento, *motion*
mucho, *much*
nación, *nation*
necesitar, *to need*
negocio, *business*
noble, *noble*
novela, *novet*
ochenta, *eighty*
opinión, *opinion*
oriente, *orient*
pañuelo, *handkerchief*
papel, *paper*
parecer, irr., *to seem*
pasado, *past, last*
patria, (*one's*) *country*
perjudicial, *harmful, injurious*
peruano, *Peruvian*
peso, *doltar*
pie, *foot*
pobre, *poor*
poco, *tittte*
poderoso, *powerful*
poema, *poem*
preferible, *preferabte*
progresar, *to progress*
progreso, *progress*
propio, *proper*
proposición, *proposition*
que, *than*
quince, *fifteen*
quinina, *quinine*
recibir, *to receive*
representar, *to represent*
requerir, irr., *to require*
requiere, *requires*
restringir, *to restrict*
rico, *rich*
ropa, *ctothes*
sacrificar, *to sacrifice*

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

seda, *silk*
selva, *woods, forest*
sello, *stamp*
sin, *without*
sistema, *system*
solamente, *only*
solicitar, *to solicit, to seek*
tabaco, *tobacco*
tan, *as, so*
tinta, *ink*
tomar, *to take, to carry*
tonto, *foolish*
tratar, *to treat*
treinta, *thirty*
trigo, *wheat*
útil, *useful*
varios, *several*
veinte, *twenty*
vencer, *to vanquish, to conquer*
vender, *to sell*
venir, irr., *to come*
vino, (*he*) *came*
verano, *summer*
viejo, *old*
vino, *wine*
volante, *flywheel*

(1) Translate into English:

(*a*) Las ricas de Nueva-York son muy solicitadas de [*by*] los nobles pobres de Europa. (*b*) Los géneros de seda son mucho más costosos que los de lana; éstos son preferibles para ropa de invierno; aquéllos, para ropa de verano.

(2) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) We have sent you ten dozen silk handkerchiefs and twenty dozen linen shirts. (*b*) The goods we have just received from you are not of so good a quality as those you sent us last month. (*c*) French wine is much better than American wine. [Do not repeat the noun *vino*.]

(3) Translate into English:

(*a*) Los egoístas creen que el que se sacrifica por su patria es un tonto. (*b*) El español es muy útil para todos aquéllos que tienen negocios en Sud-América. (*c*) Usted fué el que decidió vender las escopetas alemanas con un descuento de veinte por ciento, y las inglesas con uno de quince por ciento.

(4). Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) Those who have examined our system are of the opinion that it is the best one. (*b*) Of the two propositions, Mr. Spencer's seems to me much better than that of the gentleman who came with him.

(5) Translate into English:

(*a*) La libertad, restringida dentro de propios límites, es uno de los elementos más poderosos del progreso. (*b*) Las naciones en que el comercio ha progresado poco están aún muy atrasadas; aquéllas en que el comercio ha alcanzado un alto grado de desarrollo figuran entre las más civilizadas.

(6) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) Quinine is extracted from the cinchona, a tree growing in the forests of South America. (*b*) Iron, a metal without which civilization seems impossible, was [*era*] unknown to the ancient Peruvians. [Use the dative case before *era*.]

(7) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) There, the bay is only two meters deep. (*b*) Aconcagua, a South-American mount, is about [*unas*] five miles high.

(8) Translate into English:

(*a*) ¿Venden ustedes tinta de dibujar? (*b*) Nosotros fabricamos máquinas de calcular. (*c*) Necesito comprar una caja de papel de escribir. (*d*) ¿Tienen ustedes aceite y mechas para lámparas?

(9) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) This engine requires a thirty-foot flywheel. (*b*) Steel sells [*se vende*] now at ten cents a pound. (*c*) General Castro sold me two thousand old twenty-cent stamps at ten dollars a hundred.

(10) Translate into English:

(*a*) El doctor González me dijo que el capitán Pardo estaba enfermísimo. (*b*) Longfellow escribió varios poemas bellísimos. (*c*) La China, nación conservadorísima, fué vencida por el Japón. Éste representa en el Oriente las ideas modernas; aquélla, las ideas de los antiguos.

(11) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) The lessons of experience are more useful than those of books. (*b*) The United States produces [*producen*]

wheat, beef, sugar, coal, tobacco, etc. (*c*) Geometry treats of space; mechanics, of force and motion.

(12) Translate into English:

Creo que el ochenta por ciento de nuestros estudiantes han tomado el curso de español por motivos comerciales.

(13) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) More than one-half of the city is inhabited by Chinese. (*b*) We have sent only one-third of the correspondence.

(14) Translate into English:

El que el señor Velez haya dejado ese negocio no implica que el negocio sea malo.

(15) Translate into Spanish:

That novels are harmful to the young is a well-established fact. [Place adjectival phrase after substantive. See also Art. **41.**]

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 6)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

VOCABULARY

aceptar, *to accept*
admitir, *to admit*
anoche, *last night*
antes, antes que, *before*
antier, *the day before yesterday*
arreglar, *to settle*
asunto, *subject*, *affair*
atribuír, irr., *to attribute*
aumentar, *to increase*
aún, *still*
ayer, *yesterday*
barato, *cheap*
bondadoso, *kind*
Bruto, *Brutus*
caballero, *gentleman*
cada, *every*, *each*
caldera, *boiler*
calidad, *quality*
campo, *country* (*rural district*)
capítulo, *chapter*
carta, *letter*
casa, *house*
César, *Cæsar*
clima, *climate*
ciudad, *city*
coche, *carriage*
colegio, *college*
comer, *to dine*, *to eat*
como, *so*, *as*
compañía, *company*
con, *with*
convencer, *to convince*
costumbre, *custom*
creer, irr., *to think*, *to believe*
criado, *servant*
criminal, *criminal*
crítico, *critic*
dar, irr., *to give*
dí, (*I*) *gave*
de, *of*, *from*
decir, *to say*, *to tell*
dice, (*he*) *says*
diga (imperative of *decir*, second person singular)
dijo, (*he*) *said*
demasiado, *too*
demostrar, *to demonstrate*
desear, *to desire*, *to want*
después, después que, *after*
dirección, *address*
discutir, *to discuss*
doctor, *doctor*
dormir, irr., *to sleep*
duda, *doubt*
dudar, *to doubt*
llegar, *to arrive*
llevar, *to take*, *to carry*
mal, *evil*
maleta, *satchel*
malo, *bad*

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

mandar, *to send*
mártir, *martyr*
más, *more*
matar, *to kill*
mejor, *better, best*
menos, *less*
mes, *month*
miembro, *member*
mientras, *while, so long as*
Moisés, *Moses*
moral, *moral*
muchos, *many*
muestra, *sample*
naturalmente, *of course*
noche, *night, evening*
obra, *work*
orden, *order*
país, *country, nation*
para, *for*
paraguas, *umbrella*
parecer, irr., *to seem*
partir, *to depart, to leave*
pedir, irr., *to ask for*
pidió, (*he*) *asked for*
peligro, *danger*
pequeño, *small, little*
pero, *but, however*
poder, irr., *to be able*
puede, (*he*) *is able, can*
pude (indicative preterit of *poder*, first person singular)
podíamos (copreterit of *poder*, first person plural)
porque, *because, for*
presidente, *president*
probable, *likely*
probar, irr., *to prove*
prueba (subjunctive present of *probar*, first and third person singular)
prohibir, *to forbid*
prometer, *to promise*
puente, *bridge*
pues, *for, as*
que, *than*
realmente, *really*
recibir, *to receive*
recordar, irr., *to recollect*
reelegir, *to re-elect*
ropa, *clothes*
é, *and*
económico, *economic*
edificio, *building*
ejército, *army*
enciclopedia, *encyclopedia*
enero, *January*
ensayo, *essay*
entender, irr., *to understand*
esclavitud, *slavery*
escribir, irr., *to write*
escrito, *written*
estallar, *to explode*
evangelio, *gospel*
evidente, *evident*
expulsar, *to expel*
fabricar, *to manufacture*
fin, *end*
función, *performance*
gracias, *thanks*
grande, *great, large*
gusto, *taste*
hacer, irr., *to make*
haga (present subjunctive of *hacer*, first and third person singular)
hay, *there is, there are*
hoy, *today*
impedir, irr., *to prevent*
impidió, (*he*) *prevented*
inmediatamente, *immediately*
ir, irr., *to go*
va, (*he*) *goes*, (*he*) *is going*
inspeccionar, *to inspect*
invitar, *to invite*
leer, irr., *to read*
leí, (*I*) *did read*
Luis, *Louis*
sano, *healthy, sound*

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

sastre, *tailor*
según, *according to*
seguro, *sure*
sentir, irr., *to regret*
siento, (*I*) *regret*
separar, *to separate*
siempre, *always*
siglo, *century*
sin, *without*
sobre, *on*, *about*
sorprender, *to surprise*
suegra, *mother-in-law*
suplicar, *to request*
tan, *so*, *as*
teatro, *theater*
temprano, *early*
terminar, *to finish*
tiempo, *weather*
titulado, *entitled*
tomo, *volume*
tren, *train*
vapor, *steamer*
velar, *to watch*
velocidad, *speed*
venir, irr., *to come*
venga (present subjunctive of *venir*, first and third person singular)
viniese (preterit subjunctive of *venir*, first and third person singular)
ver, irr., *to see*
versículo, *verse*
viejo, *old*
violar, *to violate*
vivir, *to live*

(1) Translate into English:

(*a*) Hoy hemos recibido muestras de los artículos que ustedes fabrican, los cuales no nos parecen de tan buena calidad como los de Pedro Amador é Hijo. Los de ustedes son sin duda más baratos, pero los de ellos son más durables. (*b*) Señorita Dolores, si usted va á salir con su hermana, puede llevar mi paraguas, que es más grande que el suyo. —Muchas gracias, señor Torres; me alegro que usted sea tan bondadoso, porque el mío es realmente demasiado pequeño para dos personas.

(2) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) Of course, I like the customs of my country better than those of yours. [For the verb *to like*, see Part 4, The Dative and the Dative Case.] (*b*) Gentlemen, are these your satchels or theirs? (*c*) A gentleman asked me for your address and your brother's. I gave him yours, but could not remember his.

(3) Translate into English:

(*a*) Deseamos que usted y su señora coman con nosotros esta noche. —Muchas gracias, señor López. Siento que no nos sea posible aceptar su invitación, pues doña Carmen, mi

suegra, nos escribió antier que fuésemos á comer con ella hoy. (*b*) Según este crítico, aún no está demostrado que Bacón haya escrito ninguna de las obras atribuídas á Shakespeare. (*c*) El mal tiempo impidió que el vapor llegase antes.

(4) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) I read a good essay on this subject in the third volume of Johnson's Encyclopedia. (*b*) This is the seventeenth verse of the third chapter of St. John's Gospel. (*c*) Voltaire wrote a very good book entitled "The Century of Louis the Fourteenth." (*d*) We received yesterday your kind letter of January 31. (*e*) I want you to send me a good carriage; the one you sent me yesterday was [*era*] very poor [*bad*].

(5) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) You cannot be healthy so long as (*mientras*) you live in this climate. (*b*) The doctor forbade me to go to the theater. (*c*) We requested him last night to come to dine with us this evening. He said he regretted that we had not invited him earlier (*more early*), as he had promised to dine with Dr. Verea.

(6) Translate into English:

(*a*) Mientras ustedes más discutan sobre ese asunto, tanto menos se entenderán, pues en cuestiones de política no hay argumento que convenza á nadie. (*b*) Dígale al criado que lleve las cartas inmediatamente, no sea que el tren parta antes de que él llegue. (*c*) Venga á verme después que coma, para que hablemos de ese asunto.

(7) Translate into Spanish, and explain why you use the indicative mode in some cases and the subjunctive in others:

(*a*) It is evident that slavery was a moral and economic evil. (*b*) It is likely that President Roosevelt will be re-elected. (*c*) We watched while they slept. [Use the copreterit.] (*d*) We always inspect every building after it is finished. (*e*) We shall inspect the bridge after you have finished it.

(8) Translate into English:

(*a*) Dudamos que la función haya estado tan buena como el señor Rojas dice. (*b*) ¿Cree usted que Moisés haya escrito [*or*, escribiese] los cinco primeros libros del Viejo Testamento? (*c*) No estoy seguro de que ese sastre le haga su ropa al gusto de usted.

(9) Translate into Spanish, and refer to the articles containing the rules you apply:

(*a*) Your having withdrawn [*separated yourself*] from the company surprised us very much. [*Very much* is rendered by *muchísimo*. *Muy* is not used before *mucho*.] (*b*) We could not increase our speed without danger that [*peligro de que*] the boiler might explode [*without danger of the boiler exploding*]. (*c*) That Brutus killed Cæsar does not prove that the former was a criminal and the latter a martyr.

(10) Translate into English, and state what verbal forms could be substituted for those printed in bold letters:

(*a*) Si **llegáremos** hoy á la ciudad, podemos arreglar este asunto con el señor Toro, antes de que él parta para su casa de campo. (*b*) Cuando el presidente **llegare**, el ejército le recibirá. (*c*) Los que **violaren** esta orden serán expulsados del colegio. (*d*) Aquéllos que no **hubieren** pagado antes del fin del mes no serán admitidos como miembros del club.

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 7)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

VOCABULARY

NOTE.—Hereafter, only the infinitives of irregular verbs will be given in the Vocabulary. The student should refer to the Table of Irregular Verbs for all irregular forms.

abrir, abrirse, *to open*
abstenerse, irr., *to abstain*
absurdo, *absurd*
aceite, *oil*
acostarse, irr., *to go to bed*
alcanzar, *to reach*
alimentar, alimentarse, *to feed*
antes de, *before*
antier, *the day before yesterday*
apagar, *to extinguish*
apagarse, *to become extinguished, to go out*
aproximado, *approximate*
arreglo, *agreement*
asunto, *affair, subject*
atracción, *attraction*
atreverse, *to dare*
avergonzado, *ashamed*
ayer, *yesterday*
azúcar, *sugar*
banco, *bank*
bienestar, *welfare*
boleto, *ticket*
caimán, *alligator*
carta, *letter*
celeste, *celestial*
cerca de, *near*
cerrar, cerrarse, irr., *to close*
cierto, *true, certain*
compañía, *company*
conocer, irr., *to be acquainted with*
consigo, *with him, with you*
creer, irr., *to believe, to think*
cuando, *when*
cuenta (tener en), *account (to take into)*
cuerpo, *body*
dar, irr., *to give*
demorar, *to delay*
derecho, *right*
desgracia, *misfortune*
despacho, *office*
determinar, *to decide*
diferir, irr., *to postpone*
dinero, *money*
duda, *doubt*
empeorar, *to make worse*
empeorarse, *to become worse*
emfermo, *patient (sick person)*
entonces, *then*
entre, *between, among*
entregarse, *to surrender*
enviar, irr., *to send*
esperar, *to hope, to expect*

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

esposa, *wife*
estudiar, *to study*
explícito, *explicit*
extender, irr., *to extend*
factura, *invoice*
fecha, *date*
firma, *firm*
géneros, *goods*
hacer, irr., *to do, to make*
hasta, *until*
hijos, *young, offspring*
huelga, *strike*
idea, *idea*
impedir, irr., *to prevent, to forbid*
informar, *to inform*
infructuoso, *fruitless, useless*
lámpara, *lamp*
lana, *wool*
levantarse, *to rise*
ley, *law*
lograr, *to attain*
mandar, *to send*
máximo, *maximum*
medida, *measure*
mutuo, *mutual*
nadie, *no one*
necesario, *necessary*
observar, *to observe*
odiar, *to hate*
operación, *operation*
oro, *gold*
parque, *park*
parte, *part, party*
particular, *private individual*
pedir, irr., *to ask for*
pensar, irr., *to intend*
perder, irr., *to lose*
plan, *plan*
población, *town*
pocos, *few*
poner, irr., *to put*
pormenor, *detail, particular*
portamonedas, *pocketbook*
precio, *price*
presentarse, *to show oneself, to appear*
principiar, *to begin*
privado, *private*
producción, *production*
propietario, *owner, employer*
propio, *proper, own*
pues, *for, as*
público, *public*
querer, irr., *to love*
receta, *prescription*
recordar, irr., *to recollect*
reír, irr., *to laugh*
representante, *representative*
requerir, irr., *to require*
resolver, irr., *to resolve, to decide*
saber, irr., *to know*
secretario, *secretary*
semejantes, *fellow beings*
siguiente, *following, next*
sino, *but*
sólo, *only*
superficie, *surface*
tal vez, *perhaps*
también, *also*
tan, *so, as*
temer, *to fear*
temprano, *early*
terminante, *final, decisive*
terminar, *to finish*
tierra, *earth, land*
tomar, *to take*
trabajador, *working man*
trapiche, *sugar mill*
últimamente, *lately*
ver, irr., *to see*

(1) Give the preterit subjunctive, both simple and compound, of the verb **detenerse,** *to stop*, which is conjugated like *tener.*

(2) Translate into English:

(*a*) ¿Usted apagó la lámpara?—No; se apagó porque no tenía aceite. (See Art. **3.**) (*b*) ¿Es cierto que su señora esposa se ha empeorado mucho últimamente? (See Art. **3.**) (*c*) Como no conocíamos bien los pormenores del asunto, nos abstuvimos de tomar parte en la discusión.

(3) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) Do ye not laugh at the misfortunes of your fellow beings. (*b*) All banks close at three o'clock. (See Art. **3.**) (*c*) At what time [*éá qué hora*] does the ticket office open this morning? (See Art. **3.**)

(4) Translate into English:

(*a*) Á nadie, antes de usted, se le había ocurrido un plan tan absurdo. (See Arts. **13** and **14.**) (*b*) ¿No tiene usted dinero consigo?—No; se me olvidó mi portamonedas. —No sé qué haremos, pues á mí también se me olvidó el mío. (*c*) Tú te olvidaste de enviar la factura de los géneros de lana que les mandámos antier á Sánchez y Herrera.—No me olvidé, pero no la mandé porque me hallaba en duda acerca de ciertos precios. (See Art. **7.**) (*d*) El caimán es uno de los pocos animales que se alimentan de sus propios hijos [*young*]. (See Art. **3.**)

(5) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) When you see Professor Hall, do not forget to ask him for the prescription I gave him yesterday. (*b*) The idea then occurred to him, that perhaps the laws of attraction observed near the surface of the earth might [*podrían*] be extended [*extenderse*] to the mutual attraction of the heavenly bodies. (*c*) It is necessary that the patient should go to bed early, and that he should not rise before nine o'clock. (*d*) They were so ashamed for [*de*] having surrendered, that they did not dare to appear in public. [Use the copretérit of *estar* and *atreverse*.]

(6) Translate into English:

(*a*) Las medidas que se han tomado para impedir las huelgas han sido infructuosas. Lo que se requiere para lograr este fin no son arreglos privados entre particulares,

sino leyes terminantes y explícitas, en que se determinen los derechos y las obligaciones mutuas de las dos partes, y en que se tenga en cuenta no sólo el bienestar de los propietarios y los trabajadores, sino también el del público en general. (*b*) Se creía que la celebración se diferiría hasta el día siguiente, pero la comisión resolvió que no se demorase por más tiempo [*longer*]. (*c*) El canal de Panamá fué principiado por los franceses, y probablemente será terminado por los americanos. (*d*) Napoleón era tan querido de los franceses como odiado y temido de los ingleses.

(7) Translate into Spanish [use the quasi-reflexive construction]:

(*a*) It was then believed that the production of gold had reached its maximum. (*b*) We have been informed that your firm intends to send a representative to this town to study the sugar mills that have been lately put in operation. (*c*) The secretary of the company has been sent for, and it is hoped that he *may remember* [subjunctive] the approximate date of the two letters that were lost. (See Art. **3.**)

(8) Give the whole indicative present and the subjunctive preterit of the following verbs:

(*a*) cerrar, *to close* (Art. **33**)
(*b*) vestirse, *to dress* (Arts. **2** and **41**)
(*c*) entender, *to understand* (Art. **33**)
(*d*) resolver, *to determine* (Art. **35**)

(9) Give the gerund, the indicative copreterit, the subjunctive present, and second person of the imperative, for both numbers (forms with *tú* and *vos*) of the following verbs [it should be remembered that pronominal cases follow the gerund and form one word with it]:

(*a*) resentirse, *to feel offended* (Arts. **2** and **44**)
(*b*) reconocer, *to recognize* (Art. **37**)
(*c*) contradecir, *to contradict* (Arts. **57** and **59**)
(*d*) enviar, *to send* (Art. **50**)
(*e*) irse, *to leave* (Arts. **2** and **64**)
(*f*) poseer, *to possess* (Art. **40**)

(10) Give the indicative future and the two preterits of the following verbs:

(*a*) huír, *to flee* (Art. **47**)
(*b*) reponerse, *to recover* (Arts. **2** and **70**)
(*c*) calentar, *to heat* (Art. **33**)
(*d*) parecerse, *to resemble* (Arts. **2** and **37**)

(11) Give the indicative present and preterit, and the subjunctive present, of the following regular verbs (see Art. **27**):

(*a*) escoger, *to select*
(*b*) sacar, *to take out*
(*c*) convencer, *to convince*
(*d*) cazar, *to hunt*
(*e*) llegar, *to arrive*
(*f*) distinguir, *to distinguish*

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 8)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

VOCABULARY

abandonar, *to abandon*, *to give up*
abogado, *lawyer*
acabar de (followed by infinitive), *to have just* (followed by participle)
á causa de, *on account of*
acerca de, *with regard to*
afuera, *outside*
agrimensor, *surveyor*
ahora, *now*
algunos, *some*
allá, *there*
amarillo, *yellow*
anoche, *last night*
antes de, *before*
año, *year*
aquí, *here*
arquitecto, *architect*
arreglo, *agreement*
asegurar, *to assure*
asesinar, *to murder*
atenta, *favor* (said of a letter)
aunque, *although*
autorizar, *to authorize*
aviso, *advertisement*
ayer, *yesterday*
calentador, *radiator*
calentar, *to heat*
calidad, *quality*
camino, *road*
cargamento, *shipment*
cargo, *charge*
carta, *letter*
catálogo, *catalogue*
cima, *summit*, *top*
circular, *circular*
circunstancia, *circumstance*
clase, *kind*, *class*
colocación, *situation*, *employment*
como, *as*
competente, *competent*
comprar, *to buy*
común, *common*
condenar, *to doom*, *to condemn*
confederación, *confederacy*
constitución, *constitution*
contrato, *contract*
construír, irr., *to construct*
corresponsal, *correspondent*
corriente (el), *instant* (the present month)
cosecha, *crop*
cuarto, *room*
cuenta, *account*, *bill*
dar, irr., *to give*
dato, *datum*
de, *of*, *from*
debelar, *to subdue*
deber, *must*
decadencia, *decline*

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

declarar, *to declare*
demasiado, *too*
demorar, *to delay*
demostrar, irr., *to demonstrate*
descubrir (part., descubierto), *to discover*
desear, *to desire*
desembarcar, *to land*
día, *day*
diferente, *different*
ejemplo, *example*
empleado, *employe*
empleo, *employment*
en, *in*, *at*
encontrar, irr., *to meet*, *to find*
ensaye, *assay*
enviar, *to send*
esfuerzo, *effort*
estado, *state*
estipular, *to stipulate*
estoico, *stoic*
eterno, *eternal*
experimentado, *experienced*
fiebre, *fever*
fin, *end*
firmar, *to sign*
gobierno, *government*
goma, *india rubber*
grado, *degree*
hacerse, *to become*
hacerse cargo, *to take charge*
hasta que, *until*
hermoso, *handsome*
hombre, *man*
imperio, *empire*
impasable, *impassable*
informar, *to inform*
infructuoso, *fruitless*, *useless*
ingeniero, *engineer*
Inglaterra, *England*
inmediatamente, *immediately*, *at once*
insoportable, *unbearable*
instalar, *to install*
insurrección, *insurrection*
intención, *intention*
ir, irr., *to go*
laboratorio, *laboratory*
laboratorio de ensaye, *assaying laboratory*
legua, *league*
Luisa, *Louise*
llegar, *to arrive*
llegar á, *to reach*
mañana, *tomorrrw*
maquinaria, *machinery*
más, *more*, *longer*
materia, *matter*
mecánico, *mechanical*
mercancías, *wares*, *goods*
mes, *month*
mina, *mine*
mismo, *same*
montaña, *mountain*
muchos, *many*
necesitar, *to need*
negociar, *to deal*, *to trade*
negocio, *business*
noche, *night*, *evening*
esta noche, *tonight*
nublado, *cloudy*
nunca, *never*
obtener, irr., *to obtain*
ocurrir, *to occur*, *to happen*
oferta, *offer*
oficina, *office*
ofrecer, irr., *to offer*
oír, irr., *to hear*
otro, *other*, *another*
pagar, *to pay*
pánico, *panic*
paraguas, *umbrella*
pedido, *order*
periódico, *newspaper*
permanecer, irr., *to remain*
pero, *but*
pertenecer, irr., *to belong*
piso, *floor*, *story*

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

preferencia, *preference*
preferir, irr., *to prefer*
preguntar, *to ask*
preparar, *to prepare*
pretendiente, *aspirant, applicant*
probable, *likely*
prometer, *to promise*
propio, *own*
proponer, irr., *to propose*
próximo, *next*
publicar, *to publish*
puente, *bridge*
pues, *for, as*
puntual, *punctual*
químico, *chemist*
recibir, *to receive*
recomendación, *recommendation*
rechazar, *to reject*
referirse, irr., *to refer*
remitir, *to remit*
representar, *to act, to perform*
Roma, *Rome*
romano, *Roman*
ruina, *ruin, fall*
salir, irr., *to go out*
San Pedro, *Saint Peter*
semana, *week*
siglo, *century*
sin embargo, *however*
solamente, sólo, *only*
solicitar, *to solicit*
sombrero, *hat*
sorprender, *to surprise*
sueldo, *salary*
suficiente, *sufficient*
sugestión, *suggestion*
tarde, *late*
teatro, *theater*
tela, *cloth (textile fabric)*
telegrafiar, irr., *to telegraph*
temperatura, *temperature*
tempestad, *storm*
tenedor de libros, *bookkeeper*
terminar, *to finish*
tiempo, *time, weather*
tienda, *store*
tierra, *land*
todavía, *still, yet*
todo, *all*
trabajo, *work*
trigo, *wheat*
vacante, *vacancy*
vapor, *steamer*
varios, *several*
venir, irr., *to come*
ver, irr., *to see*
vista, *sight*
vivir, *to live*
ya, *already*
ya no, *no longer*
zapatos, *shoes*
zapatos de goma, *rubber overshoes*

(1) Translate into English (see Arts. **12, 13, 16,** and **42**):

(*a*) Creo que va á llover, pues está nubladísimo. (*b*) ¿No oye usted tronar? (*c*) Como estaba lloviendo y no teníamos paraguas ni zapatos de goma, tuvimos que permanecer en la tienda hasta que escampó. Tan luégo como hubo escampado, fuimos [form of *ir*] á la estación á encontrarlos (á ustedes), pero llegámos demasiado tarde.

What other form could be given to the last sentence ("Tan luégo como," etc.)?

(2) Translate into Spanish, giving to (*c*) two forms—one with *amanecer* as a subjectless verb, and one in which the same verb has a subject (see Arts. **13** to **15**, and **28**):

(*a*) It is likely that the wheat crop will be poor [*mala*] this year, for it has rained very much [*muchísimo*]. (*b*) When we reached the top of the mountain, we were informed [quasi-reflexive form] that it had been snowing all the week, and that the roads had become impassable. (*c*) We were in [*á*] sight of land when day broke [when it dawned], but could not land, on account of the storm.

(3) Translate into English (see Art. **21**):

(*a*) Hoy ha hecho un calor insoportable, aunque ha llovido mucho. (*b*) En Bogotá hace mucho frío, pero aquí hace más.

(4) Translate into Spanish (see Art. **21**):

(*a*) As the weather has been so bad, it has not been possible for us to go to see you. [Use dative with *ser*.] (*b*) The architect assured me that four radiators would be sufficient to heat this floor. Yesterday, however, although the temperature outside was only twenty-eight degrees, it was so cold here that I had to [*tuve que*] close my office.

(5) Translate into English (see Arts. **22** to **24**):

(*a*) Hace más de una semana que les enviámos las mercancías á que ustedes se refieren en su atenta del 8 del corriente. (*b*) Hace algunos días que ví un aviso en un periódico solicitando un corresponsal que supiese [form of *saber*] inglés y español. (*c*) Hoy hace dos años que estamos construyendo este puente, y mañana hará cuatro que obtuvimos la concesión para construírlo. (*d*) Sólo un mes había que Lincoln había muerto. (*e*) Nosotros negociamos en telas diez años há, y nunca habíamos visto tiempos tan malos en ese negocio.

(6) Translate into Spanish (see Arts. **22** to **24**):

(*a*) It is now more than a month since we wrote to you with regard to the work to be done [*que hay que hacer*] in these mines. There are many experienced surveyors here, and we already have one; but we need a mechanical engineer

to [*para*] install the machinery, and a chemist that can [*que pueda*] take charge of our assaying laboratory. There are no men here competent to [*para*] do this kind of work, and those we need must be sent [*deben mandarse*] from there. (*b*) There were several states that, not being willing [*no queriendo*] to belong to the confederacy, rejected the proposed constitution. (*c*) It was only a year since England had declared her intention of subduing the American insurrection. (*d*) America was discovered more than four centuries ago. (*e*) We sent you our catalogues and circulars a month ago, and it surprises us that you have not received them yet.

(7) Translate into English (see Art. **26**):

(*a*) Acaeció que, cuando nosotros llegámos, ustedes acababan de salir. (*b*) Importaba que el arreglo se firmase aquella noche, pues no convenía demorar más los trabajos.

(8) Translate into Spanish (see Art. **26**):

(*a*) It seemed [use copreterit] that all our efforts were doomed to be fruitless. (*b*) It is important that the salaries of employes, the working hours [*horas de trabajo*], and the time in which the road must be finished be stipulated [quasi-refléxive form] in the contract. (*c*) It is advisable not to send this shipment before the end of the month, as it is likely that by the next steamer we shall receive some other orders from the same firm.

(9) Translate into English, and explain why the copreterit is used in certain cases, and the preterit in others:

(*a*) Los estoicos creían que la materia es eterna. (*b*) Yo vivía en Inglaterra cuando el presidente McKinley fué asesinado. (*c*) La fiebre amarilla era muy común en la Habana, pero ya no lo es. (*d*) Voltaire representaba sus propios dramas. (*e*) Gibbon escribió la "Decadencia y ruina del Imperio Romano." (*f*) Cuando ustedes enviaron por mí, llovía mucho. (*g*) Ayer llovió todo el día.

(10) Translate into Spanish (see Arts. **30** to **34**):

(*a*) Were you at the theater last night? (*b*) Were you in your room when we went out? (*c*) He used to come to see

me every day [*todos los días*]. (*d*) We were preparing the advertisement when you telegraphed to us not to publish it [*que no lo publicásemos*]. [Use both the progressive form and the copreterit of *preparar*.] (*e*) He promised he would give me a letter of recommendation. (*f*) We shall not be here tomorrow, but our bookkeeper will give you all the other data you desire.

(11) Translate into English, and state what forms could be substituted for those printed in Italic:

(*a*) No es probable que el gobierno español *haya autorizado* la destrucción del "Maine." (*b*) No me parece demostrado que San Pedro *estuviese* en Roma.

(12) Translate into Spanish, using two forms in rendering the phrase printed in Italic:

(*a*) If this panic had not occurred, we should not have given up the business. (*b*) If the circumstances had been different, I would have given you employment. (*c*) Had you written two days ago, we would have given you the preference, but we have already offered the position to another applicant. *If there should be* a vacancy in our office, we will send for you at once.

(13) Translate into English:

(*a*) Deseáramos que usted tuviese la bondad de remitirnos uno de sus catálogos. (*b*) Me gustaría que ustedes fuesen más puntuales, y que no diesen [*set*] mal ejemplo á los otros empleados.

(14) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) I should like to make a few [*unas pocas*] suggestions. (*b*) We should prefer that you would make us an offer.

(15) Translate into English (see Arts. **79** and **80**):

(*a*) Don Manuel Gómez, á quien enviámos la cuenta ayer, dice que no paga. (*b*) Esta noche le pregunto á mi abogado lo que debemos hacer. (*c*) ¿Cuánto hay de aquí á San Salvador?—Habrá cuatro ó cinco leguas. (*d*) ¿Dónde compraría la señorita Luisa ese sombrero tan hermoso?—Lo compraría en Chicago, pues aquí no los hay de tan buena calidad.

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 9)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

VOCABULARY

á, *at, to*
abuso, *abuse, breach*
á causa de, *on account of*
aceptar, *to accept*
agente, *agent*
aguardar, *to wait for*
alabar, *to praise*
alquilar, *to hire, to rent*
allí, *there*
amigo, *friend*
amo, *master*
amueblar, *to furnish*
ancho, *wide*
antes, *before*
artículos, *articles, goods*
atenta, *favor* (*said of a letter*)
aún, *still, yet*
avisar, *to inform, to let know*
baile, *ball, dance*
caja, *box*
calco, *tracing*
camino, *road*
camisa, *shirt*
carpintero, *carpenter*
carta, *letter*
casa, *house*
casi, *almost*
causar, *to cause*
ciudad, *city*
civil, *civil*
coche, *carriage*
complicado, *complicated*
cómodamente, *comfortably*
con, *with*
concesión, *concession*
conducir, irr., *to conduct, to carry on.*
confianza, *confidence*
conseguir, irr., *to get*
considerar, *to consider*
consistir, *to consist*
construcción, *construction*
contestar, *to answer*
corriente (el), *instant* (*the present month*)
convidado, *invited, guest*
cruzar, *to cross*
cuarto, *room*
cuidadosamente, *carefully*
de, *of, from*
demasiado, *too, too much*
derecho, *right* (*said of the hand*)
descuento, *discount*
descuidado, *careless*
después, *afterwards*
después de, *after*

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

devolver, *to return, to send back*
día, *day*
dibujo, *drawing*
difícil, *difficult*
dirección, *direction*
doctor, *doctor*
donde, *where*
¿dónde? *where?*
¿de dónde? *where from?*
duda, *doubt*
Eduardo, *Edward*
en, *in, at*
encontrarse con, *to meet, to come across*
enemigo, *enemy*
enfermo, adj., *ill*
enfermo, subst., *patient* (*sick person*)
enfrente, *in front, opposite*
enviar, *to send*
escribir (*part.*, escrito), *to write*
esposa, *wife*
esquela, *note, short letter*
estudiante, *student*
extraño, *strange*
fabricante, *manufacturer*
fabricar, *to manufacture*
fácil, *easy*
familia, *family*
felicidad, *happiness*
frecuente, *frequent*
fuera, *out*
gente, *people*
gobierno, *government*
grande, *large*
guerra, *war*
hermano, *brother*
herramienta, *tool, implement*
hondo, *deep*
impedir, irr., *to prevent*
incierto, *uncertain*
inferior, *inferior*
inmediatamente, *immediately*
inseguro, *insecure, unsafe*
largo, *long*
lino, *linen*
listo, *ready*
llegar, *to arrive*
manejar, *to manage, to handle*
mañana, *morning; tomorrow*
máquina, *machine, engine*
matar, *to kill*
mayor, *greater*
mes, *month*
moral, *morality*
muchos, *many*
muebles, *furniture*
necesitar, *to need*
negocio, *business*
noche, *night, evening*
obtener, irr., *to obtain*
ofrecer, irr., *to offer*
opinión, *opinion*
orilla, *bank* (*of a river*)
país, *country, nation*
para, *for, to*
pararse, *to stop*
parecer, irr., *to seem*
parte, *part*
partir, *to depart, to leave*
peligro, *danger*
permanecer, irr., *to remain*
permitir, *to permit*
pero, *but, however*
perro, *dog*
pie, *foot*
plan, *plan*
plazo, *time* (*for payment*)
por, *by*
poseer, irr., *to possess*
practicar, *to practice*
precio, *price*
precipitadamente, *precipitately, hurriedly*
predicar, *to preach*
preparar, *to prepare*
preparativo, *preparation*
primo, *cousin*

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

probar, irr., *to prove, to show*
publicar, *to publish*
puente, *bridge*
pues, *for, as*
pulgada, *inch*
razón, *reason*
regresar, *to return, to come back*
resolver, irr., *to decide*
respuesta, *answer*
resultado, *result*
retaguardia, *rear guard*
retirarse, *to retreat*
rey, *king*
río, *river*
ropa, *clothes*
ropa interior, *underwear*
ruina, *ruin*
salir, irr., *to go out*
saltar, *to spring, to jump*
salud, *health*
seguir, irr., *to follow*
seguro, *sure, certain*
siguiente, *following, next*
sin, *without*
sino, *but*
sobre, *on, about*
sorprender, *to surprise*
tal, *such*
tanto, *so much*
tenedor de libros, *bookkeeper*
terminar, *to finish*
todo, *every, everything*
trabajo, *work*
traje, *dress, costume*
vender, *to sell*
venezolano, *Venezuelan*
ver, irr., *to see*
vivir, *to live*

(1) Translate into English, and explain the functions performed by the infinitives, stating in what respects they resemble substantives, and in what respects they resemble verbal time forms:

(*a*) Predicar máximas de moral es sin duda muy fácil; mas no lo es tanto el practicarlas. (*b*) Epicteto decía que la felicidad no consiste en poseer, sino en no desear. (*c*) El haber estado yo muy enfermo me impidió contestar antes su atenta carta del cuatro del corriente. (See Art. **3.**)

(2) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) Your being so careless is going to cause the ruin of our business. (See Art. **3.**) (*b*) Our having published that letter was considered a breach of confidence, but we showed afterwards that we had good reasons for publishing it. [Use quasi-reflexive construction for rendering *was considered.*] (*c*) It is easy to obtain a concession from the Venezuelan government for the construction of roads and bridges, but it is difficult to carry on the work, on account of the frequent civil wars, which make every business uncertain and insecure.

(3) Translate into English, and state what expression may be substituted for *debimos*, in (*b*):

(*a*) Al llegar á la orilla derecha del río, alcanzámos á ver la retaguardia del enemigo, que acababa de cruzar y se retiraba precipitadamente. (See Arts. **8, 48, 50.**) (*b*) La máquina era tan complicada, que era casi imposible de manejar, y por eso [*for that reason*] debimos devolverla. (See Arts. **10** and **64,** 2.)

(4) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) Did you not see the bookkeeper go out with the manufacturer? (See Art. **13.**) (*b*) I have heard these goods very highly praised, but, in my opinion, they are far [*muy*] inferior to those manufactured by Castro Brothers. [*Very highly* is rendered simply by *muy*.] (*c*) Have a tracing of this drawing made. (See Art. **17.**) (*d*) Who ordered these boxes made? Please have them sent back, and write to the carpenter that they are too large. The boxes we need must not be more than [*más de*] three feet long by eighteen inches wide and ten deep. (See Arts. **17** and **142.**)

(5) Translate into English, and state by what expressions the gerunds can be replaced, both in Spanish and in English (see Art. **29**):

(*a*) Sabiendo que era imposible conseguir una casa amueblada por el precio que usted nos escribió que deseaba pagar, y no pareciéndonos que á usted le gustaría vivir en un hotel, alquilámos un apartamento amueblado, donde puede usted vivir con su familia muy cómodamente. (*b*) El perro, no conociendo á su amo en el extraño traje en que éste venía, saltó sobre él y estuvo al matarlo. (See Art. **8.**)

(6) Translate into Spanish (see Arts. **33, 100, 159**):

(*a*) What discount are you going to offer them? (*b*) Where were you coming from when I met you this morning? (*c*) One of my patients wishes me to go to his house immediately. (*d*) We were going to send word for you to come [*to send word to you to come:* see Art. **19;** use subjunctive of *venir*], but heard that you had left for Philadelphia. (See Art. **128.**)

(7) Translate into English:

(*a*) Terminado que hubimos los preparativos, enviámos un telegrama á nuestro primo, avisándole que todo estaba listo. (See Art. **41.**) (*b*) Hecho lo que se nos había mandado, resolvimos permanecer allí para ver los resultados. Al [*on*] día siguiente, seguros de que éstos eran satisfactorios, partímos para la ciudad de Méjico. (See Arts. **38, 39.**)

(8) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) We have just heard that King Edward is out of danger. (See Arts. **48, 15.**) (*b*) They say in this note that they are out of linen shirts and underwear. (See Art. **47.**)

(9) Translate into English:

(*a*) No creo que nuestros muebles quepan en este cuarto. (See Art. **55.**) (*b*) Me sorprende que esos señores nos estén cobrando tanto, después de habernos dicho que nos darían un plazo de tres meses, el cual no se ha cumplido aún. (See Arts. **59, 62.**)

(10) Translate into Spanish (see Arts. **64, 65**):

(*a*) You ought to speak to your wife about that matter. (*b*) You ought to have waited for me. (*c*) In [*al*] preparing his answers, the student should follow our directions carefully. (*d*) Mr. Muñoz must be ill, for I have just seen Dr. Parra's carriage stop in front of his house.

(11) Translate into English (see Art. **87**):

(*a*) El presidente había de hablar aquella noche en la Academia de Música, pero su salud no se lo permitió. (*b*) Ha de haber habido mucha gente en el baile, pues la mayor parte de los convidados, que eran muchos, aceptaron la invitación que se les envió.

(12) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) When do you intend to return to your country? (See Art. **118.**) (*b*) What did your lady friend think of our plan? (See Art. **119.**) (*c*) Do you think it will rain tomorrow? (Art. **121.**) (*d*) Our agent may have sold all the implements we sent with him, but he cannot have sold them at such prices. (See Art. **123.**)

SPANISH GRAMMAR
(PART 10)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

VOCABULARY

afortunado, *fortunate*
aldea, *village*
alguno, *some*
alta, *upper*
al través de, *across*
amigo, *friend*
ancho, *wide*
año, *year*
aprender, *to learn*
ardiente, *ardent, fiery*
arroyo, *stream, brook*
artículo, *article*
asociarse, *to associate*
áspero, *uneven, rough*
aunque, *although*
baja, *lower*
barato, *cheap*
bondadoso, *kind*
bruto, *brute*
bueno, *good*
calle, *street*
cámara (de representantes), *house (of representatives)*
cantatriz, *woman singer*
carácter, *character*
carbón, *coal*
carecer de, irr., *to lack*
cargamento, *shipment, cargo*
casa, *house*
castellano, *Castilian*
celos, *jealousy*
ciudad, *city*
cobrar, *to dun*
coche, *carriage*
comestibles, *victuals*
cómodo, *comfortable*
competente, *competent*
condiciones, *terms*
considerar, *to consider*
costa, *coast*
costoso, *expensive*
creer, irr., *to believe*
cuchillería, *cutlery*
dar, irr., *to give*
deber, *to owe; to have to, must*
despachar, *to send off, to ship*
deudor, *debtor*
día, *day*
difícil, *difficult*
distinguir, *to distinguish*
divino, *divine*
dón, *gift*
encontrar, irr., *to find, to meet*
enseñanza, *teaching*
enseñar, *to show*
entusiasta, *enthusiastic*
escabroso, *rugged*
especial, *special*
exacto, *exact*
excusa, *excuse*
grande, *great, large*
hermoso, *handsome*

VOCABULARY—(Continued)

hombre, *man*
hoy, *today*
huelga, *strike*
importante, *important, vital*
imposible, *impossible*
insignificante, *insignificant*
instrumento, *instrument*
laborioso, *laborious*
lengua, *language, tongue*
lugar, *place*
llegar, *to arrive*
llevar, *to take, to conduct*
medida, *measurement*
medir, irr., *to measure*
metafísico, *metaphysical*
mezquino, *petty*
modelo, *standard, model*
muestra, *sample*
nación, *nation*
naufragar, *to be wrecked*
occidental, *western*
orilla, *bank (of a river)*
otro, *other, another*
pagar, *to pay*
país, *country, nation*
paisano, *countryman*
palabra, *speech*
parte, *part*
pasado, *last, past*
pasajero, *passenger*
pedir, irr., *to order (in business)*
personas, *people*
pie, *foot*
práctico, *practical*
precio, *price*
privado, *private*
problema, *problem*
pronto, *soon*
público, *public*
puro, *pure*
reconocer, irr., *to recognize*
rechazar, *to reject*
representante, *representative*
saber, irr., *to know*
salir de (un lugar), irr., *to leave (a place)*
salvar, *to save*
satisfactorio, *satisfactory*
semana, *week*
senado, *senate*
subir, *to rise*
tal, *such*
también, *also, too*
terreno, *ground*
tiempo, *time*
tío, *uncle*
trabajar, *to work*
trabajo, *work*
traductor, *translator*
trampista, *tricky*
tratado, *treaty*
tratar de (un asunto), *to deal with (a subject)*
tren, *train*
triangulación, *triangulation*
vapor, *steamer*
viajar, *to travel*
víctima, *victim*
vida, *life; living* (noun)
viejo, *old*
voluble, *voluble, fickle*

(1) Translate into English:

(*a*) Aquí la vida es ahora muy costosa, por cuanto las huelgas que ha habido este año han hecho subir los precios del carbón y de los comestibles extraordinariamente. (*b*) Los coches no son tan baratos en Nueva-York como en París, aunque son más hermosos y más cómodos.

(2) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) Most all the articles you ordered last week were shipped by today's steamer. As to the cutlery, we have written to our representative there to show you some samples. No doubt you must have heard that the steamer that left there for this place [*for here*] on[1] the 5th was wrecked off [*cerca de*] the coast of Cuba; but, fortunately, both the passengers and the cargo were saved. [Translate as if the last part of the sentence read, "they saved the passengers as well as the cargo," rendering *they saved* by a quasi-reflexive form.] (*b*) Our work was all the more difficult because we lacked good instruments, and the ground was exceedingly rugged. There were places where we could scarcely measure more than ten feet at a time. The triangulation across streams, too, was extraordinarily laborious, inasmuch as the banks were so uneven that accurate measurements were almost impossible.

(3) Translate into English:

(*a*) ¿Pudiera usted hacerme el favor de decirme en dónde puedo encontrar á su tío? (*b*) Serían como las seis y cuarto cuando el tren llegó á la estación. Allí encontrámos á nuestro amigo Flores, quien bondadosamente nos llevó á su casa.

(4) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) Patti is considered as the best singer in the world. (*b*) The streets in the upper part of the city are much wider than those in the lower part. As you know, the lower part is much older than the upper. (*c*) Socrates was the greatest man in the greatest nation of those days. His teachings were not, like Plato's, of a metaphysical character, but dealt with the most vital practical problems of life, both public and private. Like many other great men of his time, he was the victim of the petty jealousies of his countrymen, who were as fickle as they were enthusiastic and fiery.

[1] Not translated.

(5) Translate into English:

(*a*) Tanto el senado como la cámara de representantes rechazaron la mayor parte de las condiciones del tratado. (*b*) Los animales no hablan; de aquí que se haya creído que la palabra es un dón divino, dado especialmente al hombre para distinguirlo de los brutos. (*c*) Cuanto menos se asocie usted con españoles é hispano-americanos, tanto más pronto aprenderá el inglés. (*d*) Nunca habíamos tenido un deudor tan trampista: mientras más le cobramos, más excusas nos da. Es probable que jamás nos pague lo que nos debe.

(6) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) I have never worked as a translator, but consider myself competent to [*para*] do the work satisfactorily. (*b*) Who has ever heard [*oído hablar*] of so insignificant a village? (*c*) Have you ever traveled in the western part of this country? (*d*) The Castilian language, once the standard of pure Spanish, is no longer recognized as such in Spanish America, and is nowadays spoken by some six million people at the most.

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 11)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

VOCABULARY

abrir (*part.*, abierto), *to open*
absoluto, *absolute*
aguardar, *to hope, to expect; to wait for*
ahora, *now*
Alejandría, *Alexandria*
Alejandro, *Alexander*
amanecer, *daybreak*
al amanecer, *at daybreak*
amar, *to love*
amigo, *friend*
anoche, *last night*
Antonio, *Anthony*
aparente, *apparent*
aprender, *to learn*
arena, *sand*
aunque, *although*
ayer, *yesterday*
banco, *bank*
bestia, *beast*
boca,[1] *mouth*
bomba, *bomb, shell*
buque, *ship*
buscar, *to search, to look for*
calumniar, *to slander*
carbón, *coal*
carga, *burden*
cargo, *charge*
cenar, *to take supper, to sup*
cerca de, *about, nearly*
cierto, *certain*
comerciante, *merchant*
comercio, *commerce, trade*
comisión, *commission*
compañero, *companion*
compañía, *company*
conciencia, *conscience*
congreso, *congress*
conquista, *conquest*
considerar, *to consider*
consolar, irr., *to console*
contra, *against*
corrompido, *corrupt, depraved*
cosa, *thing*
creer, irr., *to think*
cuerpo, *body*
cumplir, *to fulfil*
dar, irr., *to give*
deber, *duty*
debido á que, *owing to the fact that*

[1] When reference is made to the mouth of a large river, the plural *bocas* is generally preferred to the singular *boca*.

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

defender, irr., *to defend*
delantero, *front* (adj.)
desear, *to desire*
devolver, irr., *to return, to send back*
día, *day*
diplomacia, *diplomacy*
discusión, *discussion*
durante, *during*
embarcar, *to ship*
emplear, *to employ, to use*
encontrar, irr., *to find*
en cuanto á, *as for, as to*
engaño, *deceit, fraud*
enriquecer, irr., *to enrich*
entregar, *to deliver*
envejecer, irr., *to age, to grow old*
estudiar, *to study*
exclamar, *to exclaim*
éxito, *result*; buen éxito, *success*
extraño, *strange*
fabricante, *manufacturer*
facilidad, *facility, ease*
francés, *French*
Francia, *France*
fraude, *fraud*
fundar, *to found*
géneros, *goods*
genio, *genius*
gusto, *taste*
habitante, *inhabitant*
hacerse uno, irr., *to become of one*
herir, irr., *to wound*
heroico, *heroic*
hijo, *son*
hombre, *man*
hora, *hour*
imposible, *impossible*
independencia, *independence*
indio, *Indian*
ingeniero,[1] *engineer*
instantáneo, *instantaneous, sudden*
investigar, *to investigate*
Jorge, *George*
joven, *young man*
julio, *July*
lengua, *language, tongue*
lino, *linen*
locomotora, *locomotive*
llamar, *to call*
llamar la atención á uno, *to attract one's attention*
madre, *mother*
máquina, *machine, engine*
máquina de coser, *sewing machine*
maquinista, *engineer* (*engineman*)
matar, *to kill*
medios, *means*
milla, *mile*
morir, irr., *to die*
mucho, *much*
muchos, *many*
negocio, *business*
Nilo, *Nile*
niño, *child*
nombrar, *to appoint*
nuevo, *new*
obtener, irr., *to obtain*
odiar, *to hate*
padre, *father*
pagar, *to pay*
paisano, *countryman*
papel, *paper*
pasajero, *passenger*
pasar, *to pass*
patria, *one's country*
pecho, *breast, chest*
pedir, irr., *to order, to give an order* (*in business*)
penoso, *painful, hard, unpleasant*
perseguir, irr., *to persecute*

[1] This Spanish word applies only to one who is acquainted with the science of engineering, an engineman being called *maquinista*.

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

pie, *foot*
piedad, *pity*, *mercy*
plazo, *time for payment*
pobre, *poor*
pocos, *few*
política, *politics*
portugués, *Portuguese*
poseer, irr., *to possess*
presidente, *president*
principiar, *to begin*
propio, *own*
prorrogar, *to extend* (*said of time*)
protectorado, *protectorate*
querer, irr., *to wish*
querido, *dear*
ratificar, *to ratify*
restaurante, *restaurant*
reunirse, *to meet*, *to assemble*
rezar, *to pray*
rollo, *roll*, *bundle*
romperse, *to break* (intransitive)
sacudimiento, *shock*
salir, *to leave*, *to set out*
salvar, *to save*
sano, *sound*, *uninjured*
según, *as*, *according to*
serio, *serious*
sitiar, *to besiege*, *to lay siege*
sociedad, *society*
teatro, *theater*
tiempo, *time*
tienda, *store*
tierra, *land*
tratado, *treaty*
tratar, *to try*
travesía, *crossing*, *sea voyage*
tren, *train*
único, *only* (adj.)
vararse, *to get stranded*, *to run aground*
vergonzoso, *disgraceful*
vía, *track*
vida, *life*
visitar, *to visit*
yacer, irr., *to lie*, *to be*

(1) Translate into English:

(*a*) Jorge, á quien un fragmento de bomba acababa de herir seriamente en el pecho, llamó á uno de sus amigos, al cual dió un rollo de papeles, diciéndole:—Mi querido Antonio, yo estoy para morir. Entrega estos papeles á mi padre, y díle que su hijo murió por la patria, cumpliendo con su deber; que consuele á mi pobre madre, y que trate á Emilia, á quien yo tanto he amado, y á quien aguardaba hacer la compañera de mi vida, como á su propia hija. (*b*) Durante la conquista, los españoles mataban indios sin piedad, ó los empleaban como bestias de carga. (*c*) ¿Á quién buscan ustedes?—Buscamos á un joven cubano que llegó á este hotel anoche y que, según nos han dicho, desea llevar uno ó dos ingenieros á la Habana.

(2) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) "Love ye those who hate you, and pray for those who

persecute and slander you." (*b*) After a great deal of[1] discussion, the president appointed a commission to[2] investigate the charges made against the coal companies. (*c*) The train was going at the rate of fifty miles an hour when one of the front wheels of the locomotive broke. Although we did our best,[3] we could save only[4] a few of the passengers. As to the men on[5] the engine, the engineer was the only one (whom) we could find: his body lay about ten feet from the track, apparently uninjured (see Art. **19**, 7). He must have been instantly killed by the shock.

(3) Translate into English:

(*a*) Alejandro fundó á Alejandría en las bocas del Nilo. (*b*) Los españoles sitiaron á Cartagena, que se defendió heroicamente. (*c*) Después de una penosísima travesía, alcanzámos á ver[6] tierra al amanecer del 8 de julio; pero, antes que llegásemos á[7] ella, el buque se varó en [*on*] un banco de arena.

(4) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) After the theater, we went and had supper at[8] Concha's restaurant. (*b*) Come and[9] see me before you leave for Chicago. (*c*) It was impossible for us[10] to ship your linen goods before now, owing to the fact that the manufacturer from whom[11] we ordered them did not deliver them till yesterday.

(5) Translate into English:

(*a*) Antes de principiar la construcción del canal, hay que aguardar hasta que el congreso se reúna y ratifique el tratado. (*b*) Decía un portugués que nada le había llamado tanto la atención en Francia como la facilidad con que los habitantes aprendían el francés. "¡Cosa extraña!" exclamaba; "muchos de mis paisanos envejecen estudiando esta lengua diabólica, y por más que la estudien la hablan mal; mientras que aquí la hablan hasta los niños."

---

[1] *mucha* [2] *para* [3] See Part 9, Hacer [4] Use *no . . . sino*
[5] *that were in* [6] See Part 9, Alcanzar [7] *reached*
[8] *went to sup to* [9] *come to* [10] Use dative case [11] *á quien*

(6) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) What has become of you, Mr. Jones? You have not come to see us since the 4th of July (Art. **40**, 3).—I have not had much time to visit my friends since I opened my new store, where I spend most of my time.[1] (*b*) What we want is not a protectorate, but absolute independence. (*c*) He says in his letter that he will not give us more than ten days' time[2] to[3] pay for these sewing machines; but I think he will extend the time if we tell him that, if he does not,[4] we will return the machines. Whether he extends the time, or whether he wishes the machines returned to him,[5] we certainly cannot pay for them in ten days (see Part 9, Pagar).

(7) Translate into English:

Yo ni tengo gusto por el comercio, ni tengo la conciencia elástica que, para obtener buen éxito, un comerciante debe poseer. Tampoco me gustan los medios vergonzosos que los hombres de negocios de nuestros días emplean para enriquecerse; medios que, como la diplomacia en la política, no son sino engaños y fraudes, pero que en nuestra corrompida sociedad se consideran como grandes manifestaciones del genio.

---

[1] *pass the greater part of the time*
[2] *ten days of time*
[3] *para*
[4] See Part 9, Hacer
[5] *that the machines be returned to him:* —quasi-reflexive construction

SPANISH GRAMMAR

(PART 12)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

VOCABULARY

abandonar, *to abandon, to give up*
á causa de, *on account of*
aceptar, *to accept*
acostumbrado, *accustomed*
administrador, *manager*
ahora, *now*
aldea, *village*
alemán, *German*
ambicioso, *ambitious*
antes de, *before* (prep.)
año, *year*
armada, *navy*
asegurar, *to assure*
aumentar, *to augment, to increase*
bloqueo, *blockade*
boleto, *ticket*
cambio, *change*
cañón, *barrel* (*of a gun*)
capitán, *captain*
carbón, *coal*
carta, *letter*
caso, *case*
caucho, *india rubber*
cierto, *certain*
cirujano, *surgeon*
código, *code*
competencia, *competition*
confiar, *to trust, to entrust*
conservador, *conservative*
considerar, *to consider*
construcción, *construction*
consumir, *to consume*
correo, *mail*
correspondencia, *correspondence*
dar, irr., *to give*
deber, *to have to, must*
defensa, *defense*
delito, *crime, offense*
derechos, *duties*
desarrollar, *to develop*
desde, *from*
desgracia, *misfortune*
por desgracia, *unfortunately*
día, *day*
difícil, *difficult*
disfrutar, *to enjoy*
durante, *during*
económico, *economic*
efímero, *ephemeral*
emprendedor, *enterprising*
emprender, *to undertake*
encontrarse con, irr., *to meet, to come across*
entonces, *then*
entrante, *coming, next*
entregar, *to deliver*
enviar, irr., *to send*
escopeta, *shotgun*
esperar, *to expect*
esquela, *note* (*short letter*)

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

examinar, *to examine, to inspect*
excusar, *to excuse*
éxito, *result, outcome*
buen éxito, *success*
experiencia, *experience*
extranjero, *foreign*
extremado, *extreme* (adj.)
fábrica, *manufactory*
fabricante, *manufacturer*
factura, *invoice*
fe, *faith*
feliz, *happy*
ferrocarril, *railroad*
fin, *end*
géneros, *goods*
genio, *genius*
guerra, *war*
gusto, *pleasure*
hacer, irr., *to do, to make; to make out; to perform*
hombre, *man*
homeópata, *homeopathic*
hoy, *today*
ignorante, *ignorant*
imponer, irr., *to impose, to command*
importación, *importation, import*
indigno, *unworthy*
inexperto, *inexperienced*
interesar, *to interest*
invitar, *to invite*
legislatura, *legislature*
levantar, *to raise*
ley, *law*
lino, *linen*
listo, *ready*
mañana, *morning*
mayor, *greater, greatest*
médico, *physician*
mes, *month*
método, *method*
militar, *military*
miserable, *wretched*
muerte, *death*
negocio, *business*
ninguno, *any*
noticia, *news*
obligar, *to oblige, to compel*
obstáculo, *obstacle*
ordenar, *to order, to command*
otro, *other, another*
país, *country, nation*
del país, *native, domestic*
parecer, irr., *to seem*
pasado, *last* (said of days, months, etc.)
pasar, *to pass*
pedir, *to ask for, to order*
pena, *penalty*
penetración, *insight*
perder, irr., *to lose*
permitir, *to permit, to allow*
placer, *pleasure*
poco, *little*
por tanto, *consequently, therefore*
posta, *courier*
precioso, *precious*
problema, *problem*
pronto, *soon*
prudente, *prudent, wise*
pueblo, *people*
punto, *point*
recibir, *to receive*
regir, irr., *to rule, to govern*
rehusar, *to refuse*
resolver, irr., *to solve*
resultado, *result*
reunirse, *to meet, to assemble*
robar, *to rob, to steal*
sacrificio, *sacrifice*
semana, *week*
serio, *serious*
servilleta, *napkin*
sin embargo, *however*
sólo, *only* (adv.)
teatro, *theater*
técnico, *technical*
tenedor de libros, *bookkeeper*

VOCABULARY — (Continued)

terco, *stubborn*
tiempo, *time*
toalla, *towel*
todavía, *yet* (adv.)
tonelada, *ton*
transacción, *transaction*
último, *last*
único, *only*, *sole*
valer, irr., *to avail*
vano, *vain*
varios, *several*
vida, *life*
vista, *sight*, *view*

(1) Translate into English, and explain why *ellos* and not *él* is used in (*b*):

(*a*) ¡Qué felices éramos entonces, y cuán miserables somos ahora! (*b*) ¡Qué pueblo tan emprendedor es el pueblo americano, y cuán desarrollado está en ellos el genio inventivo!

(2) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) How ephemeral are the pleasures of life! how vain, and how unworthy of the sacrifices we make to[1] enjoy them! (*b*) You cannot imagine[2] what difficult problems, both from the technical and from the economic point of view, we have had to solve in the construction of this railroad.

(3) Translate into English:

(*a*) Habiendo la competencia de fabricantes extranjeros obligado á los del país á abandonar sus fábricas, el congreso pasó una ley aumentando los derechos de importación. (*b*) Aquí es extremadamente difícil interesar á nadie en el negocio del caucho, á causa de las grandes fortunas que varios hombres ambiciosos pero inexpertos han perdido en él durante los últimos cuatro ó cinco años.

(4) Translate into Spanish, giving two forms to (*a*) (see Art. **16**):

(*a*) The legislature had not yet met, nor was expected to meet[3] before the end of the month. (*b*) Today is mail day, Mr. Aguirre, and the correspondence for South America must be ready by[4] one o'clock. Have you made out the invoices yet?[5] — Not yet. (See Art. **17.**)

---

[1] *para*. [2] *figurarse* (see Part 7, Pronominal Verbs).
[3] *nor was it expected* [quasi-reflexive construction] *that it would meet* [subjunctive].
[4] See Part 11, Para. [5] *ya*.

(5) Translate into English:

(*a*) Habiéndonos el señor Romero invitado al teatro y enviádonos los boletos, nos fué imposible excusarnos. (*b*) La Constitución no impone la pena de muerte por delitos políticos, ni la permite. En tiempo de guerra, sin embargo, rige el Código Militar, que no sólo la permite sino que la ordena en ciertos casos.

(6) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) When I met him this morning, he told me he was going to see you. (*b*) We have received the towels, napkins, and the other linen goods we ordered from you[1] last week, but having had no time to inspect them, we do not yet know whether we shall accept them or not.

(7) Translate into English:

(*a*) ¿Pudiera usted hacerme el favor de darle esta esquela al señor secretario?—Sí, señor, con el mayor gusto. Él no está aquí ahora, pero se la entregaré tan pronto como venga. (*b*) ¿Cómo supieron[2] ustedes la noticia?—Nos la trajo un posta enviado por el capitán Gutiérrez. (*c*) Se nos ha aseguardo que el bloqueo se levantará antes del fin de la semana entrante.—¿Quién se lo dijo?—Nos lo dijo uno de los oficiales de la armada alemana.

(8) Translate into Spanish:

(*a*) Neither the manager nor the bookkeeper seems to know anything about[3] this transaction. (*b*) His great experience and insight availed him little, for he had to deal[4] with conservative and ignorant people who stubbornly refused to consider any changes in the methods to which they had been accustomed. (*c*) About[5] one million tons of coal were consumed[6] during that period.

(9) Translate into English, and give other forms to the words printed in Italic, explaining why these forms may be used:

(*a*) Por desgracia, se me habían robado aquellas dos

---

[1]Use dative case. [2]*learned*. [3]*acerca de*. [4]habérselas (see Part 9, Habérselas con). [5]*como*. [6]Quasi-reflexive construction.

cartas preciosas, que *era* mi única defensa. (*b*) El mayor obstáculo para emprender negocios en aquel país *es* las guerras civiles, que *son* condición crónica de todas las repúblicas sur-americanas, á excepción[1] de Chile y la Argentina.

(10) Translate into English (see Art. **72**):

(*a*) No pude comprar en la aldea una escopeta de dos cañones, pues allí no hay nadie que las venda. (*b*) Poca fe tengo en el resultado de la operación, pues (ellas) rara vez[2] tienen buen éxito. Tampoco[3] me parece que haya sido prudente confiarle una operación tan seria á un médico homeópata, los cuales generalmente son malos cirujanos, y por tanto poco competentes para hacerlas.

---

[1] *with the exception.* [2] *seldom.*
[3] See Part 10: The Conjunction Ni and the Adverb Tampoco.

INDEX

All items in this index refer first to the section number,—which is printed on the inside edges of the headlines and is preceded by the printers' section mark §,—and then to the page number. Thus, Acá 25 20 means find the paper having § 25 on the headlines and then find page 20.

A	*Sec.*	*Page*
A, Sound of	16	3
Á, sign of the personal accusative	17	23
" Use of, to express the dative relation	19	3
" " " with the accusative	26	1
" " " " " infinitive	24	4
" Various uses of	26	8
Absolute clauses defined	21	24
" " Use of participle in	24	22
Acá	25	20
" modified by an adverb of quantity	25	24
" Por	25	23
" preceded by a preposition	25	24
" " " an adverb	25	24
Acabar de	24	26
" Uses of	24	25
Acabarse, Uses of	24	25
Acaso	25	25
Accent	16	17
" Orthographic, in the plural	17	4
Accentuation, Rules for	16	17
" Various systems of	16	19
Accusative case defined	17	25
" " of generalization	19	17
" constructions, Redundant	19	15
" Definition of	17	23
" how recognized	17	24
" prepositional phrase defined	19	15
" substantive and accusative case	19	15
" Use of á with	26	1
Active construction defined	22	9
" form of verbs defined	22	9
" voice of verbs defined	22	9
Adjective, Concord of	27	16
Adjective, defined	16	27
" in quasi-reflexive constructions	22	19
" Position of the	17	30
" " " "	27	2
" Predicate	16	28
" Substantivized	20	3
" used substantively	20	3
Adjectives after de	20	6
" Agreement of	17	31
" Comparative degree of	25	4
" coordinating, Position of	27	3
" Inflection of	20	21
" Plural of	17	3
" Position of restrictive	27	2
" Possessive (see *Possessive adjectives*)		
" Superlative degree of	25	8
" undergoing apocopation	21	21
" Use of, with subjectless verbs	23	7
Adjectivized substantive, Rendering of English	20	10
" substantive, The	20	7
Adverb defined	16	29
" Position of	27	5
Adverbial phrases, List of	25	51
Adverbs, Classification of	25	1
" Derivative	25	3
" in -mente	16	18
" " "	25	3
" Superlative degree of	25	12
" used in redundant reciprocal constructions	19	24
" Uses of some important	25	20
Ago, how rendered	23	11
Agreement (see *Concord*)		
Ahí	25	20

	Sec.	Page
Ahí Por	25	24
Al	17	8
" preceding an infinitive	24	5
Alcanzar, Uses of	24	26
Alegrarse, Uses of	24	27
Algo, Uses of	25	26
Alguien	19	38
Alguno, Apocopation of	21	21
" indefinite pronoun	19	38
Allá	25	20
" modified by an adverb of quantity	25	24
" Por	25	23
Allí	25	20
" De	25	22
Alphabet, The Spanish	16	2
Amanacer	23	5
Ambos	21	26
Analogía defined	16	1
Anatema, Gender of	18	22
Andar, Irregularities of	22	37
" Use of gerund with	24	19
" Uses of	24	27
Announcing que defined	21	25
Anochecer	25	5
Antecedent of a relative defined	19	27
Apenas	25	27
Apocopation defined	21	21
" of adjectives	21	21
" " cardinals in -uno	21	14
" " ciento	21	15
" " cuanto	25	17
" " recientemente	25	3
" " tanto	25	15
Apodosis defined	23	38
" understood	23	42
Apposition, Substantives in	20	9
Aquel and ese	20	24
" Uses of	20	23
Aquél, demonstrative pronoun	20	27
" substantivized demonstrative	20	26
Aquello de	20	26
" esto, eso	18	30
Aquéllos, Use of	20	26
Aquí	25	20
" De	25	22
" Por	25	23
Arte, Gender of	18	23
Articles, The	17	7
Así	25	27
Asir, Irregularities of	22	37
Atañer, defective verb	23	3
Augmentative adjectives	20	17
" endings	18	4
" nouns	18	4

B

	Sec.	Page
B, Sound of	16	5
Be, To, followed by the name of a sensation	23	9
" " referring to state of weather	23	8
Beber, Uses of	24	28
Bien	25	29
Bueno, Apocopation of	21	21

C

C, Silent	16	9
" Sounds of	16	5
Caber, Irregularities of	22	38
" Uses of	24	28
Cada cual, indefinite pronoun	19	38
" uno, indefinite pronoun	19	38
Caer, Irregularities of	22	38
Cardinal numerals defined	20	2
" " Formation of	21	13
" " Peculiarities of	21	14
Cardinals used instead of ordinals	21	18
Case defined	17	25
Cases, Oblique	17	26
" of personal pronouns	19	17
" " pronouns, Combinations of	27	13
" " " Position of	17	30
" " " " "	27	8
" " " " "	27	11
" " the non-neutral personal pronouns	17	25
Casi	25	31
" in sentences with implied negation	23	48
Castilian grammar	16	1
" language	16	1
" "	16	6
" "	16	9
Ch	16	2
" formerly used instead of c	16	6
" Sound of	16	5
Ciento, Apocopation of	21	15
" Por, Use of the article with	20	38
" Un not used with	21	15
Clause defined	24	21
Clauses, Absolute (see *Absolute clauses*)		
Cobrar, Uses of	24	29
Coexistence, Tenses of (see *Tenses of coexistence*)		
Collective nouns	18	3
" numerals defined	20	2
" substantives, Syntax of	18	3
" " " "	27	23
Coming, To be, how rendered	24	19

	Sec.	Page
Como in comparisons of equality	25	14
" Various uses of	25	32
Common noun defined	18	1
Comparative degree defined	25	4
Comparison, Forms of	25	4
Complex sentence defined	21	24
Compound copreterit	23	28
" future	23	27
" noun	18	2
" nouns, Gender of	18	27
" postpreterit	23	27
" present	23	25
" preterit	23	27
" tenses, Position of auxiliary in	27	5
" " formed with ser	24	20
" " of the indicative mode	23	25
" " of the subjunctive mode	23	31
" word defined	18	2
Con, preceding an infinitive	24	6
Concernir, defective verb	23	3
Concord of the adjective	27	16
" " " verb	27	22
" Principles of	27	16
Conditional expressions not introduced by si	23	40
" propositions with implied negation	23	38
" sentences	23	37
" "	23	47
" "	24	4
Conjugation defined	17	12
" of regular verbs	17	19
Conjugations, The three	17	19
Conjunction defined	16	33
Conjunctional phrases, List of	26	37
Conmigo	17	27
Consonants	16	3
Contigo	17	27
Contractions of de	20	28
" " the definite article	20	28
Coordinating propositions	19	28
Copreterit and preterit	23	24
" tense defined	17	16
" " Uses of	23	20
" " " "	23	22
" " " "	23	48
" " " "	23	39
Corroer, Use and conjugation of	23	2
Creer and pensar	24	55
" Use of the subjunctive with	21	31
" Uses of	24	30
Cual	25	15
" El	19	33
Cual, El, used as an adjective	19	36
" Lo	19	36
Cuál, interrogative adjective	21	10
" " neuter	21	12
Cualquiera, Apocopation of	21	22
" indefinite pronoun	19	39
Cuan, Apocopated form of cuanto	25	17
Cuando	25	34
Cuanto as a neuter	25	17
" correlative of tanto	25	16
" más . . . más	25	18
" más . . . tanto más	25	18
" Various uses of	25	36
Cuánto, Interrogative adjective	21	12
" " neuter	21	12
" Use of, in expressing distance	23	16
Cuantos as the equivalent of todos los que	25	17
Cuántos, Interrogative adjective	21	12
Cumplir, Uses of	24	31
Cumplirse, Uses of	24	32
Cuyo, Relative possessive adjective	21	9
" Use of, as a demonstrative adjective	21	9
" used instead of el cual	19	36
Cúyo, Interrogative adjective	21	12

D

D, Omissions of the sound of	16	21
" Silent	16	9
" Sounds of	16	6
Dar, applied to the hour of day	23	7
" Irregularities of	22	39
" Various uses of	24	32
Dative case defined	17	25
" " Emphatic	19	12
" " Functions of	19	6
" " indicating eagerness or completeness	22	5
" " Jocose	19	12
" " of interest	19	11
" " " possession	19	13
" " with passive voice	22	11
" " " pronominal verbs	22	8
" " " ser	19	14
" constructions, Redundant	19	7
" defined	19	3
" Prepositional case used as a	19	9
" " phrase	19	3
" relations	19	4
" rendered into English by an accusative	19	5

	Sec.	Page
Dative represented in English by the subject of the verb	19	13
" Use of, with ser	19	14
De los más, Superlative adverbial phrase	25	12
" Use of, after certain adverbs	26	14
" " " in interjectional phrases	26	39
" " " " adjectival phrases	20	10
" " " " possessive phrases	20	13
" " " " " "	21	6
" " " " the passive construction	22	10
" " " to denote possession	17	28
" " " with collective numerals	21	16
" " " with partitive numerals	21	20
" Uses of, with the infinitive	24	6
" Various uses of	26	12
Deber, Various uses of	24	33
Decir, Irregularities of	22	40
" " " the derivatives of	22	41
" Various uses of	24	36
Declension	17	26
Defective verbs	23	1
Definite article, Ambiguity in the use of the	27	18
" " Contractions of the	17	8
" " Contractions of the	20	28
" " Forms of the	20	28
" " The	17	7
" " " substantivized	20	45
" " Use of, with feminine substantives	17	8
" " Use of, with feminine substantives	20	29
" " Use of, with the infinitive	24	2
" " Various uses of	20	28
" " " " "	20	41
" " " " "	21	4
" " " " "	21	6
" " " " "	25	9
" " " " "	25	11
Dejar, Various uses of	24	37
Dejarse, Uses of	24	38
Del	17	8
Demonstrative adjectives	20	25
" " Substantivized	20	27
Demonstrative adjectives, Uses of	20	23
" adverbs defined	25	2
" pronouns, Neuter	18	29
Demonstratives defined	20	1
Dependent proposition	21	24
" verb	21	25
Derivative adverbs	25	3
" defined	18	2
" verbs	22	24
Derived noun	18	2
" word	18	2
" words, Rules for the addition of endings to form	18	4
Desde with the subjectless hacer	23	13
" Use of que with	26	16
Diminutive adjectives	20	15
" adverbs	20	18
" endings	18	7
" nouns	18	6
Diphthongs	16	11
Direct questions	19	32
Distance, Expression of	23	16
Diz que	22	41
Donde	25	38
Dormir and dormirse	22	6
Doubtful predicate	21	36

E

	Sec.	Page
E, Sound of	16	3
É used instead of y	26	37
Each other, how rendered	19	20
Echar, Uses of	24	39
Elliptical expressions with infinitive preceded by relative	24	13
Ello, neuter personal pronoun	18	29
" Special uses of	18	38
" Use of	18	32
En followed by a gerund	24	18
" Various uses of	26	16
Encontrarse, meaning to be	22	6
Endings, Augmentative	18	4
" Diminutive	18	7
" Rules for the addition of	18	4
Entre sí	19	23
Epicene nouns defined	18	18
Erguir, Irregularities of	22	35
Errar, Irregularities of	22	26
Ésa, in letter writing	20	27
Ese and aquel	20	24
" Uses of	20	23
Ése, substantivized demonstrative	20	26
Eso, esto, aquello	18	30
Ésta, in letter writing	20	27
Estar and ser	17	20

	Sec.	Page
Estar as a subjectless verb	23	7
" Conjugation of	17	23
" Uses of	17	22
Este, Uses of	20	23
Éste, demonstrative pronoun	20	27
" substantivized demonstrative	20	26
Esto, eso, aquello	18	30
Etymology defined	16	1
Exclamation mark, Use of	16	34
F		
Faltar, Uses of	24	41
Fantasma, Gender of	18	22
Feminine form	17	6
" gender	17	7
Figurarse, Gramatical construction of	22	8
Frito and freído	22	52
Future tense defined	17	15
" " Primary uses of	23	32
" " Special uses of	23	49
" " used instead of the imperative	23	51
G		
G, Sounds of	16	6
Gender as applied to adjectives	17	7
" " " " nouns	17	6
" " " " personal pronouns	17	8
" forms	18	16
" of adjectives	20	22
" " compound nouns	18	27
" " names of cities	18	20
" " " " letters	18	20
" " " " rivers and oceans	18	21
" " " " seas, mountains, and ships	18	21
" " nouns according to ending	18	20
" " " General remarks on the	18	28
" " " indicated by the definite article	17	8
" " " in -a	18	20
" " " " -d	18	20
" " " " -e	18	20
" " " " -i	18	20
" " " " "	18	24
" " " " -l	18	20
" " " " "	18	24
" " " " -n	18	20
" " " " "	18	24
Gender of nouns in -o	18	20
" " " " "	18	25
" " " " -r	18	20
" " " " "	18	25
" " " " -s	18	20
" " " " "	18	26
" " " " -u	18	20
" " " " "	18	26
" " " " -x	18	20
" " " " "	18	26
" " " " -y	18	20
" " " " "	18	26
" " " " -z	18	20
" " " " "	18	26
" " numbers	21	14
" " substantives according to sex	18	15
" " words used as their own names	18	21
Genders, Nouns having two	18	27
Gerund after en	24	18
" as an adjective	24	17
" The	17	10
" "	24	14
" " as an adverb	24	14
" " " the equivalent of a conjunction	24	16
" " " the equivalent of a relative adverb	24	16
" Use of, with andar	24	19
" " " " ir	24	19
" Verbal character of the	24	15
Gerunds used as pure adverbs	24	19
Going, To be, how rendered	24	19
Grammar, Spanish (see *Spanish Grammar*)		
Grande, Apocopation of	21	23
H		
H	16	6
Haber and tener, Difference between	17	18
" Conjugation of	17	18
" " "	17	32
" Irregularities of	22	41
" más que, No	24	13
" meaning there to be	23	15
" que followed by an infinitive	24	12
" Use of, to express distance	23	16
" used without a subject	23	15
" Various uses of	24	42
Hacer applied to the weather	23	8
" " " time elapsed	23	10
" " " " "	23	14
" followed by an infinitive	24	10

	Sec.	Page
Hacér, Irregularities of	22	42
" Various uses of	24	45
Hallarse, meaning to be	22	6
Hasta, Use of que with	26	17
" Various uses of	26	17
Hé	22	41
Hembra, Use of, to indicate sex	18	18
Hundreds, Reckoning by	21	15
Hypothetic mode, Formation of	21	45
" " Tenses of the (see *Tenses*)		
" " Uses of	21	45
" replaced by the preterit subjunctive	23	46
I		
I, Sound of	16	4
Imperative, Compound, how formed	23	36
" English, first person singular	21	43
" first person plural, Use of, in self address	21	43
" forms, Irregular	22	24
" forms used in affirmative sentences	17	19
" forms used in negative sentences	17	20
" mode defined	17	14
" " Tenses of the	23	36
" The, as an elliptical form of the subjunctive	21	27
Impersonal quasi-reflexive constructions	22	13
" verbs (see also *Subjectless verbs*)	23	17
Indefinite article	20	50
" " Forms of the	20	46
" " The	17	7
" " used substantively	20	46
" " Uses of	20	47
" " " "	21	5
" pronouns	19	37
Indicative mode defined	17	13
Indirect questions	19	32
Infinitive after hacer	24	10
" " mandar	24	10
" " verbs of perception	24	8
" defined	17	9
" endings	17	9
" preceded by á	24	4
" " " a relative	24	13
" " " al	24	5
Infinitive preceded by con	24	6
" " " de	24	6
" " " que	24	12
" Substantive and verbal character of the	24	2
" The	24	1
" " as a neuter substantive	18	33
" " " " pure substantive	24	3
" Use of, after prepositions	17	11
" " " in exclamations	24	14
" " " instead of the imperative	24	14
" " " the article with	20	37
" " " " " " "	24	2
" " " with de and para	20	13
" Uses of uno with the	24	3
Infinitives connected by y	27	30
Inflection defined	17	12
" of adjectives	20	21
Inflective words	16	28
Interjection defined	16	33
Interjections, List of pure	26	38
" Sacred names used as	16	33
" " names used as	26	39
" Words occasionally used as	26	39
Interrogative adjectives	21	10
" pronouns defined	19	32
" sentence, Indirect	19	33
Intransitive verbs	17	24
" " used pronominally	22	6
Ir and venir, Difference between	24	49
" Irregularities of	22	42
" Use of gerund with	24	19
" Various uses of	24	48
Irregular participles	22	24
" " List of	22	51
" verbs, Class I	22	25
" " " II	22	27
" " " III	22	28
" " " IV	22	29
" " " V	22	30
" " " VI	22	30
" " " VII	22	32
" " " VIII	22	33
" " " IX	22	34
" " " X	22	35
" " " XI	22	37
" " Classes of	22	23
" " defined	17	19
" " Table of	22	54

	Sec.	Page
Irregular verbs, Unclassified	22	37
It followed by a form of to be and a substantive	23	8
J		
J, Silent	16	9
" Sound of	16	6
" Use of x instead of	16	9
Jamás	25	40
Jocose dative case	19	12
L		
La and le, dative cases of ella	17	26
Le and lo as accusative cases of él	17	26
Letter writing, Use of ésta and ésa in	20	27
Letters, Double	16	2
" of the alphabet	16	2
" Single	16	2
Liquid r	16	7
Ll	16	2
" Sound of	16	6
Llegar, Uses of	24	49
Llevar, Uses of	24	50
Lo and le as accusative cases of él	17	26
" de, meaning the fact, the saying, etc.	20	26
" más de, meaning the most of	25	14
" neuter substantive	18	34
" " Use of definite article instead of	20	45
" que	18	36
" Use of, in superlative phrases	25	11
" " " with hacer	24	45
" Various uses of	18	35
Long vowels	16	4
Los más de, meaning the greater number of	25	14
M		
Macho, Use of, to indicate sex	18	18
Mandar decir	24	12
" followed by an infinitive	24	10
Mar, Gender of	18	26
Margen, Gender of	18	25
Mas and pero	26	27
Más de	25	7
" " uno	27	29
" . . . de lo que, Comparative form	25	7
" . . . del que, Comparative form	25	7
" . . . que, Comparative form	25	4
" Special uses of	25	41
" Uses of, in superlative forms	25	9
Masculine form	17	6
" gender	17	7
Masculine plural form, denoting individuals of both sexes	18	16
" plural form, denoting individuals of both sexes	18	19
Mayor as a comparative	25	5
" " " superlative	25	10
" parte de, La	25	14
Medio, Abnormal use of	27	21
Menor as a comparative	25	5
Menos de	25	7
" . . . de lo que, Comparative form	25	7
" . . . del que, Comparative form	25	7
" . . . que, Comparative form	25	4
" in superlative forms	25	9
" Various uses of	25	41
Mientras más . . . más	25	18
" " . . . tanto más	25	18
Mil should not be preceded by un	21	15
Millón, Grammatical construction of	21	16
Mirar, Uses of	24	52
Mismo, Abnormal use of	27	21
" Emphatic use of	19	24
" modifying and preceding several substantives	27	17
" Por eso	25	43
" " lo	25	43
" Use of, with demonstrative adverbs	25	43
" Uses of, in reflexive constructions	19	21
Mitad, Use of the definite article with	20	39
Mode	17	13
Modes, Number of	17	13
Modifiers defined and explained	16	24
Mood (see *Mode*)		
Morir and morirse	22	6
Mucho, adjective	25	45
" adverb	25	44
" Ellipsis of, with hacer	23	14
" neuter	25	46
Muchos	25	45
Muerto and matado	22	52
Multiple numerals defined	20	2
Muy	25	43
N		
Nada	25	46
Nadie, indefinite pronoun	19	38
Name, Family, defined	18	2

	Sec.	Page
Names, Pet	18	8
Negative sentence, Form of the	17	29
Negatives, Order of	25	46
" Rules for the combination of	19	38
Neuter gender	17	7
" "	18	28
" personal pronouns	18	28
" pronouns	18	32
" substantives	18	28
Neuters	18	28
" Concord of verb referring to several	27	31
Ni	26	29
" Syntax of	27	24
Ninguno, Apocopation of	21	21
" indefinite pronoun	19	38
No, Position of	27	5
" Use of, in elliptical expressions	27	7
" " " with other negatives	25	46
" " " " " "	27	6
Nominative case defined	17	25
Non-neuter personal pronouns defined	17	9
Nós	19	1
Nosotros used instead of yo	19	1
Nouns, Augmentative	18	4
" Classes of	18	1
" Collective	18	3
" defined	17	4
" Diminutive	18	6
" Epicene, defined	18	18
" Gender of (see *Gender of nouns*)		
" having two genders	18	27
" " " numbers	18	14
" used in the plural only	18	14
Number as applied to adjectives	17	2
" " " " substantives	17	1
" " " " verbs	17	12
" in adjectives	20	21
" " geographical names	18	14
" " nouns	18	10
" Plural	17	2
" Singular	17	2
Numbers, Integral	21	13
Numerals, Classes of	20	2
" defined	20	2
" Position of	27	2
Nunca	25	40

Ñ

Ñ, Sound of	16	6

O

O, Sound of	16	4
Ó	26	32
" Syntax of	27	36
Object, Direct, of a verb (see *Accusative*)		
" of a preposition	16	32
Oblique cases	17	26
Ocurrirse, Grammatical construction of	22	8
Oír decir	24	10
" hablar	24	10
" " de	24	10
" Irregularities of	22	43
" with an infinitive as its accusative	24	8
Ojalá	21	27
" Use of preterit subjunctive with	23	44
Oler, Irregularities of	22	28
Olvidar, Grammatical construction of	22	9
One another, how rendered	19	20
One's, how rendered	19	39
Optative sentences	23	43
Orden, Gender of	18	25
Order of words	27	1
" " " Principles relating to	17	28
Ordinal numerals	21	18
" " defined	20	2
Ortografía	16	1
Orthographic changes in verbal forms	22	22
Orthography defined	16	1
" Remarks on	16	19

P

Pagar, Grammatical construction of	24	52
Para, Uses of	19	6
" " "	20	13
" " "	26	18
Parte, Uses of	20	39
" " "	21	20
Participle, Adjective	24	20
" defined	17	9
" followed by que and a verb	24	23
" of pronominal verbs	22	8
" Past, defined	17	10
" preceded by antes de, después de, etc.	24	24
" Present, defined	17	11
" Substantive, defined	24	20
" The	24	20

	Sec.	Page
Participle, Use of, in absolute clauses	24	23
Participles, Irregular	22	51
" Verbs having two	22	52
Partitive numerals	21	19
" " defined	20	2
Parts of speech	16	23
Pasar, Uses of	24	53
Passive construction	22	9
" form of verbs	22	10
" voice of verbs	22	10
" " with dative case	22	11
Past participle (see *Participle*)		
Pensar and creer	24	55
" Uses of	24	54
Perder, Use of á before the accusative of	26	3
Pero and mas	26	27
" " sino	26	27
Person, as applied to substantives	17	4
" " " " verbs	17	12
Persona	18	19
Personal pronouns	17	5
" " Declension of non-neuter	17	26
" " Definition of non-neuter	17	9
" " Neuter	18	28
Pesar, Grammatical construction of	24	55
Pet names	18	8
Phonology defined	16	1
" Principles of	16	2
Phrase, Accusative prepositional, defined	19	15
" Adjectival	16	31
" Adjective	16	31
" Adverb	16	31
" Adverbial	16	31
" Dative prepositional	19	3
" defined	16	30
" Prepositional	16	32
" Substantive	16	31
Phrases, List of adverbial	25	51
" " " conjunctional	26	37
Placer, Uses and irregularities of the verb	22	44
Plural nouns having no corresponding singular forms	18	14
" number	17	2
" of adjectives and substantives	17	3
" " compound nouns	18	13
" " proper nouns	18	12
" " simple common nouns	18	10
" " surnames	18	12
Poco	25	47
Pocos	25	48
Poder, Irregularities of	22	44
" Uses of	24	55
Podrir, Irregularities of	22	45
Poner, Irregularities of	22	46
Por, Use of, in expressing rate	20	38
" " " " the passive construction	22	10
" Various uses of	26	21
Position of pronominal cases	27	8
" " the adjective	27	2
" " " adverb	27	5
Possession, Dative case of	19	13
" expressed by means of de	17	28
Possessive adjective	21	4
" adjective of the third person used idiomatically	21	8
Possessive adjectives	21	1
" " defined	20	1
" case, English	17	28
Posteriority, Tenses of (see *Tenses of posteriority*)		
Postpreterit, Primary meanings and uses of	23	23
" tense defined	17	16
" Use of, as a mark of politeness	23	42
" " " in conditional sentences	23	37
" " " in conditional sentences	23	45
" " " to denote uncertainty, etc.	23	49
Postrero, Apocopation of	21	22
Predicate adjective defined	16	28
" defined	16	22
" Propositions of doubtful	21	36
" substantive defined	20	14
Predicating forms of verbs defined	21	24
Preposition, Definition and distinguishing features of the	16	32
Prepositional case defined	17	26
" " used by itself as a dative	19	9
Prepositions, Infinitive used after	17	11
Present participle (see *Gerund*)		
" tense	23	20
" " defined	17	15
" " Use of, instead of the future	23	48

	Sec.	Page
Present tense, Use of, to express habitual or repeated actions or conditions	23	22
Preso and prendido	22	53
Preterit and copreterit, Difference between	23	24
" indicative, Special uses of	23	52
" Primary meaning and uses of	23	23
" subjunctive form in -ra	23	38
" " Improper substitution of, for hypothetic	23	46
" " Use of, as a mark of politeness	23	42
" " Use of, in conditional sentences	23	45
" " Use of, instead of the copreterit	23	53
" " Use of, with ojalá	23	44
" tense defined	17	15
Primero, Apocopation of	21	19
Primitive noun defined	18	2
" of a derived word	18	2
" word defined	18	2
Principal proposition defined	19	29
" " "	21	25
" verb, defined	21	25
Progressive form of verbs	23	19
" " Two ways of viewing	24	15
Pronominal verbs	22	1
" " Conjugation of	22	2
" " defined	22	1
" " formed from intransitive verbs	22	6
" " formed from transitive verbs	22	3
" " Participle of	22	8
" " requiring a dative case	22	8
Pronouns defined	17	4
" Indefinite	19	37
" Neuter demonstrative	18	29
" Personal (see *Personal pronouns*)		
" Position of (see *Position of cases of pronouns*)		
" Relative	19	26
Pronunciation, Deviations from the exact rules of	16	20
" General rules of	16	10
" of the consonants	16	5
" " the vowels	16	3
" " two-vowel combinations	16	12
Proper noun defined	18	1
Proposition defined	19	28
" "	21	24
Prosodia defined	16	1
Protasis defined	23	38
Provisto and proveído	22	53
Public functionaries, Forms used by	19	2

Q

Q, Sound of	16	7
Quasi-reflexive construction defined	22	13
" " construction, The	22	12
" " " "	22	20
" " constructions, Impersonal	22	13
" " constructions, Syntax of	22	18
" " form of the verb	22	13
" " form, Third person plural used instead of	22	21
" " forms, Ambiguity in the use of	22	20
" " forms, Rules for rendering	22	13
Que, Accusative, does not take á	26	2
" before an infinitive	24	12
" conjunction	26	32
" El	20	41
" " phrase relative	19	33
" " Use of, instead of quien	20	45
" Lo	19	36
" Omission of the announcing	21	32
" relative, Uses of	19	29
" Use of, between a participle and verb	24	23
" " " in comparisons	25	4
" " " with desde	26	16
" " " " hacer	23	11
" " " " hasta	26	17
Qué de, exclamatory adjectival phrase	27	29
" interrogative adjective	21	10
" " pronoun	19	32
Querer, Irregularities of	22	47
" Use of á with accusative of	26	3

	Sec.	Page
Querer, Use of, in optative sentences	23	44
" Various uses of	24	57
Questions, Direct	19	32
" Indirect	19	32
Quien, Uses of	19	30
Quién, interrogative pronoun	19	32
" De, meaning whose	21	12
Quienquiera, Indefinite pronoun	19	39

R

R, Liquid	16	7
" Sounds of	16	7
Raer, Use and conjugation of	23	2
Razón de, Á	26	9
Recién	25	3
Reciprocal construction	19	20
Redundant accusative constructions	19	15
" construction defined	19	7
" dative constructions	19	7
" forms, Generalities on	17	27
" " Special	19	22
Reflexive constructions	19	17
" form se	19	18
" verbs defined	22	1
Regular verbs, Conjugation of	17	19
" " defined	17	19
Reír and reírse	22	7
Relative adjectives defined	19	27
" adverbs	25	39
" " defined	19	27
" as a predicate, Syntax of	27	32
" pronouns	19	26
Relatives, Classes of	19	27
" defined	19	27
" followed by infinitives	24	13
" Phrase	19	32
" Restrictive and coordinating	19	28
Reponer, meaning to reply, Use of	23	2
Restrictive propositions	19	28
Roer, Use and conjugation of	23	2
Roto and rompido	22	53
rr, double letter	16	2
" Sound of	16	7

S

S, Silent	16	9
" Sound of	16	7
Saber, Familiar use of the future of	23	52
" Irregularities of	22	48
" Various uses of	24	58
Salir, Irregularities of	22	35
Santo, Apocopation of	21	23
Satisfacer, Irregularities of	22	48
Se in quasi-reflexive constructions	22	13
" reflexive form	19	18
" Use of, with pronominal verbs	22	2
Sentence, The, defined	16	22
Sentences, Classes of	16	23
Sentir, Various uses of	23	10
" " " "	24	59
Ser and estar, Difference between	17	20
" applied to the hour of day	23	7
" as a subjectless verb	23	8
" Compound tenses formed with	24	20
" Conjugation of	17	23
" de followed by an infinitive	24	7
" followed by a predicate substantive	27	30
" Use of dative and dative case with	19	14
" " " in the passive voice	22	12
" Various uses of	17	21
Servir, Various uses of	24	60
Sex indicated by independent nouns	18	18
" " " the words macho and hembra	18	18
" Substantives having special forms to indicate	18	16
Sexes, Individuals of both	18	16
" " " "	18	19
Short vowels	16	4
Si	26	35
" Omission of, in conditional sentences	23	41
Sí	25	49
" Entre (see *Entre sí*)		
" reflexive prepositional case	19	19
Silent consonants	16	9
" u	16	4
Simple noun defined	18	3
" tenses of the subjunctive mode	23	29
" word defined	18	2
Singular number	17	2
Sino, Accentuation of	16	18
" and pero	26	27
" Use of, with negatives	26	28
Sintaxis defined	16	1
Sobresalir, Irregularities of	22	35
Soler	23	3
Spanish Grammar	16	1
" letters, Sounds of the	16	2
Spelling, Changes in	22	22
Stem of verbs defined	17	19

	Sec.	Page
Su, Ambiguity in the use of . . .	21	5
" . . . de usted, su . . . de él, etc.	21	6
" Use of the definite article instead of	20	41
" " " with reference to uno	19	39
Subject defined	16	22
" Position of	17	28
Subjectless verbs	23	4
" " Conjugation of	23	4
" " denoting natural phenomena .	23	4
" " governing a gerund or an infinitive . . .	23	5
" " No subject understood with	23	4
" " No subject understood with	23	8
" " used as verbs of full inflection	23	5
Subjunctive after expressions of supposition, concession, and exception	21	40
" mode defined	17	13
" preterit, Simple, used instead of compound	23	39
" " Use of, in conditional sentences	23	37
" " Use of, in optative sentences . .	23	43
" Remarks on the . .	21	44
" Use of, after adverbs of uncertainty . .	21	39
" Use of, after certain conjunctive and adverbial words and phrases	21	37
" Use of, after certain time expressions .	21	38
" Use of, after como .	21	34
" Use of, after cualquiera, como, etc.	21	34
" Use of, after cuando	21	35
" " " " donde	21	34
" " " " el que	21	37
" Use of, after expressions of condition . .	21	38
" Use of, after expressions of purpose .	21	39
" Use of, after imperative forms	21	26
Subjunctive, Use of, after por . . . que, cuanto más . . . tanto más, etc.	21	41
" Use of, after verbs expressing desire .	21	25
" Use of, after verbs expressing doubt, denial, or uncertainty	21	30
" Use of, after verbs expressing feeling or emotion	21	28
" Use of, after verbs of attainment	21	29
" Use of, after verbs or phrases expressing command, compulsion, etc.	21	27
" Use of, in affirmative sentences having a conditional form .	21	43
" Use of, in alternative expressions	21	42
" Use of, in dependent propositions . . .	21	36
" Use of, in impersonal sentences	21	29
" Use of, in propositions introduced by the announcing que	21	25
" Use of, in subordinate relative propositions	21	33
" Use of, to render the English present participle	21	31
" Use of, with creer . .	21	31
" " " " ojalá . .	21	27
" " " " que . .	21	42
" " " " the hypothetic	21	41
Subordinate proposition defined .	19	29
Substantive defined	16	27
" used adjectively . . .	20	7
Substantives, Inflection of, for gender	18	16
" Inflection of, for number	18	10
" Plural of	17	3
Substantivized adjective, The . .	20	3
" definite article, The	20	45
Superlative, Adjectives having no absolute	20	21
" degree of adjectives	25	8
" " " adverbs .	25	12
" forms	25	8

	Sec.	Page
Superlative phrases defined . . .	25	9
Superlatives, Absolute	20	18
Surname defined	18	2
Suyo, Ambiguity in the use of . .	21	5
" . . . de usted, suyo . . . de él, etc	21	6
Syllables, Division of words into orthographic	16	15
" Orthographic	16	10
" Prosodic	16	10
Syllepsis	27	33
Syntax defined	16	1
" General principles of . .	27	1
" Rudimentary principles of	17	28

T

T, Silent	16	9
Tampoco	26	31
Tan, Apocopated form of tanto .	25	15
Tanto . . . como, meaning both . . . and	25	18
" cuanto, form of comparison	25	16
" " neuter expression	25	17
" más . . . cuanto	25	19
" Uses of, as a comparative of equality	25	14
Temblar as a subjectless verb . .	23	7
Tener and haber, Difference between	17	18
" Conjugation of	17	18
" " "	17	33
" más que, No	24	13
" que followed by an infinitive	24	12
" Use of	26	3
" " " in compound tenses	23	26
" " " " expressing cold, hunger, etc . .	23	9
" Various uses of	24	61
Tense and time distinguished . .	17	17
" defined	17	14
Tenses, Compound (see *Compound tenses*)		
" Metaphorical uses of . .	23	46
" of coexistence defined .	23	20
" of coexistence, Primary meanings of the	23	20
" of posteriority defined . .	23	23
" of posteriority replaced by those of coexistence	23	48
" of posteriority, Special uses of	23	49
" " the hypothetic mode .	23	32
" " " imperative mode .	23	36
Tenses of the indicative mode	17	15
" " " subjunctive mode	17	17
" " " " "	23	29
" Primary meanings of the	23	19
" Secondary meanings of the	23	37
" Simple	17	15
" " of the indicative .	23	19
Tercero, Apocopation of	21	19
" " "	21	23
There to be, how rendered	23	15
They, used indefinitely	22	21
Third person plural of verbs . . .	22	21
Time forms of verbs defined . . .	21	24
Titles, Use of the definite article with	20	39
Todo cuanto	25	17
" lo que	25	17
" Use of the definite article with	20	34
Traer, Irregularities of	22	49
Transitive verbs	17	24
" " used pronominally	22	3
Translating from English into Spanish	18	36
Tratar, Uses of	24	63
Triphthongs	16	14
Tú	17	5

U

U consonante	16	8
" de corazón	16	8
" Silent	16	4
" Sound of	16	4
Un, Abnormal use of the masculine form of	27	21
" Omission of	21	20
Unclassified irregular verbs . . .	22	37
Uno, Apocopation of	21	21
-uno, Apocopation of numbers ending in	21	14
Uno á otro, Use of, in reflexive constructions	19	22
" and otro, Use of, in reflexive constructions	19	22
" Indefinite pronoun	19	39
" is constructed like a third-person substantive	19	39
" Uses of, with the infinitive . .	24	3
Unos meaning about, more or less	20	46
" " some	20	46
Usted	17	5
" Prepositional case of . . .	19	10
" Use of the imperative with	17	20
Usucapir, Defective verb	23	3

V	Sec.	Page
V, Sounds of	16	7
" Spanish names of	16	8
Valer, Irregularities of	22	35
" Uses of	24	64
Venir and ir, Difference between	24	49
" Irregularities of	22	50
" Various uses of	24	65
Ver, Irregularities of	22	50
" with an infinitive	24	8
Verb, Concord of	27	22
" Characteristics of the Spanish	16	29
" following several subjects	27	22
" preceding several substantives connected by y	27	28
" referring to a predicate relative	27	32
" referring to infinitives connected by y	27	30
" referring to several neuters	27	31
" referring to several substantives	27	28
" referring to subjects of different persons	27	25
" referring to substantives connected by así como, como or tanto como	27	27
" referring to substantives connected by ni	27	24
" referring to substantives connected by ó	27	26
" referring to two substantives connected by con	27	26
Verbal derivatives defined	17	10
" " "	21	24
Verbs, Defective (see *Defective verbs*)		
" having two participles	22	52
" in -acer, Irregularities of	22	28
" " -ducir, " "	22	29
" " -ecer, " "	22	28
" " -eer, " "	22	30
" " -eír, " "	22	31
" " -eñer, " "	22	24
" " -llir, " "	22	24
" " -ñir, " "	22	24
" " -ocer, " "	22	28
" " -uír, " "	22	34
" Irregular (see *Irregular verbs*)		
Verbs, Pronominal (see *Pronominal verbs*)		
" Regular (see *Regular verbs*)		
" Subjectless (see *Subjectless verbs*)		
" Time forms of, defined	21	24
" Uses of some important	24	25
" whose dative is rendered into English by an accusative	19	5
" whose subject in English is their dative in Spanish	19	13
Verse, meaning to be	22	6
Vez, Adverbial expressions formed with	25	50
Vos	19	3
Vosotros	17	5
Vowel combinations	16	11
" sounds, Coalescence and elision of	16	20
Vowels	16	3
" Strong	16	11
" Weak	16	11

W		
W	16	8
Word forms	16	28
Words, Division of, into orthographic syllables	16	15
" Grammatical classification of	16	23
" Order of (see *Order of words*)		

X		
X, Sounds of	16	8
" Use of, instead of j	16	9

Y		
Y, Sounds of	16	9
" Use of, in the names of numbers	21	15
Ya	25	50
Yacer, Irregularities of	22	29

Z		
Z, Sounds of	16	9

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 003 212 707 1